



**RHODES UNIVERSITY**

*Where leaders learn*

**RU120**  
1904-2024 **YEARS**  
OF EXCELLENCE

**CALENDAR  
2024**







**RHODES UNIVERSITY**

*Where leaders learn*

## **VISION AND MISSION STATEMENT**

### **VISION**

Our vision is to be foremost in the generation and advancement of locally responsive and globally engaged knowledge that seeks to create a just and sustainable society.

### **MISSION**

Our mission is to provide transformative education, rigorous scholarship and research that

- seeks to produce knowledge that advances the frontiers of science, human understanding and wisdom.
- cultivates knowledgeable and skilled graduates, innovative and critical problem-solvers; caring and engaged citizens; responsible, courageous and ethical leaders.
- enables and drives environmental sustainability, equitable and inclusive social and economic development based on respectful and mutually beneficial partnerships with diverse communities.



© 2024 Rhodes University, Makhanda, South Africa

All rights reserved

ISSN 1018-774X

Cover photograph: Rhodes University

Cover design and typesetting: WalkerDigital.co.za

Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa  
by Cadar Printers, Port Elizabeth

# RHODES UNIVERSITY

## MAKHANDA • SOUTH AFRICA

### *CALENDAR 2024*

#### THE FRONTISPIECE

*The University motto ‘Vis, virtus, veritas’, means  
‘Strength, courage, truth’.*

#### Heraldic description of the arms

*Or on a Pile Sable an Open Book inscribed with the words ‘Sapientiam Exquiret Sapiens’ between three Escallops of the first. On a Chief Argent a Lion passant Gules between two Thistles slipped and leaved proper. And for the crest a Wreath of the Colours upon a Rock the Figure of a Man mounted on a Horse representing ‘energy’ all Argent.*

#### Derivation of the coat of arms

*Black and gold are the livery colours of the Graham family. The pile (inverted triangle) is characteristic of the Graham coat of arms, as are the escallops (shells), an emblem of pilgrimage. The lion and two thistles were taken from the coat of arms granted posthumously to Cecil John Rhodes. The crest is a representation of the famous statue by Watts which forms part of the Rhodes Memorial in Cape Town. The open book is a common feature of the arms of a college or university e.g. Oxford University.*

*Frontispiece: NB Hodnett*

# Table of Contents

Vision and Mission Statement .....	iii
Useful Addresses, Telephone and Telefax Numbers .....	4
Diary 2024 .....	6
A Brief History of the University .....	24
Dedication - Academic Freedom .....	30
Constitution of the University .....	31
Officers of the University, Honorary Members & Distinguished Awards Recipients .....	32
Admission and Registration of Students .....	46
General Rules for Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates .....	49
Faculty of Commerce .....	62
Faculty of Education .....	84
Faculty of Humanities .....	106
Faculty of Law .....	122
Faculty of Pharmacy .....	127
Faculty of Science .....	133
Accounting .....	147
Anthropology .....	152
Biochemistry & Microbiology .....	155
Biotechnology Innovation Centre .....	161
Botany .....	163
Rhodes Business School .....	167
Chemistry .....	176
Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning (CHERTL) .....	181
Computer Science .....	188
Drama .....	192
Economics and Economic History .....	195
Education .....	204
Environmental Science .....	220
Fine Art .....	226
Geography .....	232
Geology .....	237
History .....	241
Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE) .....	245
Ichthyology and Fisheries Science .....	248
Information Systems .....	252
Journalism and Media Studies .....	256
Languages and Literatures (School of) .....	261
African Language Studies .....	262
Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies .....	266
Chinese Studies .....	268
Classical Studies .....	269
Creative Writing .....	272
French Studies .....	273

German Studies .....	272
Law Faculty .....	278
Linguistics & Applied Language Studies .....	286
Literary Studies In English .....	291
Management .....	294
Mathematics .....	300
Music and Musicology .....	306
Pharmacy .....	313
Philosophy .....	319
Physics And Electronics .....	323
Political and International Studies .....	326
Psychology .....	329
Sociology .....	334
Statistics .....	339
Zoology and Entomology .....	345
Research Institutes and Units .....	350
The Albany Museum .....	350
Amazwi South African Museum of Literature .....	352
Biopharmaceutics Research Institute (BRI) .....	354
Centre for Social Development (CSD) .....	355
Dictionary Unit for South African English (DSAE) .....	365
Electron Microscope Unit .....	366
Institute for Environmental Biotechnology (EBRU) .....	367
The Institute for the Study of the Englishes of Africa (ISEA) .....	368
Institute of Social and Economic Research .....	372
The Institute for Water Research (IWR) .....	375
Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project (RUMEP) .....	377
South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (SAIAB) .....	379
Southern Ocean Group .....	385
The Rhodes University Library and Information Services (RULIS) .....	386
Cory Library for Humanities Research .....	389
Administrative Senior Staff .....	391
Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates .....	395
The Residences .....	398
Student Disciplinary Code .....	404
Student Affairs: the Sports Council .....	429
Student Affairs: the Oppidan Union .....	430
Students' Representative Council .....	431
Constitution for Student Governance .....	435
General Information .....	461
Fees for 2024 .....	467



## USEFUL ADDRESSES, TELEPHONE AND TELEFAX NUMBERS

Correspondence with the University should be addressed to:

**Rhodes University PO Box 94  
Makhanda 6140**

Completed applications should be sent to:

**Student Bureau Rhodes University  
PO Box 94, Makhanda 6140**

*NB All mail for students in residence should be addressed to the house and hall concerned. See index for "Mail to Residences"*

**UNIVERSITY TELEPHONE EXCHANGE  
(046) 603 8111** (for all departments not listed)

**ACADEMIC ADMINISTRATION  
(046) 603 8213**

**STUDENT BUREAU**

**(046) 603 8276**

*for: Admissions, Residences, Financial Aid,  
Examinations and Graduation*

**Advice on Careers (046) 603 7076**

Ms M Buso

**Campus Health Centre (046) 603 8523**

Sister-in-Charge: Ms H Ferreira

**Counselling Centre (046) 603 7077**

Acting Head: Dr C Lewis

**Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Academic & Student  
Affairs (046) 603 8149**

Professor M Monnapula-Mapesela

**Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Research, Innovation  
& Strategic Partnerships (046) 603 8055**

Dr N Mzilikazi

**Director: Communications and Advancement  
(046) 603 8570**

Dr L Jacobs

**Director: Equity and Institutional Culture**

**(046) 603 7474**

Dr C Kelly

**Director: Finance (046) 603 8123**

Mr G Erasmus

**Director: Division of People and Culture (046)  
603 8792**

Mrs S Robertson

**Director: Information and Technology Services  
(046) 603 7560**

Ms N Ripley

**Director: Institutional Research Planning and  
Quality Promotions (046) 603 8060**

Dr R Nnadozie

**Director: Division of Global Engagement (046)  
603 8217**

Ms O Quinlan

**Director: Library Services (046) 603 8079**

Ms N Danster

**Director: Vice Chancellor's Office  
(046) 603 8529**

Ms S Smailes

**Director: Division of Student Services &  
Development (046) 603 8181**

Dr P Tondi

**Student Fees: (046) 603 8165**

Manager: Mr E Walters

**Sports Clubs and Facilities (046) 603 7375**

**Manager: Sports Administration**

**Students' Representative Council (046) 603  
7080**

**Transport Office (046) 603 8234**

**Vice-Chancellor's Office (046) 603 8148**

**Academic Departments (046) 603 8111**

**DEANS OF THE FACULTIES:**

**Humanities**

Professor E Msindo

(046) 603 8812

**Science**

Professor J Dames

(046) 603 7232

**Law**

Professor L Juma

(046) 603 7256

**Education**

Professor E Rosenberg

(046) 603 7335

**Commerce**

Professor DA Sewry

(046) 603 7500

**Pharmacy**

Professor S Khamanga

(046) 603 8381/603 8382

**TELEFAX NUMBERS**

Academic Administration:

(046) 603 8104

Conference Office:

(046) 603 8962

Library:

(046) 603 7310

Student Bureau:

(046) 603 8300

Student Fees:

(046) 603 7019

See also the Rhodes University web page:

<http://www.ru.ac.za> for updates.

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
<b>January</b>			
1	Monday		<b>New Year's Day</b>
2	Tuesday		<b>Public Holiday</b>
3	Wednesday		University Opens
4	Thursday	14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
5	Friday		—
6	Saturday		—
7	Sunday		—
8	Monday		Postgraduate registration opens
9	Tuesday		—
10	Wednesday		—
11	Thursday		—
12	Friday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
13	Saturday		—
14	Sunday		—
15	Monday		—
16	Tuesday		—
17	Wednesday		—
18	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
19	Friday		Initial fee deadline for returning students
20	Saturday		—
21	Sunday		—
22	Monday		Supplementary examinations begin
		14:15	Student Services and Development /Hall Wardens Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
23	Tuesday		Supplementary examinations
24	Wednesday		Supplementary examinations
25	Thursday		Supplementary examinations
26	Friday		Supplementary examinations
			Initial fee deadline for first year students
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
27	Saturday		—
28	Sunday		—
29	Monday		Supplementary examinations

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
30	Tuesday		Supplementary examinations
31	Wednesday		Supplementary examinations
		8:30	<b>SAM &amp; ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
		12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum meeting
<b>February</b>			
1	Thursday		Supplementary examinations
		11:00	Board of Residences (Council Chambers)
		12:30	Major Projects Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
2	Friday		Supplementary examinations end
		14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable (CHERTL Sem Rem)
3	Saturday		First year registration day
4	Sunday		First year registration day
		16:00	Vice-Chancellor and SRC President Opening Address
5	Monday		Academic Orientation week starts
6	Tuesday		Academic Orientation week
		11:30	Enterprise Risk Management (Council Chambers)
7	Wednesday		Academic Orientation week
		8:30	<b>SAM (Council Chambers)</b>
8	Thursday	14:15	Health and Safety Committee (Council Chambers)
			Academic Orientation week ends
			Humanities Curriculum Approval
9	Friday		All Faculties Curriculum Approval
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
10	Saturday		All Faculties Curriculum Approval
11	Sunday		—
12	Monday		Undergraduate lectures begin
		14:15	IPC Infrastructure Planning and Size and Shape Sub-committee (Council Chambers)
13	Tuesday	14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee (Council Chambers)
14	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
15	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
16	Friday	15:00	Conference / Vacation Accommodation (Alumni House Boardroom)



<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
17	Saturday		—
18	Sunday		—
19	Monday	9:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Education Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
20	Tuesday	14:00	RUMED Board of Trustees (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
21	Wednesday	9:00	Budget Executive Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
22	Thursday	14:15	Science Faculty Board ( Council Chambers)
23	Friday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
		14:15	Law Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
24	Saturday		—
25	Sunday		—
26	Monday		—
27	Tuesday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC) (Council Chambers)
28	Wednesday	8:00	<b>SAM (Council Chambers)</b>
		09:00-13:00	Job Evaluation Committee
		12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum meeting
29	Thursday	14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
<b>March</b>			
1	Friday	14:15	Language Committee (Council Chambers)
2	Saturday		—
3	Sunday		—
4	Monday	11:00	Middle Management Forum
		14:15	CSD Board (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Disability Committee (Council Chambers)
5	Tuesday	14:15	Visual Representation, Arts and Culture (VRACC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	ISEA Board meeting (Room 1 St Peter's Building)
		14:15	RUMEP (Room 7 Education Building)
6	Wednesday	11:00	Major Projects Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Student Services Committee (Council Chambers)
			<b>Last day of submission of final e-copy theses for Masters and Doctoral candidates for Graduation April 2024</b>

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
7	Thursday	09:00 - 13:00	Finance & General Purposes Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Gender Action Forum (Council Chambers)
		17:00	Sports Council Executive Committee (Old Mutual Pavilion)
8	Friday	11:00	Orientation Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
9	Saturday		—
10	Sunday		—
11	Monday	9:00	Deans Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
12	Tuesday	14:15	<b>Senate Executive Committee (SENEX) (Council Chambers)</b>
13	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
		14:15	HODs Forum (Council Chambers)
14	Thursday	09:00-13:00	Audit & Risk Committee (Council Chambers)
		9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Rhodes Business School)
		17:00	Student Services and Development/Hall Wardens Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
15	Friday		—
16	Saturday		—
17	Sunday		—
18	Monday	14:00	RUMED Audit Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
19	Tuesday	10:00	Remuneration Committee of Council (VC's Office)
		14:15	Wellness Committee (Council Chambers)
20	Wednesday	14:15	<b>SENATE (Council Chambers)</b>
21	Thursday		<b>Human Right's Day</b>
22	Friday		—
23	Saturday		—
24	Sunday		—
25	Monday	14:15	Institutional Forum (Council Chambers)
26	Tuesday	14:15	Employment Equity & Skills Development Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
		17:00	Warden Discussion Group (Senior Common Room)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
27	Wednesday	11:30	Financial Aid Sub-Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Management & Unions Consultative Forum (Council Chambers)
			Undergraduate lectures end
28	Thursday		<b>Mid semester vacation begins</b>
29	Friday		<b>Good Friday</b>
30	Saturday		<b>Holy Saturday</b>
31	Sunday		<b>Easter Sunday</b>
<b>April</b>			
1	Monday		<b>Family Day</b>
2	Tuesday		—
3	Wednesday		<b>GRADUATION</b>
4	Thursday		<b>GRADUATION</b>
5	Friday		<b>GRADUATION</b>
6	Saturday		—
7	Sunday		—
8	Monday		Undergraduate lectures begin
		11:00	Academic Freedom Committee
		14:15	Lecture Venues Sub-committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
9	Tuesday	15:30	Major Projects Committee (Council Chambers)
10	Wednesday	8:30	<b>SAM (Council Chambers)</b>
		14:15	Health and Safety Committee (Council Chambers)
11	Thursday	14:15	Equity & Institutional Culture (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
12	Friday	9:00	RUMED Board of Trustees (Venue TBC)
		14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee (Law Staff Reading Room)
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
13	Saturday		—
14	Sunday		—
15	Monday	11:00	Enterprise Risk Management (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Community Engagement Committee (Council Chambers)
16	Tuesday	14:15	IPC Infrastructure Planning and Size and Shape Sub-committee (Council Chambers)
17	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
18	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
		12:30	Special Employment Equity & Skills Development Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
19	Friday		—
20	Saturday		<b>RHODES UNIVERSITY OPEN DAY</b>
21	Sunday		—
22	Monday		—
23	Tuesday		—
24	Wednesday	10:00	<b>COUNCIL (Council Chambers)</b>
25	Thursday		
26	Friday	14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
			<b>SUBMISSION DATE OF MID-YEAR EXAMINATION QUESTION PAPERS (INCLUDING SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATION PAPERS TO BE WRITTEN THE FOLLOWING YEAR</b>
27	Saturday		—
28	Sunday		—
29	Monday	14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee (Council Chambers)
30	Tuesday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC) (Council Chambers)
<b>May</b>			
1	Wednesday		<b>Workers Day</b>
2	Thursday	9:00	Budget Executive Committee (Council Chambers)
		12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Institutional Forum (Council Chambers)
3	Friday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
4	Saturday		—
5	Sunday		<b>LAST DAY FOR SOCIAL EVENTS ON CAMPUS</b>
6	Monday	14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
		14:15	Law Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
7	Tuesday	09:00-11:00	Employment Equity & Skills Development Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
8	Wednesday	8:30	<b>SAM (Council Chambers)</b>
9	Thursday	9:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Education Faculty Board (Council Chambers)



<i><b>Date</b></i>	<i><b>Day</b></i>	<i><b>Time</b></i>	<i><b>Event</b></i>
10	Friday	14:15	Science Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
11	Saturday		—
12	Sunday		—
13	Monday		—
14	Tuesday	11:30	Financial Aid Sub-Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Research Ethics Forum (Council Chambers)
15	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Council Chambers)
16	Thursday	08:00-16:00	Board of Governors (Council Chambers)
		9:00	Pension Fund
		13:30	Provident Fund
		14:15	Student Services and Development/Hall Wardens Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
17	Friday		Undergraduate lectures end
18	Saturday		<b>Swot period begins</b>
19	Sunday		—
20	Monday	14:15	Disciplinary Committee (Council Chambers)
21	Tuesday	9:00	Deans Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable (CHERTL Sem Rem)
22	Wednesday	09:00-13:00	Finance & General Purposes Committee (Council Chambers)
23	Thursday		<b>Swot period ends</b>
		9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
		14:15	HODs Forum (Council Chambers)
24	Friday		<b>Examinations begin</b>
25	Saturday		—
26	Sunday		—
27	Monday	11:00	Middle Management Forum
		11:00	Naming Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
28	Tuesday	14:15	<b>Senate Executive Committee (SENEX) (Council Chambers)</b>
29	Wednesday	11:00	Nominations and Governance Committee of Council (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Student Services Committee (Council Chambers)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
30	Thursday	09:00-13:00	Audit & Risk Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
31	Friday	11:00	Major Projects Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Disability Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
<b>June</b>			
1	Saturday		—
2	Sunday		—
3	Monday	14:15	Research Committee (Council Chambers)
4	Tuesday	14:15	Academic Programme & Curriculum Quality Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	RUMEP (Room 1 St Peter's Building)
5	Wednesday	8:30	<b>SAM (Council Chambers)</b>
		11:00	Financial Aid Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	CSD Board (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee (Law Staff Reading Room)
6	Thursday	11:00	Honorary Degrees Committee (Council Chambers)
		12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Library Committee (Level Four Meeting Room, Library)
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
7	Friday	14:15	<b>SENATE (Council Chambers)</b>
8	Saturday		—
9	Sunday		—
10	Monday	11:00	Budget Strategy/FSTT (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Lecture Venues Sub-committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
		14:15	Visual Representation, Arts and Culture (VRACC) (Council Chambers)
11	Tuesday	9:00	RUMED Board of Trustees (Venue TBC)
		12:00	RUMED Annual General Meeting
		14:15	IPC Infrastructure Planning and Size and Shape Sub-committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	ISEA Exco (Room 1 St Peter's Building)
		16:30	Long Service Awards
12	Wednesday	10:00	<b>COUNCIL (Council Chambers)</b>

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
		16:30	Alty Awards
13	Thursday	11:00	Constitution Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	IT Steering Committee (Council Chambers)
		15:00	Conference / Vacation Accommodation (Alumni House Boardroom)
14	Friday	09:00-13:00	Job Evaluation Committee
		14:15	Gender Action Forum (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
			Examinations end
15	Saturday		Mid-year vacation begins
16	Sunday		<b>Youth Day</b>
17	Monday		<b>Public holiday for Youth Day</b>
18	Tuesday		—
19	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
20	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
21	Friday		—
22	Saturday		—
23	Sunday		—
24	Monday		—
25	Tuesday		—
26	Wednesday		—
27	Thursday		
28	Friday		<b>Mid-year Submission for Masters and Doctoral Theses</b>
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
29	Saturday		—
30	Sunday		—
<b>July</b>			
1	Monday		—
2	Tuesday		—
3	Wednesday	12:30	Management & Union Consultative Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
4	Thursday	9:00	Pension Fund
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
5	Friday		—
6	Saturday		—

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
7	Sunday		—
8	Monday		<b>Undergraduate lectures begin</b>
		11:00-13:00	Employment Equity & Skills Development Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC) (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable (CHERTL Sem Rem)
		17:00	Student Services and Development/Hall Wardens Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
9	Tuesday	11:00	Major Projects Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
10	Wednesday	14:15	Education Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
11	Thursday	9:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
12	Friday	14:15	Science Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
13	Saturday		—
14	Sunday		—
15	Monday	14:15	Law Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
16	Tuesday	11:00	Remuneration Committee of Council (VC's Office)
17	Wednesday	8:30	<b>SAM (Council Chambers)</b>
18	Thursday		<b>Nelson Mandela Day</b> (Observed Only)
		9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
		14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee (Council Chambers)
19	Friday	11:00	Middle Management Forum (Council Chambers)
20	Saturday		—
21	Sunday		—
22	Monday	17:00	Warden Discussion Groups (Senior Common Room)
23	Tuesday		—
24	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
		14:15	Institutional Forum (Council Chambers)
25	Thursday	14:00	RUMED Audit Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
26	Friday	11:30	Enterprise Risk Management (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
27	Saturday		—
28	Sunday		—
29	Monday	11:00	Budget Strategy/FSTT (Council Chambers)
30	Tuesday	14:15	Equity & Institutional Culture (Council Chambers)
31	Wednesday	08:30-13:00	<b>SAM &amp; ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
<b>August</b>			
1	Thursday	14:15	Visual Representation, Arts and Culture (VRACC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
2	Friday		—
3	Saturday		—
4	Sunday		—
5	Monday	14:15	Budget Executive (Council Chambers)
6	Tuesday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
		14:15	RUMEP (Room 1 St Peter's Building)
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
7	Wednesday	11:00	Senate Examinations Committee (Registrar's Office)
		14:15	CSD Board (Alumni House Boardroom)
8	Thursday		—
9	Friday		<b>National Women's Day</b>
10	Saturday		—
11	Sunday		—
12	Monday	14:15	Community Engagement Committee (Council Chambers)
		15:00	Conference / Vacation Accommodation (Alumni House Boardroom)
13	Tuesday	12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	<b>Senate Executive Committee (SENEX) (Council Chambers)</b>
		14:15	ISEA Exco (Room 1 St Peter's Building)
14	Wednesday	8:30	<b>SAM (Council Chambers)</b>
		11:00	Health & Safety Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Financial Aid Sub-Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
15	Thursday	14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
16	Friday		Undergraduate lectures end
		09:00-13:00	Job Evaluation Committee
		14:15	Internationalisation Committee (Council Chambers)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
17	Saturday		Mid semester vacation begins
18	Sunday		—
19	Monday		—
20	Tuesday		—
21	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
22	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
23	Friday		—
24	Saturday		—
25	Sunday		—
26	Monday		Undergraduate lectures begin
		9:00	Deans Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
27	Tuesday	14:15	Wellness Committee (Council Chambers)
28	Wednesday	09:00-13:00	<b>Finance &amp; General Purposes Committee (Council Chambers)</b>
		14:15	Language Committee (Council Chambers)
29	Thursday	14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Student Services and Development/Hall Wardens Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
30	Friday	14:15	<b>SENATE (Council Chambers)</b>
31	Saturday		—
<b>September</b>			
1	Sunday		—
2	Monday	11:00	HODs Forum (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee (Council Chambers)
3	Tuesday	11:00	Major Projects Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Disability Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	RUMED Board of Trustees (Venue TBC)
4	Wednesday	8:30	<b>SAM (Council Chambers)</b>
		14:15	Student Services Committee (Council Chambers)
5	Thursday	09:00-13:00	Audit & Risk Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	RU Environmental Committee (Council Chambers)
6	Friday	11:00	Constitution Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
		11:30	Employment Equity & Skills Development (Council Chambers)
		14:15	IPC Infrastructure Planning & Size and Shape Sub-committee (Council Chambers)
7	Saturday	10:00	<b>CONVOCATION</b>
8	Sunday		
9	Monday	14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee (Law Staff Reading Room)
		15:00	Gender Action Forum (Council Chambers)
10	Tuesday	11:00	Honorary Degrees Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Academic Programme & Curriculum Quality Committee (Council Chambers)
11	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
		11:00	Orientation Committee (Council Chambers)
		12:30	Wage negotiations (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Research Committee
12	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
13	Friday		<b>SUBMISSION DATE OF END OF YEAR EXAMINATION QUESTION PAPERS (INCLUDING SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATION PAPERS TO BE WRITTEN THE FOLLOWING YEAR)</b>
		09:00-17:00	<b>Postgraduate Conference &amp; 3MT</b>
14	Saturday	09:00-17:00	<b>Postgraduate Conference &amp; 3MT</b>
15	Sunday		—
16	Monday	15:00	Cory Library Advisory Board (Level 4 Meeting Room, Library)
17	Tuesday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC) (Council Chambers)
18	Wednesday	11:30	Financial Aid Sub-Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		12:30	Wage negotiations (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Lecture Venue Sub-committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
			<b>Last day of submission of final e-copy theses for Masters and Doctoral candidates for Graduation October 2024</b>
19	Thursday	10:00	<b>COUNCIL (Council Chambers)</b>
20	Friday	14:15	Commerce Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
		17:00	Warden Discussion Group (Senior Common Room)
21	Saturday		—
22	Sunday		—
23	Monday		—
24	Tuesday		<b>Heritage Day</b>
25	Wednesday	14:15	Education Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
26	Thursday	14:15	Science Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
27	Friday	9:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
28	Saturday		—
29	Sunday		<b>LAST DAY FOR SOCIAL EVENTS ON CAMPUS</b>
30	Monday	14:15	Law Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
<b>October</b>			
1	Tuesday		—
2	Wednesday	08:00-16:30	Personal Promotions Committee
		14:15	Research Ethics Forum (Council Chambers)
3	Thursday	08:00-16:30	Personal Promotions Committee
		14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable (CHERTL Sem Rem)
4	Friday	11:00	Board of Residences (Council Chambers)
5	Saturday		—
6	Sunday		—
7	Monday	11:00	Naming Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Institutional Forum (Council Chambers)
8	Tuesday	9:00	Budget Committee (Council Chambers)
		13:30	Wage negotiations (Alumni House Boardroom)
9	Wednesday	8:30	<b>SAM (Council Chamber)</b>
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Council Chambers)
10	Thursday	11:30	Senate Examinations Committee (Registrar's Office)
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
11	Friday		<b>Graduation for M and PhD graduates</b>
			Undergraduate lectures end



<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
12	Saturday		Swot period begins
13	Sunday		—
14	Monday	11:30	Senate Nominations Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	IT Steering Committee (Council Chambers)
15	Tuesday	14:15	<b>Senate Executive Committee (SENEX) (Council Chambers)</b>
16	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chamber)</b>
		12:30	Wage negotiations (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Financial Aid Committee (Council Chambers)
17	Thursday	9:00	Budget Committee (Council Chambers)
			Swot period ends
18	Friday		Examinations begin
19	Saturday		—
20	Sunday		—
21	Monday	14:15	Student Services and Development/Hall Wardens Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
22	Tuesday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
		14:15	RUMEP (Room 1 St Peter's Building)
23	Wednesday	11:00	Nominations and Governance Committee of Council (Council Chambers)
		14:00	RUMED Audit Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
24	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
		9:30	Pension Fund
		13:30	Provident Fund
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Room 34 St Peter's Building)
		14:15	CSD Board (Alumni House Boardroom)
25	Friday	14:15	<b>SENATE (Council Chambers)</b>
26	Saturday		—
27	Sunday		—
28	Monday	9:00	Budget Executive (Council Chambers)
29	Tuesday	11:00	Health and Safety Committee (Council Chambers)
30	Wednesday	8:30	<b>SAM (Council Chambers)</b>
		14:15	Equity & Institutional Culture (Council Chambers)
31	Thursday	08:30-16:30	Personal Promotions Appeal
		14:15	Language Committee (Council Chambers)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
<b>November</b>			
1	Friday		—
2	Saturday		—
3	Sunday		—
4	Monday	9:00	Deans Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
5	Tuesday	14:15	Student Services Committee (Council Chambers)
6	Wednesday	09:00-13:00	Finance & General Purposes Committee
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
7	Thursday	11:30	Enterprise Risk Management (Council Chambers)
8	Friday	11:00	Major Projects Committee (Council Chambers)
9	Saturday		—
10	Sunday		—
11	Monday		—
12	Tuesday	08:00-16:00	Board of Governors (Council Chambers)
13	Wednesday	8:30	<b>ALF (Council Chamber)</b>
14	Thursday	09:00-13:00	Audit & Risk Committee (Council Chambers)
15	Friday	12:30	Wage negotiations (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
		14:15	<b>SENATE (Council Chambers)</b>
			Examinations end
16	Saturday		—
17	Sunday		—
18	Monday	14:15	Library Committee (Level Four Meeting Room, Library)
		15:00	Conference / Vacation Accommodation (Alumni House Boardroom)
19	Tuesday	11:00	Remuneration Committee of Council (VC's Office)
		12:30	Wage negotiations (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Council Chambers)
20	Wednesday	8:30	<b>SAM &amp; ALF (Council Chambers)</b>
		11:00	Major Projects Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee (Law Staff Reading Room)
			Submission of exam results to Registrar's Division

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
21	Thursday	12:30-14:30	HODs Forum (Council Chambers)
22	Friday	11:00	Middle Management Forum
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
23	Saturday		—
24	Sunday		—
25	Monday		Results to Deans for analysis
		9:00	Disciplinary Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	CSD Board (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)
26	Tuesday		Results to Deans for analysis
		09:00-13:00	Job Evaluation Committee
		11:00-13:00	Employment Equity & Skills Development Committee (Council Chambers)
		14:15	ISEA Board meeting (Room 1 St Peter's Building)
27	Wednesday		Results to Deans for analysis
		14:15	Research Committee (Council Chambers)
28	Thursday		Results to Deans for analysis
		10:00	<b>COUNCIL (Council Chambers)</b>
29	Friday		Submission of recommendations by Deans
30	Saturday		—
<b>December</b>			
1	Sunday		—
2	Monday		Submission of recommendations by Deans
		12:30	Wage negotiations (Alumni House Boardroom)
3	Tuesday		Submission of recommendations by Deans
		12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
4	Wednesday		Submission of recommendations by Deans
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)
5	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee and Education Faculty Research Ethics (Education First Floor Seminar Room)
6	Friday	9:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Law Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
7	Saturday		—
8	Sunday		—

<i>Date</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Event</i>
9	Monday	9:00	Commerce Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Science Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)
10	Tuesday	9:00	Humanities Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Education Faculty Board (Council Chambers)
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
11	Wednesday		—
12	Thursday		—
13	Friday		—
14	Saturday		—
15	Sunday		—
16	Monday		<b>Day of Reconciliation</b>
17	Tuesday		Exam results to be released
18	Wednesday		—
19	Thursday		—
20	Friday		—
21	Saturday		—
22	Sunday		—
23	Monday		—
24	Tuesday		Christmas Eve
25	Wednesday		<b>Christmas Day</b>
26	Thursday		<b>Day of Goodwill</b>
27	Friday		—
28	Saturday		—
29	Sunday		—
30	Monday		—
31	Tuesday		<b>New Year's Eve</b>

## A BRIEF HISTORY OF THE UNIVERSITY

### Rhodes University's Early Years

The idea of establishing a university in the Eastern Cape was first put forward in the 1880s. In the early 1900s a small group formed an *ad hoc* committee to establish such an institution, using the working title of the Eastern Province University College. They changed this to Rhodes University College to leverage funding from the Rhodes Trust, which administered the will of Cecil Rhodes, and who had died in 1902. The Trust subsequently granted £50,000 towards the founding of Rhodes University College.

Rhodes University College started as an affiliate of the University of the Cape of Good Hope, and began functioning in July 1904 with about fifty students, the vast majority of whom were men and all of whom were white, with classes initially being held in St Andrew's College buildings. Early in 1905, operations moved to the University's current site, the old Drostdy grounds. For the first five decades or so of the University's history, student culture was for the most part genteel, constrained by Victorian codes of behaviour and by strict rules and regulations. Social life revolved around tightly controlled dances, respectable courting, and walks on Mountain Drive. Extracurricular cultural activity centred on the debating, musical and dramatic societies. Sport gained momentum, with rugby at the forefront.

The University operated as a racially segregated institution for the first 70 years of its existence. There was a slight relaxation of this stance in the 1940s. Benjamin Mahlasela was appointed in 1942 to teach isiXhosa to first-year students – he would go on to serve the University for thirty-five years. In 1947 Rhodes started to admit black postgraduate students into courses not offered at the University of Fort Hare.

### Rhodes University in the early apartheid era

Rhodes became an independent university in 1951 (having been affiliated to UNISA since 1918) and took on Fort Hare as an affiliate. The first four decades of Rhodes's existence as an independent university coincided with the apartheid era, which saw a growing polarisation between the defenders and opponents of apartheid in the university community.

While teaching was still considered to be the primary activity, there was evidence that research, writing and artistic output were gaining some momentum in the 1950s and 1960s. The scientist to gain the greatest international renown at the time was JLB Smith, who identified a mysterious fish caught in East London as a coelacanth, believed to have been extinct for millions of years. Among other prominent scientists at Rhodes from the 1950s and 1960s were the physicist, Jack Gledhill, and the zoologist, Brian Allanson. The most notable figures in the Humanities during this time included Guy Butler of the Department of English, and Andre Brink in the Department of Afrikaans. Guy Butler was the driving-force behind the founding of the Rhodes Theatre and the Drama Department, the School of Journalism and Media Studies, the Institute for the Study of English in Africa (ISEA), the National English Literary Museum (NELM, now known as Amazwi), and the National Arts Festival. Andre Brink was the most prolific writer to have taught at Rhodes – the author of over twenty novels, in addition to his critical writings, plays and translated works.

Research productivity was enhanced by work undertaken at various institutes, including the Leather Industries Research Institute, the JLB Smith Institute (later becoming a national facility known as the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity), the Institute for the Study of English in Africa (ISEA) and the Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER). In 1978 the University became the home of the International Library

of African Music (ILAM), comprising a superb collection of African musical recordings and instruments that have been built up over decades, initially by Hugh Tracey and his son, Andrew.

In 1959 the National Party government passed legislation that ended the connection with the University of Fort Hare. This led to protests by students and staff at Rhodes. Fort Hare students who had registered during the affiliation years were permitted to complete their Rhodes degrees. These students were capped at graduation ceremonies held in the Rhodes Great Hall in 1960, 1961 and 1962. Among these graduands were Chris Hani and Griffiths Mxenge.

Unable to escape the dictates of apartheid, political controversies arose in the 1960s. In 1962, a notorious decision was taken to award an honorary doctorate to the state president, CR Swart, an apartheid hard-liner who had previously, as Minister of Justice, cracked down ruthlessly on anti-apartheid activists.

Then, in 1967, the Rhodes authorities refused to allow black student delegates to stay in university residences while attending the annual congress of the National Union of South African Students (NUSAS). Among the delegates was Steve Biko, who proceeded to establish the South African Students Organisation (SASO), a new black student organisation which would become the pioneer of the black consciousness movement in the country. In 2009, Rhodes took the opportunity of naming its student union building after Stephen Bantu Biko, a public acknowledgement of some of the shameful things that were done on the campus during the years of apartheid.

In contrast, the 1950s and 1960s represented a golden era in the history of Rhodes's sport. Some outstanding cricketers passed through the university – among them John Waite and Colin Bland. There were also fine rugby players, squash players and athletes who studied at Rhodes in this era. Great success was achieved by Rhodes's swimmers in the 1960s, with several performing especially well at a national level.

Student life at Rhodes continued to be governed by strict residence rules and dress codes. For instance, mixed parties involving men and women students still required the vice-chancellor's permission. Men students had to wear jackets and ties at classes and in the library. As something of the more relaxed, permissive 1960's culture filtered into Rhodes, students began to rail against what they saw as outdated regulations and restrictions. Calls for reform culminated in a student civil disobedience campaign in 1971, with students deliberately violating residence rules and dress codes.

### **The late apartheid era**

The last two decades of the apartheid era, from the mid-1970s to the mid-1990s, were years when the National Party government had to contend with both growing international pressure and rising internal protest and resistance. The government devised a twofold response – mild reform combined with ever harsher repression and a ruthless crackdown on its opponents. Both trends had an impact on Rhodes University, giving rise to growing turbulence and polarisation on campus.

The first government reform to have an impact on Rhodes was the slow, limited process of desegregation. From the early 1970s black students could apply for permits to register at white universities for courses not offered at black universities. In 1983 this policy was replaced by a quota system which allowed white universities to admit black students regardless of their chosen courses, but with a limit on the number of admissions.

The first Rhodes students to register under the permit system mostly took courses in Journalism or Pharmacy, neither of which were offered at black universities at the time. In 1976 Rhodes admitted seven black students; by 1985 black students constituted 18% of the total student population at the university.

Rhodes further expanded its engagement with the wider Eastern Cape community with the opening of its East London satellite campus in February 1981. Initially offering only B.Com. courses, the East London division geared its operations to the needs of the local business sector. It later ran Humanities and Education courses, before being transferred to Fort Hare in 2004 during the government's restructuring of the tertiary education sector.

### **The post-apartheid era**

As South Africa moved into the post-apartheid era in the 1990s, Rhodes University, like other South African universities, faced new challenges and pressures. The ANC-led government imposed demands on universities: that they expand their student enrolments; that they reduce their financial dependence on their government subsidy; that they become more responsive to the country's economic needs by producing more high-skilled graduates and more relevant research; and that they transform themselves. The transformation imperative had a number of dimensions – significantly increasing the number of black students and staff; addressing and changing the institutional culture of universities so as to make them more inclusive and congenial to a diverse community; examining and revising curricula and teaching practices to make them more Africa-focused; and reviewing governance structures and practices.

In the sphere of governance, leading black personalities would come to take their place in the upper echelons of the University – Jakes Gerwel as Chancellor from 1999, followed by Lex Mpati from 2013; Colin Johnson, appointed as vice-principal in 2001; Saleem Badat, serving as Vice-Chancellor from 2006 to 2014, to be succeeded by Sizwe Mabizela, who had previously held the position of Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Academic and Student Affairs from 2008. Adèle Moody, appointed in 2017, is the first woman and black Registrar.

After 1994 there was a steady change in the demographic composition of Rhodes's student population. In 1994 about 32% of the student body was black, out of a total student population of 4094. By 2014 the proportion of black students had doubled to 64%, out of a total population of 7519 students, and by 2022 had reached 91%, out of a total population of 8500 students. Achieving demographic representivity in the academic staff complement has been a slower process, with the proportion of black academics rising from 16% in 1994 to 25% in 2014, and 46% in 2022. On the other hand, the picture is different in the case of administrative staff (grades 6-13) – while in 1994 black administrative staff comprised about 27% of the total, this proportion rose to 58% in 2014, and to 78% in 2022.

### **Reflections on Rhodes University past and present**

The University is now a different place from what it was in 1994, and very different to what it was in 1904. Life for both students and academics has changed significantly. For several decades teaching was considered to be the primary academic activity. From the 1970s a growing emphasis has been placed on research productivity. In the 2000s, Rhodes University's research output per capita has been among the highest in the South African university sector. The University appointed Peter Clayton as its first Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Research and Innovation in 2008 to focus on this aspect of the institution.

In recent years its foremost researcher has been Distinguished Professor Tebello Nyokong, who has headed a highly productive team of researchers and postgraduate students in the Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation, specialising in research into nano-sensors and the phototherapeutic treatment of cancer. She

herself has been the recipient of many national and international awards, including being named in the exhibition of the National Center for Research on Human Evolution, in Spain in 2012, as one of *12 Names To Change The World*. Other researchers of outstanding scholarly reputation and productivity have also emerged, prompting the University to introduce a *Distinguished Professor* academic rank in 2011 to recognise scholarly work of international acclaim. To date the title has been conferred on Distinguished Professors Tebello Nyokong (Chemistry), Christopher McQuaid (Zoology), Paul Maylam (History), Heila Lotz-Sisitka (Environmental Education), Martin Hill (Entomology), Catriona Macleod (Psychology), Oleg Smirnov (Astrophysics), and Charlie Shackleton (Environmental Science).

Many students have benefited from the enduring commitment to undergraduate teaching, notwithstanding the more recent emphasis on research and postgraduate enrolments. In 2022 the University underwent an institutional accreditation audit by the Council on Higher Education, which focussed on the ongoing quality of both the undergraduate and postgraduate offerings at Rhodes University. The reports and accompanying evidence highlighted the institution as a small university that enjoys the distinction of having among the best undergraduate pass and graduation rates in South Africa, high post-graduate success rates in relation to the sector, and being amongst the top performing institutions with respect to research output per academic staff member. The university takes pride in its motto, *Where Leaders Learn*, and aims to produce graduates who are knowledgeable intellectuals, skilled professionals, and critical, caring, and compassionate citizens who can contribute to economic and social development, and an equitable, just and democratic society.

#### *The Fallist years*

The years 2015 and 2016 were turbulent ones for Rhodes and other South African universities. Student protests brought to the fore some fundamental issues facing the higher education sector, particularly those relating to institutional culture and finance. The challenges inherent in combining transformation and financial sustainability will continue to be met head on by Rhodes University, going forward.

#### *\*The novel COVID-19 Pandemic*

The World Health Organization (WHO) on March 11 2020 declared the novel coronavirus, COVID-19 a pandemic. On 16 March 2020 the President of South Africa, Mr Cyril Ramaphosa, declared a State of Disaster and a National Lockdown due to the outbreak of COVID-19. South African public universities including Rhodes closed their doors on 18 March 2020 and many activities were suspended, including face-to-face/in-contact classes and meetings, as well as large gatherings which were deemed to have a potential to spread the coronavirus. Many of the University's face-to-face activities were placed on hold and were gradually phased back under strict risk-controlled conditions as per the Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) regulations and directives. The University had to migrate teaching and learning to remote and digital delivery platforms. Like many universities in our country and beyond, Rhodes needed to ensure continuity of the education of the students and a productive use of their time towards building their futures while also observing the nationwide lockdown regulations of staying at home in order to curb the transmission of the novel coronavirus. The university had to ensure that the academic progress and the future of the students were not placed on hold and that the students, staff and the greater Makhanda community were not placed at the risk of contracting the deadly coronavirus.

*\*adapted from university reports by the Vice-Chancellor and the Deputy Vice-Chancellor Academic and Student Affairs, Professor Monnapula- Mapesela (2020)*



### *Community Engagement*

The formalisation of the community engagement programme as the third pillar of the University has seen the long-time trickle of engaged research projects and service learning programmes blossom into more of an institutional culture, giving meaning to the University existing for the public good, and resulting in Rhodes University earning a reputation as a trailblazer in the proportion of student participants in meaningful engaged programmes, and in the production of thought leaders in the sector on the scholarship of community engagement. In 2022, the Community Engagement Division launched an *African Journal of Higher Education Community Engagement*, which provides a distinctive platform for raising and promoting the scholarship of community engagement, especially as it pertains to the African continent.

### *A residential University*

About 50% of Rhodes students and most undergraduates live in University residences, while there are also earmarked residences for post-graduates. Through a well-established structure of wardens, sub-wardens and residence committees, the residences play an important role in overall student development, including developing leadership skills.

### *Intervarsity Cup Winners (2023)*

For the first time in the history of Eastern Cape Intervarsity, Rhodes University emerged victorious at the 2023 Intervarsity tournament, beating Nelson Mandela University (NMU), the University of Fort Hare (UFH) and Walter Sisulu University (WSU).

### **Celebrating 120 years and looking to the future**

2024 marks the 120<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of Rhodes University. An RU120 anniversary programme has been conceived as a year-long, global celebration of the University, structured around positive reflection on the achievements of the past, and strategic reimagination of the institution into the future. The programme aims to build upon and further give effect to the values, goals and aspirations contained in the RU Institutional Development Plan.

In addition to special commemorations, reunions and landmark events, an intellectual programme of symposia, colloquia, and publications will celebrate the various academic strengths of the University, and will address sectoral concerns and the changing context of higher education in a year that is also the 30<sup>th</sup> Anniversary of the first democratic elections in South Africa. Past intellectual highlights to be celebrated include the discovery of the Coelacanth, the establishment of the Internet in Southern Africa, the Square Kilometer Array, the development of associated national institutions out of University research programmes, such as SAIAB (the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity) and Amazwi South African Museum of Literature (formerly the National English Literary Museum), the establishment of institutes and centres within the University that have attracted an international reputation, such as the Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation, the Centre for Biological Control, the International Library of African Music, the Institute for Social and Economic Research, and the Institute for Water Research which hosts the ARUA (African Research Universities' Alliance) Centre of Excellence in Water.

The RU120 programme will see a number of strategic unveilings of new and upgraded infrastructure on the campus. Highlighting this aspect of the programme is the opening of the new Tebello Nyokong Building as the home of the Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation. This is an investment in infrastructure to ensure that the legacy of one of the University's greatest scholars is an enduring platform for those who come after her to excel, as well as a symbol of inspiration to remind all who study and work at this University that no

matter where you come from or where you stand, it is possible from a small town on the southern tip of Africa to create knowledge that has an impact on the entire planet. Other planned unveilings include the renovated Pharmacy-Chemistry Building, the Student Innovation Hub in the Biko Building, and a upgrades to the University's façade areas.

Several associated anniversaries will be celebrated within the RU120 year, amongst these the 15<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the establishment of a formal Community Engagement Division as the third pillar of the institution, 100 years of Botha House, Dingemans House turning 75 and Livingstone House turning 50, the Institute for the Study of English in Africa celebrating its 60<sup>th</sup> anniversary, and so on. The University will also join in the 50<sup>th</sup> anniversary celebrations of the National Arts Festival, and some notable milestones of some of its partner schools.

[This historical outline has been revised and updated from an earlier version penned by Professor Paul Maylam. For a more complete history of Rhodes University, see the book: Paul Maylam, *Rhodes University, 1904-2016: An Intellectual, Political and Cultural History* (Grahamstown: Institute of Social and Economic Research, 2017).] The contribution on RU120 by Emeritus Professor Peter Clayton (2023) is acknowledged.

# DEDICATION - ACADEMIC FREEDOM

## Rhodes University declaration of academic freedom and other ethical principles

As members of the academic community of Rhodes University, we are committed to safeguarding the principle of academic freedom and affirming our commitment to an ethical orientation to our work. The principles listed below are complex and their meanings must be debated. We simultaneously affirm our rights to academic freedom and uphold the firm view that this freedom is matched by an obligation to ethical conduct with regard to our students, colleagues and wider society. In the context of our history and the inequalities of the present, this includes a firm embrace of the transformative commitment to equality and justice as laid out in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa ('Constitution' hereafter) and, more fundamentally, as flowing from a proper understanding of the ethic that ought to guide academic life.

Therefore, we declare our resolute commitment to promoting the following principles:

**Freedom:** As enshrined in the Constitution, academic freedom is a variety of human freedom, and it is a central condition for a thriving academic life. The proper instantiation of academic freedom requires the steadfast commitment to its survival by academics, students and administrators. Academic freedom includes the right to be critical of the state, the university, private power and our colleagues. Academic freedom is not compatible with the subordination of university life to a corporate or managerial logic that curtails the freedom of staff or students to pursue intellectual projects of their own choosing. Academic freedom does not extend to defamation, fraud and forms of speech prohibited by the Constitution or, more broadly, by the principle of human decency. It is a misuse of academic freedom, moreover, to invoke it to

oppose just change. Academic freedom, finally, is predicated on adequate state funding of the academic project.

**Integrity:** Academic integrity requires personal and collective vigilance in the face of pressures and incentives that may threaten the autonomy and quality of academic work. It requires a firm commitment to aligning one's work and conduct with the ethical principles that ought to guide academic life. Such alignment cannot properly be achieved without ongoing interrogation of the values that inform current academic work.

**Equality:** The University is resolutely committed to the democratic ideal of universal equality. This requires active opposition to all forms of unjust discrimination and a vigorous attempt to build a university in which all students and staff are made to feel welcome and enjoy the same rights to participate freely in all aspects of academic life.

**Collegiality:** Academics should endeavor to foster a collegial environment where all staff and students are given a fair and equal platform to participate in the academic project, including playing an active part in maintaining and fostering proper institutional processes aimed at promoting a collegial environment. Collegiality, properly understood, is compatible with vigorous debate, provided that they are conducted in an ethical spirit, avoiding slander or acts designed to silence dissenting voices.

**Excellence:** Academics and students should be committed to producing work that is of the highest caliber in all spheres of academic life. Commitment to excellence implies ongoing critical interrogation of established norms of excellence.

## CONSTITUTION OF THE UNIVERSITY

The University consists of the Chancellor, the Principal (who is also the Vice-Chancellor), the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic and Student Affairs), the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research and Innovation), the Registrar, the Council, the Senate, the Institutional Forum, the Convocation, the Students' Representative Council, the academic staff, the professional, support and administrative staff and the students.

The Chancellor, elected by the Council, is the titular Head of the University and is empowered, in the name of the University, to confer all degrees. For this purpose, a Congregation of the University is held at least once a year under his/her presidency.

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor is the chief academic and administrative officer of the University and is *ex officio* a member of the Council and the Chairperson of the Senate.

The Council, which elects its own Chairperson, is the governing body of the University, administers its affairs and property, and is empowered to frame statutes and rules governing the general conduct and organisation of the University and to make all appointments to the staff.

The Senate in terms of the Statute is accountable to the Council for the teaching, learning, research and academic functions of the University, and all other functions delegated or assigned to it by the Council.

Convocation, elects its own President and is required to meet at least once a year, and may discuss and express its opinion on any matter relating to the University.

The Registrar of the University is the Secretary of Council, Senate and Convocation.

# OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY, HONORARY MEMBERS & DISTINGUISHED AWARDS RECIPIENTS

## Chancellor

The Hon Mr Justice L Mpati

## Principal and Vice-Chancellor

SG Mabizela, MSc (UFH), PhD (Pennsylvania State)

## Deputy Vice-Chancellor: (Research, Innovation & Strategic Partnerships)

N Mzilikazi, BSc (Zoology, Chemistry), BSc

Hons (Zoology) (University of Transkei)

MSc (Zoology) (University of Natal)

PhD (Zoology) (University of KwaZulu Natal)

## Deputy Vice-Chancellor: (Academic & Student Affairs)

M Monnapula-Mapesela, BSc.Ed(NUL),  
BEEd(UOFS), MEd(UOFS), PGDip. HE(Rhodes),  
PhD (UFS)

## Chairperson of Council

G Bloem, BA, STD(UWC), LLB(Rhodes)

## Vice-Chairperson of Council

G Ndebele, MSc (University of Manchester)

## President of Convocation

M Ruiters, BJourn (Rhodes), MA International  
Relations (Rhodes) MComm (UCT), PhD  
(Rutgers)

## Registrar

AL Moody, BA(Rhodes), HDE(Rhodes), BEd  
(UNISA), Med (UNISA), MBA (Business School  
Netherlands), DEd (UNISA)

## Chief Financial Officer

K Riga BCom (Rhodes) MCom(NWU)

## THE COUNCIL

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor

The Deputy VC: Academic and Student Affairs

The Deputy VC: Research, Innovation & Strategic  
Partnerships

## Appointed by the Minister of Education

Ms GT Ndebele (2024-2028)

Dr R Maharajh (2020-2024)

Mr MK Rune (2020-2024)

Dr N Tisani (2022 - 2026)

Mr M Mtshali (2022 – 2027)

## Elected by Senate

Prof DA Sewry (2023-2028)

Prof E Msindo (2022-2026)

Prof P Mwepu (2021-2024)

Prof D Nkomo (2023-2028)

## Elected by the academic staff

Mr E Knoesen (2023–2028)

## Elected by the administrative/support staff

Ms D Bekker (2020-2024)

Mr V Jacobs (2023-2028)

## Appointed by the Makana Municipality

Mr R Xonxa (2022-2025)

Mr M Nkwentsha (2022-2025)

## Elected by the Board of Governors

Mr A Sangqu (2022-2026)

## Appointed by Council

Mr M Rusa (2021-2025)

Mr T Pillay (2021-2024)

Ms M Schoeman (2021-2024)

Dr N Stubbs (2021 – 2024)

Mr S Ntlabezo (2022-2026)

Mr L Koyana (2022 – 2026)

## Co-opted Members

Judge G Bloem (2024-2028)

Mr S Tredoux (2023-2028)

Ms A Zinja (2022 - 2025)

Ms L Smith (2023 – 2024)

## Students' Representative Council (SRC)

SRC President

A student elected by the SRC

## THE SENATE

### Members

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor (Chairperson)

The Deputy VC: Academic and Student Affairs

The Deputy VC: Research, Innovation & Strategic  
Partnerships

The Registrar

## The Deans of the Faculties, 2023

**Humanities** Prof E Msindo

**Science** Prof J Dames

**Law** Prof L Juma

**Education** Prof E Rosenberg

**Commerce** Prof D Sewry

**Pharmacy** Prof S Khamanga

## Professors

1996 DA Sewry

1998 EM Stack

2001 T Nyokong

2001 JL Jonas

2007 RB Walker

2007 L Louw

2007 CI Macleod  
 2008 RA Dorrington  
 2008 CM Shackleton  
 2008 MH Villet  
 2008 L Wilbraham  
 2008 GCG Fraser  
 2009 AJ Booth  
 2009 AK Cowan  
 2009 PW Froneman  
 2009 MP Hill  
 2009 H Lotz-Sisitka  
 2009 D Thorburn  
 2009 GC Wells  
 2010 PJ Britz  
 2010 MJ Marais  
 2010 W Sauer  
 2010 KI Meiklejohn  
 2011 MH Graven  
 2012 RWM Krause  
 2013 BI Pletschke  
 2013 LD Vincent  
 2014 LO Juma  
 2014 JL Limson  
 2014 BS Ripley  
 2014 JD Snowball  
 2015 ML Chithambo  
 2016 R Simbao  
 2016 PA Tabensky  
 2017 S McKenna  
 2018 A Garman  
 2019 N Parse  
 2019 P Mwepu  
 2020 H Kaiser  
 2020 S Naidu  
 2020 W Potts  
 2020 AO Tastan Bishop  
 2021 C Grant  
 2021 KN Ngozo  
 2022 JA Coetzee  
 2022 JF Dames  
 2022 J Gambiza  
 2022 GB Glover  
 2022 EH van Coller  
 2023 L Dalvit  
 2023 M Drewett  
 2023 A Edkins  
 2023 D Nkomo  
 2023 S Prevec  
 2024 G Klerck  
 2024 AN Mukenge  
 2024 ON Odume

**Deputy Deans of Faculties**

**Humanities** Prof M de Jager and Prof P Mwepu  
**Science** Dr Y Motara  
**Law** Prof H van Coller  
**Education** Dr L Westaway  
**Commerce** Prof L Louw and Prof J Marire  
**Pharmacy** Dr C Oltmann

**Head of Department**

Accounting E Horn  
 Anthropology P Taruvinga  
 Biochemistry and Microbiology J de la Mare  
 Biotechnology Innovation E Prinsloo  
 Botany C Peter  
 Business School FO Skae  
 Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning J-A Vorster  
 Chemistry R Klein  
 Classical Studies D Malamis  
 Computer Science K Bradshaw  
 Drama H Gehring  
 Economics and Economics History J Snowball  
 Education: Department of Secondary, Post-School Education: K Jawahar  
 Education: Department of Primary and Early Childhood Education: I Schudel  
 Environmental Science G Thondhlana  
 Fine Art M de Jager  
 Geography S Strydom  
 Geology S Prevec  
 History J Thumbran  
 Human Kinetics and Ergonomics S Wells  
 Ichthyology and Fisheries Science C Jones  
 Information Systems G Foster  
 Journalism & Media Studies J du Toit  
 Law L Juma  
 Linguistics and Applied Language Studies M de Vos  
 Literary Studies in English A Krueger  
 Management N Oosthuizen  
 Mathematics (Pure and Applied) E Andriantiana  
 Music & Musicology B McConnachie  
 Pharmacy S Khamanga  
 Philosophy T Martin  
 Physics and Electronics M Chithambo  
 Political and International Studies S Magadla  
 Psychology L Jacobs  
 School of Languages B Nosilela  
 Sociology G Klerck  
 Statistics J Baxter  
 Zoology and Entomology N Richoux

**Research Institutes and Units representatives on Senate:**

### **Albany Museum**

P Cimi, Director

### **Amazwi (previously National English Literary Museum)**

BA Thomas, Director

### **Centre for Social Development**

F Gunzo, Director

### **Dictionary Unit for South African English**

T van Niekerk, Director

### **Institute of Social and Economic Research**

C Mbatha, Director

### **Institute for the Study of English in Africa**

M Mbelani, Director

### **International Library of African Music**

L Watkins, Director

### **Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project (RUMEP)**

F Mkwane, Director

### **South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity**

A Paterson, Managing Director

6 members elected by academic staff who are not eligible for Senate membership by virtue of being either Professors or Heads of departments

2 members elected by the administrative/support staff

### **Students' Representative Council**

5 students elected by the SRC

### **In attendance**

#### **Chief Financial Officer**

Mr R Riga

#### **Director: Communications and Advancement**

Dr L Jacobs

#### **Director: Equity and Institutional Culture**

Dr C Kelly

#### **Director: Finance**

Mr G Erasmus

#### **Director: People and Culture**

Ms S Robertson

#### **Director: Information and Technology Services**

Ms N Ripley

#### **Director: Institutional Research Planning and Quality Promotions**

Dr R Nnadozie

#### **Director: Division of Global Engagement**

Ms O Quinlan

#### **Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor**

Ms S Smailes

#### **Director: Division of Student Services & Development**

Dr P Tondi

#### **Director: Library Services**

Ms N Danster

### **THE BOARD OF GOVERNORS**

Judge L Mpati (Chancellor, Honorary)

Professor S Mabizela (Vice-Chancellor)

Mr D Neale-May (Honorary)

Mr G de Jager (Honorary)

Mr A Sangqu (Chair) (2022- 2026)

Mr M Faku (2022-2026)

Mr P Harris (2022-2026)

Mr VD Kahla (2022-2026)

Ms P Maurice (2022-2026)

Ms I Mkhize (2022-2026)

Mr R Mkhondo (2023-2027)

Mr C Molusi (2022-2026)

Ms Z Monnagotla (2022- 2026)

Mr K Socikwa (2022-2026)

Mr L Jiya (2022 – 2026)

Ms J Makgalemele (2024-2028)

Mr A Smith (2024-2028)

Ms M Maradzika (2024-2028)

### **Honorary Life Governors**

T Evans

A Gray\*

RD Hamilton

HS Herman

BE Hersov

PG Joubert

C Murray

RA Plumbridge

DB Riley

P Searle

CB Strauss

BS Rayner

G Andrews

M Spicer\*

K Rumble

R Vice

C Southey

M Keeton

V Kahla

### **Emeritus Governors**

S Nkomo

N Nqweni

V Kahla

### **CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY**

Sir Basil Schonland, CBE, MA, PhD, ScD, DSc, LLD, FRS (1951-1962)

PJ du Toit, BA, PhD, DrMedVet, DSc, DVetSc, LLD, FRS (1963-1965)

WJ Busschau, MCom, DPhil, LLD, CA (1966-1976)

I Mackenzie, DSO, MA, LLD, CA(1977-1990)  
 GWH Relly, MA, LLD (1991-1998)  
 Professor GJ Gerwel, BA (Hons), Lic. Germ. Phil,  
 DLitt. et Phil. (Brussels), LLD (1999-2012)  
 The Honourable Justice Lex Mpati, BA, LLB  
 (Rhodes) (2013 - current)

## MASTERS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY COLLEGE

Sir John Adamson, CMG, MA, DLitt (1925-1930)  
 CW Bowles, MA, LLD (1931-1937)  
 J Smeath Thomas, DSc, LLD, FIC, FRSSAf (1938-1947)  
 T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1948-1950)

## VICE-CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY

T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1951-1963)  
 J M Hyslop, MA, PhD, DSc, LLD, FRSE (1963-1975)  
 DS Henderson, BSc, MA, PhD, LLD, FCSSA, FRSSA, FRSSAf (1975-1996) \*  
 DR Woods, BSc, DPhil(Oxon), DCL(Oxon), FRSSAf (1996-2006)  
 S Badat, B.Soc.Sc(Hons), Cert.H.E.Sc.&Tech Policy, PhD, D.Phil. (2006-2014)  
 S Mabizela, MSc (UFH), PhD (Pennsylvania State) (2014 -)

## PROFESSORS EMERITI

JL Cattanéo\*, MA, BsLettres Diplôme de l'Ecole Supérieure de Professorat de l'Université de Paris Certificat de Phonétique Française, Chevalier des Palmes Académiques, Professor of French 1958-1985  
 A Noble, BSc, MEd, Professor of Education 1971-1985  
 JK Black\*, CA(SA), Professor of Accounting 1977-1987  
 D Fivaz, MA(HartfordSeminary), PhD(Wits), Professor of African Languages 1972-1988  
 R Mayr, DrPhil(Innsbruck), LRSM, Graduate in Organ and Pianoforte of the Bruckner Conservatory (Linz), Graduate in Conducting of the Mozarteum Academic of Music (Salzburg), Professor of Music & Musicology 1973-1988  
 BR Allanson, PhD(UCT), Dsc(Natal), FRSSAf, SACNS, Professor of Zoology 1963-1987  
 JB McI Daniel, MA(Cantab), PhD, UED(Natal) Professor of Geography 1971-1987

JN Suggit, MA(Oxon), Professor of New Testament Studies 1976 Professor of Divinity 1969-1988  
 TRH Davenport, MA(Unisa), A(Oxon), PhD(UCT), FRHistS, Professor of History 1975-1990  
 CW Cook, BA(UNISA), MA(Cantab), ThD (Princeton), Professor of Ecclesiastical History 1970-1990  
 TMD Kruger, BA(Stell), MA(Pret), DLitt et Phil(UNISA), Professor of Psychology 1974-1989  
 R van der Merwe, BSc(Rhodes), BSc(Hons) (UNISA), PhD(Rhodes), Vice-Principal and. Pro-Vice-Chancellor 1986-1991  
 DR Cooper, BSc(UNISA), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), AFISA, FSLTC, Director, LIRI Technologies 1975-1991  
 TVR Beard, BA(Natal), MA(Oxon), Professor of Political Studies 1977-1991  
 RB Brooks, MFinArt(Rhodes), Professor of Fine Art 1981-1996  
 ID Schäfer, BA, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(Natal), Professor of Law 1985-1997  
 EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS, Professor of Physics 1969-1998\*  
 H Parolis, PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, MPS(SA), FRSSAf Professor of Pharmaceutical Chemistry 1978-1999  
 PG Surtees, MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA), Professor of Accounting 1984-1998  
 P van der Watt, MSc, PhD(UNISA), Professor of Statistics 1971-2000  
 B Potgieter\*, MSc(Farm), DSc (PU for CHO), DTD, MRPharmS, MPS(SA), Professor of Pharmacology 1976-2000  
 F Edwards, BSc(Lond), BD(Edin), DPhil(Oxon), Professor of Contemporary Spirituality 1998-2000  
 D Welz, Dr Phil(Hamburg), DLitt(Pretoria) Professor of German (School of Languages) 1978-2000  
 BP Gaybba, STL, SThDoc(Urban), Professor of Systematic Theology 1989-2002  
 PGR de Villiers, BA(Hons), BTh, Lic.Th, Dth(Stell), DrsTh(Calvijn Stichting), Professor of New Testament Studies 1989-2002  
 MAH Smout, MSc(Natal), MA(Newcastle), PhD(London) Vice-Principal and Pro-Vice-Chancellor 1992-2001  
 M van Wyk Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of English 1979-2002  
 MG Whisson\*, PhD(Cantab), Professor of Anthropology 1978-2002.



- ME Brown, BSc(Hons)(Wits), PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf, Professor of Chemistry 1986-2003
- PL-M Fein, BA(Hons)(Hull), PhD(London), Officier dans l'Ordre des Palmes Académiques, KCM, Professor of French 1988 - 2003 and Head of the School of Languages 1998-2003
- T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE), Professor of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science 1986-2003
- WJ Kötze, BSc(Hons)(Stell), PhD(McGill), Professor of Mathematics 1982-2003
- HR Hepburn, MS(Louisiana State), PhD(Kansas) Professor of Entomology 1990-2003\*
- IA Macdonald\*, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Kansas) Professor of Philosophy 1984-2004
- RE Jacob, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(UCT), Professor of Geology 1990-2005
- J Charteris, BA(Rhodes), MSc(Illinois), Professor of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1982-2005
- JH O'Keefe\*, PhD(London), Professor in the Institute of Water Research 2004-2005
- PA Scott, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Stell), Professor of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1999-2005
- FE Jaques, MA(UCT), PhD(Wits), Licence- eslettres(Dijon), Professor in the School of Languages 2004-2006
- PT Mtuze, BA(Rhodes), MA(UNISA), MTh(Rhodes), PhD(UCT), Professor in the Department of African Languages / Deputy Registrar 1988-2006
- JM Haigh, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(UCT), MRPharmS, MPS(SA) Professor of Pharmacy 200 -2007
- I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS(SA) Professor of Pharmacy 1980-2007
- PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon), FRSC, FRSSAf Professor of Chemistry 1987-2007
- JS Gouws, MA(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon) Professor of English 1989-2007
- CA Lewis, BA(Wales), PhD(Ireland) Professor of Geography 1989-2007
- CR Stones, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), MSAIP, IABMCP, CPsychol, AFBPsS Professor of Psychology 1990-2008
- DJA Edwards, MA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol Professor of Psychology 1985-2008
- PD Rose, BSc(Hons)(UCT), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Biochemistry and Microbiology 1995-2008
- JR Duncan\*, PhD(Natal) Professor of Biochemistry 1999-2008
- GG Antrobus, MSc(Agric)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Economics 1991-2009
- AB Edwards, BA(Rhodes), MSc(UCT), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Psychology 2007-2009
- JK Coetzee, MA, BD, DPhil(Pretoria) Professor of Sociology 1987-2009
- S Daya, BSc(UDW), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(MED) (MEDUNSA) Professor of Pharmacy 2000 - 2009
- PR Irwin, BA(Hons), UED, MEd(Natal), DEd(UNISA) Professor of Education 1988 - 2009
- JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(UCT) Professor of Law 1992 - 2009
- PS Walters, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of English 1982-2009
- V Moller, Lic. Phil, PhD(Zurich) Professor: Institute of Social and Economic Research 1998-2010
- J Prinsloo, BA(Hons)(Durban), StDip(UCT), MA (Lond), PhD(Wits), Professor of Journalism and Media Studies 2009-2010.
- GE Staude, PhD (Rhodes), MBA(Cranfield), UED(Rhodes) Professor in Business Administration /Management and Director Rhodes Investec Business School 2000-2010
- PD Terry, MSc (Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM, Professor of Computer Science 1981-2010
- PCJ Vale, BA(Hons)(Wits), MA, PhD(Leicester), Professor and Nelson Mandela Chair in Politics 2003-2010
- CEJ Botha, PhD(Natal), Professor of Botany 1987-2011
- P Skelton, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Ichthyology in the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology now SAIAB 1996-2011
- CG Whiteley, PhD(Natal), MRSC, CChem Professor in Biochemistry 1979-2011
- LS Wright, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Warwick), DPhil(Oxon) Professor and Director ISEA 1990-2011
- GJEG Berger, BJourn, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), BA(Hons)(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Journalism and Media Studies 1994-2011
- MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf Professor of Chemistry 2002-2012
- JS Marsh, PhD(UCT) Professor of Geology 1992-2012
- PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens) Professor of History 1991-2012
- RCG Palmer, BA(Hons)(Durham), MA, DPhil(Sussex) Professor of Anthropology 2008-2012

H van der Mescht, BA(Hons)(UPE), UED(UNISA), MA, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Education 2008-2012  
 K Rowntree, MSc(Bristol), PhD(Strathclyde) Professor of Geography 1986-2013  
 V Murali, MSc(Madras), MSc(Wales), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics 1988-2013  
 S Radloff, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Statistics 1986-2013  
 RB Mqeke\*, BJuris, LLB(Fort Hare), LLM(Rhodes), LLD(Fort Hare) Professor of Law 1997-2013  
 A Webb, MA, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Economics and Economic History 2004-2013  
 RTV Bernard, PhD(Natal) Professor of Zoology and Entomology 1996-2014  
 DGN Cornwell, MA, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of English 2010-2014  
 VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED(UNISA), PhD(UCT) Professor of English Language and Linguistics 1991-2006, Dean of Students 2007-2014  
 CJ de Wet, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Anthropology 1995-2014  
 CM Mann, BA(Wits), MA(Oxon), MA(London), Hon DLitt (Durban Westville) Professor of Poetry in the ISEA 2000-2014  
 FT Hendricks, BA(UWC), MSocSc, PhD(Uppsala) Professor of Sociology 2002-2015  
 NT Bishop, MA(Cambridge), PhD(Southampton), FRAS Professor of Mathematics 2009–2016  
 AJFK Craig, MSc(UCT), PhD(Natal) Professor of Zoology and Entomology 2004-2016  
 DA Hughes, PhD(Wales), Pr.Sci.Nat. Professor in the Institute for Water Research 2005-2016  
 SE Radloff, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Statistics 2002-2016  
 AP Faure, Dipl (Agric) (US), MA (Economics) (US), DPhil (Economics)(US), PhD (Stell) Professor: Foord Chair in Investments 2003-2016  
 M Neocosmos, BSc(Loughborough), MA (London), Ph.D. (Bradford, UK) Director of UHURU 2013-2017  
 G Fraser Professor PhD (Stellenbosch) in the Department of Economics 2008-2018.  
 AN Hodgson, BSc (Liverpool), PhD (Manchester), DSc (Manchester), FRSSAf Professor in the Department of Zoology and Entomology 2002-2018  
 C Boughy MA(St Andrews), MA(Reading), PGCE(Wales), DPhil(UWC) Professor in CHERTL2008-2018

D Wylie, PhD(Rhodes) Professor in the Department of Literary Studies in English 2011-2018  
 RE Harmer, PhD (UCT) Professor in the Department of Geology from 2015-2019  
 GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE (Rhodes), BED, DLitt et Phil (UNISA) Professor in the Department of Education from 2005-2019  
 P-H Bischoff, BA (Wits), MA (Lancaster), PhD (Manchester) Professor in the Department of Politics and International Studies from 2007-2019  
 J Akhurst, NTSD (Natal), BA, BA (Hons)(UNISA), MA (Counselling Psychology) (Natal), PhD (Psychotherapy)(Rhodes), CPsychol, AFBPsS, SFHEA Professor in the Department of Politics and International Studies from 2015-2019  
 GF Baines BA (UCT), HED (UCT), BA (Hons)(UNISA), MA (Rhodes), PhD (UCT) Professor in the Department of History 2013-2020  
 CD McQuaid PhD (UCT), FRSSAf Professor in the Department of Zoology and Entomology 1991-2020  
 RD Adendorff BA (Hons), HDE (Rhodes), MA (Indiana), PhD (Natal) Professor in the Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 2002-2020  
 KD Helliker PhD (Rhodes) Professor in the Department of Sociology & Industrial Sociology 2007-2021  
 H Nel PhD (NMU) Professor in the Department of Economics and Economic History 1997-2021  
 LN Strelitz PhD (Rhodes) Professor in the Department of Journalism and Media Studies from 1987-2021  
 A Terzoli PhD (Rhodes) Professor in the Department of Computer Science 2004-2021  
 D Wilmot PhD (Rhodes) Professor in the Faculty of Education 1993 - 2021  
 P Clayton PhD (Rhodes) Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Research & Innovation (2008 – 2022), Professor in the Department of Computer Science 1982 – 2008  
 F Ellery PhD (University of Witwatersrand) Professor in the Department of Geography 2008 - 2022  
 D Klopper PhD (University of South Africa) Professor in the Department of Literary Studies in English 2010 - 2022  
 C Palmer PhD (Rhodes University) Professor in the Institute for Water Research 2010 - 2022  
 M Schäfer PhD (Curtin University of Technology) Professor in the Faculty of Education 1997 - 2022

R Simango PhD (University of South Carolina) Professor in the Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 2003 -2022  
 D Thorburn MFA (Rhodes), TPP (New Mexico), Professor in the Department of Fine Art 1982-2023  
 PJ Britz PhD (Rhodes), Professor in the Department of Ichthyology & Fisheries Science 1985-2023  
 JL Jonas PhD (Rhodes), Professor in the Department of Physics and Electronics 1980-2023  
 LA Wilbraham PhD (UCT), Professor in the Department of Psychology 2008-2023  
 KM Ngozo PhD (Rhodes), Professor in the Department of Secondary and Post School Education 2001-2023

#### ASSOCIATE PROFESSORS EMERITI

FL Coleman, PhD (Edin), DipEd.(Glas), FRHS, FR.HistS, Associate Professor of Economic History 1976-1987  
 HW Page, MSc(Natal), Associate Professor of Psychology 1967-1988  
 NC Charton, MA Admin (Pret), BA (UNISA), UED(Rhodes), BTheol(UNISA), Associate Professor of Political Studies 1968-1985  
 MEH Dickerson, MA(Rhodes), LTCL, LRAM(Lond), PGEd, Acad DipEd (Lond) Associate Professor of Drama 1966-1991  
 KS Hunt, BA, UED(Natal), MA(Rhodes), PhD(London), FRHistS, Associate Professor of History 1980-1986, Registrar 1986-1995  
 ME Donaldson, MA(Durham), PhD(Rhodes), Associate Professor of Ecclesiastical History, 1994-1995  
 DJ Eve, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), FRSD, CChem, Associate Professor of Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry 1981-1995  
 JA Nell, DipFineArt(Rhodes), Associate Professor of Fine Art 1982-1995  
 PE Hulley, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Lond), Associate Professor in Entomology 1989-2002  
 RA Lubke, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MSc(Science Education)(Keele), PhD(Ontario), Associate Professor in Botany 1984-2003  
 DA Hendry, MSc(Stell), PhD(UCT), Associate Professor in Microbiology 1985-2003  
 BJ Wilson, BSP(Sask), MSc(Sask), PhD(Purdue), MPS(SA), Associate Professor of Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1995-2003  
 NJH Heideman, BSc(Hons)(UCT), AM, PhD(Washington), Associate Professor in Mathematics 1975-2004

AWV Poole, PhD(Rhodes), Associate Professor of Physics and Electronics 1999-2005  
 PW Court, BSc(Agric)(Stell), HDE(Rhodes), MBA(Wits), PhD(Rhodes) Associate Professor of Management 2003-2007  
 WS Jacobson, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Birmingham) Associate Professor of English 2002-2007  
 WT Futter, MCom, PGDHET(Rhodes), ACIS Associate Professor of Pharmacy 1996-2008  
 JRD Cobbing, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Lancaster) Associate Professor of History 2000-2009  
 MH Burton, MSc(UCT), PhD(Rhodes) Associate Professor of Mathematics (Pure and Applied) 2010  
 RJ Foss, BSc(Natal), MSc(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes), MACM Associate Professor of Computer Science 1999–April 2014  
 D Rosenberg, BCom(Hons), CTA(Rhodes), CA(SA), HDipCoLaw(Wits) Associate Professor of Accounting 2008–2014  
 R Dowse, BPharm, PhD(Rhodes), MPS(SA) Associate Professor of Pharmacy 2004–2015  
 D Thram, PhD(Indiana) Associate Professor of Music and Musicology 2006–2016  
 JC Wells, BA(Colorado College), MA(Yale), PhD(Columbia) Associate Professor of History 2004-2015  
 JCS Lancaster PhD (Rhodes), CA (SA), RA Associate Professor Accounting 2008-2018  
 MD Vermaak BA(Hons)(Stell), DrsPhil(Leyden) Associate Professor Philosophy 1985-2018  
 LN Steenveld, BA (Hons)(Anglia Ruskin University), HDipJourn (Rhodes), PG Cert in Education (Brighton), MA (Rhodes), MA (University of North Carolina-Chapel Hill), PhD (Rhodes) Associate Professor in the School of Journalism & Media Studies 2009-2019  
 MJ Roodt, PhD(Rhodes) Associate Professor Industrial Sociology 2010-2019  
 JA Arendse PhD (Rhodes), MTP(SA), CA(SA) Associate Professor in the Department Accounting 2014-2020  
 GM Watkins PhD (UCT) Associate Professor in the Department of Chemistry 2010-2020  
 MG Hendricks BA, HDE (UCT), BA Hons, MEd (Rhodes), PhD (Witwatersrand) Associate Professor in the Institute for the study of Englishes of Africa (ISEA) 2004-2021  
 P Machanick PhD (University of Cape Town) Associate Professor in the Department of Computer Science 2011 - 2022  
 J Finestone Praeg PhD (Rhodes) Associate Professor in the Department of Drama 2002 - 2022

L Quinn PhD (Rhodes) Associate Professor in the Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning 1994 - 2022

C Remsing PhD (Rhodes) Associate Professor in the Department of Mathematics 1998 - 2022

GR Keeton PhD (Rhodes), Associate Professor in the Department of Economics and Economic History 2009-2023

A Kirkaldy PhD (UCT), Associate Professor in the Department of History 2006-2023

#### **VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED RESEARCH AWARD**

1991 CD McQuaid, PhD(UCT)

1992 RTF Bernard, PhD(Natal)

1993 JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(UCT)

1994 PG Clayton, MSc, PhD(Rhodes)

1995 No award

1996 MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes)

1997 EA Pakhomov, PhD (Moscow)

1998 ME Brown, BSc(Hons)(Wits), PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf Senior Award

1998 CJ de Wet, MA(Stell), MSt(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award

1998 EL Nel, BA(Hons), HDE(Rhodes), MA (Wits), PhD (Rhodes) Research Award

1999 HR Hepburn, MS (Louisiana State), PhD(Kansas), FRSSAf Senior Award

1999 M van W Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award

1999 BJ Clark, BA, LLB(Rhodes), LLM(Cantab)Research Award

1999 PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award

2000 JR Duncan, PhD(Natal) Senior Award

2000 NP Barker, MSc(Wits), PhD(UCT) Research Award

2001 T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE) Senior Award

2001 PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc (Hons) (UNISA), MSc (Natal), DPhil(Oxon), FRSC, CChem, FRSSAf Senior Award

2001 L Meintjes-van der Walt, BJuris, LLB(UPE), LLM(Rhodes), LLD(Rijksuniversiteit Leiden) Research Award

2002 C McQuaid, PhD(UCT), FRSSAf Senior Award

2002 WHH Sauer, PhD(UPE) Research Award

2003 T Nyokong, PhD(Western Ontario), FRSSAf Senior Award

2003 AJ Booth, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award

2004 VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED(UNISA), PhD (UCT)

2005 SE Radloff, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award

2005 MP Hill, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award

2006 GL Blatch, BSc(Hons)(Natal), PhD(UCT) Senior Award

2006 ML Chithambo, BSc(Malawi), MPhil(Sussex), PhD(Edinburgh) Research Award

2007 I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS(SA) Senior Award

2007 JE Burgess, PhD(Cranfield) Research Award

2008 P Vale, BA(Hons)(Wits), MA, PhD(Leicester) Senior Award

2009 PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award

2009 LS Wright, DPhil(Oxon) Senior Award

2009 R Simbao, BFA(Stell), MWS, MPhil(Toronto), PhD(Harvard) Research Award

2010 A Hodgson, BSc(Liverpool), PhD(Manchester), DSc(Manchester), FRSSAf Senior Award

2010 J Limson, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award

2011 MH Villet, PhD(Wits), PGDHE(Rhodes) Senior Award

2011 PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens) Senior Award

2011 S Vice, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Rhodes), PhD(Reading) Research Award

2012 D Hughes, PhD(Wales), Pr.Sci.Nat. Senior Award

2013 MP Hill, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award

2013 JD Snowball, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award

2014 CM Shackleton, PhD(Wits) Senior Award

2014 LO Juma, LLB(Nairobi), Dip.Law(Kenya), LLM(Pennsylvania), MA(Notre Dame), LLD(UFH) Senior Award

2014 BVW Irwin, PhD(Rhodes), CISSP, MACM, MIEEE Research Award

2015 C Macleod, BSc(Natal), HDE, BSocSc(Hons), MEd(Psych)(UCT), PhD(Natal) Senior Award

2015 AL Edkins, MSc(Rhodes), MSc Forensic Sci (KCL), PhD(Glasgow) Research Award

2016 H Lotz-Sisitka, BPrimEd (JP) (UPE), BEd, DEd (Stell) Senior Award

2016 D Nkomo, BA(Hons)(UZ), MPhil, PhD(Stell), PGDHE(Rhodes) Research Award

2016 J Coetzee, PhD(Wits) Research Award

2017 RH Kaschula, BA (Hons), LLB, HDE, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award

2017 S Matthews, BA, MA(Pretoria), PhD(Birmingham) Research Award

2017 F Botha, BComLaw, BCom(Hons)(Economics), M Com (Applied Econometrics)(UFS), Research Award  
 2018 CJ Khene, MCom, PhD (Rhodes) Research Award  
 2018 BI Pletschke, PhD (UPE) Senior Research Award  
 2019 ML Chithambo, BSc (Malawi), MPhil (Sussex), PhD (Edinburgh) Senior Award  
 2019 G Thondhlana, PhD (Rhodes) Research Award  
 2020 Ayse Özlem Tastan Bishop PhD (Rhodes) Senior Research Award  
 2021 Philani Mashazi PhD (Rhodes) Research Award  
 2021 RB Walker PhD (Rhodes) Senior Research Award  
 2022 I Paterson PhD (Rhodes) Research Award

#### VICE-CHANCELLOR'S BOOK AWARD

2002 JK Coetzee, MA, BD, DPhil(Pretoria)  
 2003 PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens)  
 2004 TW Martin, BSc(Hons)(Adelaide), BA(Hons)(Adelaide), PhD(UNSW)  
 2005 P Vale, BA(Hons)(Wits), MA, PhD(Leicester)  
 2006 PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens)  
 2007 BL Schmahmann, BFA, BA(Hons), MA, PhD(Wits)  
 2008 D Wylie, PhD(Rhodes)  
 2009 L Praeg, BA, MA, PhD(Stell)  
 2010 A Krueger, PhD(Rhodes)  
 2011 HJ Wasserman, BA(Hons), BJourn(Hons), MA, D.Litt.(Stell)  
 2012 CI Macleod, BSc(Natal), HDE, BSocSci(Hons), Med(Psych)(UCT), PhD(Natal)  
 2013 PC Henderson, MA(Wits), PhD(UCT)  
 2014 L Praeg, BA, MA, PhD(Stell), MEd(Rhodes)  
 2015 AC Garman, BA(Wits), MA(UKZN), PhD(Wits)  
 2017 GF Baines, BA, HED(UCT), BA(Hons)(UNISA), MA(Rhodes), PhD(UCT)  
 2018...  
 2019 S Naidu, MA (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)  
 2020 S Rowaldt Shell PhD (UCT)  
 2021 B Nyoka PhD (Rhodes)  
 2022 S McKenna BA (Natal), HDE (Natal), MA (Stellenbosch), PhD (Rhodes) and C Boughey MA(St Andrews), MA(Reading), PGCE(Wales), DPhil(UWC)

#### VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED TEACHING AWARD

1991 EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS  
 1992 PD Terry, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM  
 1993 GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE(Rhodes), BEd, DLitt et Phil(UNISA), Couns.Psychol  
 1994 PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon)  
 1995 No award  
 1996 H van der Mescht, BA(Hons)(UPE), UED (UNISA), MA, PhD(Rhodes)  
 PS Walters, BA(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)  
 1997 S Sparrus, BA(SocWork)(Witwatersrand), BSocSc (Hons)(UNISA), MSocSc, MA(I-O Psych)(UCT)  
 1998 T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE)  
 1999 DJA Edwards, BA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol.  
 2000 S Daya, BSc (UDW), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (MEDUNSA)  
 2000 GE Gordon, BA(Hons)(Natal), MA(CNAA, Great Britain)  
 2001 M Lester\*, BCom, CTA(Rhodes), HDipTax (Wits), CA(SA)  
 2002 P Clayton, PHD(Rhodes), FICS, MCSSA  
 2002 L Vincent, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon)  
 2003 GG Antrobus, MSc(Agric)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes)  
 2003 RC Fox, PhD(Strathclyde)  
 2004 CEJ Botha, PhD(Natal)  
 2004 TL Amos, BSocSc(Hons)(Economics), MSocSc(Rhodes)  
 2005 MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes)  
 2006 L Praeg, PhD(Stell)  
 2007 DA Sewry, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), FICSIT, MCSSA, MACM, MAIS  
 2007 CZ Tsampiras, BA(Hons) (Rhodes), MA(London)  
 2008 H Lotz-Sisitka, BPrimEd(JP)(UPE), BEd, DEd(Stell)  
 2008 RH Kaschula, LLB, BA(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)  
 2009 KW Maree, MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA) Senior Award  
 2009 MJR Boswell, BSocSc(Hons), MSocSc(UCT), PhD(VU Amsterdam)  
 2010 J Finestone-Praeg, MA(Rhodes)  
 2010 J Gambiza, PhD (Zimbabwe)  
 2011 AC Garman, BA(Wits), MA(UKZN), PhD(Wits) Senior Award  
 2011 DA Seddon, MA(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab)  
 2012 JD Snowball, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award

2012 L Raubenheimer, PhD(UFS)  
 2013 U Weber, Staatsexamen I (Bonn) Senior Award  
 2013 A Todd, MSc(Rhodes)  
 2014 ED Goosen, BSc(Hons)(UOFS), MSc(Weizmann Institute), PhD(UOFS), HDE(UPE) Senior Award  
 2014 KJ Barnard, BCompt(UNISA), MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA)  
 2015 C Foxcroft, BMus(UCT), UPLM(UNISA), Kunstlerische Ausbildung, Kammermusikdiplom, Konzertexamen (Hochschule für Musik und Theater, Hannover, Germany) Senior Award  
 2015 JA Williams, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), HDE(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab)  
 2015 T Poole, BFA, MFA(Rhodes)  
 2016 G Thondhlana, PhD (Rhodes)  
 2016 MP Hill, PhD (Rhodes), FRSSAf Senior Award  
 2017 JD Sewry, MSc(Rhodes), HDE(UNISA)  
 2018 K Ellery, BSc (Hons), MSc (Wits), MEd (Higher Ed)( Natal), PhD (Rhodes) Senior Award  
 2018 S Magadla, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Ohio), PhD (Rhodes)  
 2019 CT Upfold, MBA (Rhodes) Senior Award  
 2019 T Maqubela, MSc (West Virginia University)  
 2020 D Fryer Department of Economics (category of more than ten years' experience)  
 2021 K Lobb Department of Chemistry (category of more than ten years' experience)  
 2021 J Cockburn Department of Environmental Science (category of ten or fewer years' experience)  
 2022 Mr J Knoetze, Department of Psychology (Category of more than ten years' experience)  
 2022 Dr N Sibiya, Department of Pharmacy (Category of ten or fewer years' experience)

#### **DISTINGUISHED AWARD FOR COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT**

2008 W Wrench Department of Pharmacy  
 2008 S Srinivas Department of Pharmacy  
 2009 KM Ngozo Department of Education  
 2009 J Sewry Department of Chemistry  
 2010 M Gagayi Sports Administration  
 2011 A Terzoli Department of Computer Science  
 2012 AEM Sutherland Department of Computer Science and Telkom Centre of Excellence  
 2013 MP Hill, JA Coetzee, GD Martin and JM Hill Biological Control Research Group  
 2014 Jongaphambili Sinthemba Group from the Environmental Science Department

(Professor S Shackleton, Dr G Cundill, Mr N Hamer, Mr M Ntshudu, Professor H Lotz-Sisitka)  
 2015 Siyahluma Project (SA Paphitis, L-A Kelland, CI Macleod, RR du Toit)  
 2017 J Akhurst, NTSD (Natal), BA, BA (Hons)(UNISA), MA (Counselling Psychology) (Natal), PhD (Psychotherapy)(Rhodes), CPsychol, AFBPsS, SFHEA Department of Psychology  
 2017 Recreational Fisheries Research Group (W Potts, M Parkinson, A Childs, D Drennan, A Winkler, E Butler, S Mannheim)  
 2018 CG Palmer, PhD (Rhodes)  
 2019 Human Kinetics and Ergonomics Group (Mr A Todd Dr J Davy, Dr B Ryan)  
 2020 M Maponya MSS (Rhodes)  
 2021 RB Walker PhD (Rhodes)  
 2022 ADC Counselling Hub: Professor Megan Campbell, Ms Ngobile Msomi, Dr Duane Booysen  
 Dr Christine Lewis, Ms Mandisa Ndabula

#### **VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED ACHIEVEMENT AWARD**

2019 JL Jonas, PhD (Rhodes)

#### **HONORARY GRADUATES**

##### **1951**

Sir Philip Morris\* LLD  
 Sir Basil FJ Schonland\* LLD  
 Sir Arthur Trueman\* LLD  
 Sir William K. Hancock\* DLitt  
 Lionel Bernard Goldschmidt\* LLD  
 Hendrik Johannes van Eck\* LLD

##### **1952**

Josephine Ethel Wood\* MA

##### **1953**

Sir Ernest Oppenheimer\* LLD  
 Hugh Le May\* LLD

##### **1954**

Rt Revd Archibald Howard Cullen\* DD  
 Davidson Don Tengo Jabavu\* PhD  
 Hon Johannes Hendricus Viljoen\* LLD  
 Hon Percival Carlton Gane\* LLD  
 Arthur Stanley Kidd\* LLD

##### **1955**

Ronald Fairbridge Currey\* LLD

##### **1957**

Rt Hon Viscount Malvern\* LLD  
 Hon Albert vd Sandt Centlivres\* LLD

##### **1958**

Petrus Johann du Toit\* LLD

##### **1959**

Samuel Bonnin Hobson\* LLD

John Edward Holloway\* LLD  
Revd Joseph Benjamin Webb\* DD

**1961**

Alexander Kerr\* LLD  
Zachariah Keodirelang Matthews\* LLD

**1962**

The State President:  
Charles Robberts Swart\* LLD

**1963**

Ernst Gideon Malherbe\* LLD  
Hon Olive Deneys Schreiner\* LLD

**1964**

Thomas Alty\* LLD  
Margaret Livingstone Ballinger\* LLD  
Thomas Bouchier Bowker\* LLD  
Cullen Walter Bowles\* LLD  
Sir Evelyn Dennison Hone\* LLD  
Harry Albert Kendall\* LLD  
John Smeath Thomas\* LLD  
Charles Haynes Wilson\* LLD  
Sir John Douglas Cockcroft\* DSc

**1965**

Percival Robson Kirby\* DLitt  
Harry Frederick Oppenheimer\* LLD  
Very Revd Robert Henry Wishart Shepherd\* DD

**1966**

William John Busschau\* LLD  
Nicolaas Petrus van Wyk Louw\* DLitt  
Alfred William Burton\* LLD  
William James Belt Slater\* LLD  
Most Revd Robert Selby Taylor\* DD  
Revd Abraham Johannes  
van der Merwe\* DD

**1967**

Col John Augustus I  
Agar- Hamilton\* DLitt  
Hon Henry Gluckman\* LLD  
Hon Johannes Nicolas Malan\* LLD  
Frederick John Todd\* LLD  
Mary Agard Pocock\* DSc  
Jacobus Petrus Duminy\* LLD  
Major the Hon Peter Voltelyn  
Graham van der Byl\* LLD  
Adolf Schauder\* DSocS

**1968**

The Hon Mr Justice Oscar  
Hendrik Hoexter\* LLD  
Revd John McDowall\* DD  
Vivian Frederick M Fitzsimons\* DSc  
Charles John Ross-Spencer\* LLD

**1969**

John Frederick Vicars Phillips\* DSc

Revd Cedric Edgar Wilkinson\* DD  
Marjorie Emma McKerron\* LLD  
Sir de Villiers Graaff\* LLD  
Sally Herbert Frankel\* DLitt

**1970**

Monica Wilson\* DLitt  
Ian Douglas MacCrone\* LLD  
Reginald Arthur Jubb\* DSc

**1971**

Marjorie Eileen Doris Courtenary-Latimer\* DPhil  
Hon Edgar H Brookes\* LLD  
Clement Martyn Doke\* DLitt  
Mattheis Uys Krige\* DLitt

**1972**

Alan Paton\* DLitt  
Andries Charles Cilliers\* LLD  
William J Waddell\* DSc

**1973**

The Hon Mr Chief Justice Newton Ogilvie  
Thompson\* LLD  
Richard William Varder\* DSc  
Victor Norton\* DLitt

**1975**

Ian Mackenzie\* LLD  
Thomas Hugh Grocott\* MA

**1976**

Margaret Stuart Fuller\* DSocS  
Charles Sidney Barlow\* LLD  
James Morton Hyslop\* LLD

**1977**

The Hon Mr Justice Johannes Dante Cloete\* LLD  
John Vernon Lockhart Rennie\* LLD  
Rt Revd Alpheus Hamilton Zulu\* DD

**1978**

The Hon Mr Justice Allen Gilmour Jennett\* LLD  
Sir Laurens van der Post\* DLitt  
Frederick Johannes van Wyk\* LLD  
William Hofmeyer Craib\* DSc  
Edgar Donald Mountain\* DSc  
John Douglas Roberts\* LLD

**1979**

Winifred Alice Maxwell\* DLitt  
Hugh James Chapman\* LLD  
Francis John Hewitt\* DSc  
Donald Bell Sole\* LLD

**1980**

The Most Revd Bill Bendyshe Burnett\* DD  
Louis Dubb\* LLD  
Sir Michael Owen Edwardes\* LLD

**1981**

Lucy Buyaphi Mvubelo\* DSocS  
John Hemsworth Osborn Day\* DSc  
Jack Cope\* DLitt

**1982**

Herbert Walter Pahl\* DLitt  
James Beaufort Sutherland\* LLD  
Cuthbert John Skead\* PhD

**1983**

Basil Edward Hersov LLD  
Athol Fugard DLitt  
Joel Mervis\* DLitt

**1984**

John Ashton Chubb\* LLD  
Cornelis Johannes Frederick Human\* LLD  
Denys Graham Kingwill\* LLD

**1985**

Richard Stanley Cooke\* LLD  
Thomas Lodewyk Webb\* DSc  
Ernst van Heerden\* DLitt

**1986**

Norman Stanley Bailey\* DMus  
Es'kia Mphahlele\* DLitt  
Raymond Ackerman LLD

**1987**

Margaret Mary Smith\* LLD  
George Howe Randell\* LLD

**1988**

Cyril Lincoln Sibusiso Nyembezi\* DLitt  
Michael Roberts\* DLitt  
Stanley Gordon Shuttleworth\* DSc  
Julian Ogilvie Thompson LLD

**1989**

Robin Allan Plumbridge LLD  
Theodoor van Wijk\* LLD  
Vernon Siegfried Forbes\* DLitt  
Noel Arthur Francis Williams\* LLD

**1990**

The Hon Mr Chief Justice  
Michael McGregor Corbett\* LLD  
Douglas James Livingstone\* DLitt  
Gwendolen Truda Brock\* LLD  
Helen Suzman\* LLD  
Denis Ian Gough\* DSc

**1991**

Gavin Walter Hamilton Relly\* LLD  
Peter Humphry Greenwood\* DSc  
Leonard Walter Lanham\* DLitt  
Kathryn Freda Jagoe\* PhD

**1992**

Chester Arthur Crocker LLD  
Miriam Toba Dakile MEd  
Brian Robert Allanson DSc  
Peter Malcolm Searle LLD

**1993**

Thomas Rodney Hope Davenport\* DLitt  
Bennett Alexander Jacobson MPha

Nganani Enos John Mabuza\* LLD

**1994**

Auriol Ursula Batten\* PhD  
Frederick Guy Butler\* DLitt  
Govan Archibald Mvunyelina Mbeki\* LLD  
Michael Conway O' Dowd\* LLD

**1995**

Omar Hajee Suliman Ebrahim, JP\* DSocS  
Theocritus Simon Ndziweni Gqubule\* DD  
Alastair James Kerr\* LLD  
Alexander McGregor\* LLD  
Allan William Buchanan Gray\* LLD

**1996**

Frene Noshir Ginwala LLD  
Cecil Edwin Frans Skotnes\* DFA  
Wilhelmus Hendricus Welling\* DSocS

**1997**

Kader Asmal\* LLD  
The Hon Mr Justice Arthur Chaskalson\* LLD  
Derek Scott Henderson\* LLD  
The Most Revd  
Winston Njongonkulu Ndungane DD  
Conrad Barend Strauss DCom  
Pieter Dirk Uys DLitt

**1998**

Aron Bacher LLD  
Alexander Lionel Boraine\* LLD  
Gert Johannes Gerwel\* LLD  
John Kani DLitt  
Anthony O'Reilly LLD

**1999**

John Michael Coetzee DLitt  
Aggrey Zola Klaaste\* DLitt  
Colin Legum\* LLD  
James Martin\* LLD  
Wycliffe Mlungisi Tsotsi\* LLD

**2000**

Richard Alan Charles Cock DMus  
Robin David Hamilton LLD  
Nombasa Nini LLD  
Neville Wallace Zietsman LLD

**2001**

Emeka Anyaoku LLD  
Fikile Charles Bam\* LLD  
André Philippus Brink\* DLitt  
Thelma Muriel Henderson\* LLD  
Donald James Woods\* LLD

**2002**

Randy Bush LLD  
Seamus Heaney\* DLitt  
Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela\* LLD  
George Nicholson DSc

**2003**



Sipho Arthur Mono Badela\* DLitt  
Michael Hartnack\* DLitt  
Ian Cedric Player\* LLD  
Stuart John Saunders LLD  
Gertrude Christina Thomas\* LLD  
Desmond Mpilo Tutu LLD

**2004 (Centenary Year)**

Zisiwe Nosimo Beauty Balindlela LLD  
John Wesley de Gruchy DLitt  
Brian Patrick Gilbertson LLD  
Hugh Sidney Herman LLD  
Alice Maud Krige DLitt  
Zenzi Miriam Makeba \* DMus  
Lex Mpati LLD  
Dikela Billy Ndwebisa\* LLD  
Deryck Marshall Schreuder LLD  
Amartya Kumar Sen LLD  
Charles van Onselen DLitt

**2005**

Vincent Clifford Moran\* DSc  
Navanethem Pillay LLD  
Brian Shepstone Rayner LLD  
Marjorie Morris Scardino LLD

**2006**

Johann Reinder Erlers Lutjeharms\* DSc  
Peter Magubane LLD  
Trevor Andrew Manuel LLD  
Derek Brian Riley LLD

**2007**

Zackie Achmat LLD  
Graca Machel LLD  
Fatima Meer\* D.Litt.  
David Randle Woods LLD

**2008**

William Joseph Kentridge DFA  
Reuel Jethro Khoza LLD  
Pius Nkonzo Langa\* LLD  
Bernard Lewis Fanaroff LLD  
John Pilger D.Litt.  
Jonathan Brian Shapiro LLD

**2009**

Dennis Brutus\* D.Litt.  
Sibongile Khumalo DMus  
Lynette Marais LLD\*  
Issa G Shivji LLD

**2010**

Gordon Mitchell Cragg DSc  
Marlene Dumas LLD  
Abdullah Ibrahim LLD  
Kathleen Margaret Satchwell LLD

**2011**

Tariq Ali D.Litt.  
George Bizos LLD\*

Herbert Kretzmer\* LLD  
Basil Moore LLD  
Joe Thloloe LLD  
Lillian Cingo LLD

**2012**

Michael Noel Bruton DSc  
Geoffrey John de Jager LLD  
Leymah Roberta Gbowee LLD  
Raymond Louw\* D.Litt.  
Epainette M Mbeki\* LLD

**2013**

Carol W Hofmeyr LLD  
Vusi Sydney Mahlasela LLD

**2014**

Sydney Brenner\* DSc  
Nokugcina E Mhlophe D.Litt.  
Neil Turok LLD

**2015**

Saleem Badat LLD  
David Nthubu Koloane\* DFA  
Francie Lund LLD  
Thulisile Madonsela LLD  
Hugh Ramopolo Masekela\* DMus

**2016**

James David Matthews D.Litt.  
Beatrice Mtetwa LLD  
Jeunesse Park LLD  
Imtiaz Ismail Sooliman LLD  
Edward Charles Webster LLD

**2017**

Marguerite Barankitse LLD  
Linton Kwezi Johnson D.Litt.  
Barney Ptyana LLD  
Penny Siopis DFA  
Sheila Sisulu LLD

**2018**

Sindiwe Magona D.Litt.  
Peter Mtuze DLitt  
Andrew Mlangeni LLD\*  
Vishnu Padayachee DEcon  
Yvonne Machaka LLD  
Dikgang Moseneke LLD

**2019**

Chief Oyenike Monica Okundaye DFA  
Pumla Gobodo-Madikizela LLD  
George Ellis LLD  
Glenda Gray LLD  
Ian Scott LLD

**2020**

Mary Maria Burton LLD  
Madosini Manqina\* DMus  
Dr Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka LLD  
Professor Patricia Whitelock LLD

Father Michael Lapsley LLD

**2021**

William McDonald Smith (LLD)

Mary de Haas (LLD)

Advocate Dumisa Buhle Ntsebeza, SC (LLD)

Nontsikelelo Biko (LLD)

Professor Berhanu Abegaz Molla (LLD)

Dr Marguerite Jean Poland (DLITT)

Noxolo Grootboom (DLIT)

Professor Salim Abdool Karim (DSC)

**2022**

Rt Hon Lord Peter Hain Doctor of Laws (LLD)

Makhosazana Xaba Doctor of Laws (LLD)

Ambassador Lindiwe Mabuzza Doctor of Literature (DLitt) (posthumous)

Professor Quarraisha Abdool Karim Doctor of Science (DSc)

Ambassador Thenjiwe Mtintso, Doctor of Laws (LLD)

**2023**

Honourable Chief Justice Raymond Zondo Doctor of Laws (LLD)

Professor Janet Cherry Doctor of Laws (LLD)

Honourable Justice Mbuyiseli Madlanga Doctor of Laws (LLD)

Professor Debra Roberts Doctor of Laws (LLD)

Professor Helen Rees Doctor of Laws (LLD)

Bishop Peter Storey Doctor of Laws (LLD)

\* Asterisk next to the name depicts that the person is deceased

## ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION OF STUDENTS

**Completed** application forms for undergraduate admission to all Faculties should be received by 30 September in the Student Bureau, P O Box 94, Makhanda 6140 for enrolment in the following year. Applications received after the end of September will be considered at the discretion of the Registrar.

*NB late applications will only be considered at the discretion of the Registrar.*

### Admission requirements

The normal admission requirement for any undergraduate degree at Rhodes University is a National Senior Certificate with endorsement for degree studies. In addition, each faculty has its own minimum requirements for admission.

All students intending to register as candidates for degrees must produce their National Senior Certificates or equivalent certificates either before, or as soon as possible after, entering the University. Failure to do so will result in a change in registration status.

**Students who have attended courses at another university** should obtain a transcript and, **if they attended another university in the Republic**, a certificate of good conduct from the university previously attended. Application for exemption for courses completed at another university should be directed to the Student Bureau after acceptance and once final results are available and must be accompanied by brief course outlines.

### Registration

The academic year begins in February. Students are expected to register on the stipulated date in February. Late registrations may be accepted with the approval of the Registrar. However, a late registration fee will be charged.

### Arrangements of curricula

Students must have their curricula approved by the Dean of the Faculty in which they are to study at the beginning of each year. The Dean will advise

on courses and approve curricula on behalf of the Senate.

*Students are responsible for ensuring that there are no timetable clashes in their proposed curricula, not only in the current year but for the remainder of the curriculum.*

### Discontinuing courses

Courses may be dropped with their Deans and Faculty Officers. Courses may not be dropped after the last official day of undergraduate lectures in May (1st semester courses) or October (2nd semester and full year courses).

### Changes of course or Faculty

Undergraduates who wish to change from one course to another must discuss the proposed change with the Dean of the Faculty concerned or representative and, if a change of Faculty is involved, with the Dean of the Faculty to which they wish to transfer.

### Closing dates for change of course

The final closing date for changes of courses is the End of the 2nd week of each semester **for semester courses**. However, a student may discontinue a course after this date with the permission of the Dean.

*Students may not register for a full year course after the end of the 2nd week of the first semester.*

### Full-time students

A full-time undergraduate student is a student who either is engaged in full-time university studies or is following a full curriculum. A full-time postgraduate student is a student who is engaged full-time in university studies.

### Part-time students registered for a degree, diploma or certificate

A part-time undergraduate student is a student who is not engaged full-time in university studies and is not following a full curriculum. A part-time

postgraduate student is a student who is not engaged full-time in university studies.

### **Part-time students not registered for a degree or diploma:**

**Occasional Students** are those not registered for a degree or diploma, but who are following a course recognised towards a degree or diploma. See the Fees and Charges section

1. Occasional students must be in possession of a National Senior Certificate, and will be admitted to a course only if the Head of Department is satisfied that they will profit by the lectures for the course.
2. Occasional students must follow courses in full, which implies attending all classes, completing all class work and assignments, and writing examinations. They must earn Duly Performed (DP) certificates before being permitted to write the final examinations in any course.
3. The University reserves the right to ask occasional students to leave if their work or conduct is unsatisfactory at any time.

***NB The Registrar's approval is required before an occasional student who does not intend to take a degree, diploma or certificate may be admitted.***

**Casual Students** are those who take a course for interest, and will only be admitted to a course if:

1. the Head of the Department concerned is prepared to accept them; and
2. the Department's facilities will not be overextended as a result; and
3. the Registrar's approval is obtained.

Such students must comply with the appropriate DP requirements, but may not write examinations for the purpose of obtaining recognition towards any degree, certificate or diploma without converting their status and paying the requisite fee.

Casual students wishing to convert their status must comply with the admission criteria and rules of the University. The University reserves the right to ask casual students to leave if their work or conduct is unsatisfactory at any time.

### **Admission to Residence**

Only full-time students are admitted to residence.

### **Additional requirements for specific courses** **Mathematics**

For admission to the Faculty of Science, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 4 for Mathematics in the NSC or an equivalent pass. Except with the permission of Senate a candidate may not take Chemistry 1, Computer Science 1, Mathematics 1, Physics 1, without the level 4 pass in the NSC. See Rule S.4 in the Faculty of Science. Mathematics Literacy is not accepted.

For admission to the Accounting curriculum in the Faculty of Commerce, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 4 pass for Mathematics in the NSC. Mathematics Literacy is not accepted.

For admission to the Bachelor of Business Science degree in the Faculty of Commerce, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 6 pass for Mathematics in the NSC.

For admission to the Bachelor of Science (Inf Sys) degree in the Faculty of Science, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 6 pass for Mathematics in the NSC.

For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a candidate must have obtained at Least level 4 pass in the NSC. Mathematics Literacy is not accepted.

For admission to the Faculty of Education, a candidate must fulfil the general rules for admission to the first degree. Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have obtained at least an Admissions Points Score (APS) in Mathematics of 3 (40-49%) or higher in the NSC or an APS of 4 (50-59%) or above for Mathematics Literacy and a APS of 4 or above for a Home Language and an APS of 4 or above for a First Additional Language in the NSC. One of the languages must be English Home Language or English First Additional Language.

### **Biology or Physical Science**

For admission to the Faculty of Science, candidates for the BSc degree must have obtained at least a Level 4 in either Biology or Physical Science. This is not required of candidates for the BSc (InfSys) degrees. For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a candidate must have obtained at least level 4 pass in Mathematics and a level 4 pass in Physical Science and Biology

### **Other Languages**

French 1, German 1 (Foreign Language), Latin 1 or Greek 1, may be taken without a pass in the language in question. Students who achieve a sufficiently high standard in the examination may be allowed to go on to the second course in the language.

See the relevant Faculty of Humanities Rules.

### **DP (Duly Performed) certificates**

See Rule G.19 in the General Rules.

### **Advice to students**

Students requiring advice on academic problems should consult either the relevant Dean of the Faculty or the Head of Department concerned. For advice on non-academic matters, they should consult the Director of Student Affairs, House Wardens, or the Student Bureau. The Career Centre and Counselling Centre are available for relevant advice.

### **Examination results**

The results of June and November examinations are released as soon as they are available. The results will not be posted or given telephonically by the Student Bureau Staff, but will be available on the Rhodes University Web Page, <http://www.ru.ac.za>, under the heading ROSS (Rhodes Online Student Services); or by SMS (register for this service online at <http://ross.ru.ac.za/sms/>).

### **Masters and Doctoral candidates**

Information for Masters and Doctoral candidates is available in the Higher Degrees Guide on the Rhodes University Web Page, <https://www.ru.ac.za/registrar/forms/>

# GENERAL RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

The conditions under which the University grants degrees, diplomas and certificates are laid down in the Rhodes University Statute, the Higher Education Act (No 101, 1997) and these rules are framed in terms of Section 32 of the Higher Education Act (No 101, 1997) as amended.

**Credits:** The Higher Education Qualifications Sub-Framework (HEQSF) requires credits as a measure of the volume of learning required for a qualification. The credit rating system rates 10 notional study hours as equivalent to one credit. A minimum credit-load of 120 credits per academic year is required for Bachelor's degrees and 180 credits per academic year for Master's degrees and Doctorates. In this Calendar the term "credit" is not always used in its strict sense.

## ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION

### G.1

A candidate for a degree, diploma or certificate in any Faculty must comply with the conditions and meet the selection criteria set out in the University's admissions policy. The Council has the right to refuse admission to any student should it consider it to be in the interests of the University to do so.

### G.2

Students are required, on admission, to register by signing the official registration form. Students must also pay the prescribed tuition fee. They must renew their registration and pay the prescribed fee annually as long as they continue to be students of the University; provided that students may be refused permission to renew their registration for any year of study if they fail to satisfy the prescribed minimum requirements of study. (See Rule G.7.)

### G.3

Candidates for a degree in any Faculty must be registered as matriculated students of the University and for this purpose must be in possession of a National Senior Certificate (NSC)

or its equivalent with endorsement for degree studies. In addition, applicants for admission may be required to have attained such minimum standard in a specified subject or subjects at the NSC or equivalent examination, or such other qualifications as may be prescribed. Students will neither be permitted to register after the first year of study nor graduate until a copy of the National Senior Certificate or international equivalent is received.

### G.4

The Senate may refuse to admit any student to a post-graduate course of study in any subject if the standard of proficiency which the student has previously attained is not, in the opinion of the Senate, sufficiently high.

### G.5

Registered students of another higher education institution who desire to be admitted to the University must produce a certificate, satisfactory to the Senate, as to their conduct at the other higher education institution.

### G.6

**6.1** Students may not be admitted to any course in any subject until their curricula have been approved by the Senate.

**6.2** Such curricula may be modified only with the permission of the Senate.

**NB** *Students are responsible for ensuring that there are no timetable clashes in their proposed curriculae for each year of their registration. In selecting proposed majors, students should ensure that these subjects do not clash (including checking the timetable for subsequent years of these subjects).*

*In the rules which follow, unless otherwise specified or clear from the context, "course" means a course that extends over one academic year. Two half-courses or two semester courses are deemed to be equivalent to one course. "Qualifying courses"*

*means courses accepted as credits towards a degree, diploma or certificate.*

**G.7**

The Senate may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to benefit from further study, or if they have failed;

**7.1** at the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete two-year courses or four semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 60 NQF credits towards the degree:

*and in the Faculties of Education and Humanities and Science*

**7.2** at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete four year courses or eight semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 120 NQF credits towards the degree; or

**7.3** at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete six-year courses or twelve semester courses which is equivalent to 180 NQF credits towards the degree, at least 60 credits of which should be at least NQF level 6.:

*and in the Faculty of Science*

**7.4** ...

**7.5** ...

**7.6** at the end of every Calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses for which they had been registered with the Dean's approval; In the cases of the Faculties of Education, Science, Humanities, Commerce, Pharmacy and Law

**7.7** to complete the undergraduate degree within a period of five years for a 360-credit qualification; and to complete the undergraduate degree within six years for a 480-credit qualification.

*and in the Faculty of Commerce*

as full-time candidates for the BAcc, BBusSc, BCom or BEcon degrees:

**7.8** at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained five year courses or ten semester courses;

or a combination which is equivalent to 150 NQF credits towards the degree; or

**7.9** at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained seven year courses or fourteen semester courses, or a combination which is equivalent to 210 NQF credits towards the degree; 60 credits of which should be at least at NQF level 6:

**7.10** at the end of every Calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses for which they had been registered with the Dean's approval;

**7.11** ...

*and for students enrolled on the Commerce, Humanities or Science Extended Studies Programmes*

**7.12** at the end of the first year of the extended programme, normally to have obtained all courses and to have achieved an average of 60% in the courses read in order to qualify for entry into mainstream courses in the following year.

*and in the Faculty of Pharmacy*

**7.13** in the year of entry into the second year of the BPharm curriculum at this or any other university to complete second year courses to the value of 60 NQF credits, plus all courses of the first year curriculum;

**7.14** in the subsequent years of full time attendance at this or any other university to complete courses to the value of 70 NQF credits per year;

*and in the Faculty of Law*

**7.15.1** students in any year of study of the LLB programme will be excluded if:

**7.15.1.1** they are registered for five or more courses in an academic year, and they fail 65% or more of the courses registered for in that year, irrespective of the number of credits thus far obtained towards the degree; or

**7.15.1.2** they do not fulfil the terms of academic probation.

**G.8**

The Senate may, after the mid-year examinations in any year, cancel students' registrations for the remainder of that year, and may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if the students are unable to satisfy, by the end of the

year, the minimum requirements of study prescribed by the Faculty in which they are registered, and if they are not completing, will not be registered for more than one course in the semester following the mid-year examinations.

**G.9**

Except with the special permission of the Senate, a student who has been excluded on account of failure to satisfy the minimum requirements of study prescribed for in one Faculty may not be admitted to any other Faculty of the University.

*NB Periods of attendance and examination results at another university are taken into account in the same manner as periods of attendance and examination results at this University.*

**G.10**

A student may not be registered for more than one degree or diploma at the same time, or be registered as a student of another university, without the permission of the Senate.

**ATTENDANCE AND WORK**

**G.11**

A candidate for a degree or a diploma must attend the courses, perform the work and pass the examinations which are prescribed for that degree or diploma.

**G.12**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, students are not deemed to have attended the University in any academic year or any semester unless they have attended for at least three-quarters of that year or that semester.

*For the purposes of these rules "academic year" and "semester" are defined in the University Calendar.*

**G.13**

A candidate who is not a full-time student may be required to devote to the curriculum for a degree, diploma or certificate at least one year more than the normal period specified in these rules. The distribution of the courses in the curriculum of a part-time candidate is subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty concerned.

**COMPLETION OF COURSES**

**G.14**

Candidates for a degree, diploma or certificate must comply with all the requirements which Senate has approved for each subject taken by them for that degree, diploma or certificate.

**G.15**

An undergraduate course in any subject consists of not less than sixty separate class meetings in any year, and half-courses and semester courses consist of not less than thirty separate class meetings in any year.

**G.16**

Except as provided for in terms of Rules G.44 to G.48 or in terms of Faculty Rules, a candidate obtains credit for a course on meeting the requirements set for that course.

**G.17**

Except where otherwise provided in Faculty rules, or where in exceptional circumstances Senate waives this rule, students may not

**17.1** enter upon the work of the second or subsequent course in any subject unless they have obtained credit for the preceding course in the subject; or

**17.2** take examinations in more than one course in the same subject in a single semester.

**or**

**17.3** a student may normally neither register nor sit for an examination at two different levels of the same subject in the same academic year.

**G.18**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student must have obtained a minimum number of credits in first year courses, as specified in Faculty Rules, before entering on the second course of any subject.

**ADMISSION TO EXAMINATIONS**

**G.19**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student may not be admitted to an examination in any course unless the Head of the Department concerned has certified that the student has satisfactorily attended the class meetings for the course under examination, and has satisfactorily performed the work of the class.



**19.1** Certification of attendance and performance under Rule G.19 (usually known as “the issue of Duly Performed (DP) certificates”) will be notified by Heads of Departments to the Registrar after the last class meeting for the course, but before the commencement of exams.

**19.2** Students failing to present themselves at the June examinations in any non-semesterised course in which any examination is set, without a medical certificate or other reason acceptable to the Senate, shall not qualify for a DP certificate for that course. Exemption from this rule may be granted by the Senate to a department which applies therefore.

**19.3** In exceptional circumstances the Board of the Faculty, after consultation with the Head of the Department concerned, may reinstate a student’s previously withdrawn DP Certificate.

**19.4** The following exceptions to Rule G.19 have been approved by the Senate:

**19.4.1** ...

**19.4.2** Candidates for the BA, BJourn, BCom, BEcon, BSc, BSc(InfSys) or BSocSc degree who have completed the final courses of their major subjects, have attended the university for three years, have not more than two subsidiary courses or four subsidiary semester courses outstanding for the degree, and have left the University, may write the examinations in such subsidiary courses without re-attaining DP certificates; provided that, where practical work is required, evidence must be submitted to the satisfaction of the Head of Department concerned that the candidate has received adequate practical training.

## **G.20**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, certification in terms of Rule G.19 will be valid only for the examination of the year in which it is issued.

**20.1** The following exceptions to Rule G.20 have been approved by the Senate, provided the student has written all exams required for the course in the year in which the DP certificate being extended, was earned:

**20.1.1** A candidate granted a non-continuing pass may rewrite at a subsequent examination in order to obtain a continuing pass, provided that no special

examination has to be set for the purpose. Students who have obtained a non-continuing pass in a course may enter, by application to the Dean, for examination in that course without earning a new DP certificate, provided they already had a DP certificate.

**20.1.2** With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, the validity of the DP certificate of a student who is in attendance at the University may be extended by one year. In the Faculty of Commerce such extension will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the F1 level and students would normally be required to write and perform satisfactorily in class tests and in the June examinations. An application for such an extension must normally be made within two weeks of the start of the course. [Applications must be made via the Rhodes Online Student Service (ROSS)].

**20.1.3** In the case of students who do not return to the University in any year, the validity of their DP certificates for courses in which they failed in the previous year may be extended by one year by the Dean of the Faculty after consultation with the Head of the Department concerned. In the Faculty of Commerce such extensions will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the F1 level. Extension in terms of this rule will not be granted, however, to students who are refused readmission in terms of Rule G.7.

An application for such an extension must normally be made within two weeks of the start of the course.

**20.1.4** Candidates registered in Faculties other than the Law Faculty who have achieved an aggregate pass (ACR) in Legal Theory 1, 2 or 3 on a previous year of study, and who achieved a result of 40% or more for any of the component semester course(s) failed in Legal Theory 1,2, or 3, may at any subsequent examination rewrite any such component semester course failed in order to obtain credit towards the LLB degree, provided that no special examinations has to be set for this purpose. Candidates must register in the Faculty for the component Legal Theory semester in terms of this rule at the beginning of the academic year. The coursework component will not be included in calculating the final result. Students registered for

the LLB degree in the Law Faculty may not rely on this rule.

#### **G.21**

A student, before being admitted to an examination or degree, diploma or certificate shall pay such fees as may be prescribed in each case.

#### **G.22**

The Council may refuse to admit to an examination or to a degree, diploma or certificate a student who has failed to pay the required fees due to the University or to an affiliated institute.

### **EXAMINERS**

#### **G.23**

An examination of the University qualifying in any subject for a degree, diploma or certificate shall be conducted by at least two examiners, of whom at least one shall be an examiner who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination; provided that, in the case of an examination qualifying in a first or second year course, or any examination qualifying for a diploma or certificate, the Senate may waive the requirement that one of the examiners shall be a person who has not been connected with the preparation of the student for that examination.

**23.1** Under Rule G.23 the University will appoint as one of the examiners for the examinations set out below a person who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination, and who is not in receipt of any remuneration other than examiner's fees from the University or from an affiliated institute:

**23.1.1** All written examinations in final courses of degree and diploma subjects;

**23.1.2** Practical examinations in final courses of degree subjects where required by departments;

**23.1.3** All method courses for the PGCE;

**23.1.4** ...

#### **G.24**

The Heads of the University Departments in which the subjects under examination are taught shall, *ex officio*, be responsible for the examination processes in their respective departments.

### **EXAMINATIONS**

#### **G.25**

The Senate shall be the final authority in deciding the result of an examination.

#### **G.26**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the results of examinations for all courses shall be published under seven heads, four for successful candidates namely, class 1, class 2 (divisions A and B) and class 3, and three for unsuccessful candidates, namely, Failure 1, Failure 2 and Failure 3, in all cases in decreasing order of marks according to the marks obtained by the candidates.

#### **G.27**

Senate does not permit re-marking or re-examination of scripts. However, students in all Faculties may request a re-scrutiny of their mid-year and end-of-year scripts, provided their academic record is not withheld. Re-scrutiny entails checking that (i) all questions have been marked and (ii) marks have been added up and transcribed correctly. Such a request should be made through the Office of Registrar within two weeks of the commencement of the University term following the examination concerned.

#### **G.28.1**

Senate will permit students in all Faculties to view their mid-year scripts. However, students in all Faculties may only view their end-of-year scripts provided that their academic record is not withheld. Applications in this respect must be made through the relevant Head of Department and can be made at any stage of the academic year.

#### **G.28.2**

Senate will permit students in all Faculties to obtain a copy of their mid-year and end-of-year scripts provided that their academic record is not withheld. Applications in this respect must be made through the Office of the Registrar, accompanied by payment of the prescribed fee, and can be made at any stage of the academic year.

#### **G.29**

Applications under Rules G.27 and G.28 in respect of examinations must reach the Registrar accompanied by the prescribed fee within three weeks of the release of results. In exceptional

circumstances Senate may permit relaxation of this rule.

**29.1** The fee under G.27 and under G.28 will be refunded if the re-scrutiny effects a change to the student's advantage in the classification of their results.

**29.2** The result of the re-scrutiny shall supersede the result of the original examination. Thus, a student who applies for a re-scrutiny may be awarded a lower mark and thereby forfeit any advantage (e.g. permission to write a supplementary examination) accruing from the original mark.

### **G.30**

Unless the contrary should appear from the context of these rules, an examination shall consist of such written, oral or other form of test as the Senate may prescribe in each case.

### **G.31**

The examiners may require students to present themselves for *viva voce* questioning, in addition to the tests prescribed by the Senate under Rule G.30.

### **G.32**

The results of an examination written in a subsequent year on an extended DP Certificate shall normally be calculated by taking into account the same component elements, and the same proportions, as those used for the examination for which the certificate was earned.

### **G.33 ...**

### **G.34**

Students who obtain a non-continuing pass and who re-write the examination later than the January/February immediately after the award of the non-continuing pass, shall be placed in the class which reflects the final mark which has been achieved.

### **G.35**

The final marks for students re-writing an examination in terms of G.34 above will be calculated in accordance with Rule G.32.

### **G.36**

Except as may otherwise be prescribed in these rules, ordinary examinations shall be held only at the end of each semester; provided that the ordinary examinations for the degree of Bachelor with

Honours in any subject may also be held before the beginning of the following academic year, as may be decided by the Senate; provided further that a part-time candidate for the degree of Bachelor with Honours may, on completion of two years as a registered candidate, and with the permission of the Senate, write a special examination before the beginning of the following academic year.

**36.1** Ordinary examinations will usually be held during June and November, save that examinations for the BEd (Hons) degree may be held outside of the normally scheduled exam period.

**36.2** The Senate will permit the examinations for the Honours degree to be held before the beginning of the academic year only in exceptional circumstances.

### **G.37**

The ordinary examinations may be extended by holding supplementary examinations.

**37.1** The results of the supplementary examinations shall be calculated by taking into account the same component elements as those used for the ordinary examinations.

**37.2** The conditions under which a candidate may be admitted to supplementary examinations shall be prescribed by the Senate.

**37.2.1** Supplementary examinations are offered at all undergraduate course levels subject to some exceptions (see Departmental and Faculty entries).

**37.2.2** Students who attain a final mark of between 40-49% for the course, subject to some exceptions, qualify to sit the supplementary examination.

**37.2.3 ...**

**37.2.4 ...**

**37.2.5** Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses (or two semester-courses) prescribed for their degree and who have failed the examination in such an outstanding course (or two semester-courses, except in the Faculty of Science – S 24.3) may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course (or two semester-courses).

**37.2.6** Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses prescribed for the BPharm degree and who have failed the examination in such an

outstanding course, may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course.

**37.3** Unless otherwise provided for in Faculty rules, candidates admitted to supplementary examinations in terms of Rule G.37.2 above will, if successful, receive a classified result, in addition to the original mark obtained.

**37.4** In all those subjects offered at a given level as a pair of semester-credit courses, where both semester courses are not obtained, an aggregate of at least 50% in the pair shall be deemed equivalent to a pass in a two-semester aggregate course for that subject.

**37.5** Students who do not obtain a pass in both courses, but who meet the requirements of an aggregated course, will have their academic transcripts amended to show that an aggregated continuing credit (ACR) or aggregated non-continuing credit (NCR) has been achieved in the appropriate course, as the Department may allow.

**37.6** Credit will not be given for an aggregate course in addition to credit for one or more of its semester-course components.

### **G.38**

Special exams will not be granted to any student who fails to write the examination due to having misread the examination timetable, having overslept or for any other reason.

## **AEGROTAT CASES**

### **G.39**

An aegrotat examination may be granted by the Senate to candidates who by reason of illness, duly attested by a medical certificate on the prescribed form, or who for other reason acceptable to Senate have been unable to present themselves at an ordinary examination in any subject.

**39.1** Applications must be made within one week of the date of the examination missed.

**39.2** *Other reason* above would include the serious illness or death of a near relative at the actual time of the examination. In such a case evidence of the circumstances should be attached in support of the application.

*[Applications must be made via the Rhodes Online Student Service (ROSS)].*

**39.3** An aegrotat will not be granted for a course in which an aegrotat had been granted and missed for any reason.

**39.4** An aegrotat will not be granted for a course in which a supplementary exam had been granted and missed for any reason.

### **G.40**

Candidates who have been admitted to aegrotat examinations in terms of Rule G.39 but who are unable to write those examinations for similar reasons, may be permitted, if their previous work in that subject is deemed by the Senate to be satisfactory, to proceed to the next course in that subject and, on completing that course to be given credit for both courses. Alternatively, the Senate may, subject to Rule G.39 above being complied with admit such candidates to subsequent aegrotat examinations. Such subsequent examinations, which may be in written or oral form are normally required to be held before the end of the following semester.

### **G.41**

In cases where a student has already completed part of an examination, the Dean of the Faculty will consult with the internal examiners and the Head of the Department concerned before deciding whether or not to approve the aegrotat examination. In such cases the Dean shall have the power

**41.1.1** not to award an aegrotat; or,

**41.1.2** ...

**41.1.3** to award an aegrotat for the assessment/examination which is an assessment on its own and that was not attempted.

**41.2** An aegrotat examination will not be granted to candidates who have entered the examination hall and seen any one of the papers or practicals of an examination and who subsequently report that they were ill at the time of the examination.

### **G.42**

An aegrotat examination will not be granted to a candidate who is unfit to write as a result of having taken drugs or alcohol stimulants.

### **G.43**

No application for aegrotat examinations will be considered unless DP certificates have been obtained in the courses concerned.

## EXEMPTIONS

### G.44

The Senate may accept, as part of the attendance of a student of the University qualifying for admission to a degree of Bachelor, periods of attendance as a registered matriculated student at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for the purpose, or accept examinations passed in any subject at such university or institution, or passed by an external student of the University of South Africa, or other examinations recognised by the Senate for the purpose, as granting exemption from examinations of the University in such subject.

### G.45

Students exempted in terms of Rule G.44 shall not be admitted to the degree of Bachelor unless:

**45.1** they have attended approved courses at the University:

**45.1.1** in the case of the Faculties of Humanities, or of Science, or of Commerce, or of Pharmacy, for at least two academic years;

**45.1.2** in the case of the Faculty of Law for at least the final two years; and,

**45.1.3** in the case of the Faculty of Education for at least the final year;

**45.2** their periods of attendance at such recognised university or institution, and at the University, are together not less than the complete period ordinarily prescribed for the degree;

**45.3** they have passed such examinations of the University as the Senate may prescribe;

**45.4** they have paid such fees as the Council may prescribe;

**45.5** they have complied with any other requirements for the degree.

### G.46

The following rules have been framed in respect of students who claim credit towards a degree of Rhodes University for subjects passed at another university -

**46.1** Credit for courses passed at another university subsequent to registration at Rhodes University is subject to approval by Senate; provided that:

**46.1.1** candidates for the BCom and BEcon degrees who have completed their major subjects may be granted credit for not more than three outstanding courses passed at other universities;

**46.2** Credit will not be given for more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree at Rhodes University;

**46.3** Candidates who have registered for a degree at Rhodes University for at least three years, who have completed at least one of their major subjects for the degree, and who leave the University, may be given credit for at most one final course of a major subject passed at another university, provided that the Head of the Department at Rhodes University is satisfied that the standard of the other university in the course concerned is equivalent to that of Rhodes University in that course;

### G.47

Graduates in the Faculties of Humanities, Science, Commerce, or Pharmacy of the University who wish to proceed to a Bachelor's degree in another of these Faculties and who seek exemptions towards the degree in the second Faculty on the ground of having already passed in courses common to both Faculties are governed by these rules:

**47.1** Exemption may be given by the Senate in not more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree in the second Faculty.

**47.2** Exemption may be given only for first courses in any subject (the year in which such courses are required to be taken being immaterial), except in the case of three course subjects, in which exemption may be given for the first and second courses.

**47.3** Any course passed for a degree in one Faculty, for which exemption is not granted for the degree in the second Faculty, may not be taken again as a course for the degree in the second Faculty.

**47.4** The minimum period of attendance as a student in the second Faculty shall be two years.

### G.48

In the case of a student holding the degree of Bachelor of Arts who wishes to proceed to the degree of Bachelor of Music or the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art the following rules apply:

**48.1** The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Humanities, may grant exemption from not more than two years' work towards the degree of Bachelor of Music to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Music as a major subject.

**48.2** The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Humanities, may grant exemption from not more than two years work towards the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Fine Art Studies as a major subject.

## **AD EUNDEM GRADUM STUDENTS**

### **G.49**

Persons admitted to a qualification under this rule must have a minimum of a National Senior Certificate/matric or recognised equivalent. Persons who have graduated at another university who demonstrate that they have met the exit level outcomes, or who are able to give a portfolio of satisfactory evidence that demonstrates informal learning and mastery of competencies at the exit level of the qualifications at the NQF level(s) required for admission to the degree—may be admitted as students to courses of special study and research at the University, depending on their suitability for admission. Such persons may, on completion of such courses, be admitted to a degree of Master; provided that they before being so admitted:

**49.1** have paid such fees as may be prescribed;

**49.2** have completed the work for the degree, as a registered student of the University, for the prescribed period of the degree;

**49.3** have attended at the University such courses as may be prescribed;

**49.4** have undertaken research upon a subject approved by the Senate;

**49.5** have presented a satisfactory report, dissertation or thesis upon the research undertaken; and

**49.6** have complied with such further conditions as may be prescribed by the Senate.

*The template as approved by Senate must be populated as part of the application process.*

## **DEGREE OF MASTER (ALL FACULTIES)**

### **G.50**

Subject to the provisions of Rule G.49 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Master in the Faculty of Humanities (except the degree of Master of Music and Master of Fine Art), or of Science, or of Commerce, until at least two years after admission to the degree of Bachelor or one year after admission to the degree of Bachelor with Honours in such Faculty, or, in the case of the degrees of Master of Education by thesis, Master of Fine Art, Master of Laws and Master of Music, until at least one year after admission to the degree of Bachelor. Special entry criteria for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and thesis are listed in the Faculty of Education Rules. Except with the permission of Senate a candidate for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and thesis will be allowed a maximum of three years' registration in which to fulfil all requirements for the degree.

**50.1** Candidates for Master's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may apply up to 1 May and register by 1 June.

**50.2** Normally only students holding an honours degree, or equivalent, will be accepted as candidates for Masters degrees. Students holding an ordinary degree will be accepted only in exceptional cases.

**50.3** Only students who have been admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Laws and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Laws.

**50.4** Only students who have been admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will

be admitted as candidates for the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Pharmacy.

**50.5** Candidates who have obtained the BPharm degree may not present their thesis for a Master's degree until at least 18 months after the date of registration for the MSc or MPharm degree.

**G.51**

No persons shall be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master unless they have obtained the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned.

**G.52**

Candidates for the degree shall be registered for and attend an approved course of study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule G.50: provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

**52.1** When a candidate's subject of research has been approved, such approval will remain in force so long as the annual registration fee is paid.

**G.53**

The Faculty shall appoint a supervisor, or supervisors, to advise a candidate. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purpose of this Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a faculty of the University are regarded as members of staff. Candidates may be permitted to register in an associated Research Institute without requiring a co-supervisor in a related academic department, but the research proposal must be approved by the Dean after considering a recommendation from a member of a cognate department. At least one of the supervisors for such candidates must be a member of the relevant Faculty Board.

**53.1** The Senate has decided that candidates for the degree of Master who are exempted from attendance under Rule G.52 will be required to report in person to their supervisors from time to time as directed by the latter, and that the time in which such a candidate may qualify for the award of the degree will be extended by one year (i.e. they must be registered candidates for the degree for at

least two years); provided that Senate may waive the additional year in the case of candidates who are conducting full-time research under approved conditions.

**G.54**

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty concerned, convert the registration of a candidate for the Master's degree by thesis to registration for the PhD degree if they consider that the work is of a standard normally expected of a doctoral student.

**G.55**

At least two months before the candidates present their theses, they shall give notice on ROSS to the Registrar of their intention to do so.

**55.1** Candidates must submit their theses no later than the due date published in the Calendar Diary.

**G.56**

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted, and the number of copies required.

**56.1** Such copies, when submitted, shall become the property of the University.

**56.2** The Senate requires a digital submission of the thesis uploaded on ROSS in the first instance, and suitably bound copies of the thesis where an examiner so indicates, to be presented for examination. The Registrar will inform the student of the exact number of copies required.

**56.3** After the examination process has been completed, the candidate is required to submit an electronic version of the final corrected thesis in PDF format for deposit in the University's digital repository, together with the Final Thesis Submission Form signed by the candidate and supervisor to the Registrar's Division. Candidates and supervisors who would like a digital holding period of between 1 and 2 years before deposit in the digital repository, or a full embargo of the thesis, must request this in the Final Thesis Submission Form. The library offers assistance and training to post-graduate students for PDF conversion.

**G.57**

A thesis shall be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidates as to the extent to which

it represents their own work. This declaration must be approved by the supervisor.

**G.58**

If, at the date of its presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, and to make additional copies of it, in whole or in part from time to time, for the purposes of research. The University may, for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

**G.59**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may not present themselves for the examination for the degree more than twice in the same subject.

**59.1** An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Senate may, on the advice of the examiners invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

**G.60**

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

**G.61**

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Master of Music, the word "thesis" includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

**DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY  
(ALL FACULTIES)**

**G.62**

Subject to the provisions of Rule G.49 a candidate shall not be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy until at least three years after admission to the degree of Bachelor with Honours (in any Faculty), or of Bachelor of Laws, or of Bachelor of Education, or of Bachelor of Music, or until at least two years after admission to the degree of Master.

**G.63**

Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in any Faculty shall be registered for and attend an approved course of special study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule G.62;

provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

**63.1** Candidates for Doctor's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may apply up to 1 May and register up to 1 June of each year.

**G.64**

Before registration, candidates for the degree shall obtain the approval of the Senate to the subject of special study or research which they propose to pursue.

**64.1** When a candidate's subject of research has been approved, such approval will remain in force so long as the annual registration fee is paid.

**G.65**

The Senate delegates the authority to the Faculty Boards to appoint a supervisor or supervisors to advise a candidate, and to report back to Senate to exercise its oversight of the process by way of Faculty minutes. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purposes of the Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a Faculty of the University and other formally affiliated researchers are regarded as members of staff. Candidates may be permitted to register in an associated Research Institute without requiring a co-supervisor in a related academic department, but the research proposal must be approved by the Dean after considering a recommendation from a member of a cognate department. Normally, at least one of the supervisors for such candidates must be a member of the relevant Faculty Board.

**65.1** The candidate shall work in such association with the supervisor as the Faculty Board may direct.

**G.66**

Candidates shall submit a thesis on the results of their study which shows evidence of originality and independent research. This thesis may comprise entirely of a set of sequential chapters or may include academic articles and creative works such as artefacts, compositions, public performances and public exhibitions in partial fulfilment of the thesis



requirements. Regardless of the forms of representation, the PhD must demonstrate coherence across the submission and the demonstration of high-level research capability that makes a significant and original academic contribution at the frontiers of a discipline or field (refer to the Higher Degrees Guide).

**G.67**

At least two months before candidates present their theses, they shall give notice in writing to the Registrar of their intention to do so.

**67.1** Candidates must submit their theses no later than the date published in the Calendar Diary.

**G.68**

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each thesis. In exceptional circumstances one examiner may be internal to the University.

**G.69**

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted, and the number of copies required.

**69.1** Such copies, when submitted shall become the property of the University.

**69.2** The Senate requires a digital submission of the thesis uploaded on ROSS in the first instance, and suitably bound copies of the thesis where an examiner so indicates, to be presented for examination. The Registrar will inform the student of the exact number of copies required.

**69.3** After the examination process has been completed, the candidate is required to submit an electronic version of the final corrected thesis in PDF format for deposit in the University's digital repository, together with the Final Thesis Submission Form signed by the candidate and supervisor to the Registrar's Division. Candidates and supervisors who would like a digital holding period of between 1 and 2 years before deposit in the digital repository, or a full embargo of the thesis, must request this in the Final Thesis Submission Form. The library offers assistance and training to post-graduate students for PDF conversion.

**69.4** Every thesis must be accompanied by a double-spaced typewritten abstract in English of

not more than 350 words. In addition, if the thesis is in a language other than English, it must be accompanied by an abstract in the language of the thesis. No illustrative materials such as tables, graphs or charts should be included. The abstract must be approved by the supervisor of the thesis and will, in the case of successful doctoral candidates, be submitted to University Microfilms International for publication and distribution. The abstract must be bound together with the thesis and be placed immediately after the title page.

**G.70**

Candidates shall submit a declaration, satisfactory to the Senate, stating to what extent the thesis is their original work, and certifying that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

**G.71**

If, at the date of the presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, make additional copies of it, in whole or in part from time to time and distribute the content in whatever format it deems fit, for the purposes of research. The University may, for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

**G.72**

Candidates may be required by the Senate, if the examiners so recommend, to submit to a written or oral examination on the subject of their thesis and on the whole field of study which it covers.

**G.73**

An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Dean may, on the advice of the examiners, invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

**G.74**

A thesis accepted by the University, and subsequently published in whatever form, shall bear the inscription: "Thesis approved for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", or "Thesis approved in partial fulfilment of Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", as the case may be.

### **G.75**

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Music, the word “thesis” includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

## **GENERAL RULES FOR HIGHER DEGREES**

### **G.76**

The Registrar, as delegated by Senate, may suspend or cancel the registration of any candidates whose progress is considered to be unsatisfactory.

**76.1** If candidates have not completed their Master’s degree within three years from first registration or their PhD degree within five years from first registration or six years if their PhD was upgraded from a Master’s degree, their candidacy will lapse unless the Registrar, as delegated by Senate, is satisfied that an extension is warranted. Further, in line with Rule G.76.1 the following processes were approved by Senate. The Registrar receives:

- (i) A letter of request by the student; accompanied by
- (ii) Support documentation; and
- (iii) A motivation by the supervisor; and
- (iv) A motivation by the Head of Department; and
- (v) A motivation by the Dean.

## **GUIDELINES FOR SENIOR DOCTORATES**

### **G.77**

When applicants indicate their wish to submit work for a Senior Doctorate, the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, supported by a full motivation, will consider recommending to Senate the acceptance of the work for examination.

### **G.78**

If Senate approves the acceptance of work for a Senior Doctorate, the candidate must submit for the approval of the Senate, six copies of published work dealing with some subject falling within the scope of the studies represented in the University, or, in the case of the degree of Doctor of Music, a set of musical compositions, in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate. Normally the

published work should be presented either conventionally bound, or in electronic form (in PDF format) on suitably indexed CD-ROM disks together with an explanatory synopsis. Such work shall constitute a distinguished contribution to the advancement of knowledge in that field.

**78.1** Copies so submitted shall become the property of the University.

### **G.79**

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each candidate. In exceptional circumstances one examiner may be internal to the University.

The Senate delegates the authority to appoint examiners to the Vice-Chancellor to act on its behalf in or appoint a Deputy-Vice Chancellor to act on behalf of Senate in the approval of examiners and report to Senate for oversight purposes.

### **G.80**

Every work submitted for the degree must be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidate, satisfactory to the Senate, to the effect that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

*Candidates for a Senior Doctorate should communicate with the Registrar, in the first instance.*

## **BREACHES OF RULES**

### **G.81**

Subject to the provisions of the Higher Education Act and the Rhodes University Statute, the Senate may *ex post facto* condone any breach of the rules governing a curriculum, if it is satisfied that:

- 81.1** the students concerned are not themselves responsible for the breach of rules;
- 81.2** if the breach is not condoned the students concerned would be put to undue hardship; and
- 81.3** the rule broken is not of fundamental importance.

# FACULTY OF COMMERCE

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Bachelor of Business Science

The degree of Bachelor of Business Science is a four-year career-focused degree premised on the application of quantitative methods. The curriculum for this degree aims to provide a thorough grounding in the principles of the candidate's chosen field of expertise to the postgraduate level, supported by ancillary subjects which will equip candidates for the professional and managerial requirements of their chosen field at the highest level. To this end, Rule C.14 provides for five specialised curricula, enabling a student to specialise in one or more of the following fields: Economics, Information Systems, Management, Quantitative Management, and Computer Science. Entry into the second and fourth years of study for the degree is by permission of the Faculty Board.

### Bachelor of Commerce

This is a three-year degree aimed at providing the graduate with a good academic grounding in the major subject areas of Commerce. The curricula provide for specialisation up to third year level in two or more of any of the following fields: Accounting, Economics, Information Systems, Law, Management, Science, Social Science and Statistics, in any of four curricula as follows:

*The General Curriculum allows for a wide combination of subjects in second and third year including at least two major subjects. The curriculum enables students to qualify for or obtain exemption in respect of certain components of various professional qualifications. Further particulars are available from the Student Adviser.*

*The Accounting Curriculum is intended for students wishing to enter the accounting profession or to take the BCom degree with an accounting emphasis. If this curriculum is followed, the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy can be*

*completed in one further year of study after Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3, and Taxation 3 has been passed. The curriculum enables students to qualify for or obtain exemption in respect of certain components of various professional qualifications. Further particulars may be obtained from the Head of the Department of Accounting.*

*The Law Curriculum is intended for students wishing to enter the legal profession, or to take a BCom degree with a legal emphasis. Following this curriculum, a candidate can obtain enough exemptions from LLB degree subjects to complete the LLB requirements in two further years of study.*

*The inter-faculty curriculum enables students to include a major subject in another faculty in their BCom degree, and, depending on the subjects chosen, is suitable for candidates interested in personnel management or industrial relations. This curriculum also enables students to include a Science major or any Humanities major in their degree.*

### Bachelor of Economics

This degree is designed for students who wish to include the maximum number of Economics courses and related subjects in their curriculum. The BEcon degree offers a suitable preparation for candidates interested in economic forecasting and analysis and economic planning, in both the public and private sectors. The following specialised curricula are offered:

*The Bachelor of Economics (Environmental Science) is intended for students wishing to pursue careers in the economic aspects of environmental studies. The curriculum is designed to train students in the application of economic principles to environmental studies, and combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce.*

*The Bachelor of Economics (Mineral Economics) is intended for students who wish to become economists with a geological background. The curriculum is designed to apply economic principles to the exploitation of mineral resources, and combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce. Because of timetable constraints this degree cannot be completed in the minimum period of three years.*

### **Master of Business Administration**

The Master of Business Administration (MBA) offered by the Rhodes University Business School is a course-work degree together with a research mini-thesis of 15 000 words. The course-work comprises 124 credits and the mini-thesis 60 credits. The degree is offered on a part-time, modular basis over two and a half years or on a full-time, modular basis over one and a half years.

It is a hybrid mode of delivery, where candidates are required to attend two teaching blocks in Makhanda, with complementary synchronous and asynchronous sessions scheduled virtually.

The Rhodes Business School's essence is "Leadership for Sustainability" and hence leadership and sustainability principles underline all subjects in the MBA curriculum. Emphasis is placed on business continuity, as well as achieving a balance between economic, social and environmental sustainability. The school applies its own unique 4E (Economy, Ethics, Ecology and Equity) model in its teaching and learning practice.

Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least a NQF Exit Level 8 qualification (for example, a Bachelor Honours Degree, Post-graduate Diploma or four year Bachelor Degree) in any discipline, are proficient in English and have had at least three years relevant practical experience. All applicants are required to sit the NMAT by GMAC™ Admission Test, or GMAT if the NMAT is not available in their country of residence. Furthermore, those applicants

for whom English is a foreign language are required to sit an appropriate English language test.

### **Master of Commerce Degree in Financial Markets (by coursework and thesis)**

The degree is aimed specifically at a Specialised career in the financial/banking sector. Exposure is given in the coursework to banking and monetary policy, debt and foreign exchange markets, equity and derivative markets, and portfolio theory and management. The coursework component is usually examined during the first year of academic study and the dissertation of approximately 30000 words is expected to be submitted by the end of the second year of study.

The coursework component constitutes 50% of the mark, with the balance being awarded to the dissertation. Admission requirements are those normally applicable to the Master of Commerce degree.

### **Master of Commerce Degree in Taxation (by coursework and thesis)**

The coursework component consists of eight modules covering important aspects of taxation and tax planning at an advanced level. The ninth module comprises an introduction to research methodology. Eight essay assignments on taxation and an assignment on research methodology are submitted for assessment. Two three-hour examinations are written on the coursework component. The dissertation on an appropriate topic would normally not exceed 30000 words. The duration of the coursework component is approximately fourteen months with examinations written on completion of the coursework component. The coursework and examinations together represent 50% of the total mark and the dissertation 50%, with a subminimum of 50% for each. Admission requirements are those normally applicable to the Master of Commerce degree.

**Commerce Extended Studies Programme**

This programme is intended to supplement the instruction of major subjects within the Commerce Faculty. Students enrolled in the Commerce Extended Studies Programme receive additional literacy and numerical instruction via extended, augmented or developmental courses. Successful completion of the programme is recognized with the awarding of a certificate. Students, after successfully completing the two years of the programme, are awarded with 165 SAQA credits and may proceed to the regular degree streams offered by the Faculty.

**Advanced Diploma in Business Analysis**

This diploma provides a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to develop a comprehensive understanding of the purpose, role, methods, and techniques to be applied in effective business analysis, business process modelling, business process engineering, management consulting, and either software testing or project management for sustainable business performance.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy**

This diploma is accredited by the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants for admission to SAICA's Initial Test of Competence (ITC); however, the diploma does not confer any professional rights. Graduates are entitled to complete their SAICA training contracts in three years instead of five.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management**

The diploma equips graduate students with knowledge and expertise to start their own businesses and/or to enhance their entry into employment in business. The Diploma is offered on a one-year full time or part time basis, but part-time candidates may choose to complete in two years.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation**

The diploma builds upon the knowledge level of taxation achieved in any Bachelor of Commerce degree which includes Taxation 3 as one of its courses. It equips these graduate students with the specialised taxation knowledge and expertise to consult and advise clients in dealing with their tax affairs.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Business Analysis**

The diploma provides a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to strategically, operationally and critically address relevant methods, processes, systems and techniques that should be applied to achieve sustainable business performance. The Diploma is offered on a one-year full time or part time basis, but part-time candidates may choose to complete in one and a half years.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Advancement and Resource Mobilisation**

The diploma strives to grow and build the number and quality of working Advancement professionals in Africa who are able to engage systematically and purposefully with their internal and external stakeholders to attract resources and, thus, contribute to the long-term sustainability of these non-commercially minded entities.

**Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)**

The degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) is offered for students wishing to become computer specialists in a commercial environment. This degree combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce, and is administered by the Faculty of Science. See Faculty of Science Rule S.13.

**RULES FOR DEGREES AND CERTIFICATES**

*See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.*

*The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Commerce only. Rules C.3 to C.11 apply to all Bachelor's degrees in the Faculty. Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules no candidate shall be admitted to any of the*

*degrees of Bachelor in the Faculty unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration for degree study for at least the minimum time specified for each degree.*

## C.1

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Commerce:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
<b>Bachelor of Business Science</b> NQF Level 8 (480 credits)	<b>BBS</b>
<b>Bachelor of Commerce</b> NQF Level 7 (360 credits)	<b>BCOM</b>
<b>Bachelor of Economics</b> NQF Level 7 (360 credits)	<b>BECO</b>
<b>Bachelor of Commerce with Honours</b> NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	<b>BCOH</b>
<i>May be taken in the following subjects: Accounting, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Applied Statistics, Applied Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Taxation.</i>	
<b>Bachelor of Economics with Honours</b> NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	<b>BECH</b>
<i>May be taken in the following subjects: Accounting, Anthropology, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Financial Accounting, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Applied Statistics, Applied Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Politics, Psychology, Sociology, Taxation, Environmental Science, History, Philosophy, Geology.</i>	
<b>Master of Commerce (by full thesis)</b> NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	<b>MCOM</b>
<i>May be taken in the following subjects: Accounting, Applied Statistics, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Financial Accounting, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Taxation.</i>	
<b>Master of Commerce (by coursework and thesis)</b> NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	<b>MCOM 1, 2, 4</b>
<i>May be taken in the following subjects: Financial Markets, Taxation</i>	
<b>Master of Economics</b> NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	<b>MECO</b>
<b>Master of Business Administration</b> NQF Level 9 (184 credits)	<b>MBA</b>
<b>Doctor of Philosophy</b> NQF Level 10 (360 credits)	<b>PHD3</b>
<i>May be taken in the following subjects:</i>	

Accounting, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Financial Accounting, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Applied Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Taxation.

**Advanced Diploma in Business Analysis**

**ADBA**

NQF Level 7 (120 credits)

**Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy**

**HDAC**

NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

**Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management**

**PDEM**

NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

**Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation**

**PGTAX**

NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

**Postgraduate Diploma in Business Analysis**

**PGBA**

NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

**Postgraduate Diploma in Advancement and Resource Mobilisation**

**PGARM**

NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

**C.2**

Candidates for bachelor's degrees in the Faculty may present themselves for examination in the following courses; unless otherwise indicated each course listed is a year course:

**C2.1**

Accounting 1,2,3

Anthropology 1,2,3

Applied Statistics 3

Auditing 3

Commercial Law 1

Computer Science 1,2,3

\*Computer Science 101

\*Computer Science 102

\*Computer Science 112

Economics 1,2,3 and \*3B

Industrial Sociology 2,3

Information Systems 2,3

#Principles of Professional Accountancy

Latin 1

Legal Theory 1,2,3

Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1,2,3

Management 1,2,3

Management Accounting and Finance 3

Mathematical Statistics \*102,2,3

\*Theory of Finance and \*Statistics 1C2 or

\*Statistics 1S1

Mathematics 1,2,3

Organisational Psychology 2,3

Political and International Studies 1,2,3

\$ Professional Communication

\$ Professional Communication for Accountants

Psychology 1,2,3

Sociology 1,2,3

Taxation 3

A course in a modern language

*\*Each of these is a semester course.*

*# Principles of Professional Accountancy is normally taken in a student's second year of study and is compulsory for the Bachelor of Commerce (Accounting) curriculum*

*\$ Professional Communication is a semester course offered by the Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies. It is normally taken in a student's second year of study and it is compulsory for all Commerce undergraduate curricula except for the Bachelor of Commerce (Accounting) curriculum in which students are required to complete Professional Communication for Accountants, a one-term course offered by the*

*Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies in conjunction with the Department of Accounting.*

*For major subjects in the Faculty see Rule C.11.*

**C2.2** Any approved course offered in the Faculties of Humanities or Science.

**C2.3** Any approved sequence of three courses leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or in the Faculty of Science.

**C2.4** Students registering for the degree will be allowed to choose as an elective a course not offered at Rhodes University, provided a strong case can be made for its inclusion. Permission will be granted at the discretion of the Dean.

**C.3**

For the purpose of the BCom, BEcon and BSc(InfSystems) degrees, a pass in both Accounting 1F and 1G will be deemed to be equivalent to a pass in Accounting 1.

**C.4**

For the purpose of these Rules, and in Rule G.7 as it applies to Commerce, unless otherwise indicated or clear from the context, "course" will mean a year course.

**C.5**

The onus is on students to ensure that they register for a curriculum which will lead to a degree or

diploma as the case may be. The Dean's approval of a curriculum does not imply permission to obtain a degree or diploma following a curriculum different from those contained in these Rules. Choices of subjects offered for a degree or certificate may be limited by the University timetable. Students who wish to take a degree over more than the minimum period of time are urged to consult the Dean or Deputy Dean to ensure that their choice of curriculum is feasible on the University timetable.

**C.6**

For purposes of the courses required for a specific degree, recognition shall not be given for:

Afrikaans-Nederlands 1 and 2 and also Afrikaans 1 and 2

Commercial Law 1 and Legal Theory 1

Psychology 2 and also Organisational Psychology 2

Psychology 3 and also Organisational Psychology 3

Sociology 2 and also Industrial Sociology 2

Sociology 3 and also Industrial Sociology 3

More than one of Statistics 1C2, Statistics 1S1 and Statistics 1P1

**C.7**

7.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not proceed to any course listed in Group I below unless they have passed, or have been exempted from, the corresponding prerequisite course listed in Group II.

<b>Group I</b>	<b>Group II</b>
Accounting 3	For students following BCom(Accounting) degree: Accounting 2 and Principles of Professional Accountancy For students not following BCom(Accounting) degree: Accounting 2
Applied Statistics 3	Mathematics 1, Mathematical Statistics 102 and Mathematical Statistics 2
Auditing 3	Accounting 2 and Principles of Professional Accountancy
Computer Science 3	Computer Science 2 and one of Mathematics 101 (MAM 1) or MAT 1S1 or MST 102 or STA 1S1 or STA 1C2



Industrial Sociology 2	Sociology 1
Information Systems 2	Computer Science 112
Legal Theory 3	Legal Theory 2
Management 2	Management 1 and Accounting 1
Management 3	Accounting 1, Economics 1, Management 2, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2
Management Accounting and Finance 3	Accounting 2, Principles of Professional Accountancy and one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1
Mathematical Statistics 2	Mathematics 1 and Mathematical Statistics 102
Mathematical Statistics 3	Mathematics 1, Mathematical Statistics 102 and Mathematical Statistics 2
Organisational Psychology 3	Organisational Psychology 2
Taxation 3	Accounting 2 and Principles of Professional Accountancy

**7.2** Candidates shall not be admitted to the courses Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2, 1P1 and 1S1 unless they have obtained at least an Admission Points Score (APS) in Mathematics of 4 or higher in the National Senior Certificate or a pass in Mathematics at another examination deemed to be equivalent thereto. A level 4 pass on the NSC or equivalent and at least 40% for MAM 101 is required for admission to Mathematical Statistics 102. Candidates seeking admission to the BBS Degree require Mathematics at a rating 6 or above.

**7.3** Candidates who have passed Management 1 may register for Management 2 only if they have passed, or are concurrently registered for, Accounting 1.

**7.4** ...

**7.5** Candidates who have passed Organizational Psychology 2 may be permitted by Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department to take Psychology 3. Candidates who have completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Organizational Psychology 3 except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set, in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of

performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

**7.6** A student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for Information Systems 2.

**7.7** Owing to physical constraints, it may be necessary to limit the numbers of students admitted to Information Systems 2 and 3. Should this become necessary, candidates may be required either to have completed the first year towards a degree or to have obtained at least five one-year courses or ten semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 150 NQF credits before being admitted to Information Systems 2. Should the number of candidates qualifying for admission to Information Systems 2 and 3 exceed the number that can be admitted, admission will be on merit, and those who fail to be thus admitted will be given priority for the following year.

**7.8** Save with the permission of the Head of the Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies, a student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for the course Professional Communication.

**7.9** Students wishing to proceed to the final year of the BCom (Accounting) degree and register for Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3 must have

obtained a mark of 60% or greater for Accounting 2 and a continuing pass for Principles of Professional Accountancy. Students who obtain a mark of 50-59% for Accounting 2 will only be permitted to register for Accounting 3 and two of: Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3.

#### **C.8**

Candidates taking a course in the Faculty of Humanities shall be governed by the provisions of Rules H.3, H.4, H.5, H.6, H.13, H.14.

#### **C.9**

Candidates taking Mathematics or a course given only in the Faculties of Science and Pharmacy shall be governed by the provisions of the Rules S.4 and S.23.

#### **C.10**

10.1 Candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than six one-year courses or twelve semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 180 NQF credits in the first academic year and five-year courses or ten semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 150 NQF credits in the second academic year.

**10.2** Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than seven semester courses in any year of study in which they are engaged on the final course of a major subject (normally no more than three in any semester, plus Professional Communication). The exception approved by the Senate being Accounting 3 when taken with Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3, and Taxation 3.

**10.3** For all bachelor's degrees, candidates who have passed fewer than three one-year courses or six semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 90 NQF credits shall be deemed to be in the first year of study for the degree. Candidates who have passed more than three one-year courses or six semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 90 NQF credits, but with fewer than

eight one-year courses or sixteen semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 240 NQF credits, shall be deemed to be in the second year of study unless they are registered for the final courses of at least two major subjects for the degree. Candidates who have passed at least eight one-year courses or sixteen semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 240 NQF credits towards the degree, or who are registered for the final courses in at least two major subjects shall be deemed to be in the third year of study.

**10.4** Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have passed at least two courses before they may enter on the second course in any subject.

**10.5** Last Outstanding Course – Supplementary Examinations:

a) Last outstanding course supplementary examinations will be allowed only for the last year course or two semester courses outstanding for the degree, provided this applies normally to one discipline only, and normally to a course written in the final calendar year of study;

and

b) Provided the student has a Duly Performed Certificate for the course concerned.

10.6 Candidates who are permitted to register for the final courses of three major subjects in any one year will normally be required to write the November examination/s of one of the three major subjects in February of the following year.

#### **C.11**

The degree certificates of candidates for three-year Bachelor's degrees who pass in Class I in the third year course of any subject listed in C.2.1 and C.2.3, shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. These subjects shall be regarded as major subjects within the Faculty. For the purpose of this Rule the final mark in these courses shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of their component semester courses.

*NB Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3 are only regarded as*

major subjects when taken in conjunction with Accounting 3.

### C.12

Aggregation Rules:

a) Aggregation is permitted between semester papers written in the same academic year and with the corresponding supplementary papers. Aggregation across multiple academic years is permitted, if and only if, having met all other degree requirements, such aggregation would then result in the award of the degree. The mark awarded for an aggregated pass is “ACR”.

b) In Accounting 1 students obtaining between 40-49% in Accounting 101, together with a corresponding mark of 51% and above for Accounting 102, and an aggregate mark of 50% or more, are awarded a continuing pass to Accounting 2. Where the student passes Accounting 101 but fails 102 with a mark of between 40-49%, and aggregates to 50% or more a non-continuing pass is awarded.

c) For other subjects administered by the Commerce Faculty (Economics, Information Systems and Management) aggregation is permitted where one semester has been failed at the 45-49% level, provided that the overall average mark for the two semester marks is 50% or more.

d) Where a course consists of 4 modules aggregation is permitted where 3 modules (papers) are passed and the fourth failed with a mark of 40% or more, provided that the overall average mark for the 4 modules is 50% or more.

e) Where a course consists of 4 modules aggregation is permitted where 2 modules (papers) are passed and two failed with marks between 45 and 49%, provided that the overall average mark for the 4 modules is 50% or more.

f) Subminima for other subjects taken by Commerce students may differ from this rule but aggregation always conforms to (a) above.

### C.13

All students registered for a degree in the Faculty are required to pass Economics 1 and 2.

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF BUSINESS SCIENCE

### C.14

**14.1** The curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Business Science shall extend over not less than four years of full-time study.

**14.2** Candidates who do not pass all the courses for the Degree in the first year of study will be automatically reregistered in the second year as Bachelor of Commerce / Economics students with the approval of the Board of the Faculty.

**14.3** Admission to the fourth year of study for the degree is subject to approval by the Board of the Faculty.

**14.4** Candidates will not be admitted to any fourth-year course for the degree if they have not passed or been exempted from all the courses prescribed for the first three years of study for the degree.

**14.5** Candidates normally require a minimum of 60% in their third year of study in the subject they wish to continue with in their fourth year.

**14.6** Candidates wishing to be admitted to the fourth year of study in any discipline must note that the course can only be offered to a limited number of students. Departments reserve the right to select the best students regardless of the degree being studied.

**14.7** Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who fail the fourth year will, depending on courses passed, be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Commerce or the degree of Bachelor of Economics.

**14.8** Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who have passed the required courses, may elect to be awarded the BCom or BEcon degree. Such candidates may not subsequently be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Business Science, but may be admitted to an Honours degree.

**14.9** A paper in Strategic Management in the fourth year is compulsory for all students reading for full Management Honours, as well as those joint-honours students where Management is the dominant component. Other fourth year students

may elect to read a paper in Strategic Management, which will count as 20% of their final fourth year mark. The weighting of the Strategic Management course for joint-honours students not reading Management as the dominant component, and in which Management is either a minor component or not taken at the fourth-year level, will be split equally (10%) between the two Departments in which the student is studying.

**14.10** All candidates are required to submit a research essay/project in partial fulfilment of the fourth year of study. Where the candidate is taking the 60/40 split between two subjects, the research essay is normally supervised and examined by the dominant department. This paper will represent a maximum of 20% of the course content of the fourth year of study.

*Candidates for the degree should note that they may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.14, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule.*

*NB It is important that candidates plan their curricula fully in advance to ensure feasibility on the lecture timetable.*

#### CURRICULUM 1 (Economics)

##### **Year 1**

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 & Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

##### **Year 2**

1. Economics 2
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2
4. Management 2
5. Professional Communication

##### **Year 3**

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One of: Management 3; Mathematics 3;

#### Mathematical Statistics 3

##### **Year 4**

1. Economics Honours
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

#### CURRICULUM 2 (Information Systems)

##### **Year 1**

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 and Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

##### **Year 2**

1. Information Systems 2
2. Economics 2
3. Mathematical Statistics 2 or Mathematics 2
4. Management 2 or Accounting 2
5. Commercial Law 1

##### **Year 3**

1. Information Systems 3
2. One of: Economics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Management 3; Accounting 3
3. Professional Communication

##### **Year 4**

1. Information Systems Honours or Joint Honours. (as prescribed in Rule C.16)
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

#### CURRICULUM 3 (Management)

##### **Year 1**

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 & Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

##### **Year 2**

1. Management 2
2. Economics 2
3. Accounting 2 or Information Systems 2
4. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2

5. Commercial Law 1

**Year 3**

1. Management 3
2. One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3
3. Professional Communication

**Year 4**

1. Management Honours, or Joint Honours (as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2)
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

**CURRICULUM 4 (Quantitative Management)**

**Year 1**

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 and Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

**Year 2**

1. Mathematical Statistics 2
2. Economics 2
3. Two of: Management 2; Information Systems 2; Accounting 2; Mathematics 2
4. Commercial Law 1
5. Professional Communication

**Year 3**

1. Mathematical Statistics 3
2. One of: Economics 3; Management 3; Information Systems 3; Accounting 3; Mathematics 3

**Year 4**

1. Mathematical Statistics Honours, or Joint Honours (as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2).
2. Strategic Management. (C.14.9)

**CURRICULUM 5 (Computer Science)**

**Year 1**

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 1

3. Economics 1

4. Management 1

5. Mathematics 1

6. Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)

NB: Candidates should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year.

**Year 2**

1. Computer Science 2
2. Economics 2
3. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2
4. Management 2 or Information Systems 2
5. Commercial Law 1

**Year 3**

1. Computer Science 3
2. One of: Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3
3. Professional Communication

**Year 4**

1. Computer Science Honours or Joint Honours (as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2).
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

**DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE**

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

**A. The ordinary degree**

**C.15**

**15.1** Candidates for the ordinary degree must pass at least twenty-three semester courses, where a year course is equivalent to two semester courses, contained in one of the curricula set out below.

**15.2** Candidates offering more than the minimum number of courses for the degree must select the additional courses from those listed in C.2.1.

**15.3** Candidates for the degree may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.14.3, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule. Thus, for example, a candidate wishing to include Computer Science 2 in Curriculum 1 must take Computer Science 1 as the option in item 4 of Year 2, but must take the course in Year 1, and the course it displaces in Year 1, in Year 2. Similarly, a candidate wishing to take Information Systems 2 in Year 2 must take Computer Science 112 in Year 1 and any semester course in Year 1 omitted as a consequence, in Year 2 or thereafter.

#### CURRICULUM 1 (General)

*This curriculum is intended for candidates who wish to specialise in one or more of the following fields:*

*Economics, Information Systems, Management, Statistics.*

##### **Year 1**

1. Accounting 1
2. Commercial Law 1 or Psychology 1
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2 or Mathematics 1

*NB See Rule C.15.3 above. Candidates are reminded that: a) they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1, Economics 1, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2. b) they should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year. c) they should register for Mathematics 1 and Mathematical Statistics 102 should they intend to take Mathematical Statistics 2.*

##### **Year 2**

1. Economics 2
2. One of: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2

3. One of: a course listed in (2) above not already taken; Computer Science 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Organisational Psychology 2

4. Commercial Law 1; if already taken: any other year course, or two semester courses, from C.2.1 or C.2.2 (Attention is drawn to Rule C.6)

5. Professional Communication

##### **Year 3**

1. One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

2. One of: A course listed in (1) above not already taken; Applied Statistics 3; Computer Science 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Organisational Psychology 3

#### CURRICULUM 2 (Accounting)

##### **Year 1**

1. Accounting 1
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Computer Science 112
4. Economics 1
5. Management 1
6. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2

##### **Year 2**

1. Accounting 2
2. Economics 2
3. Information Systems 2
4. Principles of Professional Accountancy
5. Professional Communication for Accountants

##### **Year 3\***

1. Accounting 3
2. Two\*\* of: Auditing 3; Management Accounting and Finance 3; Taxation 3

*\* Candidates may not take any other course if all four of Accounting 3; Auditing 3; Management Accounting and Finance 3; and Taxation 3 are taken. See also rule C.7.9.*

*\*\* Candidates who intend to take the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy must include all three of these subjects in their curriculum.*

#### CURRICULUM 3 (Law)

##### **Year 1**

1. Legal Theory 1

2. Accounting 1
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. One of the following: A course in a modern language; Latin 1; Mathematics 1 or 1E, or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2

*NB See Rule C.15.3. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1, Economics 1, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2.*

#### **Year 2**

1. Legal Theory 2
2. Economics 2
3. One of: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
4. Any other year course, or two semester courses, from C.2.1, or C.2.2
5. Professional Communication (Attention is drawn to Rule C.6)

#### **Year 3**

1. Legal Theory 3
2. One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

#### **CURRICULUM 4 (inter-faculty) \***

*NB Candidates are reminded of the need to plan any proposed curriculum with regard to its viability in terms of the University lecture timetable.*

#### **Year 1**

1. Accounting 1
2. Economics 1
3. Management 1
4. A first-year course leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.
5. One of the following: Commercial Law 1; Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2, or Mathematics 1

*NB See Rule C.15.3. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1, Economics 1, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2.*

#### **Year 2**

1. A second-year course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.
2. Economics 2
3. One of the following: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
4. Commercial Law 1; if already taken: any year course or two semester courses from C.2.1 or C.2.2 (Attention is drawn to Rule C.6)
5. Professional Communication

#### **Year 3**

1. The final course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.
2. One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

*\*For the purpose of this curriculum a major in the Faculties of Humanities and Science will be any major subject which can be taken for the BA, BSocSc and BSc degrees, excluding Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Information Systems, Legal Theory and Management.*

### **B. The Honours degree**

#### **C.16**

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree (excepting Legal Theory), or in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

#### **C.17**

**17.1** Candidates shall not be admitted to any course in the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to the honours course unless they have obtained a good second class pass in the final undergraduate year in the subject in which they wish to take honours.

**17.2** Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided that:

**17.2.1** they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to Honours in that subject;

**17.2.2** the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

**17.2.3** the Heads of the Departments concerned and the Dean of the Faculty approve such arrangements.

**17.2.4** Accounting Honours may not be taken jointly with any other subject.

#### **C.18**

Candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after being admitted to the ordinary degree or to the status of that degree and shall pursue a course of advanced study in the chosen subject.

#### **C.19**

The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study. Such candidates may not take up any full-time employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another department concurrently with their honours degree.

#### **C.20...**

#### **C.21**

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit a student to take an honours course as a part-time student: Provided that:

**21.1** the honours classes are attended within the normal timetable of the Department; and

**21.2** the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of Senate, not more than two years.

#### **C.22**

Candidates taking the honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an

adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

#### **C.23**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates shall not be permitted to present themselves for the examinations for the degree more than once in the same subject.

#### **C.24**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate candidates must write all parts of the examination at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination, provided that a part-time candidate, or a candidate taking the degree over two years, may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study and part at the end of the second year of study.

#### **C.25**

Exceptions have been approved by Senate for the following subjects, and in these subjects parts of the Honours examination may be written at the discretion of the Head of the Department at any official examination session of the University pertaining to the period of study prescribed in Rules 6 and 8:

Computer Science,  
Economics,  
Information Systems,  
Management,  
Mathematics,  
Statistics.

#### **C.26**

Candidates will not be admitted to the Honours degree in Accounting (Financial Accounting) unless they have achieved at least the minimum requirements for admission to the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy set out in Rules C.34 and C.35. In addition, candidates must achieve a mark of at least 60% for Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3.

FACULTY OF COMMERCE



C.27

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ECONOMICS

C.28

The degree of Bachelor of Economics may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

### A. The ordinary degree

C.29

Candidates must pass at least twenty-three semester courses, where a year course is equivalent to two semester courses, as set out in the following curricula.

#### CURRICULUM 1 (Business Sciences)

##### Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2, or Mathematics 1
3. Two from: Accounting 1; Commercial Law 1; Computer Science 1; Management 1; Statistics 1S1 and Mathematical Statistics 102; an approved course.

NB: Candidates are reminded that a) they should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year. b) they should register for Mathematics 1 and Mathematical Statistics 102 should they intend to take Mathematical Statistics 2. c) for courses required for the award of the degree, credit will not be recognised for Statistics 1C2 and Statistics 1S1. See Rules C.6 and C.7.1.

##### Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Two from: Accounting 2; Computer Science 2; Information Systems 2 (if Computer Science 112 passed in Year 1); Management 2 (if Accounting 1 passed in Year 1); Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; one other approved non-initial course.

3. Any year course, or two semester courses from C.2.1 or C.2.2.

4. Professional Communication

See Rule C.2.

##### Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One from: Accounting 3; Applied Statistics 3; Computer Science 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; the final course of an approved major subject.

#### CURRICULUM 2 (Environmental Science)

##### Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2; or Mathematics 1
3. Earth Science 101 and Geography 102, plus one from: Anthropology 1; Botany 1; Geology 102; Zoology 1
4. Management 1

NB: Candidates are reminded that a) they should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year. b) they should register for Accounting 1 should they intend taking Management 2 in the second year.

See Rules C.6 and C.7.1.

##### Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Environmental Science 2
3. One of: Management 2 (if Accounting 1 passed in Year 1); Information Systems 2 (if Computer Science 112 passed in Year 1)
4. One of: Accounting 1; Botany 2; Geography 2; Zoology 2; Computer Science 112 and any one semester course
5. Professional Communication

##### Year 3

1. Economics 3
2. Environmental Science 3.

#### CURRICULUM 3 (Social Sciences)

##### Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2, or Mathematics 1
3. Two from: Anthropology 1; History 1; Introduction to Philosophy; Management 1; Politics 1; Psychology 1; Sociology 1; one other approved course.

NB: Candidates are reminded that they should register for Mathematics 1 and Mathematical Statistics 102 should they intend to take Mathematical Statistics 2.

### **Year 2**

1. Economics 2
2. Two from: Anthropology 2; History 2; Industrial Sociology 2; Management 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; Organisational Psychology 2; Philosophy 2; Politics 2; Psychology 2; Sociology 2; one other approved non-initial course.
3. Any year course, or two semester courses, from C.2.1 or C.2.2.
4. Professional Communication

### **Year 3**

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One of: Anthropology 3; History 3; Industrial Sociology 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Organisational Psychology 3; Philosophy 3; Politics 3; Psychology 3; Sociology 3; the final course of an approved major subject.

### **CURRICULUM 4 (Mineral Economics)**

This degree may be required to be taken over more than three years because of timetable clashes which cannot be resolved.

### **Year 1**

1. Accounting 1
2. Chemistry 1
3. Economics 1
4. Geology 1
5. Management 1

### **Year 2**

1. Economics 2
2. Geology 2

3. Management 2
4. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2
5. Professional Communication

### **Year 3**

1. Economics 3
2. Geology 3

## **B. The Honours degree**

### **C.30**

The degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree, or in Operations Research, or in a combination of any two of these subjects.

### **C.31**

Rules C.17 to C.25 above shall also apply to the degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours.

## **DEGREE OF MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION**

The Master of Business Administration (MBA) offered by the Rhodes Business School is a degree by coursework and research mini-thesis. The curriculum is weighted as follows:

Coursework:	124 credits
Research Mini-Thesis:	60 credits.

The degree is offered on a part-time, modular basis over two and a half years or on a full-time, modular basis over one and a half years.

It is a hybrid mode of delivery, where candidates are required to attend two teaching blocks in Makhanda, with complementary synchronous and asynchronous sessions scheduled virtually.

The Rhodes University Business School's essence is "Leadership for Sustainability" and hence leadership and sustainability principles underline all subjects in the MBA curriculum. Emphasis is placed on business continuity, as well as achieving a balance between economic, social and environmental sustainability. The school applies its own unique 4E (Economy, Ethics, Ecology and Equity) model in its teaching and learning practice. The school has committed itself to abide by the

Principles for Responsible Management Education (PRME). Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least an NQF Exit Level 8 qualification (for example, a Bachelor Honours Degree, Post-graduate Diploma or four-year Bachelor Degree) in any discipline, are proficient in English and have had at least three years relevant practical experience. All applicants are required to sit the NMAT by GMAC™ Admission Test, or GMAT if the NMAT is not available in their country of residence. Furthermore, those applicants for whom English is a foreign language are required to sit an appropriate English language test.

The coursework component comprises a number of modules, comprising compulsory and elective, which are assessed by a mixture of assignments, texts and/or examinations, depending on the credit weighting of the module, which together count 67% of the degree. Each module comprising the coursework component of the degree must be passed. The research mini-thesis component which counts 33% of the degree must be passed.

## **DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE IN FINANCIAL MARKETS CURRICULUM:**

The Master of Commerce in Financial Markets (MCom (Financial Markets)) is a degree by coursework and research mini-thesis. The curriculum is weighted as follows:

Coursework:	90 credits
Research Mini-Thesis:	90 credits

The coursework component comprises a number of modules and industry examinations. In terms of Financial Services Board's requirements for traders and advisors, candidates are required to sit industry examinations set by the South African Institute of Financial Markets (SAIFM) and the Johannesburg Securities Exchange. The coursework modules and industry examinations together count 50% of the final mark.

Coursework modules (with industry examinations added)

ECO 507 - Macroeconomics, Monetary Policy and Financial Markets

Industry examinations: Introduction to Financial Markets; and Regulation and Ethics of the SA Financial Markets

ECO 504 - Debt and Foreign Exchange Markets

Industry examinations:

The South African Money Market;

The Bond Market; and

The Foreign Exchange Market

ECO 505 - Equity and Derivative Markets

Industry examinations:

The Equity Market;

The Derivatives Market

ECO 508 (Paper 1) - Quantitative Finance

ECO 508 (Paper 2) - Financial Econometrics

ECO 506 - Portfolio Theory and Management

An aggregated pass (ACR) may be awarded for the coursework component provided that no more than one paper is failed and that the mark for this paper is between 45% and 49%. Students falling into this category do have the option of repeating the course during the second year of study. No supplementary examinations will be set. Students failing no more than two papers are obliged to repeat these courses during the second year of study and no aggregation of marks will be allowed in this case. Students failing more than two papers will not be permitted to continue with the programme except with the special permission of the Head of Department. Such permission is not automatic and motivations provided by affected students will be considered on a case-by-case basis. The coursework component of the degree must be passed.

The research mini-thesis comprises a written report and counts 50% of the final mark. The research mini-thesis component of the degree must be passed.

Students registered for the degree must normally be full-time and in-attendance for the first year of study.

## DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE IN TAXATION

The Master of Commerce in Taxation (MCom (Taxation)) is a degree by coursework and research mini-thesis. The curriculum is weighted as follows:

Coursework:	90 credits
Research Mini-Thesis:	90 credits

The coursework component comprises a number of modules and two three-hour examinations which together count 50% of the final mark:

1. Income tax - aspects of the "gross income" definition
2. Income tax - further aspects of the "gross income" definition
3. Income tax - further aspects of the "gross income" definition
4. Income tax - aspects of the "general deduction formula"
5. Income tax - further aspects of "the general deduction formula"
6. Tax planning and anti-avoidance measures
7. Employee benefits and retirement planning
8. The Tax Administration Act
9. Research methodology and design

The two three-hour examination papers can be written in Makhanda or, subject to special arrangements, other venues in South Africa. The coursework component of the degree must be passed.

The research mini-thesis comprises a written report and counts 50% of the final mark. The research mini-thesis component of the degree must be passed.

## COMMERCE EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME

### Curriculum

Only students who receive permission from the Dean of Commerce may be admitted to the Commerce Extended Studies Programme which extends over four years of study. The first two years of study comprise a foundation phase.

Candidates who successfully complete the foundation phase with an aggregate mark of at least 60% join the other students enrolled in three one-year programmes for their final two years of study.

### Courses

#### Foundation Phase Year One

First Semester	Second Semester
1. Accounting 1F	1. Accounting 1F
2. Theory of Finance	2. Theory of Finance
3. Management 101	3. Management 102*
4. Management 101 (Augmented)	4. Management 102 (Augmented)
5. Introduction to Computers	

#### \*Prerequisite

*Management 102: obtain 35% in Management 101*

#### Foundation Phase Year Two

First Semester	Second Semester
1. Accounting 1G	1. Accounting 1G*
2. Computer Science 112	2. Computer Science 112
3. Commercial Law 101	3. Commercial Law 102*
4. Economics 101	4. Economics 102
5. Economics 101 (Augmented)	5. Statistics 1C2

#### \*Prerequisites:

*Accounting 1G: Accounting 1F*

*Computer Science 112: 90% attendance required in Introduction to Computers*

*Commercial Law 102: passed or valid DP certificate in Commercial Law 101*

## ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS

### C.32

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

- 32.1 they have a National Diploma (NQF6) or a Bachelors Degree (NQF7), and
- 32.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School.

**C.33**

The status of national diploma or bachelor would be determined on the basis of Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL), taking into consideration having at least three years as a Business Analyst, but also consider age, seniority, number of tertiary level courses attended. Each candidate will be considered on their own merits. As a rule of thumb, only 10% of the class may be admitted under RPL. A detailed Portfolio of Evidence (POE) is to be provided in support of the application.

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must pass each module.

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to develop a comprehensive understanding of the purpose, role, methods, and techniques to be applied in effective business analysis, business process modelling, business process engineering, management consulting, and either software testing or project management for sustainable business performance. This will enable understanding and identifying what, when, who, where, which and how business processes and methods can be changed to operate more economically, efficiently, effectively and sustainably; communicating and consulting with subject matter experts and key managers so as to analyse, model, and document the change requirements and support the communication and delivery of those requirements.

Modules constituting the AdvDip(Business Analysis) are:

Module 1: Sustainable Business Analysis (Core)

Module 2: Management Consulting (Core)

Module 3: Software Testing (Elective)

Module 4: Project Management (Elective)

Candidates are required to do both core modules and one elective module.

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ACCOUNTANCY**

**C.34**

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

**34.1** they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor and

**34.2** they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the head of the Department of Accounting. The Department of Accounting reserves the right to limit the number of students accepted into the programme.

**C.35**

**35.1** Candidates who have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor and who subsequently wish to obtain the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy must pass or have passed in Information Systems 2, Theory of Finance and Statistics, Economics 1, Commercial Law 1, Principles of Professional Accountancy, Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3, Taxation 3, and such other courses as directed by the Board of the Faculty before being admitted to study for the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy.

**35.2** Where candidates have passed in courses covering portions of the syllabus of pre-requisite courses they may be exempted from those courses provided they attend such courses and/or pass such papers or half papers as may be required by Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty.

**C.36**

A pass mark of 50% is required in each of the four courses. Candidates must pass all courses simultaneously.

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT**

**C.37**

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

**37.1** they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor, and

**37.2** they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School.

#### **C.38....**

#### **C.39**

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must attain at least 50% for the Alpha Project, 50% or more for at least six of the remaining seven modules listed below and an overall aggregate of at least 50%. In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 45% applies to each module. For the full-time option - if a candidate passes six modules and attains an overall aggregate of 50% or more but does not attain the sub-minimum in one module, they shall be awarded a supplementary examination for that module. For the part-time option – if a candidate passes four or more modules and attains an overall aggregate of 50%, they may be awarded supplementary examinations for modules below 50%.

Modules constituting the one-year full-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are: 1. Computerised Accounting for Small Business, 2. Entrepreneurial Law, 3. Entrepreneurship, 4. Financial Management, 5. People Management, 6. Strategic Marketing, 7. Supply Chain and Project Management and the Alpha Project.

Modules constituting the one-year or two-year part-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are selected from: 1. Business Development and Consulting, 2. Financial Management, 3. Intrapreneurship, 4. Leadership for Sustainability, 5. People Management, 6. Strategic Marketing, 7. Strategic Operations Management, 8. Sustainable Business Modelling, 9. Sustainable Economics and the Alpha Project.

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN TAXATION**

### **C.40**

Candidates for the Diploma shall normally not be admitted to the course unless:

**40.1** they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor and completed an appropriate undergraduate taxation course and normally achieved a mark of 65%; and

**40.2** they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the head of the Department of Accounting.

**40.3** Where candidates have passed in courses covering portions of the syllabus of pre-requisite papers they may be exempted from those papers provided they attend such courses and/or pass such papers or half papers as may be required by Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty

### **C.41**

Candidates must pass all papers simultaneously in the aggregate. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in any individual paper.

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS**

### **C.42**

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

**42.1** they have a Bachelor's degree or an Advanced Diploma in a related discipline (Information Systems, Business Analysis, Project Management) or have admitted to the status of bachelor, and

**42.2** they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School.

### **C.43**

The status of bachelor would be determined on the basis of Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL), taking into consideration having at least three years as a Business Analyst, but also consider age, seniority, number of tertiary level courses attended. Each candidate will be considered on their own

merits. A rule of thumb, only 10% of the class may be admitted under RPL.

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must pass each module and attain at least a 50% aggregate for the coursework and 50% for the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE).

In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 40% applies to each component of each module. In the case of a candidate passing three modules and attaining an overall aggregate of 50% or more but failing to attain the sub-minimum in one module, he or she shall be awarded a supplementary examination for that module. The coursework comprises 67% (80 credits) of the diploma and the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE) 33% (40 credits). The overall mark is a weighted average of coursework and Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE).

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to strategically, operationally and critically address relevant methods, processes, systems and techniques that should be applied to achieve sustainable business performance. In so doing the number and quality of working Business Analysts in Africa who are able to effectively communicate and apply their understanding of the theory, principles, purpose, role, methods and techniques of business analysis, business modelling and business process improvement to achieve sustainable business performance will be achieved. The PGDip(Business Analysis) is a one year, full-time or one and a half year, part-time modular programme, comprising four modules, where students are required to attend four teaching blocks. Between teaching blocks, students are required to complete work-based assignments. A practical 24-hour examination is undertaken at the commencement of the 4th teaching block, covering all four modules. A Project with Portfolio of Evidence (POE), is to be submitted by the end of the second semester for full-time students or at the end

of the first semester of the second year for part-time students.

Modules constituting the PGDip(Business Analysis) course are:

Module 1: Sustainable Business Models

Module 2: Business Process Modelling

Module 3: Business Process Analysis

Module 4: Communicating and Consulting

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ADVANCEMENT AND RESOURCE MOBILISATION**

### **C.44**

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

**44.1** they have a Bachelor's degree or an Advanced Diploma or have been admitted to the status of bachelor, and

**44.2** they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School.

### **C.45**

The status of bachelor would be determined on the basis of Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL), taking into consideration having at least three years' experience as an Advancement professional, but also consider age, seniority, number of tertiary level courses attended. Each candidate will be considered on their own merits. As a rule of thumb, only 10% of the class may be admitted under RPL.

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must complete and pass all five modules and the capstone project with a mark of 50% or above. To obtain a distinction for the diploma, a weighted average of 75% must be obtained for all modules together with the capstone project. In the event that an OVERALL weighted average of 50% or above is achieved for ALL modules and the Capstone Project, but a module/s has been failed, then a supplementary examination may be awarded for the failed module/s.

The diploma strives to grow and build the number and quality of working Advancement professionals in Africa who are able to engage systematically and purposefully with their internal and external stakeholders to attract resources and, thus, contribute to the long-term sustainability of these non-commercially minded entities.

The programme seeks to equip participants with core Advancement skills and tools such as those relating to strategy and planning, leadership, good governance, communication and marketing, project development, cases for support, legal requirements, financial management imperatives, and the structuring of an Advancement operation. The programme also seeks to give credence to Advancement principles that can be used to inform integrated and holistic practice by promoting research, as well as the creation and dissemination of knowledge in this area.

The diploma is a programme which is aimed at creating knowledgeable, competent, and innovative Advancement professionals who are able to be responsive to the constant turbulence of their internal and external environments. Furthermore, the Rhodes Business School's essence of "Leadership for Sustainability" underlies all subjects in the curriculum by encouraging thinking around economic, social and environmental sustainability.

The PGDip (Advancement and Resource Mobilisation) is a two-year part-time coursework programme, targeting working professionals, comprising five compulsory modules. Three of these modules will be run over the course of the first year, with the remaining two occurring in the second year. Modules are assessed by a combination of tests, assignments, and/or exams, as well as a research (capstone) project related to work-based or real-world scenarios in the field of Advancement and resource mobilisation.

Modules constituting the PGDip (Advancement and Resource Mobilisation) course are:

Module 1: Introduction to Advancement

Module 2: Research for Advancement

Module 3: Advancement Practice

Module 4: Advancement Leadership and Stakeholder Relations

Module 5: Responsibility and Accountability in Advancement

## **HONOURS DEGREE IN ACCOUNTING**

The Honours degree in Accounting can be presented in any one of the following specialisation areas:

Accounting

Auditing

Finance

Management Accounting

In each case papers forming part of the Postgraduate Diploma in Accounting will form the basis of the degree, together with a paper in an Introduction to Research Methodology and Design and a research essay. In each specialisation area one or more additional papers are prescribed. Candidates for the Honours Degree shall normally not be admitted to the course unless:

- they have a Bachelor's degree in the Accounting curriculum and have completed the appropriate undergraduate course majors and normally achieved a mark of 60% in each of the major subjects relevant to the Honours degree;
- they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Accounting.

The Department of Accounting reserves the right to limit the number of students accepted into the programme.

## **HIGHER DEGREES**

The Faculty's Rules for the Degree of Master of Commerce, Degree of Master of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Philosophy, are identical to those set out for Master's and Doctoral degrees in the General Rules.



# FACULTY OF EDUCATION

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The Education Faculty offers a range of qualifications within and across four broad education sectors: Formal Schooling; Early Childhood Education (ECE); Education, Training and Development Practices (ETDP), and Higher Education Studies (HES).

Teacher education qualifications are aligned to national policy as set out in the Minimum Standards for Teacher Education Qualifications (MRTEQ) (Government Gazette No. 38487, July 2015).

## RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Education only.

The following certificates, diplomas and degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Education.

Name	To be denoted by the letters
<b>Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Literacy Teaching</b> NQF Level 6 (120 credits)	<b>AdvCert (Foundation Phase Literacy Teaching)</b>
<b>Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching)</b> NQF Level 7 (480 credits)	<b>BEd (FP Teaching)</b>
<b>Bachelor of Education (Senior Phase and Further Education &amp; Training Teaching)</b> NQF Level 7 (480 credits)	<b>BEd (SP and FET Teaching)</b>
<b>Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching)</b> NQF Level 7 (120 credits)	<b>PGCE (SP and FET Teaching)</b>

**Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education**  
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

**PGDip (HE)**

**Postgraduate Diploma in Sustainability Learning**  
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

**PGDip (SL)**

**Bachelor of Education Honours**  
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

**BEd Hons**

May be taken in the following subjects when offered:  
*Bilingual Education for Diversity & Access,*  
*Curriculum Studies,*  
*Education Leadership & Management (ELM),*  
*English Language Teaching (ELT),*  
*Geography Education,*  
*Information & Communication Technology (ICT) in Education,*  
*Mathematics Education,*  
*Primary Education and*  
*Science Education*

**Master of Education**  
NQF Level 9 (180 credits)

**MEd**

**Doctor of Philosophy**  
NQF Level 10 (360 credits)

**PhD**

## ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN FOUNDATION PHASE LITERACY TEACHING

This is an NQF Level 6 qualification which is offered part-time over two years by the Centre for Social Development (CSD).

### E.1 Purpose

The purpose of this qualification is to provide candidates with a sound knowledge base for teaching Reading and Writing in Grades R-3, as well as develop their ability to apply their knowledge and skills to classroom teaching in the Foundation Phase (FP), while equipping them to undertake more specialised and intensive learning. The course addresses the needs of:

- Foundation Phase teachers who want to strengthen specialisation in FP literacy teaching and are already qualified to teach in

the Foundation Phase, having successfully completed a professional BEd degree or a PGCE, an initial three-year diploma in education offered by former colleges of education, or a National Professional Diploma in Education at NQF Level 5.

- Foundation Phase Heads of Department and Foundation Phase Subject Advisors who are already qualified to teach in the Foundation Phase and who want to strengthen their specialisation in FP literacy teaching in order to provide expert guidance to teachers about how to teach literacy in the Foundation Phase.

## E.2 Admission requirements

E.2.1 BEd degree in Foundation Phase Teaching, or

E.2.2 PGCE in Foundation Phase Teaching or equivalent, or

E.2.3 three-year Diploma in Education with a Junior Primary specialisation, or

E.2.4 three-year Junior Primary Teachers' Diploma, or

E.2.5 National Professional Diploma in Education (NPDE – Level 5) in Foundation Phase

## E.3 Duration and mode of delivery

This part-time qualification consists of 12 modules offered over two years through a blended learning mode.

## E.4 Curriculum

Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Literacy Teaching (Part-time, 2-year) (ACEFL)					
Course code	Mnemonic	Course name	Year	NQF level	Credits
9120001	ACEFL1	Computer Literacy (RPL option)	1 and 2	5	12
9120002	ACEFL2	CAPS Reading Activities	1	6	10
9120003	ACEFL3	Emergent Literacy	1	6	10
9120004	ACEFL4	Teaching Decoding	1	6	10
9120005	ACEFL5	Teaching Vocabulary	1	6	10
9120006	ACEFL6	Teaching Comprehension	1	6	10
9120007	ACEFL7	Teaching Writing and Handwriting	1	6	10
9120008	ACEFL8	Teaching English First Additional Language in the Foundation Phase 1	2	6	10
9120009	ACEFL9	Teaching English First Additional Language in the Foundation Phase 2	2	6	10
9120010	ACEFL10	Creating a Culture of Reading	2	6	10
9120011	ACEFL11	Inclusive Education	2	6	10
9120012	ACEFL12	Reading Assessment and Remediation	2	6	10
9120013	ACEFL13	Planning and Progression	2	6	10

## E.5 Assessment

E.5.1 Candidates must have passed at least four modules before they may enter the second year of the programme.

E.5.2 Candidates may repeat no more than two modules concurrently in their second year of study.

E.5.3 Candidates who fail four or more modules in the first-year of study will normally be excluded.

E.5.4 Candidates who average an aggregated mark of 75% or more in all the modules will be awarded the certificate with distinction.

E.5.5 Candidates who have passed up to six modules as short courses may be considered for recognition of prior learning in those modules.

## **DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (Foundation Phase Teaching)**

### **(Full-time initial teacher education)**

The BEd is a 480-credit qualification at NQF Level 7. It is offered as a four-year full-time initial teacher education qualification by the Department of Primary & Early Childhood Education.

### **E.6 Purpose**

The BEd (Foundation Phase Teaching) is for candidates wanting to become qualified as

professional educators in the Foundation Phase of schooling (Grades R to 3).

### **E.7 Admission requirements**

Candidates must fulfil the general rules for admission to the first degree. Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have obtained at least an Admissions Points Score (APS) in Mathematics of 3 (40-49%) or higher or an APS of 4 (50-59%) or above for Mathematics Literacy and an APS of 4 or above for a Home Language and an APS of 4 or above for a First Additional Language in the NSC. One of the languages must be English Home Language or English First Additional Language.

### **E.8 Duration**

A minimum of four years full time study

### **E.9 Curriculum**

<b>Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) (Full-time 4-year) (BEDFP)</b>					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9110044	BEDFP44	Education Studies 1A	1	5	15
9110045	BEDFP45	Professional & Pedagogical Studies 1A	1	5	10
9110043	BEDFP43	Mathematics for Teaching	1	5	25
9110004	BEDFP4	Teaching Practice 1A (Work Integrated Learning)	1	6	10
*		Language A (Humanities) first-year level	1	5	30
*		Language B (Humanities) first-year level	1	5	30
9110005	BEDFP5	Performance & Multimodalities 1	2	6	15
9110006	BEDFP6	Understanding the Social & Physical World 1	2	6	15
9110046	BEDFP46	Education Studies 1B	2	6	5
9110047	BEDFP47	Professional & Pedagogical Studies 1B	2	6	5
9110008	BEDFP8	Teaching Practice 1B (Work Integrated Learning)	2	6	15
9110041	BEDFP41	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Introduction to First Additional Language	2	6	10
9110042	BEDFP42	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Mathematics	2	6	15
9110015	BEDFP15	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Life Skills	2	6	10
9110009	BEDFP9	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language English OR	2	6	10
9110010	BEDFP10	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language isiXhosa	2	6	10

*		Language A (Humanities) second-year level	2	6	30
9110048	BEDFP48	Education Studies 2	3	7	15
9110049	BEDFP49	Professional & Pedagogical Studies 2	3	7	15
9110017	BEDFP17	Performance & Multimodalities 2	3	6	15
9110018	BEDFP18	Understanding the Social & Physical World 2	3	6	15
9110020	BEDFP20	Teaching Practice 2 (Work Integrated Learning)	3	6	25
9110027	BEDFP27	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics	3	6	9
9110028	BEDFP28	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills	3	6	9
9110026	BEDFP26	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language English	3	6	9
9110022	BEDFP22	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language English OR	3	6	9
9110023	BEDFP23	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language isiXhosa	3	6	9
9110024	BEDFP24	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language Afrikaans OR	3	6	9
9110025	BEDFP25	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language isiXhosa	3	6	9
9110050	BEDFP50	Education Studies 3	4	7	15
9110051	BEDFP51	Professional & Pedagogical Studies 3	4	7	15
9110039	BEDFP39	Teaching Practice 3 (Work Integrated Learning)	4	7	24
9110036	BEDFP36	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language English	4	7	14
9110037	BEDFP37	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics	4	7	14
9110038	BEDFP38	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills	4	7	12
9110032	BEDFP32	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language English OR	4	7	14
9110033	BEDFP33	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language isiXhosa	4	7	14
9110034	BEDFP34	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language Afrikaans OR	4	7	12
9110035	BEDFP35	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language isiXhosa	4	7	12

\* The Humanities Language subjects on offer are Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1 and 2, isiXhosa Language Acquisition 1 and 2, African Language Studies 1 and 2 or Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies 2. For isiXhosa, refer to the Humanities Rules H.10.3.1, H.10.3.2 and H.10.4 to determine which isiXhosa subject to register for.

E.9.1 Pre-requisites for the selection of Language options in Foundation Phase Studies in second year:

- Candidates intending to select isiXhosa Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for isiXhosa Home Language

in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for African Language Studies 1.

- Candidates intending to select English Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally have obtained credit for English Home Language or First Additional Language in their NSC.
- Candidates intending to select isiXhosa First Additional Language in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for isiXhosa Home Language or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR must have passed isiXhosa Language Acquisition 1.
- Candidates intending to select Afrikaans First Additional Language in Foundation Phase Studies must normally have obtained credit for EITHER Afrikaans Home Language or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies 2.

E.9.2 The curriculum for the degree shall include not less than three different Work Integrated Learning opportunities (Teaching Practice) of a total duration of at least 20 weeks.

E.9.3 Candidates are required to be competent in two official languages to be eligible for permanent status as a teacher. If one of these languages is not an official African language, they must also demonstrate conversational competence in such a language.

E.9.4 Candidates may not proceed to the second year of study unless they have

- obtained at least 60 first-year credits.
- E.9.5 Candidates who are repeating first-year courses will normally be placed on a five-year curriculum.
- E.9.6 Candidates may not proceed to the third year of the degree unless they have:
- Obtained a first-year credit in at least one of the following subjects: African Language Studies 1 OR isiXhosa Language Acquisition 1 OR Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1.
  - Obtained at least 60 second-year credits.

E.9.7 Candidates who are repeating courses may have to forego their School Based Teaching Practice block in the third year.

E.9.8 Candidates may not proceed to the fourth year of studies unless they have

- obtained at least 60 third-year credits.
- E.9.9 Candidates who are repeating courses may have to forego their School Based Teaching Practice block in the fourth year.

### **E.9.10 Assessment**

E.9.10.1 A candidate who fails Teaching Practice (Work Integrated Learning) shall be required to repeat Teaching Practice (Work Integrated Learning).

E.9.10.2 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.9.10.3 A candidate who fails a course with a result of 39% or below, or fail the supplementary examination, will be required to repeat the course.

E.9.10.4 ..

E.9.10.5 The degree will be awarded "with distinction" if the candidate achieves a Class 1 pass in the following: Education Studies 3, FPS 3 Home Language, FPS 3 Mathematics, and Teaching Practice 3 (Work Integrated Learning).

## **DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (Foundation Phase Teaching)**

### **(Part-time programme for in-service educators)**

A part-time 480 credit NQF Level 7 BEd (FP) is offered by the Centre for Social Development (CSD) for in-service educators who wish to upgrade their initial teacher education qualifications to a degree. This seven-year part-time qualification pathway may include RPL credits and be no less than 180 new credits.

The BEd degree provides graduates with access to post-graduate studies at an Honours level (NQF Level 8).

### **E.10 Purpose**

All the Bachelor of Education degrees offered for Continuing Professional Development purposes are part-time programmes to

accommodate in-service teachers. It is expected that candidates enrolling for the degree will be working as ‘underqualified’ teachers or as teacher assistants in schools over the period of time that they are registered for the programme. Teachers registered for the programme would thus develop extensive classroom experience over and above the supervised and assessed work integrated learning during their period of registration. The curriculum is designed to ensure that candidates are provided with the required depth of theory, and the required level of supervised and assessed work integrated learning, and the required level of reflection on theory in everyday practice, to attain the minimum level of teaching proficiency required by policy (MRTEQ, 2015) in the specialist phase and teaching subjects for which they register.

### **E.11 Admission requirements**

E.11.1 ECD practitioners, holding a 240 credit NQF Level 5 National Diploma qualification may apply to enter into the part-time programme. These students will be credited with the 120C described in years 1 and 2 of the part time mode of delivery of the programme (60C per year) through credit accumulation and transfer from their prior qualification. Such students would enter the part time programme at the start of year 3 and to complete the programme would need to attain a further 360C (240 at level 6 and 120 at level 7 according to the current NQF level system). Courses are numbered to show during which year of the seven-year part-time degree curriculum they are offered.

E.11.2 Professionally qualified teachers, holding an initial teaching qualification of 360 credits at level 6 (for example, a former three-year College of Education Diploma or a National Professional Diploma in Education (NPDE) 360C qualification at former NQF Level 5) may apply to enter into this qualification with recognition of 180 credits (96 at level 5 and 84 at level 6). These

students will be credited with the 180 credits described in years 1, 2 and 3 of the part-time mode of delivery of the programme (60C per year) through credit accumulation and transfer from their prior qualification. Such students would enter the programme at the start of year 4 and to complete the programme would need to attain a further 300C (180 at level 6 and 120 at level 7 according to the current NQF level system).

E.11.3 Professionally qualified teachers holding an initial teaching qualification of 480 credits at level 6 or above (for example, an Advanced Certificate in Education (120C at former NQF level 6), a former undergraduate Higher Diploma in Education, or a former Further Diploma in Education) may apply to enter into the part-time mode of delivery of this qualification with recognition of 240C (96 at level 5 and 144 at level 6). These students will be credited with 240C described in years 1, 2, 3 and 4 of the part-time mode of delivery of the programme (60C per year) through credit accumulation and transfer from their prior qualification. Such students would enter the programme at the start of year 5 and to complete the programme would need to attain a further 240C (120 at level 6 and 120 at level 7 according to the current NQF level system).

### **E.12 Duration**

E.12.1 For candidates admitted under E.11.1, the duration shall not be less than five years of part-time study

E.12.2 For candidates admitted under E.11.2, the duration shall not be less than four years of part-time study.

E.12.3 For candidates admitted under E.11.3, the duration shall not be less than three years of study.

### **E.13 Curriculum**

<b>Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) (Part-time 5-year) (BDFN2)</b>					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9130035	BDFN201	Education and Professional Studies 3	1	6	10

9130036	BDFN202	English for Teaching 3	1	6	8
9130040	BDFN206	Intro to Mathematics for Teaching	1	5	5
9130041	BDFN207	Foundation Phase Studies 1: First Additional Language	1	6	5
9130042	BDFN208	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language	1	6	5
9130043	BDFN209	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Life Skills	1	6	5
9130044	BDFN210	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Mathematics	1	6	5
9130037	BDFN203	African Indigenous Language for Teaching 3 (Mother-tongue and Non-mother tongue)	1	6	7
9130038	BDFN204	Performance and Multimodalities 1A: Art	1	6	5
9130039	BDFN205	Performance and Multimodalities 1B: Physical Education & Movement	1	6	5
9130045	BDFN211	Education and Professional Studies 4 (Understanding the Whole Child in Context)	2	6	10
9130046	BDFN212	English for Teaching 4	2	6	10
9130047	BDFN213	African Indigenous Language for Teaching 4 (Mother-tongue and Non-mother tongue)	2	6	10
9130048	BDFN214	Understanding the Social and Physical World 2	2	6	10
9130049	BDFN215	Mathematics for Teaching	2	5	10
9130050	BDFN216	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language	2	6	10
9130051	BDFN217	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language	2	6	5
9130052	BDFN218	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills	2	6	5
9130053	BDFN219	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics	2	6	5
9130054	BDFN220	Education and Professional Studies 5 (Philosophy of Education)	3	7	20
9130055	BDFN221	Performance and Multimodalities 2A (Music, Dance, Drama and Physical Education)	3	6	15
9130056	BDFN222	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language (English)	3	6	10
9130057	BDFN223	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language	3	6	10
9130058	BDFN224	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills	3	6	10
9130059	BDFN225	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics	3	6	10
9130060	BDFN226	Education and Professional Studies 6 (The role of language and mediating learning)	4	7	20
9130061	BDFN227	Foundation Phase Studies 4: First Additional Language (English)	4	7	10
9130062	BDFN228	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language	4	7	10
9130063	BDFN229	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Life Skills	4	7	10
9130064	BDFN230	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics	4	7	15

9130065	BDFN231	Understanding the Social and Physical World 3	4	6	15
9130066	BDFN232	Education and Professional Studies 7 (Assessment of Learning)	5	7	20
9130067	BDFN233	Foundation Phase Studies 5: First Additional Language (English)	5	7	15
9130068	BDFN234	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language	5	7	15
9130069	BDFN235	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Life Skills	5	7	15
9130070	BDFN236	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Mathematics	5	7	15

<b>Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) (Part-time 4-year) (BDFN1)</b>					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9130001	BDNFN50	Education and Professional Studies 4 (Understanding the Whole Child in Context)	1	6	10
9130002	BDNFN51	English for Teaching 4	1	6	10
9130003	BDNFN52	African Indigenous Language for Teaching 4 (Mother-tongue and Non-mother tongue)	1	6	10
9130004	BDNFN53	Understanding the Social and Physical World 2	1	6	10
9130010	BDNFN59	Mathematics for Teaching	1	5	10
9130006	BDNFN55	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language	1	6	10
9130007	BDNFN56	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language	1	6	5
9130008	BDNFN57	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills	1	6	5
9130009	BDNFN58	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics	1	6	5
91300011	BDNFN60	Education and Professional Studies 5 (Philosophy of Education)	2	7	20
91300012	BDNFN61	Performance and Multimodalities 2A (Music, Dance, Drama and Physical Education)	2	6	15
91300013	BDNFN62	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language (English)	2	6	10
91300014	BDNFN63	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language	2	6	10
91300015	BDNFN64	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills	2	6	10
91300016	BDNFN65	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics	2	6	10
91300017	BDNFN66	Education and Professional Studies 6 (The role of language and mediating learning)	3	7	20
91300018	BDNFN67	Foundation Phase Studies 4: First Additional Language (English)	3	7	10
91300019	BDNFN68	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language	3	7	10
91300020	BDNFN69	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Life Skills	3	7	10
91300021	BDNFN70	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics	3	7	15



91300022	BDNFN71	Understanding the Social and Physical World 3	3	6	15
91300023	BDNFN72	Education and Professional Studies 7 (Assessment of Learning)	4	7	20
91300024	BDNFN73	Foundation Phase Studies 5: First Additional Language (English)	4	7	15
91300025	BDNFN74	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language	4	7	15
91300026	BDNFN75	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Life Skills	4	7	15
91300027	BDNFN76	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Mathematics	4	7	15

#### E.14 Assessment

E.14.1 Pre-requisites for the selection of Language options in Foundation Phase Studies in the second year:

- Candidates intending to select isiXhosa Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for isiXhosa Home or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for isiXhosa (Mother Tongue) 1.
- Candidates intending to select Setswana Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for Setswana Home or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for Setswana (Mother Tongue) 1.
- Candidates intending to select English Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for English Home or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for English 1, OR have obtained credit for Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1.

E.14.2 Candidates are required to be competent in two official languages to be eligible for permanent status as a teacher. If one of these languages is not an official African language, they must also demonstrate conversational competence in such a language.

E.14.3 Candidates may not proceed to the second year of study unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education and Professional Studies 4

- Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics
  - Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language
- E.14.4 Candidates may not proceed to third year of studies unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education and Professional Studies 5
  - Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics
  - Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language
- E.14.5 Candidates may not proceed to fourth year of study unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education and Professional Studies 6
- Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics
- Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language

E.14.6 The degree shall be awarded with distinction if a candidate obtains a Class 1 pass in the following courses:

- Education and Professional Studies 7
- Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics
- Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language

E.14.7 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.14.8 A candidate who fails a course with a result of 39% or below, or fails the supplementary examination, shall be required to repeat the course.

E.14.9 Normally candidates may be permitted to write no more than 30 credits worth of supplementary examinations in any given year.

E.14.10 Candidates repeating courses with a total credit value of 30 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses.

E.14.11 The degree shall be awarded with distinction if a candidate obtains a Class 1 pass in the following courses:

- Education and Professional Studies 7
- Foundation Phase Studies: Mathematics 4
- Foundation Phase Studies: Home Language 4

## **BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (SENIOR PHASE/FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING TEACHING)**

**(Part-time, in-service)**

The part-time BEd (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching) programme is offered over three years for candidates admitted under E.11.3

### **E.15 Curriculum**

#### **E.15.1 Specialisations**

The following specialisations are offered for the BEd (SP & FET Teaching):

	Major specialisation	Minor specialisation	Minor specialisation
<b>English</b>	English FAL (SP) and English FAL (FET)		School Librarianship (support)
<b>Mathematics</b>	Mathematics (FET)	Mathematics (SP)	Mathematical Literacy (FET)
<b>Mathematics</b>	Mathematics (SP)	Mathematics (FET)	Mathematical Literacy (FET)
<b>Science</b>	Physical Science (FET)	Natural Science (SP)	Mathematics (SP)
<b>Science</b>	Life Science (FET)	Natural Science (SP)	Mathematics (SP)
<b>ICT</b>	ICT in Education (support)	Computer Applications Technology (FET)	Technology (SP)
<b>Life Orientation</b>	Guidance Counselling and Specialised learning support	Life Orientation (FET)	Life Orientation (SP)

#### **E.15.2 Core modules for all specialisations**

<b>Bachelor of Education (Senior Phase/Further Education and Training) (Part-time 3-year) Core Modules</b>			
<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Education Studies 5	1	6	15
Teaching Tools and Technologies 5	1	6	10
Professional Studies 5	1	6	10
Education Studies 6	2	7	15
Teaching Tools and Technologies 6	2	7	10
Professional Studies 6	2	7	10
Education Studies 7	3	7	15
Teaching Tools and Technologies 7	3	7	10
Professional Studies 7	3	7	10

### **Education Studies 5 (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)**

This module introduces students to the study of education in relation to contexts local to the teacher and adolescent learner.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Normally a supplementary examination will not be granted to a candidate who has obtained an examination mark of less than 45%.

### Teaching Tools and Technologies 5 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

This module provides a general introduction to the manner in which literacy provides fundamental skills, tools and technologies to be used in teaching.

Students entering the programme after year 1, will submit evidence of competence in order to determine if they need to attend this course.

Assessment: Class record 100%

### Professional Studies 5 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

This module introduces professional issues relating to teaching in the classroom, school and the South African education system.

Assessment: Class record 100%

#### E.16 Assessment

E.16.1 Candidates may not proceed to the second year of study unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education Studies 5
- Major Specialisation subject 5

E.16.2 Candidates may not proceed to third year of studies unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education Studies 6
- Major Specialisation 6

E.16.3 The degree shall be awarded with distinction if a candidate obtains a Class 1 pass in the following courses:

- Education Studies 7
- Major Specialisation 7

E.16.4 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.16.5 A candidate who fails a course with a result of 39% or , or fails the supplementary examination shall be required to repeat the course.

E.16.6 Normally candidates may be permitted to write no more than 30 credits worth of supplementary examinations in any given year.

E.16.7 Candidates repeating courses with a total credit value of 30 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses.

### POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching)

The PGCE is a 120-credit qualification at NQF Level 7 offered by the Department of Secondary & Post-School Education.

#### E.17 Purpose

The PGCE is a 'capping' qualification for persons wanting to become qualified as professional educators in schooling after having completed an appropriate Bachelor's degree (at least 360 credits) other than a BEd or an appropriate 360 credit NQF 6 diploma that is recognised by the DHET as per the DHET circular of 5 February 2015. The PGCE provides access to the BEd Honours degree at NQF Level 8.

#### E.18 Admission requirements

The entrance requirements for the course are:

E.18.1 The candidate has been awarded an appropriate bachelor's or higher degree.

E.18.2 The candidate selects from the tables below, two different school subjects to teach - one at the Senior Phase level and one at the Further Education and Training.

E.18.3 ..

E.18.4 ..

### UNIVERSITY SUBJECT REQUIREMENTS SENIOR PHASE TEACHING (GRADES 7-9)

School subject	University subject(s) and minimum year level required
Creative Arts	At least two subjects from a range of appropriate Arts subjects, one of which must be at a second-year level e.g. Music, Drama, Anthropology, Classics, Dance Studies, Visual Arts, Design, Theatre Arts.

Economic and Management Sciences	A combination of any two of the following subjects, one of which must be at a second-year level; Accounting, Management or Economics.
Languages - First Additional Language	English: English 2 AND one of the following: English and Linguistics 1, Applied Language Studies 1, African Literature 1, Literary Theory 1, Communication and Media Studies 1. isiXhosa: isiXhosa (Mother-Tongue) 2 OR isiXhosa (Additional Language) 3 Afrikaans: Afrikaans 2
Languages - Home Language	A second-year level in that language
Life Orientation	A combination of two of the following subjects, one of which must be at second year level; Psychology, Philosophy, Anthropology, Sociology, Social Work, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Politics, Labour Studies, Industrial Studies. Psychology MUST be one of the subjects.
Mathematics	Mathematics 2
Natural Sciences	A combination of at least one subject from Life Sciences AND Physical Sciences, one of which must be at a second-year level; e.g. Botany, Biology, Chemistry, Earth Sciences, Geography, Geology, Physics, Zoology, Physical Geography, Environmental Science, Biological Sciences.
Social Sciences	Geography 2 and History 1 OR History 2 and Geography 1
Technology	At least two subjects from a range of appropriate technology-related subjects, one of which must be at a second-year level e.g. Practical Art, Computer Science, Design Studies, Physics, Chemistry, Mathematics. Each application to be examined and decided on its merits, including consideration of NSC subjects.

\*Introductory courses do not meet the requirements

### UNIVERSITY SUBJECT REQUIREMENTS FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING TEACHING (GRADES 10-12)

School subject	University subject(s) and minimum year level required
Accounting	Accounting 3
Business Studies	Management 3
Information Technology	Computer Science 3 OR Computer Science 2 AND Information Systems 3
Computer Applications Technology	Computer Science 2 OR Information Systems 3
Design	A combination of subjects from a range of appropriate technology-related subjects, one of which must be at a third-year level; e.g. Fine Art Practice, Computer Science, Design Studies, Physics, Chemistry, Mathematics, Engineering, Graphic Design, Architecture, Fashion Design, Interior Design. Each application to be examined and decided on its merits, including consideration of matric subjects.
Dramatic Arts	Drama 3
Economics	Economics 3
Geography	Geography 3 or Environmental Science 3
History	History 3

Language - First Additional Language	The particular language at third-year level English: English 3 AND one of the following: Linguistics 1, Applied Language Studies 1, African Literature 1, Literacy Theory 1, Communication and Media Studies 1 OR English 1 + Linguistics 2 isiXhosa: isiXhosa (Mother Tongue) 3 OR isiXhosa (Additional Language) 3 Afrikaans: Afrikaans 3
Language - Home Language	The particular language at third-year level e.g. English 3 OR English 2 AND Linguistics 2, Applied Language Studies 2, African Literature 2, Literacy Theory 2, Communications and Media Studies 2 isiXhosa (Mother Tongue) 3 Afrikaans 3
Life Orientation	Psychology 3 AND one of the following subjects; Philosophy, Anthropology, Sociology, Social Work, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Politics, Labour Studies, Industrial Studies at first-year level.
Life Sciences	Combination of any two of the following: Biological Sciences, Biochemistry, Microbiology, Physiology, Biology, and Zoology, with one taken at third-year level at least, is required to specialise in Life Sciences Teaching, provided that first-year modules in Biology or Botany and Zoology are also included.
Marine Sciences	A combination of subjects ranging from the following fields: Environmental Sciences, Economics, Sociology, Geography, Biochemistry, Chemistry, Physics, Microbiology, Physiology, Biology, Botany, Zoology and Ichthyology, with one of the subjects taken at the third-year level provided that second-year modules in Zoology or Botany are also included. Each application would be considered on its individual merit.
Mathematics	Mathematics 3 OR Mathematics 2 AND Mathematics Stats 2/Applied Mathematics 2
Mathematical Literacy	Matric Mathematics and one or more of a range of subjects in the Mathematical field at second-year level: Applied Mathematics, Statistics, Mathematical Modelling, Numerical Analysis, Dynamics and Mechanics. Each application will be considered on merit.
Music	Musicology 3 + Instrument at 2nd year level + Theory of Music (Grade 8) + Piano (Grade 5)
Physical Sciences	Physics 3 AND Chemistry 1 OR Physics 1 AND Chemistry 3
Visual Arts	Art History and Visual Culture 2 AND Fine Art Practice 2 e.g. Drawing, Multimedia, Painting, Sculpture, Printmaking, Ceramic Art, Fibre and Textiles, Heavy Metal and Jewellery Arts.

\*Introductory courses do not meet the requirements

\*Any PGCE method subject will only be offered if enough students register for that method subject.

**E.19 Duration** one year full-time study.

The duration of the course shall not be less than

**E.20 Curriculum**

Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Senior Phase & Further Education Training Teaching) (PGCSP)					
Course code	Mnemonic	Course name	Year	NQF level	Credits
9061100	PGCSP1	Education Studies (PGCSP)	1	7	42
9061102	PGCSP3	Community Engaged Research (PGCSP)	1	7	4
*		Teaching Method 1 (FET)	1	7	24
*		Teaching Practice 1 (FET)	1	7	13
**		Teaching Method 2	1	7	24

**		Teaching Practice 2	1	7	13
9061101	PGCSP2	Computer Literacy (PGCSP)	1	5	0
9061167	PGCSP68	Lang Endorsement (ENG) (PGCSP)	1	5	0
9061168	PGCSP69	Lang Endorsement (XHO) (PGCSP)	1	5	0
9061169	PGCSP70	Lang Endorsement (AFR) (PGCSP)	1	5	0
<p><b>*At least one/two teaching subject from the following FET range:</b> Accounting, Afrikaans, Life Science, Information Technology, Business Studies, English Home Language, Visual Arts, Geography, Life Orientation, History, Mathematics, Music, Physical Science, isiXhosa Home Language, Dramatic Arts, Design, Computer Applications Technology, Mathematics Literacy, Economics, isiXhosa First Additional Language, English First Additional Language, Afrikaans First Additional Language, French First Additional Language, Practical Music;</p> <p><b>**and/or another teaching subject from the following Senior Phase range:</b> Afrikaans, Economic &amp; Management Science, English Home Language, Natural Science, Life Orientation, Arts &amp; Culture, isiXhosa Home Language, isiXhosa First Additional Language, English First Additional Language, Afrikaans First Additional Language, French First Additional Language, Mathematics, Social Science.</p>					

E.20.1 Candidates will be required to do a minimum of 10 weeks of Teaching Practice (Work Integrated Learning).

#### **E.21 Assessment**

E.21.1 A candidate who fails Teaching Practice (WIL) shall be required to repeat Teaching Practice (WIL).

E.21.2 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.21.3 A candidate who fails a course with a result of 39% or below, or fails the supplementary examination, shall be required to repeat the course.

E.21.4 A candidate who fails three or more courses shall be required to repeat the entire curriculum for the certificate.

E.21.5 The certificate will be awarded “with distinction” if a candidate obtains a Class 1 pass for Education Studies, a Class 1 pass in at least one of the Teaching Practice Methods and a Class 1 pass in at least one of the following: Teaching Method 1, Teaching Method 2 or the remaining Teaching Practice Method.

E.21.6 A candidate who fails Education Studies or one of the Teaching Methods, with a result between 40% and 49%, shall be permitted to write a supplementary examination in that course at the beginning of the following year.

E.21.7 A candidate who fails Education Studies or one of the Teaching Method courses at 39% or below, or who fails the supplementary examination in any of these courses, shall be required to re-attend the course.

E.21.8 A candidate who fails two or more of Education Studies, Teaching Method 1, Teaching Method 2, Teaching Practice Method 1 or Teaching Practice Method 2, shall normally be required to re-attend the entire curriculum for the certificate.

E.21.9 A candidate who fails a Teaching Method, shall normally also be required to repeat the Teaching Practice along with the Teaching Method.

### **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION (for lecturers)**

The PGDip (HE) for lecturers is a 120-credit qualification at NQF Level 8 offered by the Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning (CHERTL).

#### **E.22 Purpose**

The PGDip (HE) aims to facilitate the professional development of lecturers as reflexive practitioners in Higher Education (HE) by developing their knowledge of HE as a field of study. The course is designed to assist lecturers to enhance their ability to facilitate, manage and assess students’ learning as well as

provide professional accreditation for HE practitioners.

### **E.23 Admission requirements**

The admission requirements are:

E.23.1 A Level 8 or above qualification on the Higher Education Qualifications Sub-Framework (HEQSF).

E.23.2 A candidate is employed as a lecturer at a higher education institution for the duration of registration.

E.23.3 A candidate must be proficient in both oral and written formal English.

E.23.4 A candidate must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

### **E.24 Duration**

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates.

Candidates who require more than two years to complete the qualification need to apply for permission from the Dean of Education.

### **E.25 Curriculum**

<b>Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (PGDHE) designed for Lecturers</b>					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9201018	PGDHE 18	Learning and Teaching in Higher Education	1	8	30
9201019	PGDHE 19	Curriculum Development	1	8	30
9201020	PGDHE 20	Assessment of Student Learning	2	8	30
9201021	PGDHE 21	Evaluation of Teaching and Courses	2	8	15
9201024	PGDHE 24	Becoming a Reflective Practitioner	1	8	15
9201023	PGDHE 23	Portfolio	2	8	0

E.25.1 Candidates are required to register for five modules as outlined in the table above.

In addition, candidates may register for an elective research module, but no additional credit will be given. Research electives include topics such as: Design and Develop eLearning, Design and Structure Experiential Learning, Supervision of Research in Higher Education, Leadership in Higher Education, Service Learning and Research in Higher Education, Decolonisation or Africanisation of Higher Education, Integrating Sustainable Development Goals into the curriculum.

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION (for Academic Developers)**

The PGDip (HE) for Academic Developers is a 120-credit qualification at NQF Level 8 (honours level) offered by CHERTL.

### **E.26 Purpose**

The purpose of the PGDip (HE) for academic developers is to advance academic developers' knowledge of higher education as a field of study and to enable them to conceptualise, design and implement formal and informal academic development initiatives (with a particular focus on academic staff development) appropriate to their specific contexts.

### **E.27 Admission requirements**

The admissions requirements are:

E.27.1 Normally a Level 9 qualification on the HEQSF.

E.27.2 A candidate has to be employed as an academic developer or in a cognate role at a higher education institution

E.27.3 A candidate must be proficient in both oral and written formal English

E.27.4 A candidate must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

### E.28 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time

candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates. Candidates who require more than two years to complete the qualification need to apply for permission from the Dean of Education.

### E.29 Curriculum

Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (PGDHE1) for Academic Developers					
Course code	Mnemonic	Course name	Year	NQF level	Credits
9201011	PGDHE 11	Higher Education Context	1	8	20
9201012	PGDHE 12	Quality Assurance of Teaching and Learning	1	8	20
9201013	PGDHE 13	Academic Development Initiatives	2	8	20
9201014	PGDHE 14	Learning and Teaching in Higher Education	2	8	20
9201015	PGDHE 15	Curriculum Development	1	8	20
9201016	PGDHE 16	Assessment of Student Learning	2	8	20
9201017	PGDHE 17	Portfolio	2	8	-

E.29.1 Candidates are required to complete six core modules as outlined in the table above.

### E.30 Assessment (for all PGDip (HE) programmes)

E.30.1 Each core module of the course is assessed through a coursework assignment. Candidates are required to complete and pass the assignments for all core modules.

E.30.2 A candidate may only proceed to Year 2 if they have passed at least two modules in Year 1.

E.30.3 Candidates will be required to submit an integrated, evidence-based portfolio for final assessment of the qualification.

E.30.4 Candidates may be required to present themselves for an oral defence of their portfolios.

E.30.5 Candidates who obtain between 40% and 49% for their portfolio may be granted an extended Duly Performed (DP) to enable them to re-submit their portfolio for assessment.

E.30.6 The diploma will be awarded with distinction if the candidate achieves 75% or more for the portfolio.

The PGDip (SL) is a 120-credit interdisciplinary qualification at NQF Level 8 offered by the Department of Secondary and Post-School Education in collaboration with the Department of Environmental Science.

### E.31 Purpose

The PGDip (SL) is designed to give students the ability to understand, critique, plan and implement socially-engaged learning processes aimed in turn at supporting society to transition to social- ecological sustainability. The qualification responds to intensifying environmental degradation which puts human health and the sustainability of rural and urban communities at risk. The PGDip seeks to complement graduates' existing technical and academic skills in order to help them navigate the intersecting social, cultural, economic, ecological, political and technological dimensions of a variety of current work contexts. The qualification is relevant in a range of sectors (e.g., environmental officers in local and provincial government; community activists; environmental journalists; agricultural extension workers; educators in the biodiversity sector; and community development facilitators) and to a

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN SUSTAINABILITY LEARNING



range of disciplines including Environmental Science, Journalism, Education, Geography, Fine Arts, Drama, Sociology and Anthropology.

### E.32 Admission requirements

E.32.1 A Level 7 or above qualification on the Higher Education Qualifications Sub-Framework (HEQSF). A Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) application process is available to candidates who do not have a Level 7 qualification. Requirements are as specified by the Faculty RPL process.

E.32.2 A candidate would normally work, or aspire to work, in a context where sustainability-oriented processes are designed and/or implemented.

E.32.3 A candidate must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

### E.33 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates. Candidates who require more than two years to complete the qualification need to apply for permission from the Dean of Education.

### E.34 Curriculum

<b>Postgraduate Diploma in Sustainability Learning (PGDSL)</b>					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course Name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9062001	PGD01	Foundations of Sustainability Learning	1	8	50
9062002	PGD02	Introduction to Interdisciplinary Social Science Research	1	8	10
9062003	PGD03	Action Research Change Project	2	8	30
9062004	PGD04	Evaluation as Learning	2	8	10
		Elective Course A (choose one from available options)	2	8	10
		Elective Course B (choose one from available options)	2	8	10

E.34.1 A candidate for the Diploma must register for all prescribed courses, noting that the range of available elective courses may vary from year to year. (For further curriculum information, refer to the Secondary and Post-School Education departmental entry).

### E.35 Assessment

E.35.1 Regardless of format, all summative assessments shall be subject to the University's examination rules and shall be submitted during the University's examination period.

E.35.2 Part-time candidates may not proceed to the second year of study unless they have obtained credit in both first-year courses:

- Foundations of Sustainability Learning

- Introduction to Interdisciplinary Social Science Research.

E.35.3 To pass Foundations of Sustainability Learning, a candidate must achieve a final mark (comprising the class record and the exam mark) of at least 50%.

E.35.4 To be eligible to write the Foundations of Sustainability Learning examination, a candidate must achieve a class record of at least 45%.

E.35.5 A candidate who fails the examination for Foundations of Sustainability Learning with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.35.6 A candidate who fails the examination for Foundations of Sustainability Learning with a result of 39% or below or fails the

supplementary examination (49% and below) shall be required to repeat the course when it is next offered.

E.35.7 Due to the continuous and integrated nature of assessment, a candidate who fails any course other than Foundations of Sustainability Learning with less than 50% will normally have to repeat the course when it is next offered.

E.35.8 The Diploma shall be awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a Class 1 pass (75% and above) in the following courses:

- Foundations of Sustainability Learning
- Action Research Change Project
- One other 10-credit course

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION HONOURS

The Bachelor of Education Honours degree is a 120-credit qualification at NQF Level 8. The Bachelor of Education Honours provides access to a 180-credit NQF Level 9 Master of Education/Professional Master's degree in Education.

### E.36 Purpose

The Bachelor of Education Honours is the first postgraduate degree in education. It is intended to prepare students for research-based postgraduate studies in a particular field of education. It serves to consolidate and deepen the student's expertise and theoretical engagement in educational practice, and develop

research capacity in the methodology and techniques of educational research.

### E.37 Admission requirements

The admission requirements for the course are:

E.37.1 A four-year professional teaching degree OR

E.37.2 An appropriate bachelor's degree and a recognised professional teaching qualification OR

E.37.3 A four-year professional teaching qualification as well as an Advanced Diploma in a cognate subfield of Education at NQF Level 7.

E.37.4 A candidate must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

E.37.5 The satisfactory fulfilment of the requirements of the selection process.

### E.38 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates.

### E.39 Curriculum

A Bachelor of Education Honours General candidate must obtain credit in the two foundation courses (Educational Issues and Ideas and Research in Education) and in two elective courses. A Bachelor of Education Honours Specialisation candidate must obtain credit in the two foundation courses (Educational Issues & Ideas and Research in Education) and a specialisation A and B course. See table below.

<b>Bachelor of Education (Honours) - General OR Specialisation</b>					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF Level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9045000		Educational Issues and Ideas	1	8	30
9045001		Research in Education	1	8	30
*		Elective A or Specialisation A	2	8	30
*		Elective B or Specialisation B	2	8	30
<p>* <b>TWO</b> of the following <b>electives</b> can be chosen for the BEd Honours (General) degree: Adult Education Processes, Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access, Curriculum Studies, Education Leadership &amp; Management (ELM), English Language Teaching (ELT), Environmental &amp; Sustainability Education, Geography Education, Information and Communication Technology (ICT) in Education, Life Orientation Education, Mathematics Education, Quality Teaching &amp; Learning in Primary Education and Science Education.</p>					

A Bachelor of Education Honours in **ONE** of the following areas of **specialisation may be taken**: Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access, Curriculum Studies, Education Leadership and Management (ELM), English Language Teaching (ELT), Geography Education, Information Communication Technology (ICT) in Education, Mathematics Education, Primary Education and Science Education.

#### E.40 Assessment

E.40.1 All courses are assessed by means of coursework and summative assessments. Coursework (for example, essays, tests and other tasks completed during the year) will comprise a year mark. Summative assessments (for example, written examinations, research reports, seminar presentations, portfolios or a combination of these) will comprise the examination mark. The year mark and the examination mark will normally be weighted equally (50:50) in the calculation of the final mark.

E.40.2 Regardless of format, all summative assessments shall be subject to the University's examination rules and be submitted during the University's examination period.

E.40.3 A pass mark for a course is 50% or more, calculated by aggregating the year mark and the final examination mark as described above.

E.40.4 A subminimum of 40% for both the year mark and final examination will normally be required. For example, marks of 40% for the year mark and 60% for the final examination (and vice versa) will normally result in a pass, whereas marks of, for example, 75% and 25% will not.

E.40.5 A candidate must obtain credit in both first-year courses before proceeding to second year studies.

E.40.6 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49%, may be granted a supplementary examination. A candidate may only fail one subject, and fail it only once, over the duration of the degree.

E.40.7 The degree will be awarded with distinction if a candidate achieves an average of 75% across all four courses.

#### MASTER OF EDUCATION

The Master of Education degree is a 180-credit qualification at NQF Level 9.

The MEd provides access to the PhD degree.

**See also General Rules (G.49 to G.61) and the Higher Degrees Guide.**

##### E.41 Purpose

*"The primary purpose of a Master of Education degree is to prepare researchers who could contribute to the development of knowledge in the field of Education, including knowledge about professional practice at an advanced level. A Master of Education degree comprises a significant research component and could be attained in one of two formats by either:*

- completing a single research project, culminating in the production and acceptance of a thesis, or
- successfully completing a course-work programme, requiring a high level of theoretical engagement and intellectual independence, and completing and reporting on a research project, culminating in the acceptance of a dissertation carrying a minimum of 60 credits at level 9.

*Master of Education degree students should be able to deal with complex issues in education – both systematically and creatively. They should make sound judgements, using the data and information at their disposal, and be able to clearly communicate their conclusions to specialist and non-specialist audiences, demonstrate self-direction and originality in analysing and solving problems, act autonomously in planning and implementing tasks at a professional level and continue to advance" (Government Gazette no 38487 February 2015, p.45).*

##### E.42 Admission Requirements

E.42.1 The minimum entry requirement is normally:

- the Bachelor of Education Honours degree, OR
- an appropriate 480 credit Level 8 Professional Bachelor's degree (for example, a Bachelor of Psychology degree), OR
- a relevant Honours degree. A postgraduate diploma may also be recognised as meeting the minimum entry requirement for a cognate Master of Education degree programme, as long as it meets the HEQSF research requirements of at least 30 credits.

E.42.2 For admission to the degree of Master of Education by coursework and research in the fields of Educational Leadership and Management, English Language Teaching, Environmental Education, Primary Education, Mathematics Education, Geography Education, Science Education and Information and Communication Technology, the minimum entry requirement is normally

- EITHER the Bachelor of Education Honours degree OR
- an honours degree plus PGCE or PGDip (HE) with, in each case, a credit in the underlying discipline at least at the second-year level, and at least three years of teaching experience in the field of MED specialisation. This does not apply to Educational Leadership & Management or to Environmental Education.

E.42.3 E.50.3 Candidates may be admitted as Ad Eundem Gradum students as set out in the General Calendar rules (G.49).

### **E.43 Duration**

E.43.1 The degree by coursework and half thesis runs over a two-year cycle with coursework being offered only in alternate years.

E.43.2 Full-time candidates can complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study.

E.43.3 Candidates in the Faculty of Education are required to submit research proposals within 18 months of registration for consideration by the Faculty Higher Degrees Committee which recommends acceptance or otherwise to the relevant Faculty Board.

E.43.4 In terms of Rule G.76.1, candidates are expected to have completed a Master's degree within three years from first registration. Given these timelines, Senate may suspend or cancel the registration of a candidate if they are not satisfied that an extension is warranted. Consequently, candidates should apply to Senate for the extension of their registration period.

E.43.5 The continued registration of MED candidates is conditional on the Dean receiving satisfactory reports on their progress.

## **MASTER OF EDUCATION BY RESEARCH**

### **E.44 Curriculum**

The degree may be undertaken in any field of educational research, depending on availability of supervisory staff.

### **E.45 Duration**

In terms of Rule G.76.1, candidates are expected to have completed a Master's degree within three years from first registration. Given these timelines, Senate may suspend or cancel the registration of a candidate if they are not satisfied that an extension is warranted. Consequently, candidates should apply to Senate for the extension of their registration period.

### **E.46 Assessment**

E.46.1 The research, in the form of a thesis, must show that

- the candidate is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;
- the candidate is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate literature;
- the candidate has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree.
- The thesis is satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

E.46.2 Save for exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for a thesis in the case of a Master's degree by research only will be 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding appendices).

## MASTER OF EDUCATION BY COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH

### E.47 Curriculum for coursework and half thesis

E.47.1 The coursework component should be spread over one year with examinations being written at the end of the year.

E.47.2 The coursework examination must be completed during the first year of study, in order for the candidate to proceed to work on the research in the second year of study.

E.47.3 The coursework component shall be valued at 50% of the final total mark. The thesis shall represent the other 50%.

E.47.4 With due consideration for the more limited nature of the work, the criteria in E.54 above apply equally to the evaluation of the thesis component.

E.47.5 The length of the thesis shall not exceed 30 000 words of text (approximately 100 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding appendices).

### E.48 Curriculum for coursework and research projects

E.48.1 The coursework component should be spread over one year with examinations being written at the end of that year.

E.48.2 The coursework component shall be valued at 50% of the final total mark. The projects shall represent the other 50%.

E.48.3 The projects shall consist of the following components:

- the study and application of a range of research methods used in the social sciences and education. This shall include learning how to conduct research in differing circumstances requiring different approaches, and by undertaking and critically evaluating a range of small-scale research projects using different methods.
- development of the theoretical and practical capacity to critically evaluate research being done in education in South Africa and abroad.

### E.49 Assessment

E.49.1 The overall examination procedure for MEd by coursework and research (half thesis or research projects) shall be as follows:

E.49.2 A candidate must normally obtain a minimum of 60% for the coursework component of the first year of the degree, in order to be allowed to proceed to the research component of the degree.

E.49.3 In order to be awarded the degree, candidates must obtain a minimum of 50% for the research component (half-thesis or research projects) and an aggregated mark of 50% for the coursework component (year mark and examination) and the research component (half-thesis or research projects). Candidates obtaining an aggregate of between 50% and 74% will obtain a pass mark for the MEd degree.

E.49.4 For a distinction to be awarded for the degree, in the case of degree by course work and half theses, the candidate should have obtained a sub-minimum of 70% for both the course work, and the half thesis. The combined mark should be 75% or more.

E.49.5 No supplementary examinations for the coursework component will be permitted.

E.49.6 The examination rules of the thesis and half thesis are identical to those set out in the Higher Degrees Guide.

## DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

The PhD is a 360-credit course at NQF level 10.

***See also General Rules and the Higher Degrees Guide.***

### E.50 Purpose

*“The defining characteristic of a general doctoral degree in the field of education is that it requires the candidate to demonstrate high-level research competence, and to make a significant and original academic contribution at the frontiers of education or in a sub-field of education. The research, which may be purely discipline-based, or multidisciplinary, or applied research, must be undertaken at the most advanced academic level, culminating in the*

*production, defence and acceptance of a thesis. Course work may be conducted as a preparation for, or in support of the research, but may not contribute towards the credit value of the degree. The quality of the research should satisfy peer reviews and merit publication. The graduate should also be able to supervise the research of others in his/her area of specialisation” (Government Gazette no 38487 February 2015).*

#### **E.51 Duration**

E.51.1 In terms of Rule G.76.1, candidates are expected to have completed a PhD within five years from first registration or six years if their PhD was upgraded from a Master’s degree. Given these timelines, Senate may suspend or cancel the registration of a candidate if they are not satisfied that an extension is warranted. Consequently, candidates should apply to Senate for the extension of their registration period.

E.51.2 The continued registration of PhD candidates is conditional on the Dean receiving satisfactory reports on their progress.

#### **E.52 Curriculum**

E.52.1 The degree may be undertaken in any field of educational research, depending on availability of supervisory staff.

E.52.2 A PhD can take either a traditional form or it can be presented in the form of peer-reviewed articles and papers in partial fulfilment of the degree.

#### **E.53 Assessment**

E.53.1 The guideline for the upper length of a PhD thesis (excluding appendices) is 80 000 to 100 000 words. Candidates are cautioned against exceeding this length without careful consideration in consultation with their supervisor(s) on how the length might be viewed by their examiners.

E.53.2 The examination rules are set out in the **Higher Degrees Guide**.

# FACULTY OF HUMANITIES RULES

## RULES FOR DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The Rules that follow apply to the Faculty of Humanities only.

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Humanities:

Name	to be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Arts	<b>BA</b>
Bachelor of Arts with Honours	<b>BA(Hons)</b>
Bachelor of Fine Art	<b>BFA</b>
Bachelor of Music	<b>BMus</b>
Bachelor of Journalism	<b>BJourn</b>
Bachelor of Social Science	<b>BSocSc</b>
Bachelor of Social Science with Honours	<b>BSocSc(Hons)</b>
Master of Arts	<b>MA</b>
Master of Fine Art	<b>MFineArt</b>
Master of Music	<b>MMus</b>
Master of Social Science	<b>MSocSc</b>
Doctor of Philosophy	<b>PhD</b>
Doctor of Literature	<b>DLitt</b>
Doctor of Music	<b>DMus</b>
Doctor of Social Science	<b>DSocSc</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language*	<b>DipESL(PG)</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching*	<b>DipELT(PG)</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in Heritage Management	<b>PgDip Heritage Mgt</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies*	<b>DipIS(PG)</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in Local Government Administration*	<b>DipLGA(PG)</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology*	<b>DipPsychol(PG)</b>
Higher Diploma in Psychology*	<b>HDipPsychol</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism	<b>DipJourn(PG)</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management	<b>DipMedMgmt(PG)</b>

*\* All these degrees and diplomas are not necessarily offered every year.*

### DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS AND BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

#### H.1

The degree of Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Social Science may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an Honours degree.

#### H.2

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.48 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their satisfactory completion of the National Senior Certificate, or other examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent, for at least three years.

### H.3

Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain credit in not less than ten courses; they may present themselves for examination in not more than four of these in the first year of study, and not more than four in the second year of study; provided that:

3.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must have obtained credit in at least two courses before entering on the second course in any subject;

3.2 Candidates with unweighted Admission points higher than 50 will normally be granted permission to take a fifth course in their first year of study;

3.3 Candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in one additional course in the second year of study provided that the Dean of the Faculty is satisfied that the candidate has an above average academic record.

3.4 ...

3.5 In any given semester the final course of a major subject may not be taken in conjunction with more than two other courses, unless approved by the Dean of the Faculty.

### H. 4

Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in two courses, including at least one of the subjects specified in Rule H.5 or H.19; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have passed the final course of a major subject; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

### H.5

Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following subjects:

#### GROUP A

Afrikaans

Anthropology

Art History & Visual Culture

Chinese Studies

Classical Studies

Drama

Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

English (Literary Studies in)

Fine Art Practice

French

German Studies

Greek

History

Industrial and Economic Sociology

Instrumental Music Studies

Iintetho Zobomi\*

isiXhosa

Journalism and Media Studies

Latin

Legal Theory

Modern Fiction\*

Music Culture and History

Music Theory and Analysis

Organisational Psychology

Philosophy

Politics

Psychology

Sociology

Sound Technology

**\*One year, minor course**

NB Please note that not all subjects lead to a 3-year major.

### GROUP B

Group B comprises all other subjects offered by the Faculties of Commerce, Law or Science for credit towards any undergraduate Bachelor's degree at Rhodes University. Candidates taking any course in the Faculty of Commerce, Law or Science shall be governed by that Faculty's rules pertaining to that course.

***NOTE Students are advised to take in their first-year curriculum only courses which lead to possible majors.***

### H.7

A candidate must obtain credit in all the required courses in at least two subjects, to be known as major subjects, which are taken at the third-year level (NQF level 7). At least one such major subject (and 180 NQF credits overall) must be chosen from Group A.



**NOTE** *Candidates who are permitted to register for the final courses of three major subjects in any one year will normally be required to write one in February of the following year.*

#### **H.8**

A candidate must obtain credit in at least four non-initial courses. All second- and third-year courses and Modern Fiction count as non-initial courses.

#### **H.9...**

#### **H.10**

Save in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, candidates

10.1.1 who have obtained a National Senior Certificate or equivalent qualification with German as a subject shall not be permitted to register for the course German Studies 1, as the language component starts at beginners' level.

10.1.2 who are German mother-tongue speakers shall not be permitted to register for German Studies courses, as the language components are at foreign language level.

10.2 who are French mother-tongue speakers will not be allowed to register for French 1.

10.3 who have passed isiXhosa at the National Senior Certificate HL with at least a 50% mark in shall not be permitted to register for the IsiXhosa Language Acquisition course at any level except under exceptional circumstances and on the discretion of the relevant Head of Department in consultation with the Dean of the Faculty.

10.3.2 ...

10.4 who have passed isiXhosa as 2nd or 3rd additional language at the National Senior Certificate level or other equivalent examination may be permitted to proceed to the second level course in IsiXhosa Language Acquisition on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty in consultation with the Head of the School of Languages.

#### **H.11 ...**

#### **H.12**

12.1.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Sociology 1 before proceeding to Industrial and Economic Sociology 2.

12.1.2 A candidate who has passed Industrial and Economic Sociology 2 may take Sociology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has passed Sociology 2 may not take Industrial and Economic Sociology 3 except with permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a satisfactory level of performance must be achieved.

12.2 ...

12.3.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Psychology 1 before proceeding to Organisational Psychology 2.

12.3.2 A candidate who has passed Organisational Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Organisational Psychology 3, except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

#### **H.13**

13.1 Only 120 first-year students gain entry into Journalism and Media Studies 2. Applications are submitted by students and reviewed in committee. The following areas are taken into account: individual academic performance, portfolio of journalistic work completed by students, tutors reports and biographical questionnaires. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 who fails the year

will not be allowed to re-register for a second try, unless permission is granted by the Head of School.

13.2 A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 2 will not automatically be admitted to the four-year degree but will be permitted to take Journalism and Media Studies 3 as a major in the Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Social Science degree. Entry into Journalism and Media Studies 3 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 50% for both the Media Studies and Production components of the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course. A candidate who fails to obtain 50% for one of the components but passes on aggregate will be granted a non-continuing pass. No such candidate shall be permitted to re-register for the course or rewrite the examination, unless permission is granted by the Head of School. A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will be able to complete a Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Social Science degree

**H.14...**

**H.15...**

**H.16...**

**H.17** Credit shall not be given for:

17.1 ...

17.2

17.3 Psychology 2 and Organisational Psychology 2 or for Psychology 3 and Organisational Psychology 3.

17.4 Sociology 2 and 3 and also for Industrial and Economic Sociology 2 and 3.

17.5 ...

**H.18**

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in Class I in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

The following additional Rules apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Social Science degree:

### H.19

Candidates may present themselves for examination in subjects chosen from at least two of Groups A, B or C and, except under exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the curriculum must be in conformity with the conditions applying to each Group.

At least five courses, including at least one major subject must be chosen from Group C:

GROUP C:

Anthropology; Economics; Industrial and Economic Sociology; Journalism and Media Studies; Organisational Psychology; Politics; Psychology; Sociology.

**NOTE: If Economics is chosen as a major subject the other major must be chosen from Group A or B (as listed in H.5 above).**

1. ...

2. *Candidates who do not satisfy the Faculty of Commerce entry requirements for first time entering students may not be registered for more than one of Management 1, Accounting 1, Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2.*

**H.20** Students majoring in TWO Group C subjects, must be registered for a Bachelor of Social Science degree.

**H.21 ...**

**H.22...**

## The Humanities Extended Studies Programme

Special provision is made in the Faculty of Humanities to accommodate students who would not normally be admitted to the curricula for the degrees of BA, BSocSc or BJourn. A limited number of credit-earning courses are offered from which a curriculum suited to the needs of each student admitted to the Extended Studies Programme will be drawn up at Registration by the Dean, in consultation with appropriate Heads of Departments. Because of the nature of the

programme, the number of students admitted to it in any one year will be limited.

The structure of the first-year programme shall normally consist of:

Academic and Computer Literacies (non-credit bearing) *plus* 2 full courses from the following two options:

Anthropology and Journalism & Media Studies OR  
Politics and Sociology, plus the Extended Studies support course\*.

\* ES support courses are non-credit bearing courses

## THE HONOURS DEGREE

*The Rules that follow apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Arts (Honours) and Bachelor of Social Science (Honours) degrees.*

### H.23

The Honours degree may be taken in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

*NOTE: The Faculty offers Interdisciplinary Honours degrees in African Studies, Development Studies, Gender Studies, Industrial Relations and any other inter-departmental and inter-faculties programs. See the entry under "Interdepartmental Studies" in the Calendar.*

### H.24

24.1 A candidate who has been awarded the ordinary degree, or has been admitted to the status thereof or, being a graduate of another Faculty, has passed such examinations as are deemed by the Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the Honours degree, or has completed all the requirements thereof except the requirement regarding attendance, may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.31-H.35 inclusive, be admitted to the course for the Honours degree.

24.2 For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1), candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the said requirements and pursue a course of advanced study in their chosen subject.

24.3 As an alternative to sub-paragraph (1), a candidate who has been registered at Rhodes University for a minimum of two years prior to the application, may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.26 and H.27 and H.31, be admitted to the course for the Honours degree from the beginning of the third academic year of study for the ordinary degree. This is subject to the following conditions:

24.3.1. That such a candidate has passed with distinctions at least two of their majors both at first and second years, inclusive of the subject of their Honours application

24.3.2 That such a candidate shall apply for admission to an Honours degree, and the application is subject to special permission being granted to such a candidate by the Dean in consultation with the Head of the relevant academic Department of Faculty

24.3.3 That such a candidate who registers for this special Honours shall deregister from the general degree the moment his or her acceptance to study for an Honours degree is confirmed.

24.3.4 This rule shall not apply to students transferring from other academic institutions.

24.4 ...

24.5 ...

### H.25

25.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the Honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department or Departments concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to an Honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year in the subject in which they wish to take Honours.

25.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided

25.2.1 that they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to Honours in that subject;

25.2.2 that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

25.2.3 that the Board of the Faculty approves such arrangements.

25.3 Except for the Honours degree in African Studies and the Honours degrees in Development Studies, Gender Studies, and any other related programs, candidates may normally not present themselves for examination in more than two subjects.

25.4 If more than 60% of the Honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

#### **H.26**

Candidates taking the Honours degree under Rule H.23 will be required to study and complete their Honours degree within two years of registering for it.

**H.27** Candidates that are registered for the Honours degree under rule 24.3. are subject to the same assessment rules that apply to any conventional Honours degree program of the Faculty, except that they will normally be expected to complete the degree in two years and that this program shall be taken only by part-time students.

27.1 ...

27.2 ...

27.3 ...

#### **H.28**

The periods referred to in Rule H.24 are the periods of full-time study required of an Honours degree candidate. Such candidates may not take up any fulltime employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another Department concurrently with their Honours degree.

#### **H.29**

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit students to take an Honours course as a part-time student: provided that

29.1 they attend the Honours classes within the normal timetable of the Department, and

29.2 the Honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, not more than two years.

#### **H.30**

Candidates taking the Honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

#### **H.31**

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Honours degree in terms of Rule H.24.3, unless they have obtained credit in not less than eight courses

#### **H.32**

32.1 Other than for the candidates admitted under Rule 24.3, all candidates shall not be admitted to any joint Honours degree, unless they have obtained at least a NQF Level 7 credit in each of two of the subjects they wish to take for Honours degree.

32.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Honours degree in African Studies unless they have a major in at least one of the following: African Languages, Anthropology, Economics, History, Industrial and Economic Sociology, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology or Sociology. Students will normally be expected to offer at least two papers in the Honours programme conducted by a Department in which they majored.

#### **H.33**

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the Honours degree unless they have obtained credit in such compulsory ancillary courses as may be prescribed for that course.

#### **H.34**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, Honours degree candidates may not present

themselves more than once for examination for the Honours degree in the same subject.**H.35**

Candidates must write all parts of the examination, other than the translation test (if required) at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination: provided that part-time candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write part of their examination at the end of their first year of study and part at the end of their second year of study.

**NB** *Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, a research essay must be handed in before or at the same time as the other examinations are written. Normally a research essay of a maximum of 15 000 words shall be regarded as the equivalent of one paper.*

### **H.36**

A candidate who has been admitted to the course for the Honours degree in terms of Rule H.24.3, and has failed to satisfy the examiners, may, subject to permission from the Dean of the Faculty, be permitted to re-register for outstanding courses offered for the ordinary degree.

### **H.37**

Candidates who have obtained the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism may be accepted as candidates for the Honours or Master's degree in Journalism and Media Studies, provided that the candidate has passed such examinations as could be deemed by Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the relevant degree. Candidates wishing to enrol for the Master's degree may be required to complete one or more papers from the Honours degree and must satisfy the General Rules governing the Master's degree in the Faculty of Humanities.

## **FINE ART**

### **DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ART**

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Department of Fine Art only. Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

### **H.38**

38.1 A candidate for the degree must obtain credit in:

38.1.1 Two 30-credit courses in any subject approved by the Board of the Faculty, which would normally be taken during the first two years of study;

38.1.2 All the courses listed below:

#### **First year**

##### *Fine Art Practice 1 (FAP 1A + FAP 1B)*

Students are introduced to specialist media and diverse working methods through a series of projects in drawing, painting, sculpture, photography, print media and digital arts.

##### *Art History & Visual Culture 1 (AHV 101 + AHV 102)*

The course introduces students to the context of 'art history' and 'visual culture', and addresses the politics of visibility.

#### **Second year**

##### *Fine Art Practice 2 (FAP 2A + FAP 2B)*

Students continue their study of specialist media and diverse working methods through a series of projects in drawing, painting, sculpture, photography, print media and digital arts.

##### *Art History & Visual Culture 2*

Art History & Visual Culture 2 examines the concept of authorship in artistic practice.

#### **Third year**

##### *Fine Art Practice 3*

Each student is based in a specialist media area (Digital Arts, Painting, Photography, print media, Sculpture) but, by arrangement with the appropriate staff, is encouraged to work across the

media areas. Teaching is primarily via projects and self-directed study.

### *Art History & Visual Culture 3*

The course focuses on the overall theme of “Art, Power and Society”, deconstructing various politics of display, discourse and visual languages at work in the field of visual arts and culture.

### **Fourth year**

#### *Fine Art Practice 4*

Each student is based in a specialist media area (Digital Arts, Painting, Photography, Printmaking, Sculpture) but, by arrangement with the appropriate staff, is encouraged to work across the media areas. Lecturers direct students in such a way that they are able to develop their own areas of exploration rather than completing projects.

### *Art History & Visual Culture 4*

This course, which is only for BFA students, comprises two courses and a research essay.

### **H.39**

With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than two courses additional to those prescribed in Rule H.38.

**H.40** The BFA Degree may be awarded to students who have at minimum AHV 101 or AHV 102, AHV 2, AHV 3 and AHV 4 alongside FAP 1A, FAP 2A, FAP 3 and FAP 4. Students must have additional subjects to make up the 480 NQF credit requirement for the BFA Degree.

### **H.41**

41.1 Candidates who fail Art History & Visual Culture 101 or Art History & Visual Culture 102, must obtain credit in at least one of these before proceeding to the next year of study. Candidates who fail Art History & Visual Culture 2 must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

41.2 Candidates who fail in any other course must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

### **H.42**

Fine Art Practice: In first, second and third year, work will be examined via two assessments, one in

mid-year and one at the end of the year. In fourth year, work will be examined via work-in-progress assessment in midyear, and summative assessment at the end of the year.

### **H.43**

The Degree certificate of candidates who pass in Class I of the final examination shall be endorsed with distinction in Fine Art Practice and/or Art History & Visual Culture, as the case may be.

## FINE ART OPTIONS FOR THE BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREE

***NOTE: Candidates may major in Art History & Visual Culture in the BA without doing Fine Art Practice.***

Students undertaking a BA degree in the Faculty of Humanities may also obtain Fine Art credits by the following routes:

- BA students may only major in Fine Art Practice if they also major in Art History & Visual Culture.
- BA students may study Art History & Visual Culture without studying Fine Art Practice.

## DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ART

Two options are offered for this degree, Option A and Option B.

**Option A:** The examination comprises an exhibition of studio work and the presentation of a mini thesis. The exhibition of studio work that the candidate submits for examination will be artwork produced since admission to the degree. It should be supplemented by a presentation of sketchbooks and/or other appropriate evidence of research and development. The mini thesis should be between 12 000 and 15 000 words and should be on a topic related to the candidate's studio work. The two components form an integrated submission and are assessed as such. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The completed mini thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least three

days before studio work is submitted for examination.

*A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the studio work and mini thesis is given to each candidate.*

**Option B:** The examination comprises an exhibition that the candidate has curated in a major museum and a thesis. Unless the candidate is already employed in the museum sector, completing the curriculum will require him or her to undertake an internship in the museum hosting his or her exhibition. The final mark for the degree comprises 50% for the exhibition and 50% for the thesis. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The completed thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least two weeks before the exhibition is submitted for examination. *A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the exhibition and thesis is given to each candidate.*

## MASTER OF ARTS (THESIS)

A thesis must be submitted for examination on any approved topic within the fields of Art History and Visual Culture. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's rules governing Master's degrees by thesis apply.

## DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanities rules governing Doctoral Degrees apply. No candidate may be admitted who is not already in possession of a Master's Degree in Fine Art or History of Art or any other qualification deemed by the Senate to be equivalent for the purpose of entrance to this degree.

## MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY

### Curriculum for BMus degree

#### First year

Instrumental Music Studies 1

Music Culture and History 1 (Ethnomusicology 101 + Musicology 102)

Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102

Sound Technology 1S1 OR one Humanities or Science course

#### Second year

Instrumental Music Studies 2

Music Culture and History (Musicology 201 + Ethnomusicology 202)

Music Theory and Analysis 2

Sound Technology 1S1 or 2 OR one Humanities or Science course

#### Third year

Instrumental Music Studies 3

Students choose two of the following courses:

IMS 3, MCH 3 and MTA 3

#### Fourth year

Students must do five papers or their equivalent in credit points (5)

*Compulsory:* At least one of the following:

Paper 1: Extended essay (2) or

Paper 2: Full Recital (2) or

Paper 3: Full Composition Portfolio (2)

*Options:* Remaining credit points are acquired from the following courses. If Paper 1 has not been chosen, the options must include Musicology 4, or Analysis 4, or Ethnomusicology 4. All options are not necessarily offered every year.

Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)

Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)

Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)

Paper 7: Sound Technology (1)

Paper 8: Short composition portfolio (1)

Paper 9: Short public performance (1)

\*Paper 10: Instrumental Music Studies 4 (1)

Paper 11: Conducting (1)

Paper 12: Chamber Music Recital (1)

Paper 13: Concerto Performance (1)

Paper 14: Music Education (1)

Paper 15: Arts Management (1)

*\*Paper 10 may not be taken in conjunction with Papers 2 and / or 9.*

### **BA, BSocSc and BSc degrees with Music as a major**

Normally not more than FIVE music subjects may be taken in the BA/BSocSc or FOUR in a BSc degree (see the relevant Faculty Rules).

#### **First year courses**

Students may choose from the following:

Instrumental Music Studies 1

Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102

Music Culture and History 101 and/or 102

Sound Technology 1

#### **Second year courses**

Students may choose from the following:

Instrumental Music Studies 2

Music Culture and History 201 and/or 202

Music Theory and Analysis 2

Sound Technology 2

#### **Third year courses**

Students may choose one of the following:

Instrumental Music Studies 3

Music Culture and History 3

Music Theory and Analysis 3

### **MUSIC HONOURS (BA OR BSC)**

Curriculum and syllabi are identical to BMus Fourth Year

#### **NB**

*All Instrumental Music Studies students are required to take part in at least one approved ensemble: RU Chamber Choir, Opera / Vocal Ensemble, Jazz Ensemble, Flute Ensemble, Guitar Ensemble, String Ensemble, etc. for the duration of their course of study. Please note that tuition in and examination of the ensemble component (or second instrument) of Instrumental Music Studies is in addition to these requirements. Attendance of a minimum of three quarters of the rehearsal schedule is obligatory.*

### **DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC**

*See also the General Rules for Master's degrees.*

A Master's degree may be awarded by submission of:

- (i) a thesis,
- (ii) a portfolio of compositions\*,
- (iii) two public recitals\*(60%) and mini-thesis (40%)
- (iv) two public recitals (60%) and short composition portfolio (40%)

*See also the General Rules for the Degree of Master.*

*\*Any culture or style may be included.*

### **DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY**

*See also the General Rules for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.*

In addition to, or in modification of these Rules, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the PhD degree is required to submit for the approval of the Senate a thesis or a set of compositions. A candidate who submits a set of compositions in place of a thesis shall be required to submit 3 copies of the compositions.
2. A special treatise may be offered as a thesis on a subject previously approved by the Senate.
3. A set of compositions must consist of at least three substantial original compositions (not less than 70 minutes in duration), the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and the Departmental Postgraduate Research Committee.
4. Where compositions are submitted, the candidate must also submit an explanatory statement (not less than 25 000 words) referring to important aspects of the scores, including in particular a description of the form or forms employed and of any contrapuntal, harmonic and orchestration devices used. This document should detail the portfolio's theme or contextualising thread. Recordings of compositions are required.



## DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MUSIC (SENIOR DOCTORATE)

The General Rules for the Degree of Doctor, other than Doctor of Philosophy, in all Faculties apply to the degree of Doctor of Music. The set of musical compositions referred to in Regulation G.39 may be printed or in manuscript together with suitable recordings.

In addition, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the degree of DMus is required to submit for the approval of Senate a published work or a set of compositions.
2. The published work must be of historical or theoretical or analytical research in music, and must open new aspects of the subject discussed.
3. A set of compositions must consist of three original compositions, the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and the Departmental Postgraduate Research Committee.

## JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES

### DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF JOURNALISM

#### H.62

Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

#### H.63

63.1 Candidates for the degree must obtain credit in at least eleven courses which must include the following:

63.1.1 Journalism and Media Studies 1, 2, 3 and 4; isiXhosa for Journalism and

63.1.2 all the required courses in a subject to be selected from those major subjects listed in Rule H.7 or Rule S.8 of the Faculty of Science Rules, or Human Kinetics and Ergonomics or Information Systems, or Management.

63.1.3 ...

63.2 The remaining courses must be selected from those Humanities courses listed in Rule H.5; provided that:

63.2.1 Candidates who select a major subject from Rule S.8 must select ancillary courses as prescribed in Rule S.23.

63.2.2 ...

#### NB

*(1) Only 120 first-year students gain entry into Journalism and Media Studies 2. Applications are submitted by students and reviewed in committee. The following areas are taken into account: individual academic performance, portfolio of journalistic work completed by students, tutors reports and biographical questionnaires. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. Candidates wishing to return at a later stage must reapply before the 1st day of Term 4 of the previous year. If a student withdraws from the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course for certified reasons of illness or trauma or is excluded s/he will not be allowed to repeat completed modules or exams, unless permission is granted by the Head of School. These candidates will need to inform the School of their intention to return by the end of the first week of January. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 who fails the year will not be allowed to re-register for a second attempt, unless permission is granted by the Head of School*

*(2) A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 2 will not automatically be admitted to the four-year degree but will be permitted to take Journalism and Media Studies 3 as a major in the Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Social Science degree. Entry into Journalism and Media Studies 3 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 50% for both the Media Studies and Production components of the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course. A candidate who fails to*

*obtain 50% for one of the components but passes on aggregate will be granted a non-continuing pass. A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will be able to complete a Bachelor of Arts degree. Entry into Journalism and Media Studies 4 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 60% for both the Media Studies and Production component of the Journalism and Media Studies 3 course.*

*Candidates accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 4, and who are registered for a Bachelor of Arts degree, may change their registration to Bachelor of Journalism subject to the rules for a Bachelor of Journalism degree being met.*

#### **H.64...**

#### **H.65**

Candidates for the Bachelor of Journalism degree who take their second major from the subjects listed in Rule S.8 must complete three courses from the following basic subjects: Biochemistry, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Economics, Entomology, Geography, Geology, Mathematics, Physics, Psychology, Zoology, Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, Microbiology.

*NOTE Students intending to major in any of the subjects listed in Rule S.8 are referred to the prerequisite subjects listed in Rule S.23.*

#### **H.66**

66.1 ...

66.2 ...

66.3 Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in Journalism and Media Studies 1 and credit in at least one course in one further subject; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have obtained credit in either Journalism 3 or the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.63; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study when they have at least eight credits including the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.63 and

are engaged in the study of Journalism 4; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

66.4 ...

66.5 Candidates shall not be permitted to enter the course Journalism 4 until they have obtained at least nine credits including both third year major courses.

#### **H.67**

The degree certificates of candidates shall be endorsed "with distinction" if they obtain an average mark equivalent to a Class I pass for the modules of their Journalism and Media Studies 4 course taken together.

### **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN JOURNALISM**

#### **H.68**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism and Media Studies (PgDip) if they have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor in any Faculty of the University; provided that a student with a major in Journalism and Media Studies from Rhodes University will not be admitted to courses already covered within that student's major; or

#### **H.69**

Candidates for the Diploma will be admitted on the recommendation of the Head of School. The School reserves the right to limit the enrolment for the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism to 12 students for any one academic year.

#### **H.70**

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain credit in all prescribed courses.(For further curriculum information, refer to the Journalism and Media Studies departmental entry.)

#### **H.71**

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

#### **H.72**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MEDIA MANAGEMENT (FULL-TIME)**

This postgraduate diploma is offered every year.

### **H.73**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any faculty of the University or from other recognised universities.

### **H.74**

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least seven of the eight core modules below with an overall aggregate pass of at least 50% for the combined eight modules:

1. Media Management Contexts, Policy and Institutions
2. Media Management and Leadership
3. Human Resources Management
4. Managing Media Markets, Audiences and Advertising
5. Financial Management and Media Economics
6. Managing Media Content
7. Managing New Media and Convergence
8. Managing Media Distribution and Circulation

### **H.75**

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

### **H.76**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MEDIA MANAGEMENT (PART-TIME, DISTANCE)**

Candidates may be admitted to the two-year, part-time and mostly online course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management if they have been admitted to the degree or status of a bachelor in any faculty of the University or from other recognized universities. Consideration will be given to admit students based on the Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) provided that these students have been in the media industry for at least five years

and have a diploma and/or advanced certificate in a cognate discipline (e.g. Diploma in Journalism or Advanced Certificate in Journalism; Marketing and Communications, etc.). The numbers of RPL students each year will be capped at 10% of the total student cohort of that year of online students.

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in all of the four modules offered in the first year to progress to the second and final year, where the candidate must pass at least an additional three other modules and the academic portfolio. A pass mark for each module is an aggregated 50% composed of the course and examination marks. A pass mark for the overall course is also an aggregated 50% of the marks of the modules and portfolio.

The duration of the Diploma shall be no less than two academic years.

The Diploma may be awarded with a distinction.

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN INTERNATIONAL STUDIES**

### **H.77**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies if they have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

### **H.78**

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least four of the five courses and obtain an overall aggregated of at least 50 percent in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. The examination consists of five papers from the following typical course listing:

1. International Relations
2. African Political Economy
3. Peace and Conflict in Africa
4. Diplomacy
5. Political Economy
6. African Politics
7. Africa in World Politics
8. International Law

**H.79**

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

**H.80**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT ADMINISTRATION**

*This Postgraduate Diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.*

**H.81**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Local Government Administration if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

**H.82**

82.1 A candidate for the Diploma must pass in at least two of the three non-practical components as well as pass the practical component, and obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50%, in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. The basic components of the Diploma are:

- Basics of Local Government
- Local Government finance and administration
- The role of Local Government in development and transformation
- Practical in Local Government

82.2 A pass will be obtained in the practical component by means of submission of a report by the candidate and by assessment of the performance of the candidate in the three-month placement.

**H.83**

The duration of the Diploma course shall be not less than one academic year.

**H.84**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING**

*This Postgraduate Diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.*

**H.85**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor EITHER with a language major and at least one credit in English or Linguistics OR with an Education major and at least three language credits, one of which must be English or Linguistics.

**H.86**

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. There will be four components to the assessment of the Diploma course, each contributing equal amounts to the final grade:

Paper 1: General linguistics

Paper 2: Teaching methodology and language testing

Paper 3: Psychology of second language learning and teaching AND Language in society and education

Class record: Based on the course-work during the year.

**H.87**

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

**H.88**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

**MASTER'S DEGREES**

In addition to Rules G.50 to G.61 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Master. The thesis must show that the candidate

- (a) is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;
- (b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature; and

(c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree.

In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation. Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for masters' degrees in the Faculty of Humanities is 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

#### **MASTER'S DEGREE BY COURSEWORK**

1. Master's by coursework candidates will be required to register full-time in attendance for at least one year except for the Master's in English Second Language, and the Master's in Journalism and Media Studies.
2. The coursework section should be spread over one year with the examinations for that section written in November of that academic year, except in the case of students in Journalism and Media Studies.
3. The thesis shall be submitted not later than one year after the initial examination.
4. The coursework degree shall normally comprise three papers of three hours' duration together valued at 50% of the total final mark. The thesis shall represent 50% of the total.
5. The length of a thesis in the Master's degree by coursework should normally not exceed 30 000 words, but should not under any circumstances exceed 50 000 words (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes illustrative material and appendices). The word limit for the extended writing project for the Master's Degree in Creative Writing is 80 000.
6. The topics to be covered by the examination and the research project must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. The research proposal, including those for the MFA, must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.
7. The examination procedure shall be as follows:
  - 7.1 A candidate must obtain a minimum of 50% for the papers as a whole as well as for the thesis to qualify for an overall pass.
  - 7.2 Candidates obtaining between 50%–74% will obtain a pass mark for the Master's degree.
  - 7.3 A distinction may be awarded for a Master's degree taken by coursework and thesis if the aggregate mark for both components of the course is > 75%.
  - 7.4 Candidates will not be permitted to rewrite any papers in the examination section. No supplementary examinations will be permitted.
  - 7.5 The examiner(s) may recommend that the thesis be revised and resubmitted for examination.
  - 7.6 The formal examination plus a thesis are to be regarded as sub-components of an overall assessment. The scripts of the candidate and the thesis should go in the end to external examiners, who should have before them the internal examiners' marks for the scripts but not the internal examiner's mark for the thesis. The external examiners should be required to pass judgment on the candidate's overall performance in the formal examination plus the writing of the thesis.
  - 7.7 Where the coursework degree has a research report which constitutes 35% or less of the marks, a distinction is awarded if the candidate obtains 75% or above in the coursework component and a 2A or better in the research report and the aggregated final mark is 75% or above.
8. Candidates may be admitted to the Master's degree by coursework and thesis in Journalism and Media Studies if they
  - 8.1 have obtained a four-year degree (BJourn) or an Honours in Journalism and Media Studies or in a discipline deemed by the Head of Department to be an adequate

foundation for a Master's Degree in Journalism and Media Studies, or

- 8.2 have been admitted to an Honours Degree in a different discipline, but have in addition at least five years of professional experience in journalism and/or media studies; provided that
  - 8.3 a candidate will not be able to repeat any topic completed before in the Department of Journalism and Media Studies;
  - 8.4 a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours Degree;
  - 8.5 a candidate may be required to take the degree over two years,
  - 8.6 satisfy the General Rules governing the Master's Degrees in the Faculty of Humanities.
9. A Master's Degree by coursework and thesis is also offered in Interdisciplinary Studies (refer to the Interdepartmental entry).

*NOTE: The Board of the Faculty of Humanities has approved the following procedures for a Master's by examination in the Department of Psychology only:*

The formal examinations are regarded as Part One of the examination and the department should appoint an external examiner for those papers and publish the results of the examinations. When the student completes the thesis, which is regarded as Part Two of the

examination, this may go to an entirely different examiner who may see the thesis only. The final assessment of the candidate is made by the Head of Department and the internal examiners, based on the external examiner's report on the formal examination scripts and the external examiner's report on the thesis. Where there is clear conflict between Part One and Part Two, the candidate's examination scripts and the thesis are to be submitted to an arbiter approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

### DOCTORAL DEGREES

In addition to Rules G.62 to G.75 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy:

The thesis must show that the candidate:

- (a) is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;
- (b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature;
- (c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree;
- and (d) has made a substantial and original contribution to knowledge in the discipline, the substance of which is worthy of publication in a scholarly journal or book.

In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

# FACULTY OF LAW

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Bachelor of Laws

The Faculty of Law offers all the courses required for the LLB degree, and in addition offers courses for degree curricula in other faculties. The Faculty offers the LLB in three streams, and admission is determined in accordance with set criteria.

Students are admitted in accordance with University and Faculty enrolment planning, and the availability of resources.

### 1. A three-year LLB for graduate students

Students enter this stream after having completed any Bachelor's degree without law subjects, or in the instance where the candidate has passed an insufficient number of law courses for the two-year programme.

### 2. A five-year combined Law and Humanities OR Law and Commerce OR Law and Science LLB stream

Students enter this stream with the intention of following an undergraduate programme in Law and Humanities OR Law and Commerce OR Law and Science leading to a BA/BSocSc or BCom/BBusSc or BSc and thereafter a two-year LLB. The objective of a broad-based education is achieved in this stream by including courses which ensure that the student has a thorough grasp of at least one discipline outside of Law. Students register for a BA, BSocSc, BCom, BBusSc or BSc in their first year of study and continue with that degree with Legal Theory as a major subject. Having obtained the first degree, students then apply for admission to the LLB, to be completed over two years. To do so they must have passed a sufficient number of law courses in the first degree, which is usually the case if they have majored in Legal Theory.

### 3. A four-year LLB stream

Students who meet the admission requirements for the LLB on the basis of their NSC, (or equivalent school exit level examinations), may be admitted to the LLB in their first year of study to follow the four-year curriculum.

Students who are registered in any one of the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Commerce and who successfully complete the Legal Theory 1 course as part of their first-year curriculum in terms of rule L.3.2 may, after their first year of study, apply for admission to the LLB to follow the four-year LLB curriculum.

### Master of Laws, Doctor of Philosophy, and Doctor of Laws

A thesis on an approved topic must be submitted. The rules are the same as those for similar degrees in the other faculties.

## RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all faculties. The rules that follow apply to the Faculty of Law only.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Law:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Laws	<b>LLB</b>
Master of Laws	<b>LLM</b>
Doctor of Philosophy	<b>PhD</b>
Doctor of Laws	<b>LLD</b>

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS

### L.1

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules and in Rule L.9 below, candidates shall not be awarded the degree unless they:

- 1.1 have been registered for at least four years;
- 1.2 have completed the curriculum set out in L.4 below;
- 1.3 have performed satisfactorily in at least one moot in their final year of study.

### L.2

2.1 The period of study for the degree shall be four years for candidates who are full-time students of the University

2.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may be allowed to qualify for the degree in three years, provided that they have no more than forty semester courses, or their equivalent, to complete during this period of three years.

2.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may be allowed to qualify for the degree in two years, provided that they have no more than thirty-two semester courses, or their equivalent, to complete during this period of two years.

2.4 The curriculum of candidates who during the course of their studies for their degrees change from full-time to part-time status, or vice versa, may be rearranged by the Dean.

### **L.3**

3.1 Candidates who meet the admissions criteria for the LLB may be admitted to the LLB in their first year of study. In order to apply for admission, students must obtain a National Senior Certificate (NSC) Bachelor's Pass status or its equivalent, and normally obtain a minimum of a 45 admission point score (APS) across 6 subjects, two of which are languages, and one Mathematics or Mathematics Literacy.

Applicants must obtain at least 60% for English Home Language or 70% for English First Additional Language, and 50% for Mathematics or 60% for Mathematics Literacy in the NSC.

Students wishing to pursue Economics as one of their non-law courses, must obtain 50% in Mathematics in the NSC.

A limited number of places is available to pursue this route to the LLB. Motivations accompanying the applications will be used to differentiate between applicants of equal academic standing, and preference will be given to black South African and disabled applicants who meet the admission requirements.

3.2a Candidates who do not meet the admission criteria for the LLB may, subject to enrolment planning and the availability of resources, register for Legal Theory as a subject as part of their curriculum in another Faculty.

3.2b Normally candidates who do not have a degree may be admitted to the second year of study for the LLB degree (the four-year curriculum), provided that they have passed each of the law courses offered in their first year of study (Foundations of Law and Introduction to Law) with an average of 65% as well as have obtained an overall average of 65% for three non-law courses studied in that year. (Students who do not meet these criteria must follow the five-year route.)

Candidates who have completed more than one year of study must not only meet the first-year criteria, but must also have obtained an overall average of 65% for the subjects registered in the previous year of study.

3.3 Candidates who have a degree without any law courses or with insufficient law courses, may be admitted to the second year of study for the LLB degree (the three-year curriculum), provided that they obtained 60% for their major subjects. Where a candidate has not met this requirement, the Dean of Law has the discretion to admit that person, on good cause shown and subject to availability of Faculty resources.

3.4 Candidates who have a degree with sufficient law courses may be admitted to the third year of study for the LLB degree (the two-year curriculum). Normally, and subject to availability of places, candidates who obtained at least 60% in their Legal Theory major will be admitted, as will candidates from other universities who obtained an average of at least 60% in their previous year of study. Where a candidate has not met these requirements, the Dean of Law has the discretion to admit that person, on good cause shown and subject to availability of Faculty resources. Preference will be given to those candidates who obtained their first degree at Rhodes University.

### **L.4**

Subject to the provisions of Rule L.8 candidates must pass all the courses set out in the following curriculum:

#### **First year**

- (1) In the First Semester: Foundations of Law
- (2) In the Second Semester: Introduction to Law
- (3) In the Second Semester: Law of Persons
- (4) Three non-legal courses as referred to in Rule L.5 below.

#### **Second year**

- (1) In the First Semester:
  - Constitutional Law A
  - Law of Contract A
  - Law of Life Partnerships
  - Law of Property A
  - Legal Interpretation
- (2) In the Second Semester:
  - Constitutional Law B
  - Law of Contract B



Law of Property B

Legal Pluralism

(3) One non-legal course as referred to in Rule L.5 at second-year level.

### Third year

(1) In the First Semester:

Civil Procedure A

Company Law A

Criminal Procedure A

Criminal Law A

Jurisprudence

Law of Sale and Lease

(2) In the Second Semester:

Criminal Law B

Company Law B

Law of Agency, Insurance and Credit Agreements

Law of Evidence A

Law of Partnerships and Trusts

Public International Law

(3) In both First and Second Semesters, counted as one semester course: Legal Skills

(4) In either First or Second Semester, counted as one semester course: Legal Practice

### Final year

(1) In the First Semester:

Administrative Law (first half)

Civil Procedure B

Criminal Procedure B

Labour Law

Law of Delict (first half)

2 Electives offered in the First Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.6 below.

(2) In the Second Semester:

Administrative Law (second half)

Law of Evidence B

Law of Delict (second half)

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

Law of Succession and Administration of Estates

2

Electives offered in the Second Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.6 below.

### L.5

5.1 With the permission of the Dean, and subject to time-table constraints, a candidate may select any non-legal course offered at the University.

### L.6

6.1 Candidates may select their elective courses, referred to in the curriculum set out in Rule L.4,

from the following list (note that not all electives listed below are offered every year):

In the first semester:

Alternative Dispute Resolution (limited registration)

Copyright and Trade Marks

International Human Rights and Humanitarian Law

International Trade Law

Law of Banking and Payments

Legal Accounting

### In the second semester:

Constitutional Litigation

Environmental Law

Introduction to Conveyancing

IsiXhosa

Law of Patents, Designs and Geographical Indications

The Law of Obligations in a Global Context

Law of Tax and Estate Planning

### In both the first and second semesters:

Research Paper (counted as two semester courses)

LLB candidates are permitted to complete a Research Paper in a topic of their choice, subject to the availability of a suitable supervisor and the approval of the Dean.

Research Paper: International Moot (counted as one semester course)

Participation in the African Human Rights Moot Court Competition or any other International Moot Competition may qualify as a research paper provided that the research material for the moots is presented in a coherent written form.

6.2 All electives will not necessarily be offered every year and the semester in which electives are offered may also be varied. The availability of options, and the semester in which they will be taught, will depend upon enrolment numbers and teaching arrangements in the Faculty of Law. Student numbers may be restricted in any particular elective.

6.3 Candidates may not take more than three electives in any one semester.

6.4 Candidates who have passed a university course in accounting may not register for Legal Accounting.

6.5 Candidates who have passed a university course in Taxation may not register for Tax and Estate Planning.

6.6 Candidates who have passed a university course in isiXhosa may not register for IsiXhosa. Mother tongue speakers of isiXhosa may not enrol for this course

6.7 A candidate may not register for more than one research paper elective, except where a candidate participates in an International Moot Court Competition and presents a research paper on that participation. A student is only allowed to present one such research paper, irrespective of the number of times the student participated in International Moot Court Competitions.

#### **L.7**

The order in which courses are taken may be varied by the Dean on good cause shown.

#### **L.8**

Full-time candidates shall not be permitted to register for more than nine courses in a semester (including courses being repeated).

#### **L.9**

9.1 Candidates may be granted exemption from any course or courses; provided that they have passed any equivalent course or courses at Rhodes University or elsewhere, and have attained in such course or courses the standard required by the Faculty of Law.

9.2 Candidates who have been granted exemption in terms of sub-paragraph 9.1, but who are unable to qualify for the degree in two years in terms of Rule L.2, shall allocate the remaining courses to each of their three years of study in accordance with the direction of the Dean; provided that in their Final Year they include at least eight semester courses prescribed for that year.

#### **L.10**

10.1 ...

10.2 To proceed to the Penultimate Year, candidates must have no more than thirty-two semester courses, or their equivalent, outstanding for the award of the degree.

10.3 To proceed to the Final Year, candidates must have passed all the courses prescribed in the first year of study and must have no more than eighteen semester courses, or their equivalent, outstanding

for the award of the degree and, further, must comply with the provisions of Rule L.8.

#### **L.11**

The Board of the Faculty of Law will permit candidates to write supplementary examinations in January/February of the following year in accordance with the following rules:

11.1 Normally a supplementary examination will not be granted to a candidate who has obtained a result of less than 40%.

11.2 Candidates will be eligible for supplementary examinations in no more than four semester courses or their equivalent in any one year, provided that they have passed at least four semester courses, or their equivalent, in that academic year.

11.3 Candidates who fail Legal Practice, Legal Skills and the Research Paper are not eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations.

#### **L.12**

Candidates in their Final Year who have passed all the semester courses for the degree, save four, may, with the permission of the Dean, register at another university for a similar course or courses to those outstanding for the award of the degree, and may, on successful completion, be granted exemption for such course or courses. For purposes of this rule, year courses count as two semester courses. In the alternative, the student may be granted extended DPs for such courses.

#### **L.13**

13.1 Candidates for examination in any course may be required to present themselves for oral examination.

13.2 Candidates in their Final Year of study who, after the November examinations, have one or two courses outstanding for their degree, will be eligible for an oral examination in those courses, subject to any policy determined by Faculty.

#### **L.14**

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

### **DEGREE OF MASTER OF LAWS, DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF LAWS**

#### **L.15**

The provisions set out in the General Rules apply.

**L.16**

16.1 All postgraduate admissions in the Faculty of Law are subject to the availability of resources and supervisory capacity.

16.2 To be admitted to the Master's degree, candidates must have obtained at least a 65% average in the final year of their LLB degree.

16.3 Where a candidate has not met the requirement set out in L16.2, the Dean of Law has the discretion to admit that person, on good cause shown.

16.4 Admission to the PhD degree is at the discretion of the Dean of Law, on good cause shown.

# FACULTY OF PHARMACY

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The Faculty of Pharmacy at Rhodes University is dedicated to achieving excellence in an environment of interdisciplinary co-operation, mutual respect, consistent with the mission of the University and with the mission of the profession of Pharmacy.

## MISSION

The mission of the Faculty is to promote pharmaceutical care through education, research, scholarship, creative endeavour and service.

Thus its priorities are to:

- Prepare its students for entry into the practice of pharmacy as informed, caring and ethical citizens and professionals;
- Prepare pharmaceutical scholars and researchers through professional undergraduate, graduate and post-doctoral studies of distinction;
- Conduct postgraduate education to advance the knowledge, expertise and competence of pharmacists and pharmaceutical scientists;
- Analyse and apply knowledge about pharmaceutical products and services, their use in society through basic and applied research and to advance, communicate and preserve that knowledge;
- Analyse and apply knowledge in areas that may involve health education and/or promotion, public health, management, accountability, leadership, policy analysis, and other relevant areas;
- Promote, facilitate and conduct educational courses, research, and interventions to extend the knowledge of drugs and medicines in addition to the rational and cost-effective use of medicines.

The course for the BPharm degree is of four years duration. The degree meets the academic requirements as laid down by the South African Pharmacy Council and entitles holders who are either South African Citizens or permanent residents to apply for registration as a pharmacist in South Africa after completing an internship and

subsequently serving one year of community service in the public or other designated sector.

The University is prepared to consider recognising prior learning by granting credits to students who have passed such courses or equivalent courses at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for this purpose, subject to the provisions of Rule G.46 of the General Rules.

Performance in a course is assessed in terms of:

- (a) the results of prescribed written, practical and/or oral examinations, and/or
- (b) assessment of such essays, exercises, tests, reports, presentations, assignments and/or practical work as may be prescribed for a course.

The registration in the Faculty of Pharmacy of any student who is convicted for the illegal use or possession of any illicit drug or medicinal substance in a court of law (in any country) may be terminated by the Vice-Chancellor after consultation with the Dean of the Faculty of Pharmacy.

## RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Pharmacy shall be the end of the second week of the first term.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Pharmacy:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Pharmacy	<b>BPharm</b>
Master of Science	<b>MSc (Pharm)</b>

Master of Pharmacy	<b>MPharm</b>
--------------------	---------------

Doctor of Philosophy	<b>PhD</b>
Doctor of Science	<b>DSc</b>

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PHARMACY

The BPharm degree is registered on the NQF as a level 8 qualification.

### P.1

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended and successfully completed approved courses for at least four years subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student.

### P.2

Normally candidates shall not be admitted to the courses for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy unless they have:

2.1 obtained either the National Senior Certificate with Bachelor status, or obtained a matric exemption certificate from the Board.

2.2 obtained at least a rating of 7 for Mathematics, Life Sciences and Physical Sciences to receive a firm offer.

2.3 Mathematical Literacy will not be considered.

2.4 if a candidate has 45 points and above they may receive a firm offer, if between 35 and 44 points then admission will be at the Dean's Discretion. Normally candidates who have 34 points or less are likely to be rejected.

2.5 candidates who have obtained a matric exemption of the Joint Matriculation Board must normally have obtained at least a D symbol in Mathematics, Physical Science and Biology on the Higher Grade.

### P.3

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of BPharm unless they have:

3.1 passed all courses of the following curriculum (with the consent of the Board of the Faculty, courses may be taken in years other than those specified);

3.2 candidates who have obtained at least a rating of 5 in Computer Science in the National Senior Certificate or a pass in Computer Science deemed to be the equivalent of the above in another examination, may be permitted to take Computer Science 101 instead of Introduction to ICT;

3.3 passed electives chosen, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, from the electives listed under Rule P.9 or other courses approved by the Senate for this purpose;

### P.4

4.1.1 Candidates in first year may not take Chemistry 102 or Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1 if they have not passed Chemistry 101, unless they have been awarded a Supplementary exam for Chemistry 101.

4.1.2 Candidates who fail the subminimum for Chemistry 101 may be permitted to take Chemistry 1R and will not be permitted to register for Chemistry 102 or Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1.

4.1.3 Candidates in first year who fail Cell Biology and are not awarded a Supplementary exam may not continue with Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1.

4.1.4 Candidates in first year who fail either Introduction to ICT or Mathematics for Life Sciences with the option of a Supplementary exam may continue with second semester subjects unless they have also failed Chemistry 101 or Cell Biology without the possibility of a Supplementary exam.

4.1.5 Candidates in first year who fail all four first semester subjects will be excluded.

4.2 Normally students repeating second-year courses with a total value exceeding 50 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses. With the permission of the Dean, candidates carrying 50 or fewer credit points from their second year may be admitted to appropriate third-year courses.

4.3 Normally students repeating third-year courses with a total value exceeding 60 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses. With the permission of the Dean, candidates carrying 60 or fewer credit points from their third year may be admitted to appropriate fourth-year courses.

4.4 Normally students may only register for courses in Pharmacy Practice 4, Pharmacology 4, Elective courses offered by the Faculty of

Pharmacy, and Pharmacotherapy in the year they can complete the BPharm degree

4.5 Students transferring from other universities may not normally take courses from the second year of the BPharm curriculum unless they have passed courses deemed to be equivalent to those listed in the first-year BPharm curriculum.

4.6 Normally, candidates will not be permitted to register for any course more than twice.

#### **P.5**

5.1 Before admission to a course, a candidate must have passed all prerequisites for that course except as provided for in 5.2 below.

5.2 In exceptional circumstances on the recommendation of the Dean, Senate may permit a candidate to repeat ONE prerequisite course concurrently with the courses for which it is designated a prerequisite provided that

5.2.1 the student has passed all other prerequisite courses, and that

5.2.2 such permission will not normally be granted in respect of courses which themselves lead to more advanced courses in the same subject area.

5.3 This will be conditional on obtaining a pass in its prerequisite courses.

#### **P.6**

Normally at the Dean's discretion, candidates may be granted a Supplementary examination in two of the courses for which they are registered – other than in the first year of study - provided that:

6.1 they are taking the full complement of courses for that year;

6.2 they have failed no other courses in that year;

6.3 they have no examination outstanding for that year of study,

6.4. students must have attempted the main examination to qualify for a supplementary exam.

6.5 A subminimum of 30% in June is required for each course in second and third year for students to continue with the course in semester 2.

6.6 A student who obtains a final mark of 40 -49% qualifies for a supplementary examination.

6.7 Final year students require a subminimum of 30% in June to qualify for a supplementary

examination in that course. Normally final year students are permitted to write no more than 60 credits worth of Supplementary examinations in their final year.

6.8 Where relevant the Dean will consider awarding last outstanding credit supplementary examinations after the November results are released.

#### **P.7**

7.1 Courses in the Faculty of Pharmacy are measured in terms of credit points. Each credit point is based on the notional hours that an average student would require to master the content and develop skills in a subject. In this respect in the BPharm curriculum one credit point is equivalent to 10 notional hours.

7.2 Candidates must have the permission of the Dean to undertake a work-load exceeding 120 credit points in the first and second year of study, and 135 credit points in the third and fourth year of study.

7.3 For the purpose of General Rule G.46.2, credit in courses to a total of 360 credit points must be obtained at the University towards the degree.

#### **P.8**

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes with an average of not less than 3,0 merit marks per credit in all courses of the second year and subsequent years shall be endorsed "with distinction". Merit marks are calculated by multiplying the credit point rating of the course by the numerical value of the class of pass obtained by the student, for that course. For this purpose, a Class 1 pass (75–100%) is valued at 4 points, Class 2A (70–74%) at 3 points, Class 2B (60–69%) at 2 points, and Class 3 (50–59%) at 1 point. The merit mark is multiplied by the number of credits per course, and the total divided by the total number of credits.

#### **P.9**

9.1 All candidates must complete elective courses to the value of 30 credit points to be admitted to the degree.

9.2 This could be two elective courses (each worth 15 credit points) or one elective worth 30 credit points. Electives may be offered and taken in the Faculty of Pharmacy or in a different Faculty, after consultation with the Dean, if it is relevant to Pharmacy and can be accommodated in the BPharm timetable.

9.3 For the purposes of 9.2 a one semester elective course within the Faculty will count 15 credit points and a two-semester elective course will be worth 30 credit points.

9.4 The elective courses offered within the Faculty of Pharmacy will be dependent on relevance to the Pharmacy profession, staff availability and expertise.

9.5. With the permission of the Dean and subject to the provision of rules P.4 and P.7 candidates may take one elective course in the second or third year of study provided it is a course offered by another faculty and can be accommodated in the study timetable.

**P.10**

All candidates must complete the Research Methodologies course to the value of 30 credit points to be admitted to the degree.

**P.11**

The Calendar for the year in which students enter the first-year programme will govern their curriculum for the BPharm degree

**Bachelor of Pharmacy curriculum**

Code number	Course Title	Prerequisite (P) or Co-requisite (C)	First semester			Second semester			Total credit points
			L	T	P	L	T	P	
FIRST YEAR									
CEL 101	Cell Biology 101	See Departmental entries in Faculty of Science prospectus for first semester subjects	5		1				15
CHE 101	Chemistry 101		5		1				15
CSC 1L	Introduction to ICT		4	1	1				15
MAT 1S	Mathematics for the Life Sciences		5	1					15
CHE 102	Chemistry 102	Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P)				5		1	15
PC 1112	Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1	Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P)				5			10
PC 1102	Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1	Cell Biology 101 (CEL 101) (P)				5		1	20
PC 1012	Foundations of Pharmacy					5			15
SECOND YEAR									
PC 250	Anatomy Physiology,	Cell Biology (CEL 101) (P), Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1 (PC 1102) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

	Pathophysiology and Pathology								
PC 221	Pharmaceutical Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology	Cell Biology (CEL 101) (P), Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P), Chemistry 102 (CHE 102) (P), Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1 (PC 1112) (P), Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 (PC 222) (C)	3			3		0.25	20
PC 222	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2	Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P), Chemistry 102 (CHE 102) (P), Pharmaceutical Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology (PC 221) (C), Pharmaceutics 2 (PC 231) (C)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25
PC 231	Pharmaceutics 2	Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P), Foundations of Pharmacy (PC 1012) (P), Chemistry 102 (CHE 102) (P), Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 (PC 222) (C), Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1 (PC 1102) (P), Anatomy, Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathophysiology (PC 250) (C)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25
PC 241	Pharmacy Practice 2	Foundations of Pharmacy (PC 1012) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25
<b>THIRD YEAR</b>									
PC 322	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 (PC 222) (P) Pharmacology 3 (PC 351) (C)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 332	Pharmaceutics 3	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 (PC 222) (P), Pharmaceutics 2 (PC 231) (P), Anatomy, Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathophysiology (PC 250) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 342	Pharmacy Practice 3	Pharmacy Practice 2 (PC 241) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 351	Pharmacology 3	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3 (PC 322) (C), Anatomy Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathology (PC 250) (P), Pharmaceutical Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology (PC 221) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
STA 1P1	-Statistics for Pharmacy		5	1					15
<b>FOURTH YEAR</b>									
PC 4521	Pharmacology 4	Pharmacology 3 (PC 351) (P), Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3 (PC 322) (P), Pharmacy Practice 4 (PC 4431) (C)	5		0.5				15
PC 4331	Pharmaceutics 4	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3 (PC 322) (P), Pharmaceutics 3 (PC 332) (P), Pharmacology 3 (PC 351) (P)	5		1				15
PC 4431	Pharmacy Practice 4	Pharmacy Practice 3 (PC 342) (P), Pharmacology 3 (PC 351) (P), Pharmacology 4 (PC 4521) (C)	5		1				15



## FACULTY OF PHARMACY

	Elective courses in Pharmacy (may include one Elective course in another Faculty)								2 x 15
PC 491	Research Methodologies								30
PC 4012	Pharmacotherapy	Pharmacology 4 (PC 4521) (P), Pharmacy Practice 4 (PC 4431) (P), Pharmaceutics 4 (PC 4331) (P)				7		1	30

### DEGREES OF MASTER OF SCIENCE AND MASTER OF PHARMACY

See General Rules and entry under Master's Degrees, Faculty of Pharmacy, in the Academic Departments section of the Calendar.

# FACULTY OF SCIENCE

## RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Science only

### S.1

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Science:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Science	<b>BSc</b>
NQF Level 7 (360 credits)	
Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)	<b>BSc(InfSys)</b>
NQF Level 7 (360 credits)	
Bachelor of Science with Honours	<b>BSc(Hons)</b>
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	
Master of Science (by full thesis)	<b>MSc</b>
NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	

*May be taken in the following subjects:*

*Applied Mathematics, Biochemistry, Bioinformatics, Biotechnology, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Electronics, Entomology, Environmental Biotechnology, Environmental Science, Ergonomics, Geography, Geology, Human Kinetics & Ergonomics, Hydrology, Ichthyology & Fisheries Science, Marine Biology, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Microbiology, Physics, Water Resource Science, Zoology*

Master of Science (by coursework and thesis)	<b>MSc</b>
NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	

*May be taken in the following subjects:*

*Applied Mathematics, Bioinformatics, Computer Science, Economic Geology, Environmental Biotechnology, Exploration Geology, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics*

Doctor of Philosophy	<b>PhD</b>
NQF Level 10 (360 credits)	

*May be taken in the following subjects:*

*Applied Mathematics, Biochemistry, Bioinformatics, Biotechnology, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Entomology, Environmental Biotechnology, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Human Kinetics & Ergonomics, Hydrology, Ichthyology & Fisheries Science, Marine Biology, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Microbiology, Physics, Water Resource Science, Zoology*

Doctor of Science	<b>DSc</b>
-------------------	------------

*This is a Senior Doctorate awarded for a body of work completed after a PhD. See G.77 for additional details.*

## UNDERGRADUATE DEGREES

### S.2

S.2.1 Many undergraduate subjects in the university are now offered as pairs of semester-long courses; some subjects are offered as year-long courses, and some are offered as single

semester-long courses. Passing any of these courses earns NQF credits at specific exit levels and these accrue towards the total credits required for a degree.

S.2.2 In the rules and tables that follow, subjects are denoted sometimes by their full names, and

sometimes by mnemonics and numbers (for example the subject Physics 1 (or PHY 1) is a semesterised year-course that consists of two semester-courses PHY 101 and PHY 102. The first digit of the number denotes the level (academic year) at which the subject is offered, the second digit is either numeric denoting a course that proceeds to a higher academic level or a letter denoting a service course describing the intended audience with no progression to a higher academic level, and a third digit denoting the semester in which the course is normally offered. A two-digit number denotes a year-long course. For example, MAT 1S1 is a service course offering Mathematics to students primarily registered for courses offered by the Science faculty at the first-year level and in the first semester, while MAT 1F is a service course offered at the first-year level but over the whole year and is offered to students in the Bachelor of Science Extended Studies Programme. By contrast, MAM 101 is a Mathematics course

offered at the first-year level in the first semester that leads onto MAM 102 and then in later years MAM 2, MAT 3 and/or MAP 3.

S.2.3. Candidates should consult the timetable to determine in which semester a course will be offered in any particular year.

S.2.4 Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following Science and non-Science subjects:

### Science subjects

The following subjects are offered by departments within the Faculty of Science. Course-specific details can be found in the departmental entries. Normally, some subjects are offered in the first semester (S1), second semester (S2) or are offered throughout the year (Y). Subminimum requirements for supplementary examinations and aggregation of two semester-courses are also provided.

Department of Biochemistry & Microbiology							
<i>Subject code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Subject name</i>	<i>Semester</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>NQF Credits</i>	<i>Supplementary subminimum</i>	<i>Aggregation subminimum</i>
5004201	BCH 201	Biochemistry 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5004202	BCH 202	Biochemistry 202	S2	6	20		
5004301	BCH 301	Biochemistry 301	S1	7	30		
5004302	BCH 302	Biochemistry 302	S2	7	30		
5601201	MIC 201	Microbiology 201	S1	6	20		
5601202	MIC 202	Microbiology 202	S2	6	20		
5601301	MIC 301	Microbiology 301	S1	7	30		
5601302	MIC 302	Microbiology 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Botany							
5902101	CEL 101	Cell Biology 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
6002102	BOT 102	Botany 102	S2	5	15		
6002201	BOT 201	Botany 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
6002202	BOT 202	Botany 202	S2	6	20		
6002301	BOT 301	Botany 301	S1	7	30		
6002302	BOT 302	Botany 302	S2	7	30		

Department of Chemistry							
5001101	CHE 101	Chemistry 101	S1	5	15	40% Theory examination	40% with at least 40% for the theory examination
5001102	CHE 102	Chemistry 102	S2	5	15	No supplementary examinations offered	
50011R1	CHE 1R1	Chemistry 1R1	S2	5	15		
50011R2	CHE 1R2	Chemistry 1R2	S1	5	15		
5001201	CHE 201	Chemistry 201	S2	6	20	40%	40%
5001202	CHE 202	Chemistry 202	S1	6	20		
5001301	CHE 301	Chemistry 301	S1	7	30		
5001302	CHE 302	Chemistry 302	S2	7	30		
Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching & Learning							
51011B0	CSC 1S	Computer Skills for Science	Y	5	15	40%	None
6601100	ISCM 1F	Introduction to Scientific Concepts & Methods	Y	5	30		
Department of Computer Science							
5101101	CSC 1L1	Introduction to ICT	S1	5	15	40%	None
5101112	CSC 112	Problem Solving with Computers	S2	5	15		
51011P3	CSC 101	Computer Science 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
51011P4	CSC 102	Computer Science 102	S2	5	15		
5101201	CSC 201	Computer Science 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5101202	CSC 202	Computer Science 202	S2	6	20		
5101301	CSC 301	Computer Science 301	S2	7	30		
5101302	CSC 302	Computer Science 302	S1	7	30		
Department of Environmental Science							
2602201	ENV 201	Environmental Science 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
2602202	ENV 202	Environmental Science 202	S2	6	20		
2602301	ENV 301	Environmental Science 301	S1	7	30		
2602302	ENV 302	Environmental Science 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Geography							
26011G1	EAR 101	Earth Science 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
2601102	GOG 102	Geography 102	S2	5	15		
2601201	GOG 201	Geography 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
2601202	GOG 202	Geography 202	S2	6	20		
2601301	GOG 301	Geography 301	S2	7	30		
2601302	GOG 302	Geography 302	S1	7	30		

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Department of Geology							
5201102	GLG 102	Geology 102	S2	5	15	40%	40%
5201201	GLG 201	Geology 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5201202	GLG 202	Geology 202	S2	6	20		
5201301	GLG 301	Geology 301	S1	7	30		
5201302	GLG 302	Geology 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Human Kinetics & Ergonomics							
2207101	HKE 101	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
2207102	HKE 102	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 102	S2	5	15		
2207201	HKE 201	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
2207202	HKE 202	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 202	S2	6	20		
2207301	HKE 301	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 301	S1	7	30		
2207302	HKE 302	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Ichthyology & Fisheries Science							
6201201	ICH 201	Ichthyology 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
6201202	ICH 202	Ichthyology 202	S2	6	20		
6201301	ICH 301	Ichthyology 301	S1	7	30		
6201302	ICH 302	Ichthyology 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Mathematics							
54011T0	TOF 1F	Theory of Finance Foundation	Y	5	15	40%	None
54010Z0	TOF 1C1	Theory of Finance for Commerce	S1	5	15	40%	None
54010IS	MAT 1S1	Mathematics for Science	S1	5	15	40%	None
54011L1	MAT 1F	Mathematics Foundation	Y	5	15	40%	None
540101A	MAM 101	Mathematics 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
540101B	MAM 102	Mathematics 102	S2	5	15		
5401203	MAM 201	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5401204	MAM 202	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics 202	S2	6	20		
5401311	MAT 311	Mathematics 311 Algebra	S1	7	18	40%	40% but 50% is required for
5401313	MAT 313	Mathematics 311 Real Analysis	S1	7	18		

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

5401315	MAT 315	Mathematics 311 Topics in Mathematics	S2	7	18		two of the four prescribed subjects for MAT 3 or MAP 3
5401316	MAM 311	Mathematics MAM 311 Complex Analysis	S2	7	18		
5411311	MAP 311	Applied Mathematics 311 Numerical Analysis	S1	7	18		
5411312	MAP 312	Applied Mathematics 311 Dynamical Systems	S2	7	18		
5411314	MAP 314	Applied Mathematics 311 Partial Diff Equations	S1	7	18		
Department of Physics & Electronics							
57011Z1	PHY 1S1	Physics for Science	S1	5	15	40%	None
5701Z2	PHY 1E2	Electronics Literacy	S2	5	15	40%	None
5701101	PHY 101	Physics 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
5701102	PHY 102	Physics 102	S2	5	15	40%	40%
5701201	PHY 101	Physics 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5701202	PHY 202	Physics 202	S2	6	20		
5701301	PHY 301	Physics 301	S1	7	30		
5701302	PHY 302	Physics 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Statistics							
55041D0	STA 1C2	Statistics for Commerce	S2	5	15	40%	None
7001121	STA 1P1	Statistics for Pharmacy	S1	5	15	40%	None
5504101	STA 1S1	Statistics for Science	S1	5	15	40%	None
5504102	MST 102	Mathematical Statistics 102	S2	5	15	40%	None
5501201	MST 201	Mathematical Statistics 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5501202	MST 202	Mathematical Statistics 202	S2	6	20		
5501301	MST 301	Mathematical Statistics 301	S1	7	30		
5501302	MST 302	Mathematical Statistics 302	S2	7	30		
5506302	AST 302	Applied Statistics 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Zoology & Entomology							
5801101	ZOO 102	Zoology 102	S2	5	15	40%	40%
5801201	ZOO 201	Zoology 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5801202	ZOO 202	Zoology 202	S2	6	20		
5801301	ZOO 301	Zoology 301	S1	7	30		
5801301	ZOO 302	Zoology 302	S2	7	30		

6101201	ENT 201	Entomology 201	S2	6	20	
6101202	ENT 202	Entomology 202	S1	6	20	
6101301	ENT 201	Entomology 301	S2	7	30	
6101302	ENT 302	Entomology 302	S1	7	30	

### Non-science subjects

Non-science subjects comprise all other undergraduate subjects currently offered in the Faculties of Commerce, Humanities and Law.

### DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE

#### S.3

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.47 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be awarded the degree unless they have attended approved courses for at least three years subsequent to their first registration as students.

#### S.4

S.4.1 Candidates shall not normally be admitted to any of the full curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless either they have met the minimum admission requirements for Bachelor's degree programmes requiring a National Senior Certificate (NSC) or they are in possession of a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have achieved English (Home language or Additional language) at a rating of 5 or above and at least a rating of 4 in Mathematics in the NSC, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent of the above, or they have successfully completed a year of study under the provisions of the Science Extended Studies Programme.

S.4.2 Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall not be admitted to any of the full curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless they have obtained a pass in Life Sciences or Physical Sciences at a rating of 5 or above in the NSC, or equivalent subjects in another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent thereto.

#### S.5

Notwithstanding any exceptions to Rule S.4 approved by Senate, candidates will not normally be admitted to various courses in Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics or Statistics unless they have achieved a rating of 5 or above in Mathematics in the NSC or have completed Mathematics 1F. It should be noted that these restrictions may apply to some courses that are co-requisites (subjects required to be completed by the end of the degree) to certain major subjects (see Rule S.22.5); ineligibility to register for a co-requisite may thus preclude certain major subjects from being selected for a candidate's degree.

#### S.6

A limited number of students who do not meet the strict criteria of Rule S.4 may be admitted under the auspices of the Science Extended Studies Programme (see Rules S.39 to S.41).

#### S.7

Candidates for the BSc degree must obtain not less than 360 NQF credits in various approved subjects with at least 120 credits at the NQF level 7.

#### S.8

S.8.1 A candidate for the degree must obtain credit for all the required courses up to the NQF level 7 in at least two subjects, to be known as major subjects.

S.8.2 Some major subjects are offered only at the second and third-year level, that is, at the NQF levels 6 and 7, respectively.

S.8.3 A candidate for the degree must have at least one major subject as a Science subject (see S.2).

S.8.4 Candidates may elect to take not more than one non-Science subject as a major subject (see S.2). In this case the only other non-Science subjects permitted are those that are prerequisites (subjects required prior to registration of a subject) or co-requisites for that major. Registration for a

non-Science major subject shall be subject to the rules of the Faculty in which the department which offers the subject is placed. In the case of Music at most 150 NQF credits shall be allowed for courses in Music Theory & Analysis, Music Culture & History, and Instrumental Music Studies.

S.8.5 Students electing to take both major subjects from the list of Science subjects may take non-Science subjects, but are limited to those offered within a single non-Science department and to at most 60 NQF credits.

S.8.6 Students electing to major in Management may only do so in a Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) degree as the co-requirements includes more than the permitted number of non-Science subjects for a Bachelor of Science degree.

## **DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (INFORMATION SYSTEMS)**

This degree is intended for students who wish to become computer specialists in a commercial or technical environment, and comprises courses offered by departments in the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

### **S.9**

Except as provided in Rules G.39 to G.41, candidates shall not be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) unless they have attended approved courses for at least three years subsequent to their first registration.

### **S.10**

Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the full curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) unless either they have met the minimum admission requirements for Bachelor's degree programmes requiring a National Senior Certificate (NSC), or have a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board, or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have achieved English (Home language or additional language) at a rating of 5 or above, a rating of 5 or above for

Physical Science, and at least a rating of 6 in Mathematics on the NSC, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent.

### **S.11**

A limited number of students who do not meet the strict criteria of Rule S.10 may be admitted under the auspices of the Science Extended Studies Programme (see Rules S.39 to S.41).

### **S.12**

S.12.1 A candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) must obtain at least 360 NQF credits in courses as set out in the following curriculum:

#### **First and second years**

1. Computer Science (CSC 1 and CSC 2)
2. Information Systems (INF 2)
3. Economics (ECO 1) OR Management (MAN 1) but see S.12.3
4. Accounting (ACC 1)
5. Statistics (STA 1S1 or STA 1C2, or MST 102 as a prerequisite for MST 2)
6. Mathematics (MAT 1S1 or MAM 101, or MAM 1 as a prerequisite for MST 2)
7. Electronics Literacy (PHY 1E2)
8. Business problem solving with computers (CSC 112) (must be taken in the first year as it is the prerequisite for Information Systems)
9. Two further semester-courses in Management or Economics or Mathematics or Statistics or Mathematical Statistics or some other Science subject approved by the Dean.

#### **Third year**

1. Computer Science 3
2. One of the following; Accounting 3, Applied Mathematics 3, Applied Statistics 3, Economics 3, Information Systems 3, Management 3, Mathematical Statistics 3, Mathematics 3.

S.12.2 Candidates will be advised at registration as to how the first two years of these degrees are to be structured, taking into account timetable constraints and their previous performance or experience in Computer Studies and Mathematics. Normally candidates will be required to register for



Computer Science, Accounting, Economics, Management, MAM 101 and CSC 112.

S.12.3 Candidates for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) who fail CSC 2 in their second year at Rhodes will be required to change registration to a degree in the Faculty of Commerce.

S.12.4. Candidates who wish to move from the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) to the degree of Bachelor of Science and wish to major in both Computer Science and Information Systems will be permitted an additional 60 NQF credits obtained for Accounting, Management or Economics from their Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) degree.

### **Rules common to the BSc and BSc(InfSys) degrees**

#### **S.13**

If a candidate for the BSc and BSc(InfSys) degree selects *more* than the minimum number of courses required for a degree, the additional courses may be in any of the subjects offered in the faculties of Science, Commerce, Humanities and Law.

#### **S.14**

S.14.1 At the start of the year students will normally register for both components of each semesterised subject, unless they make it clear that they intend on obtaining credit for only one of the semester-courses, or to complete an outstanding component of a semesterised subject.

S.14.2 Students will be allowed to register for semester-courses held in the second semester in subjects for which they have not previously been registered (provided that they have met the prerequisite requirements for such courses). Such registrations will be at the discretion of the Dean, in consultation with the Head of the Department concerned.

S.14.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Science shall be the end of the second full week of the semester in which the course begins.

S.14.4 Candidates who fail to perform adequately in the first semester component of a semesterised subject may have their registrations for the second semester component of that subject cancelled at the discretion of the Head of Department. This decision may sometimes be reversed, on appeal through the Head of Department to the Dean of the Faculty.

S.14.5 Candidates are strongly advised to include at least six second-year level semester-courses in their curricula. If candidates include only four second-year level semester-courses, they will be required to include three first-year level semester courses in order to ensure the correct number of NQF credits for the degree.

#### **S.15**

S.15.1 In all those subjects offered at a given NQF level as a pair of semester-courses, if both semester-courses are not passed outright, an aggregate of at least 50% in the pair may be deemed equivalent to credit in a year-long aggregate course for that subject, as the Department may allow. See Rule S.16.2.

S.15.2 Students who do not obtain credit for both components, but who meet the requirements for an aggregated course, will have their academic transcripts amended to show that an aggregated continuing course (ACR) or aggregated non-continuing course (NCR) has been achieved in the appropriate subject, as the Department may allow.

S.15.3 Candidates cannot obtain credit for an aggregated course in addition to credit for one of its semesterised components.

#### **S.16**

S.16.1 Credit for any course normally requires that a student score an overall mark of at least 50%. At the discretion of the Board, non-continuing credit may occasionally be awarded for an overall mark of at least 48%.

S.16.2 Credit for an aggregated course of a semesterised subject requires that a student has met any adequate performance sub-minima imposed for each constituent.

S.16.3 Subjects for which aggregated credit may be granted are shown in the table that accompanies Rule S.22.

S.16.4 If an aggregated pass is not achieved, credit for any constituent semester-course passed can still be earned towards the degree as a whole.

S.16.5.3 Aggregation of first-semester and second-semester courses is only normally possible with sequential academic semesters.

S.16.6 Aggregate year-courses may be obtained only for two semester-courses comprising a single subject, with the following exceptions:

*Aggregated*      *Comprising of a semester-*  
*year course*      *course in each of*

Botany 1      Cell Biology (CEL 101) and  
Botany (BOT 102)

Geography 1      Earth Science (EAR 101) and  
Geography (GOG 102)

Geology 1      Earth Science (EAR 101) and  
Geology (GLG 102)

Zoology 1      Cell Biology (CEL 101) and  
Zoology (ZOO 102)

*Note: Aggregated year-courses may not be earned for both Geography 1 and Geology 1; at most three semester-courses may be earned for EAR 101, GOG 102, GLG 102. Similarly, aggregated year-courses may not be earned for both Botany 1 and Zoology 1; credit for at most three semester-courses may be earned for CEL 101, BOT 102, ZOO 102.*

### S.17

For the purposes of Rule G.7 as it applies to the Faculty of Science, students may be refused permission to renew registration in the Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to profit from further study, or if they have failed:

S.17.1 by the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this university or any other university to have obtained at least 60 NQF credits, which is equivalent to two year-courses or four semester-courses or an equivalent combination thereof; or

S.17.2 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained at least 120 NQF credits, which is

equivalent to four year-courses or eight semester-courses or an equivalent combination thereof, and are prerequisite courses for at least two NQF level 6 courses; or

S.17.3 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained at least 180 NQF credits, which is equivalent to six year-courses or twelve semester-credits or a combination thereof of which at least 60 credits of which should be at least NQF level 6; or

S.17.4 at the end of every calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses for which they were registered with the Dean's approval; or

S.17.5 to have completed the undergraduate degree within a period of five years; or

S.17.6 (for students enrolled on the Science Extended Studies Programme) by the end of the first year of study to have passed all courses offered as part of the programme and to have achieved an average of 60% in the Extended Studies Programme courses (CSC 1S, MAT 1F, ISCM 1F) read in order to qualify for entry into mainstream courses in the following year.

### S.18

S.18.1 A candidate is not permitted to obtain certain overlapping combinations of subjects. The table below lists, for each of certain subjects and courses, those other courses for which credit will not also be given:

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Credit may not be obtained in more than one of:</i>
Accounting	ACC 1; ACC 1F/ACC 1G
Computer Science	CSC 101; CSC 1L1
Computer Science	CSC 1L1; CSC 112
Computer Science	CSC 1S; CSC 1L1
Statistics	STA 1S1; STA 1C2; STA 1P1
Mathematical	MST 3; AST 3
Statistics	
Physics	PHY 101; PHY 1S1
Psychology	ORG 2; PSY 2
Psychology	ORG 3; PSY 3

Maths MAT 1S1; MAM 101

Maths MAT 1S1; MAT 1F

### S.19

Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained at least 90 NQF credits at the NQF level 5 as specified in Rule S.2 or S.13; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study when they have obtained at least 150 NQF credits (120 at NQF level 5 and at least 30 at NQF level 6 as to continue with the subject into third year), otherwise they shall be in their second year of study.

### S.20

S.20.1 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than the equivalent of eight semester-courses in the first year of study for a BSc, and in not more than the equivalent of ten semester-courses in the first year of study for a BSc(InfSys); provided that the Senate may permit candidates for a BSc to present themselves for examination in two additional semester-courses approved by the Senate.

S.20.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than the equivalent of eight semester-courses in their second year of study and not more than the equivalent of six semester-courses in their final year of study; provided that candidates in their final year of study may be permitted by Senate to present themselves at supplementary examinations for which they are eligible under Rule G.37, so as to obtain credit for two additional semester-courses in subjects in which they have previously failed.

### S.21

S.21.1 Except with the permission of Senate, candidates may not enter the second year of any

subject unless they have obtained credit for first-year level courses equivalent to 90 NQF credits, and may not enter the third year of any subject until they have obtained credit for courses equivalent to 150 NQF credits.

S.21.2 Notwithstanding Rule S.22.1, candidates may not register for second year courses in the second semester if they have not previously been registered as second year students in the first semester.

### S.22

S.22.1 Except with permission of the Senate, candidates may not enter courses in any subject unless they have satisfied all prerequisite conditions imposed for entry into such courses.

S.22.2 There may be prerequisite required course(s) that must be obtained before a candidate may register for a particular course. Similarly, a co-requisite is a required course that must be obtained before a candidate may be awarded the degree.

S.22.3 Permission of the Senate is necessary to attend any course concurrently with a higher-level course for which it is a prerequisite. Permission will not normally be given to attend a required first course concurrently with a final course. Applications in this regard should be made to the Dean of the Faculty at registration.

S.22.4 A candidate who has passed the final course of a major subject, but has failed in a prescribed co-requisite, may rewrite the examination in that course without being required to rewrite the examination in the related major subject.

S.22.5 The accompanying table summarises for each major Science subject and includes those constituent prerequisite(s) and co-requisite(s) courses required for the subject.

### Major subject

Applied Mathematics

Applied Statistics

Biochemistry

Botany

### Courses needed in each of

MAM 1; MAM 2; MAP 3

MAM 1; MST 102; MST 2; AST 3

CHE 1; BCH 2; BCH 3

CEL 101; BOT 102; ZOO 102; CHE 1; BOT 2; BOT 3

Chemistry	CHE 1; CHE 2; CHE 3; 1 semester course in first year mathematics and one semester from first year CSC, MAM, MST, PHY or STA
Computer Science	CSC 1; CSC 2; CSC 3, one of first year MAM, MAT, MST or STA
Entomology	CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; CHE 1; ENT 2; ENT 3
Environmental Science	GOG 1; 1 of BOT 1, GLG 1, ZOO 1, ECO 1, ANT 1; ENV 2; ENV 3
Geography	EAR 101; GOG 102; GOG 2; GOG 3
Geology	EAR 101; GLG 102; GLG 2; GLG 3; CHE 101 and one from CHE 102, first year physics or first year MAT or MAM
Human Kinetics & Ergonomics	HKE 1; HKE 2; HKE 3
Ichthyology	CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; CHE 1; ICH 2; ICH 3; Two of first year CSC (excluding CSC 1L1), MAM, MAT, MST, STA or TOF 1C1
Mathematics	MAM 1; MAM 2; MAT 3
Mathematical Statistics	MAM 1; MST 102; MST 2; MST 3
Microbiology	CEL 101; CHE 1; MIC 2; MIC 3
Physics & Electronics	PHY 1; MAM 1; MAM 2; PHY 2; PHY 3
Zoology	CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; CHE 1; ZOO 2; ZOO 3

## S.23

S.23.1 Except with permission of the Senate, candidates may not enter courses in any subject unless they have satisfied all prerequisite conditions imposed for entry into such courses, and may not obtain credit for any subjects until they have obtained credit in all prescribed ancillary courses for such subjects.

S.23.2 There may be prerequisite (ancillary) requirements that must be met before a candidate may register for a particular course, and similar requirements that must be met before a candidate may obtain credit for a given course. Credit requirements will usually be stricter than registration requirements, which might stipulate “adequate performance” in an ancillary subject (or even at a lower level in the same subject) rather than “credit”.

S.23.3 Permission of the Senate is necessary to attend any course concurrently with a higher-level course for which it is a prerequisite. Permission will not normally be given to attend a required first course concurrently with a final course. Applications in this regard should be made to the Dean of the Faculty at Registration.

S.23.4 A candidate who has passed the final course of a major subject, but has failed in a prescribed ancillary subject, may rewrite the examination in that ancillary subject without being required to rewrite the examination in the related major subject.

S.23.5 The accompanying tables summarise, for each major subject, those constituent credits and ancillary subjects in which credit must be obtained, and, for specific constituents, the prerequisite credits needed for registration.

The following notes apply to the courses marked with the appropriate superior numbers in the tables below. For further details, candidates should consult the departmental entries elsewhere in the Calendar.

1. *Permission may be given to register for this course concurrently with the course for which it is a required ancillary however it is expected that students will attempt the course in their first year.*
2. *A candidate who has passed Organisational Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3, but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to*

*Organisational Psychology 3, except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.*

3. *MAT IS1 has replaced MAT 1P which was taught in 2012 and earlier.*
4. *MAT IS1 and MAT 1F are equivalent single-semester credit courses. The difference is that MAT 1F is an extended course that is taught over two semesters and MAT IS1 is taught over one.*

## **S.24**

S.24.1 Students who have failed a course but who have reached the necessary subminimum of 40% (see S.2), which corresponds to a final course mark of between 40 and 49%, may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, be admitted to supplementary examinations, normally written in February the following year. .

S.24.2 Notwithstanding S.24.1, a supplementary examination will be permitted for the last semester course outstanding for the degree and for a course taken in the final calendar year of study provided that the student has previously written the examination for the course concerned. This is known as a Last Outstanding Course (LOC).

S.24.3 A candidate who sits a supplementary examination shall have the higher mark and classification earned in the two examinations recorded for that semester-course, and any computation of an aggregate course mark shall be based on the higher marks earned for the constituent examinations.

## **S.25**

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes with a Class 1 (at least 75%) in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. For the purpose of this rule, the final

mark in a major subject shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of the semester-course components.

## **POSTGRADUATE DEGREES**

### **Degree of Bachelor of Science with Honours S26**

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for an honours degree unless they have been awarded the ordinary degree, or have been admitted to the status thereof; or have completed all the requirements therefore, except the requirements regarding attendance. Attention is drawn to the provisions of Rule G.49 of the General Rules.

#### **S.27**

S.27.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to an honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year of the subject in which they wish to take honours.

S.27.2 The continued registration of honours candidates beyond the first semester may be dependent on a satisfactory review of their progress.

#### **S.28**

A candidate who has satisfied the requirements of Rule S.27 by completing an ordinary degree in a faculty other than Science may, with the approval of Senate, be admitted to the status of BSc, and allowed to study for the degree of BSc(Hons).

#### **S.29**

S.29.1 A candidate shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the requirements of Rule S.26, and pursue a course of advanced study in a subject approved by the Senate.

S.29.2 A non-Science subject (as defined in Rule S.2) may also be offered for the honours degree; except that a candidate for an honours degree in such a subject may be required to obtain permission

to transfer registration to the Faculty in which the subject is normally offered, and to proceed to an honours degree in that Faculty, depending on the combination of papers to be offered.

**S.30**

S.30.1 The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study.

S.30.2 Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit candidates to take honours courses over two years as full-time or as part-time students; provided that they attend the honours classes (including practicals) within the normal timetable of the Department, and that the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, no more than two years.

S.30.3 Students who originally register to take the honours degree over two years may, if progress is satisfactory, be allowed to change registration to complete the degree in the first year as full-time students. Full-time students who originally register to take the degree over one year may be advised by the Head of Department to take the degree over two years, or may opt to change registration to part-time. Any such changes must be effected no later than the end of the second week of the second semester.

S.30.4 Full-time candidates may withdraw from an Honours course during the second semester, but may not alter their registrations otherwise. On the recommendation of the Head of Department, candidates who withdraw may be permitted to register for the course in the following year, but will be required to complete all requirements for examination (including practical and project work) as though they had not previously been registered.

S.30.5 Any project work that forms part of the examinable material of an Honours degree must be completed and submitted before the final examinations are written.

**S.31**

A candidate may not take up any full-time employment while engaged in the course. However, on the recommendation of the Head of

the Department concerned, with the approval of Senate, part-time employment is permitted.

**S.32**

An honours candidate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend concurrently and write the examination of two undergraduate semester-courses in the same or another department.

**S.33**

S.33.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, or as provided in Rule S.33.2, the subject of an honours degree shall be one which the candidate has completed as a major subject for the ordinary degree.

S.33.2 Candidates for Honours degrees in some subjects not offered as major subjects in the ordinary degree shall normally have credit in cognate major subjects as provided as follows:

**S.34**

Candidates may, with the approval of the Senate, present themselves for examination in more than one subject; provided that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination. If more than 60% of the honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

**S.35**

Candidates who fail an honours examination paper may be permitted by the Senate to re-present themselves, at most once, for that examination paper, and for this purpose they shall be required to re-attend the course prior to such re-examination.

**S.36**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must write all parts of the examination at one time, and shall not be exempted from any part of such examination; provided that students who are required to take the degree over two years may, on the recommendation of the Head of

Department, and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study, and part at the end of the second year of study.

### **Degrees of Master of Science, Doctor of Philosophy, and Doctor of Science**

See General Rules and individual departmental entries.

#### **S.37**

The continued registration of MSc and PhD students (and, in particular, past the first year) is conditional on the Dean receiving satisfactory reports on their progress.

#### **S.38**

Applications to upgrade from MSc to PhD registration must be made on the official form and must normally be submitted within the first 18 months of registration.

### **The Science Extended Studies Programme**

Special provision is made in the Faculty of Science to accommodate students who would not normally be admitted to the curricula for the degrees of Bachelor of Science or Bachelor of Science (Information Systems), or are identified as requiring additional support in certain key subject areas. The Science Extended Studies Programme extends over a year, during which specially designed courses are offered, which earn credit towards a full degree.

#### **S.39**

S.39.1 Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme unless they are in possession of a National Senior Certificate or a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board, or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom.

S.39.2 Candidates are normally expected to have achieved at least a level 4 in Mathematics in the NSC, and to have achieved at least a level 4 in either Biology or Physical Science at the NSC.

#### **S.40**

S.40.1 A student admitted to the full Science Extended Studies Programme will register for a first-year curriculum that will earn 60 NQF credits if completed: Computer Skills for Science 1S (CSC 1S), Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods (ISCM 1F), Mathematics 1F (MAT 1F).

S.40.2 A student admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme is required to obtain ISCM 1F, CSC 1S and/or MAT 1F before later being admitted to other full courses.

S.40.3 A student admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme is expected to obtain at least 360 NQF credits before being awarded a BSc degree.

S.40.4 Attention is drawn to Rule S.17 and Rule S.22.

#### **S.41**

A candidate admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme may be permitted by the Dean to change registration to a regular curriculum during the first two weeks of the academic year.

# ACCOUNTING

## Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

EB Horn, BCom (Stell), BCompt (Hons)  
(UNISA), MCom (Taxation) (Rhodes), CA(SA)

## KPMG/CU Peat Memorial Professor of Accounting

EM Stack, MCom (Taxation), DCompt (UNISA)

## Associate Professor

KW Maree, MCom (Rhodes), CA(SA)

## Senior Lecturers

L Khomo, PGDip (Acc Sc) (UNISA), CA(SA)

S Mabaso, HDipAcc (Wits), MCom (Taxation)  
(Rhodes), BTh (TEEC), CA(SA)

A Mgidlana, BCom (NMU), ADA (UFH), PGDA  
(UFH), BCom (Hons) (Taxation) (UFH),  
CA(SA)/H Mrubata-Mhlebi, PGDA (UCT),  
CA(SA)

W Ndou, BCom, PGDip(Acc), MCom(Taxation)  
(Rhodes), CA(SA)

R Poole, MCom (Taxation) (Rhodes), CTA(SA)

S Pretorius, PGDip (Acc) (Rhodes), MCom  
(UCT), CA(SA)

T Tekolo, BCom (Hons) (NWU), CA(SA)

L Thindisa, HDipAcc (Wits), MCom (Taxation)  
(UP), CA(SA)

D Waters, PGDip (Acc) (Rhodes), CA(SA)

## Lecturer

MR Hockly, BCompt (Hons) (UNISA)

The following subjects and courses may be studied for degree and higher diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Accounting are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Humanities (in Social Science).

## BACHELOR'S DEGREE COURSES

Accounting 1 consists of two one-semester courses ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112. Credit may be obtained in any of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ACC 1, provided that the courses constituting Accounting 1 are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12). Credit in ACC 101

and ACC 102 or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 aggregated at the required level is a pre-requisite for admission to ACC 2.

Accounting 1F (ACC 1F) consists of ACC 101 taken over a full year and Accounting 1G (ACC 1G) consists of ACC 102 taken over a full year. Only students who have credit in ACC 1F may register for ACC 1G. Credit in ACC 1F and ACC 1G is equivalent to credit in ACC 1.

ACC 102 has a greater focus in company accounting than ACC 112.

A candidate who fails ACC 101 shall be permitted to proceed to ACC 102 or ACC 112 provided the required sub-minimum in ACC 101 has been obtained. A pass in either ACC 102 or ACC 112 in such circumstances shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass ACC 101 in order to gain credit for the full course unless an aggregated pass is awarded.

## First-year courses

### Accounting 101 (ACC 101)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** none

**Course description:** The accounting cycle; presentation and disclosure of financial statements; adjustments; accounting for receivables and payables; inventories; cash and cash equivalents.

**DP requirements:** Attend 80% of all lectures; attend 80% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all assignments; write both formal tests and the examination; obtain a mark of at least 35% in each of the two formal tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and the examination counts 60%.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### Accounting 102 (ACC 102)

First-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** sub-minimum of 35% in ACC 101



**Course description:** Accounting for non-current assets; partnerships; companies; statements of cash flow.

**DP requirements:** Attend 80% of all lectures; attend 80% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all assignments; write both formal tests and the examination; obtain a mark of at least 35% in each of the two formal tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and the examination counts 60%.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Accounting 112 (ACC 112) (One three-hour paper)**

First-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** sub-minimum of 35% in ACC 101

**Course description:** Accounting for non-current assets; partnerships; companies; statements of cash flow.

**DP requirements:** Attend 100% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all assignments and tutorial exercises; write both formal tests and the examination; obtain a mark of at least 35% in each of the two formal tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and the examination counts 60%.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Accounting 1F (ACC 1F)**

This course consists of ACC101 taken over a full academic year.

### **Accounting 1G (ACC 1G)**

This course consists of ACC102 taken over a full academic year, but may only be taken by students who have passed Accounting 1F.

## **Second-year courses**

### **Principles of Professional Accountancy (ACC 2PA)**

Second-year, full-year course (NQF Level 6, 30 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 aggregated at the required level

**Course description:** Fundamental Principles of: Management Accounting, Corporate Finance, Taxation, Governance & Risk Management, and Business Ethics.

**DP requirements:** Write all tests and the June examination; attend all tutorials and submit all tutorial hand-ins by the due date; attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend all compulsory supplementary instruction and alternative support sessions; complete and submit all compulsory assignments and quizzes by the due date; achieve an average of at least 35% for all first semester assessments, including the June exam; achieve 35% minimum overall course mark for the year excluding the November examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 40%.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Accounting 2 (ACC 2)**

Second-year, full-year course (NQF Level 6, 30 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 aggregated at the required level

**Course description:** Intermediate financial accounting, including individual company financial statements and tax; introduction to management accounting and specialised financial accounting topics.

**DP requirements:** Write all tests and the June examination; attend all compulsory tutorials; attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend all compulsory supplementary instruction and alternative support sessions; complete and submit all compulsory assignments and quizzes (if any) by the due date; achieve 35% minimum mark for test 1, test 2 and June exam; achieve 40% minimum mark for test 3, test 4 and overall course mark for the year excluding the November examination; achieve 40% minimum overall mark for assignments and quizzes (if any).

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 40%.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**Third-year courses****Accounting 3 (ACC 3)**

Third-year, full-year course (NQF Level 7, 60 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ACC 2

**Course description:** Consolidations. Equity accounting. Income Taxes. Foreign exchange. Forward exchange contracts. Leasing. Borrowing costs. Government grants. Presentation of financial statements. Accounting policies, estimates, errors. Provisions and contingencies. Earnings per share. Revenue. Segment information. Events after the reporting period. Financial instruments (excl. derivatives).

**DP requirements:** Write all tests, exams, attend tutorials and participate in continuous assessments, and integrated assignment; achieve 35% minimum year-to-date mark after June exams.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 40%.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**Auditing 3 (AUD 3)**

Third-year, full-year course (NQF Level 7, 45 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ACC 2 and ACC 2PA

**Course description:** Nature, definition and objective of an audit. The auditor: qualities, qualifications, duties and responsibilities. The South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (SAICA) Code of Professional Conduct. The Companies Act and the Auditing Profession Act. The King Code of Corporate Governance. The audit process. Internal controls. Compliance and substantive auditing of the major business cycles. Completing the audit. Audit reports. Computer auditing.

**DP requirements:** Write all tests, exams, attend tutorials and participate in continuous assessments, and integrated assignment; achieve 35% minimum year-to-date mark after June exams.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 40%.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**Management Accounting and Finance 3 (MAF 3)**

Third-year, full-year course (NQF Level 7, 45 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ACC 2, ACC 2PA, TOF 1C1 and STA 1C2

**Course description:** Cost terms, concepts and techniques for inventory valuation; tools and techniques for planning, control and performance management including budgeting, standard costing and financial statement analysis, techniques to assist decision-making such as relevant costs and revenues; concepts, terms and techniques used to assist with maximizing value of stakeholders with the three financial management decisions, namely investment decisions, financing decision and dividend decisions.

**DP requirements:** Write all tests, exams, attend tutorials and participate in continuous assessments, and integrated assignment; achieve 35% minimum year-to-date mark after June exams.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 40%.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**Taxation 3 (TAX 3)**

Third-year, full-year course (NQF Level 7, 45 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ACC 2 and ACC 2PA

**Course description:** Principles of income tax. Practical application of the Income Tax Act, the Value-Added Tax Act, the Tax Administration Act and other relevant tax Acts to financial and commercial transactions. Preparation of estate duty calculations in deceased estates. Anti-avoidance provisions in tax-related matters.

**DP requirements:** Write all tests, exams, attend tutorials and participate in continuous assessments, and integrated assignment; achieve 35% minimum year-to-date mark after June exams.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 40%.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

## POSTGRADUATE STUDIES IN ACCOUNTING

### Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy

#### Accounting 4

Advanced financial accounting (including advanced group accounting) with specific emphasis on International Financial Reporting Standards published by the International Accounting Standards Board. The Accounting 4 curriculum includes advanced work on all topics covered in Accounting 3.

#### Auditing 4

The topics included in the first course with more emphasis on analysis and application, together with issues of a topical and important nature.

#### Management Accounting and Finance 4

Advanced management accounting and financial management with more focus on application, analysis and integration; a closer look at the implications of strategy, risk management and governance on management decision-making, control and finance.

#### Taxation 4

The law and procedures in South Africa relating to taxation. The Income Tax Act, Value-Added Tax Act, Estate Duty Act, Tax Administration Act and other relevant Acts, court decisions and SARS rulings and Interpretation Notes. The preparation of statements and the calculation of taxes payable. Estate and tax planning.

#### Accounting Honours course

- Paper 1 Accounting 4
- Paper 2 Management Accounting and Finance 4
- Paper 3 Auditing 4
- Paper 4 Taxation 4
- Paper 5 A research essay on a topic approved by the Head of the Department
- Paper 6 Introduction to Research Methodology and Design.

#### Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation

The programme comprises modules on advanced aspects of taxation, each module assessed by a

written assignment; the Taxation 4 paper (see above); an introductory module on research methodology and design; a research essay on an approved topic.

#### Master's Degree in Taxation (by coursework and thesis)

The programme comprises a coursework component assessed by written assignments, two coursework examinations and a dissertation of limited scope. The requirement for admission is an Honours degree or the equivalent of a Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy with a CA(SA) qualification, with a good academic record.

#### Master's Degree in Financial Accounting, Auditing, Management Accounting & Finance or Taxation

Full thesis, addressing a research question approved by the Head of Department and the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Commerce.

#### Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Financial Accounting, Auditing, Management Accounting & Finance or Taxation

Full thesis, addressing a research question approved by the Head of Department and the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Commerce. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on a good academic record, the acceptance of a topic statement and the availability of expertise in the department to supervise the project.

*NB Not all the above courses will be offered in any one year.*

#### Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy

Normally an average of a minimum of 58% across all 4 subjects, with a sub-minimum of 55% in each of Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3 and Taxation 3 with the examinations for all four subjects written in a single examination session in the academic year immediately preceding the year of registration for PDipAcc. Supplementary/re-examination results will not be considered in reviewing the application.

**Accounting Honours Course**

As for the PDipAcc, with a minimum mark of 60% in each of the four third year subjects.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation**

Bachelor of Commerce with an undergraduate exit-level credit in Taxation with a minimum of 65%.

# ANTHROPOLOGY

## Head of Department (Acting) and Lecturer

P Taruvinga, BA, MA (UZ), PhD (UCT)

## Emeritus Professors

RCG Palmer, BA (Hons) (Durham), MA,

DPhil (Sussex)

CJ De Wet, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Stell), PGDip

(Social Anthropology) (Oxon), PhD (Rhodes)

## Professor

S Aswani, BA (Miami), MA, PhD (Hawaii)

## Associate Professor

ML Cocks BSocSci, BSocSci (Hons), MSocSci

(Rhodes), PhD (Wageningen)

## Senior Lecturer

D Santos, BA (Hons), MRes, PhD (Goldsmiths,

London)

## Lecturers

GG Darong, BA (St Joseph's Theological

Institute), BSocSci (Hons), MSocSci, PhD

(UKZN)

MAC Dlamini, BSocSci, BSocSci (Hons),

MSocSci (UKZN)

M Pitso, BA, BSc (Hons), MA, PGCHE (UP)

## Research Associates

PS Bernard, BSocSci (Natal), BSocSci (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

VA Masterson, BSc, BSc (Hons) (Wits), PhD (Stockholm)

PC Henderson, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Wits), PhD (UCT)

Anthropology is a three-year major subject, which may be studied for degree curricula in the faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. One or two courses in Anthropology are allowed as credits for degree curricula in the Faculty of Law.

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### Anthropology 101 (ANT 101)

#### Introduction to Anthropology

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** The course provides insight into the four sub-fields of the discipline (Archaeology, Biological, Linguistics, and Socio-cultural), its origins, development, and its place in contemporary society. It introduces students to the history of the discipline and its methods as a social science that studies human societies in all of their complexity and

diversity. This is done through critical engagement with the emergence of the discipline and fieldwork experiences.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of tutorials and 40% pass of coursework.

**Assessment:** 60% coursework and 40% June exam.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Anthropology 102 (ANT 102)

#### Introduction to Anthropological Theories

First-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% or above for Anthropology 101.

**Course description:** This course utilizes ethnographic perspectives using case studies to explore local, regional and global dimensions of cultures and societies. This provides an opportunity for critically engaging the intersection between ethnographic approaches and anthropological theories over time to analyse the dynamic nature of social worlds.

**DP requirements:** 80% of tutorials and 40% pass of coursework.

**Assessment:** 60% coursework and 40% November exam.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Anthropology 2 (ANT 2)

#### Anthropological Perspectives

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Anthropology 101 and 102

**Course description:** During this year, the concerns of Anthropology are explained in greater analytical and methodological depth, with a focus on specialist ethnographic and thematic topics.

#### Core courses:

- Research Methods in Anthropology
- Theoretical Approaches to Human Origins Ethnology
- Research Methods in Practice (topics will vary depending on staff expertise and offered based on staff availability). Topics may include:
  - Anthropology of Youth and Childhood
  - Heritage, Sustainability and Development
  - Medical Anthropology
  - Anthropology in/of Africa

- Oceania: Pacific Island Anthropology

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of tutorials, and 40% pass of coursework.

**Assessment:** 60% coursework and 40% exam.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40%

### **Anthropology 3 (ANT 3)**

#### **Anthropology: Applied and Research**

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Anthropology 2

**Course description:** During this year, the anthropological theories and concepts that have been introduced during first two years of study are further advanced through discussion of thematic case studies and a mini-research project.

The thematic case/area studies shall expose students to the following ethnographic perspectives, amongst others (depending on the expertise of available staff):

- Medical Anthropology
- Ecological Anthropology
- Maritime Anthropology
- Applied Anthropology
- Indigenous Knowledge Systems
- Music as Communication and Social Practice
- Anthropology of Play
- Post Human Perspectives
- Contemporary Theory in Practice
- Heritage, Sustainability and Development
- Forensic Anthropology/Archaeology

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of lectures and 40% pass of coursework module.

**Assessment:** 60% coursework and 40% examination.

**Supplementary exam:** Semester mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40%

### **POSTGRADUATE COURSES**

#### **Postgraduate Diploma in Heritage Management (PDHM)**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Any undergraduate degree. Admission to the course is also possible via the Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) option.

**Course description:** The course introduces heritage theory and practice, while critically considering local, regional and international dialogues on heritage management. The diploma analyses definitions of heritage and considers innovative approaches to

heritage management through the following modules:

- Module 1: Key principles of Heritage and Heritage Management Theory: 2 assignments (20%)
- Module 2: Heritage in Focus: 2 assignments (20%)
- Module 3: Heritage in Practice (Institutional placements (13%) and
- Research project (47%).

Students are required to take up internship placements or workplace reflections at heritage institutions, as well as develop a thesis (15000-20000 words) on a selected topic.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of lectures 40% pass of coursework.

Candidates must obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% to qualify for the award of the Diploma.

#### **Honours Degree**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Completed undergraduate degree with Anthropology 3 or a cognate discipline as a major, with a minimum of second-class pass (60%). Students from cognate disciplines will be required to take courses in introduction to anthropology and anthropological methods, which may either be non-credit (no-assessments required) or for credit (full-assessments required).

**Course description:** The Honours program consists of taught modules and a research dissertation. Themodules offered may vary depending on availability of staff. Students will select courses from a range of offerings which may include the following, depending on staff availability.

- Bio-cultural Diversity Studies
- Transcultural Approaches to Wellness and Wellbeing
- Politics of Performance
- Anthropology of Gender and Sexuality
- Maritime Anthropology
- Biological Anthropology
- Heritage in Focus
- Heritage in Theory and Practice

A research thesis of 15000-20000 words, incorporating original fieldwork or systematic review on a topic chosen by the candidate and approved by the Departmental Research Committee

and the Rhodes University Ethics Committee.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of lectures, 40% pass of coursework. Students must receive a minimum of 50% for their research dissertation to be awarded the degree.

### **Joint Honours Degree**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Completed undergraduate degree with Anthropology 3 or a cognate discipline as a major, with a minimum of a second-class pass (60%).

**Course description:** Combining Anthropology with another subject is encouraged to foster interdisciplinary interaction across faculties. If hosted by Anthropology, requirements are completing course modules and a research thesis, which can be interdisciplinary.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of lectures and 40% pass of coursework.

If hosted by Anthropology, students must receive a minimum of 50% for their research dissertation to be awarded the degree.

### **Master's Degree**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Completed Honours degree in Anthropology or a cognate discipline, with a minimum result of 60%. Approval of preliminary research proposal. Students from cognate disciplines will be required to take courses in introduction to anthropology and anthropological methods, which may either be non-credit (no-assessments required) or for credit (full-assessments required).

**Course description:** A thesis (for which fieldwork will normally be required) on any approved topic within any anthropological field.

A research thesis of 35000-50000 words, incorporating original fieldwork on a proposal submitted by the candidate and approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee and Rhodes University Ethics Committee.

### **Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Completed Master's degree in Anthropology or a cognate discipline.

**Course description:** A thesis (for which fieldwork will normally be required) on any approved topic within any anthropological field.

A research thesis of 80000-100000 words, incorporating original fieldwork on a proposal submitted by the candidate and approved by the Higher Degrees Committee and Rhodes University Ethics Committee.

# BIOCHEMISTRY AND MICROBIOLOGY

## Senior Lecturer & Head of Department

J de la Mare, BSc (Rhodes), BSc Hons (Rhodes), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

## Senior Lecturer & Head of Biochemistry

BS Wilhelmi, BSc (Rhodes), BSc Hons (Rhodes), B.Tech:Ed (TWR), PhD (Rhodes)

## Lecturer & Head of Microbiology

GL Abrahams, BSc BSc Hons, PhD (UCT)

## Professor, Bioinformatics & Head of

### Bioinformatics

O Tastan Bishop, BSc (Bogazici Univ.), MSc (Bogazici), PhD (Max Planck)

## Professor, Microbiology

J Dames, BSc, BSc Hons (UKZN), MSc, PhD (Wits)

## Professor, Microbiology

RA Dorrington, BSc Agric (US), BSc Hons, MSc (UCT), PhD (UCT)

## Professor, Biochemistry & SARChI Chair in Molecular and Cellular Biology of the Eukaryotic Stress Response

AL Edkins, BSc (Rhodes), BSc Hons (Rhodes), MSc (Rhodes), MSc Forensic Sci (King's College London), MRes, PhD (Glasgow), FAAS, MASSAf

## Associate Professor, Biochemistry

H Hoppe, BSc (UJ), BSc (Med) Hons (UCT), PhD (UP)

## Associate Professor, Microbiology

C Knox, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc, PhD (Wits)

## Professor, Biochemistry

BI Pletschke, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc, PhD (NMU), PG Dip (HE) (Rhodes), FAAS, MRSAf

## Lecturer, Bioinformatics

Vacant

## Lecturer in Microbiology

SE Ledwaba, BSc (UL), MSc, PhD (UNIVEN)

## Emeritus Professor

CG Whiteley, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc, PhD (Natal), MRSC, CChem

## Visiting Professors

GL Blatch, BSc, BSc Hons (UKZN), PhD (UCT), FRSSAf

SG Burton BSc Hons (Rhodesia), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

DM Lang, BSc, PhD (Konstanz)

KL McPhail, BSc, BSc Hons, PhD (Rhodes)

RE Sipler, BSc (UMD), PhD (Rutgers)

A Whitehouse, BSc (Sheffield), PhD (Oxon)

## Research Associates

GF Matcher BSc, BSc Hons, PhD (Rhodes)

TM Musyoka BSc (Kenyatta), MSc (Nakasaki),

PhD (Rhodes), PGDip (R&D Pharm Prod)

(Nagasaki)

S Parker-Nance, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc, PhD

(NMU), PhD (Rhodes)

## Professional Associates

G Hawley-McMaster, BSc, BSc Hons (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

M Brooks, BSc, BSc Hons (Rhodes)

The Department offers courses in Biochemistry, Microbiology and Bioinformatics.

See the departmental web page <http://www.ru.ac.za/bm/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

## BIOCHEMISTRY

Biochemistry (BCH) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Biochemistry, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: CHE 1; BCH 2; BCH 3: See Rule S.23. In addition, students wishing to major in Biochemistry are encouraged to obtain CEL 101; MIC 202. Students who aim to major in Biochemistry and progress to postgraduate studies in Bioinformatics are encouraged to register for advanced courses in one or more of Microbiology, Computer Science, Chemistry or Mathematics.

## Second-year level courses in Biochemistry

There are two second-year courses in Biochemistry. BCH 201 is held in the first semester and BCH 202 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an



aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BCH 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Practical reports, tutorials and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for BCH 201 or BCH 202. A sub-minimum of 40% in BCH 201 is required before a student may register for BCH 202. In addition, MIC 202 is strongly encouraged for students wishing to major in Biochemistry.

**DP requirements per semester course:** a class record of at least 40%, attendance of all lectures and practical sessions and submission of all assignments. A Leave of Absence (LOA) will usually only be granted for one practical and one test per semester, unless there are exceptional circumstances, and assessments and assignments will be rescheduled wherever possible.

### **BCH 201**

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CHE 1

**Course description:** Aqueous biochemistry & buffers, building blocks in biochemistry: amino acids & proteins, nucleotides DNA & RNA, carbohydrates, lipids & membranes; scientific writing; bioenergetics & metabolism; membrane transporters.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examinations 50%  
**Supplementary exams:** 40-49%.

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with BCH 202. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

### **BCH 202**

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CHE 1, sub-minimum of 40% for BCH201

**Course description:** Biochemical techniques: This course is taught in the context of protein purification and analysis and includes: protein purification strategies; cell disruption and centrifugation; chromatography; spectroscopy; electrophoresis; and immunological techniques.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examinations 50%

**Supplementary exams:** 40-489%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with BCH 201. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

### **Third-year level courses in Biochemistry**

There are two third-year courses in Biochemistry. BCH 301 is usually held in the first semester and BCH 302 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BCH 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Biochemistry 2 (BCH 2) is required before a student may register for BCH 301 or BCH 302. In addition, MIC 202 is strongly encouraged for students wishing to major in Biochemistry.

**DP requirements for each semester course:** a class record of at least 40%, attendance of all lectures and practical sessions and submission of all assignments. A Leave of Absence (LOA) will usually only be granted for one practical and one test per semester, unless there are exceptional circumstances, and assessments and assignments will be rescheduled wherever possible.

### **BCH 301**

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** BCH 2

**Course description:** Biochemistry of information flow: the structure of chromosomes and plasmids;

DNA replication and repair; transcription and regulation of gene expression; protein synthesis, molecular biology techniques, recombinant DNA techniques and heterologous protein production and applications in forensics, diagnostics, pharmaceuticals, industry and agriculture. Medical biochemistry: signal transduction in the context of hormones and neurotransmission. Protein trafficking and organelle formation: the formation of eukaryotic cell organelles and their protein compositions. Protein-protein interactions: research methods to detect protein interactions.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examinations 50%

**Supplementary exams:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with BCH 302. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

### **BCH 302**

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** BCH 2, sub-minimum of 40% for BCH301

**Course description:** Advanced metabolism, enzyme kinetics and mechanisms; advanced enzyme kinetics; advanced theory and application of computational methods and tools for the visualisation and modelling of enzymes.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examinations 50%

**Supplementary exams:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with BCH 301. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

### **Biochemistry Honours**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** The course consists of course-work modules and lectures on selected advanced topics such as drug discovery, cell culture and fluorescence techniques, research

methods, advanced enzyme technology and biotechnology, biocatalysis; a literature review, essays and a research project.

**DP requirements:** attendance of all lectures and journal clubs, submission of all assignments and sitting of all tests.

**Assessment:** This course is assessed through written tests, continual assessment of a research project, comprehension test and oral examinations.

**Supplementary exam:** None

### **MICROBIOLOGY**

Microbiology (MIC) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Microbiology, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: CHE 1; CEL 101 (or an aggregate pass in ZOO 1 or BOT 1); MIC 2; MIC 3. See Rule S.23. In addition, students wishing to major in Microbiology are strongly encouraged to obtain BCH 201.

Students who aim to major in Microbiology and progress to postgraduate studies in computational biology or genomics are encouraged to register for advanced courses in one or more of Biochemistry, Computer Science, Chemistry or Mathematics.

### **Second-year level courses in Microbiology**

There are two second-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 201 is held in the first semester and MIC 202 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course, MIC 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component.

Practical reports, tutorials and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) and Cell Biology (CEL 101) (or aggregated passes in either Botany (BOT 1) or Zoology (ZOO 1) are required before a student may register for MIC 201. A sub-minimum of 40% in MIC 201 is required for registration in MIC 202. In

addition, BCH 201 is strongly recommended for students wishing to major in Microbiology.

The courses comprise of the following modules, not necessarily in the given order, with each module lasting about three weeks.

### **MIC 201 (Microbes and their environment)**

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CHE 1, CEL 101 or ZOO 1 or BOT 1

**Course description:** Introduction to the major groups of microbes, including bacteria, fungi, viruses, archaea, and protists. Emphasis is placed on the structure, function, physiology, nutrition, and life cycles of the different groups of microbes. The effects of microbes on the natural and built environment and on plant, animal and human health will also be examined.

The course includes practical experience in the isolation and culture of microbes and a field trip.

**DP requirements:** A class record of 40% or above and attendance of all practicals and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Theory and Practical Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with MIC 202. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

### **MIC 202 (Molecular biology and microbial genetics)**

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% MIC 201

**Course description:** Introductory molecular biology, bacterial genetics, prokaryote gene regulation, recombinant DNA technology. The course will include a practical introduction to basic molecular techniques such as DNA isolation and characterisation, bacterial transformation, gene regulation, and recombinant DNA technology.

**DP requirements:** A class record of 40% or above and attendance of all practicals and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Theory and Practical Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exams:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with MIC 201. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

### **Third-year level courses in Microbiology**

There are two third-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 301 is held in the first semester and MIC 302 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course MIC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Practical reports, tutorials and class tests collectively comprise the class record, which forms part of the final mark.

Microbiology 2 (MIC 2) is required before a student may register for MIC 301 or MIC 302. A sub-minimum of 40% in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. In addition, BCH 201 is strongly recommended for students wishing to major in Microbiology. The courses are comprised of the following modules, not necessarily in the given order, with each module lasting about three weeks:

### **MIC 301 (Eukaryotic cell biology and immunology, host-pathogen interactions and stem cell biology)**

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** MIC 2

**Course description:** Eukaryotic cell biology and concepts in immunology, host-pathogen interactions and stem cell biology. The practical component of this course focuses on recombinant DNA techniques and genetic manipulation of bacteria.

**DP requirements:** A class record of 40% or above and attendance of all practicals and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Theory and Practical Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exams:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with MIC 302. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

**MIC 302 (Applied Microbiology)**

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% MIC 301

**Course description:** Exploiting microorganisms for industrial and commercial purposes. Topics covered include industrial microbiology, microbial ecology, stem cell biology, antimicrobial drug discovery and development, and agricultural microbiology. The course includes practical experience in fermentation techniques, bioreactor design and the characterisation of bacteria. A field trip to local industries is included.

**DP requirements:** A class record of 40% or above and attendance of all practicals and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Theory and Practical Examinations 67%

**Supplementary examinations:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with MIC 301. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

**Microbiology Honours**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** The course consists of modules on scientific writing, agricultural microbiology, cellular microbiology, genomics and advanced recombinant DNA techniques. The course is assessed through essays, tutorials, journal clubs and seminars with written tests. Each candidate is required to submit a report on practical work done on a specific project in the areas of molecular virology, cell biology, mycology, pathogenic microbes or marine biotechnology during the course, and this together with all

assessment marks, will be considered part of the final examination.

**DP requirements:** none

**Assessment:** This course is assessed through coursework, class tests, oral examinations and comprehension examinations.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**BIOINFORMATICS****MSc in Bioinformatics**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**General background**

Bioinformatics and computational molecular biology is the systematic development and application of information technologies and data mining techniques for analysing biological data obtained by experiments, modelling, database searching and instrumentation to make novel observations and predictions about biological function. This course will be taught in an interdisciplinary manner and focusing on the interface between the computational sciences and the biological, physical and chemical sciences. Graduates who complete this course will be skilled in the assimilation of biological information through the use and development of computational tools for a range of applications including simple pattern recognition, molecular modelling for the prediction of structure and function, gene discovery and drug target discovery, the analysis of phylogenetic relationships, whole genome analysis and the comparison of genetic organisation.

**Eligibility**

Candidates who hold a BSc Honours degree with subjects from the life sciences (especially Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology), Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics and Statistics and who have basic computer literacy, may apply for admission.

**Course structure:**

The Master's programme will be offered over 12 months and incorporates a number of course work modules and a research project. The course work modules will involve an integration of formal lectures, self-learning computer-based tutorials and

practicals. In addition, problem solving tutorials would be designed to guide the student through current information-based problems and involve the assimilation and reduction of biological information. A number of the tutorials and practical components will be assessed and contribute towards a course work year mark. The examination of the course work component would be through oral and open-book theory examinations. The course work component will be externally examined.

A number of research projects will be offered, depending on the interests of the academic staff associated with the program.

The projects will be assessed by seminar presentations of the proposed and final work, and as a written thesis that will be externally examined.

#### **Course work modules**

The course work consists of modules and lectures on introductory and advanced topics including computer operating systems and programming (e.g. Linux, Python and MatLab), basic statistics, databases, basic and advanced genomics, comparative genomics, metagenomics and structural bioinformatics (e.g. homology

modelling, protein-ligand, protein-protein interactions, protein engineering).

#### **Assessment**

The course work modules will be assessed by internal grading of tutorials and practicals, and by internal and external grading of work assignments, mini- projects and examinations. The project report and thesis will be graded internally and externally. The overall course work mark and the thesis mark will each contribute equally to the final mark. Successful completion of the course will be subject to a final mark of at least 50%, provided that a candidate obtains at least 50% for the course work, with a sub-minimum of at least 40% from each module (with at least 40% in the examination) and at least 50% for the project report, project presentations and thesis.

#### **MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

# BIOTECHNOLOGY INNOVATION CENTRE

## Associate Professor and Head of Department

E Prinsloo, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UPE), MSc (UPE), PhD (NMMU), PGDHE (Rhodes)

## Professor and Director. South African

## Research Chair in Biotechnology Innovation and Engagement

JL Limson, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD, PGDHE (Rhodes)

## Associate Professor

A Boshoff, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UPE), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

## Senior Lecturer

R Fogel, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

## Research Associates

NS Gardiner, PhD (Rhodes)

J Jordaan, PhD (Rhodes)

DT Govindaraj PhD (Katholieke Universiteit Leuven Belgium)

M Jiwaji, PhD (Rhodes)

S Abboo, PhD (Rhodes)

## Emeritus Professor

PD Rose, BSc (Hons)(UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

## Professional Associate

H Roman, PhD (Rhodes)

Biotechnology is offered at the Honours, Masters and PhD level.

## General Background

The Rhodes University Biotechnology Innovation Centre (RUBIC) is the academic home of the discipline of Biotechnology, providing a trans-disciplinary research and learning environment in the areas of Biomedical Biotechnology and in Environmental/Industrial Biotechnology. In addition to teaching and research, the Biotechnology Innovation Centre is engaged in technology transfer of Biotechnology research and the public engagement and communication of the field. For further details see the Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/biotechnology>.

## BIOTECHNOLOGY HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credits)

Entrance Requirements: MIC 3, BCH 3 or equivalent

Course description: This course is offered as a professional qualification for students interested in careers in the biotechnology sector. Biotechnology is a multi-disciplinary field of study at the intersection of the biological, chemical and physical sciences. As a prerequisite, candidates normally have either Microbiology or Biochemistry (or equivalent subjects) as one of their major BSc subjects. The course consists of lectures, seminars and essays covering a series of topics in Biotechnology such as alternative energy, wastewater treatment, biosensor technology, stem cells, tissue and protein engineering, industrial bioprocess design and strategy and advanced topics in environmental biotechnology and management. The course also includes enrichment modules and seminars in bio-entrepreneurship, intellectual property management, biotechnology communication and current trend analysis. The coursework is followed by a research project of original investigation conducted in one of the research laboratories of the supervisor.

DP requirements: Completion of all assessments & participation in enrichment modules.

Assessment: Class record 33.3%, Project 33.3%, Examinations 33.3%

Supplementary exam: None

## BIOTECHNOLOGY MASTERS AND PHD

Degrees in Biotechnology at the Masters and Doctoral level are offered by research to suitably qualified graduates. MSc (NQF level 9, 180-credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360-credits) students conduct research under the supervision of one of the staff or in collaboration with affiliates in other departments at Rhodes as well as affiliates in the public and private research and industrial

sector. Academic programmes including research seminars, conference presentations and advisory committees (constituted for masters and doctoral candidates) further support research activities. All postgraduates are offered voluntary short courses to enrich their learning and enhance their preparedness for the job market in areas including business plan development and biotechnology

communication and public engagement. Finally, the Biotechnology Innovation Centre provides the innovation space for graduates interested in the future technology transfer and commercialisation of their postgraduate research.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

# BOTANY

## Associate Professor & Head of Department

CI Peter, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (UKZN)

## Professors

BS Ripley, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

JA Coetzee, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Wits)

## Associate Professors

S Vetter, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (UCT)

## Senior Lecturer

T Pillay, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UKZN)

## Lecturer

EL Newman, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Stellenbosch)

## Herbarium Curator

AP Dold, ND (PE Tech), MSc (Rhodes)

## Research Associates

A Adebawale, PhD (UKZN)

D McMurty, ND: Horticulture (Pretoria Tech)

R Prevec, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Natal), PhD(Wits)

K Simpson, MBioSci, PhD (Sheffield)

C Swart, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

S Abraham, BSc, BSc (Hons) (Rhodesia)

S Raubenheimer, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

## Professor Emeritus

CEJ Botha, PhD (Natal)

## Associate Professor Emeritus

RA Lubke, BSc, BSc (Hons) (Rhodes), MIBiol, MSc (Science Ed.) (Keele), PhD (Western Ontario)  
Botany (BOT) is a six-semester subject that may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BA and BJourn. Botany is a recommended co-major with Environmental Science (ENV 3), Entomology (ENT 3), Ichthyology (ICH 3), Microbiology (MIC 3) or Zoology (ZOO 3).

To major in Botany, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: CHE 1, CEL 101, BOT 102, ZOO 102, BOT 201, BOT 202, BOT 301, BOT 302. See Rule S.23.

Two, or in some cases four, Botany semester courses are allowed for other degree/ diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

For further details see the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/botany/>

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN BOTANY

There are two first-year semester-long courses in Botany. CEL 101 is held in the first semester and BOT 102 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BOT 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Both theory and practical examinations are held. Supplementary examinations may be awarded in either course, provided that a candidate achieves 40% for CEL 101 and 40% for BOT 102. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. Adequate performance for CEL 101 (at least 40%) is required before a student may register for BOT 102. Each course is comprised of modules of two to four weeks, with 5 lectures and 1 practical per week.

### CEL 101: Cell Biology

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits) jointly taught by the Departments of Botany and Zoology & Entomology.

See details for CEL 101 in the entry for the Department of Zoology & Entomology.

### BOT 102: Plant Evolution and Ecology

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% for CEL 101

**Course description:** This course examines the mechanisms of evolution through natural selection and the resultant plant diversity. Whole plant function and adaptations are then used to introduce



plant ecology, which deals with the characteristics and processes found at different levels of organisation from the individual to ecosystems. Ecological concepts are illustrated with their applications in conservation and environmental management. A compulsory field excursion to the coast provides an introduction to field ecology.

**DP requirements:** Attend all practicals, lectures, tests. Hand in all assignments. 40% for the class record. **Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50% (exam sub-minimum: 40%).

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Sub-minimum for November:** 40% to aggregate with CEL 101. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN BOTANY

There are two semester-long second-year courses in Botany. BOT 201 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BOT 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 45% in each semester. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. When the intention is to major in Botany, Botany (CEL 101, BOT 102), Zoology (ZOO 102) and Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for BOT 201 or BOT 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 or ZOO 102 concurrently with BOT 2 or BOT 3. Adequate performance (at least 40%) in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. These courses each comprise several modules and weekly practicals. Students registered for BOT 201 will also be required to assemble a plant collection, and

students will participate in field trips in BOT 201 and BOT 202.

### BOT 201: Plant diversity and reproduction

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** BOT 1 Co-requisites: CHE 1, ZOO 102

**Course description:** The course begins with a module on the diversity of Angiosperms focusing on the diversity of plant structures and life forms of the spectacularly diverse South African flora. This module also introduces the basic principles of modern taxonomy and systematics. The second half of the course deals with plant reproduction and introduces some of the many modes of reproduction in Angiosperms before focusing on the interaction between plants and their pollinators. Practical and field trips train students in key skills important for botanists, ecologists and environmental scientists, such as collecting and identifying plants, using the herbarium, and collecting and analysing ecological data.

**DP requirements:** Attend all practicals, lectures, tests and field trips. Hand in all assignments and plant collection. 40% for the class record.

**Assessment:** Class record 60%, Examination 40% (exam sub-minimum: 40%)

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with BOT 202. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

### BOT 202: Plant function

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% for BOT 201

Co-requisites: CHE 1, ZOO 102

**Course description:** The course starts with a module on carbon and nitrogen metabolism in plants, which examines pathways of energy

production and utilisation and the regulation of metabolism. This is followed by a module on disturbance-driven ecosystems, which covers aspects of trophic ecology, plant-herbivore interactions, plant adaptations to fire and herbivory, rangeland-ecology. The final module deals with invasion biology, which explores the nature, extent, impact and management of biological invasions. A joint ecology field trip with other life science departments introduces hypothesis testing, research design, data collection and analysis.

**DP requirements:** Attend all practicals, lectures, tests and field trips. Hand in all assignments. 40% for the class record.

**Assessment:** Class record 60%, Examination 40% (exam sub-minimum: 40%)

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Sub-minimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with BOT 201. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

### THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN BOTANY

There are two independent semester-long third-year courses in Botany. BOT 301 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 302 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BOT 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each semester. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Students are also required to undertake a year-long mini-research project, culminating in a written project and research seminar.

#### **BOT 301: Plants in a changing world**

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** BOT 2

**Course description:** The course commences with an intensive two-week session on project development to enable students to commence their research projects with a firm foundation of research planning, project design and data analyses. A module on functional ecology in a changing world covers plant life histories, functional traits and the responses of vegetation to global change. A module on climate change and ecophysiology includes aspects of plant physiology and the environment where these plants grow, in particular the physiological consequences of stress. Both modules are linked to climate change issues and highlight how an understanding of southern African ecological systems has contributed to these fields globally.

**DP requirements:** Attend all practicals, lectures, tests and field trips. Hand in all assignments including project components. 40% for the class record.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Project 20%, Examination 40% (exam sub-minimum: 40%)

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Sub-minimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with BOT 302. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

#### **BOT 302: Ecology and Evolution**

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% BOT 301

**Course description:** This course comprises three modules. A module on applied community ecology examines plant-soil-environment interactions, with specific focus on how competition shapes plant communities. A second module on plant speciation covers various topics along the speciation continuum. The module starts with divergent selection and local adaptation that initiates speciation, and ends with reinforcement and the evolution of reproductive isolation that completes

speciation. Finally, the course concludes with a module focusing on the idea of relentless evolution working constantly on every generation in a population. **DP requirements:** Attend all practicals, lectures, tests and field trips. Hand in all assignments including project components. 40% for the class record.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Project 20%, Examination 40% (exam sub-minimum: 40%)

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Sub-minimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with BOT 302. There is an examination subminimum of 40%. If a student has a final course mark of 40-49% but fails to achieve the examination subminimum then they will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

## **BOTANY HONOURS**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** The Botany Honours degree focuses on plant ecology and evolution in the context of global change. Plants form the basis for all life on earth, but the conditions for plant growth are rapidly changing due to climate change, elevated atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations, biological invasions and land transformation. The last decades have seen widespread vegetation change, including woody encroachment of savannas and ecosystem shifts caused by invasive species. Climate change and increased atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> also alter plant- animal interactions and their outcomes, including plant-pollinator relationships and the susceptibility of invasive plants to

biological control. The course includes a field trip, seminars, tutorials and a research project, and is intended to provide the student with the opportunity for in-depth study in particular aspects of the subject. Botany Honours may serve as relevant training for subsequent employment or as a step between an undergraduate degree and a research degree. Modules include: functional ecology, savanna ecology, pollination biology, invasion biology, climate change and stress physiology.

**DP requirements:**

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Project 35%, June Examination 10%, November Examination 15%

**Supplementary exam:** None

## **JOINT HONOURS**

Joint Honours courses may be followed subject to approval by both departments, where topics from the Botany Honours course may be taken in combination with courses in some other Departments (for example, Geography, Entomology, Environmental Science, Ichthyology or Zoology).

## **MSC AND PHD DEGREES**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department or associated Institutes. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

# RHODES BUSINESS SCHOOL

## Director and Associate Professor

FO Skae, MCom(Rhodes), MBA(Dunelm)

## Professor

NJ Pearse, MSocSci(UCT), PhD(Rhodes)

## Associate Professor

MME Mohapelo, BA(UPE), MBA(Mancosa), DBA(TUT)

## Adjunct Professor

AL Moodly, BA(Rhodes), HDE(Rhodes), BEd(UNISA), MEd(UNISA), MBA(Business School Netherlands), DEd(UNISA)

## Senior Lecturers

C Cuthbert, BA(Hons)(Pret), MBA(Rhodes)

LM Greyling, MSc(RAU), MSc(UCT), MBA(Rhodes)

EP Knoesen, Cert.Dir BA(Hons)(UPE), MBA(NMMU)

KL Rafferty, HDE (JCE), BSc(Wits), MBA(Rhodes)

## Lecturer

TVQ Moleko, BCom(Rhodes), MBA(NMU)

## Visiting Professors

RJ Khoza, BA(Hons)(UNIN), MA(Lancaster), EngD(Warwick), LLD(hc)(Rhodes)

ME King SC, BA, LLB(Wits)(Cum Laude), LLD(hc)(Wits), Hon LLD(Law)(Leeds)

G Sieff, BA(UCT), BSc(Hons)(UCT),

MA(Sydney), MBA(Sydney), PhD(UJ)

## Visiting Fellows

BD Howard, BJourn(Rhodes)

C Marx, MCom(UJ), CFA

CG Tyler, BCom(Rhodes)

CF Williams, MBA(UCT)

## Senior Research Associate

SA Bodhanya, BSc(Natal), MBA(Nyenrode), PhD(UKZN)

## Teaching Faculty

Besides the staff of the Business School presenting the various MBA and Post-Graduate Diploma modules, associate faculty are appointed mostly from other departments of Rhodes University and adjunct faculty from outside of the university with relevant academic and/or industry experience.

## ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to develop a comprehensive understanding of the purpose, role, methods, and techniques to be applied in effective business analysis, business process modelling, business process engineering, management consulting, and either software testing or project management for sustainable business performance. This will enable understanding and identifying what, when, who, where, which and how business processes and methods can be changed to operate more economically, efficiently, effectively and sustainably; communicating and consulting with subject matter experts and key managers so as to analyse, model, and document the change requirements and support the communication and delivery of those requirements.

The AdvDip(Business Analysis) is a one year programme, comprising three modules of 40 credits (two core modules and one elective), which is delivered either contact or distance learning modes.

Modules constituting the AdvDip(Business Analysis) course and their respective aims are:

- Sustainable Business Analysis (Core): Business Analysis Process, Modelling, Analysing and Applying as well as Sustainability.
- Management Consulting (Core): The Consulting Process, Strategy and Business Consulting, Business Analysis Consulting and Skills as well as Consulting Ethics.
- Software Testing (Elective): Fundamentals and Concepts of Testing; Testing Techniques and Tool Automation, Strategic Test Management as well as Application and Tool Automation.
- Project Management (Elective): Fundamentals and Concepts of Project Management; Project Selection and Strategy; Project Planning, as well as Integrating Processes.

Candidates are required to do both core modules and one elective module.

**Qualifying:**

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must pass each module. A supplementary may be awarded for a maximum of two modules subject to the candidate averaging 50% for the three modules.

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN  
ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT**

The target candidates are graduate students seeking a qualification to equip them to start their own business and/or to enhance their entry into employment in business. The Diploma is offered on a one-year full-time or two-year part-time basis (which may be accelerated to one-year). The part-time programme is offered to graduates who are currently employed in a full-time capacity but realise the value of in-depth management education to enhance their career prospects.

**Course Structure:**

The Diploma comprises seven modules (of 12 credits each) and an Alpha project (36 credits). For the full-time option, the group-based Alpha Project requires the students to start and run a micro-enterprise that spans the duration of the course and in so doing will learn about entrepreneurship, through entrepreneurship and for entrepreneurship.

For the part-time option, the group-based Alpha Project requires the students to analyse a business case and document an integrated review and response to the challenges and opportunities raised and in so doing will learn about solving contemporary business issues in a holistic fashion.

**Full-time option:** this course runs within the normal Rhodes University academic calendar with daily lectures through the university term calendar and examinations during the university examination timetable.

**Part-time option:** this course is conducted via one-week teaching blocks through the year. Three blocks require attendance at Rhodes University, with one block conducted virtually. Tests and

examinations are written during the teaching blocks.

**Qualifying:**

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must attain at least 50% for the Alpha Project, 50% or more for at least six of the remaining seven modules listed below and an overall aggregate of at least 50%. In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 45% applies to each module. For the full-time option - if a candidate passes six modules and attains an overall aggregate of 50% or more but does not attain the sub-minimum in one module, they shall be awarded a supplementary examination for that module. For the part-time option – if a candidate passes four or more modules and attains an overall aggregate of 50%, they may be awarded supplementary examinations for modules below 50%.

**Examination exemption:**

It is possible, however, subject to a maximum of three modules, for a candidate to be exempted from writing the examination for a module, with a credit being awarded for the module, if the candidate obtains at least 70% for all individual assignments and for all tests for the module, with two internal moderators concurring regarding the marks awarded for both forms of assessment and a review of the written work by the external examiner.

**Modules (12 credits each) constituting the full-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are:**

- Computerised Accounting for Small Business
- Entrepreneurial Law
- Entrepreneurship
- Financial Management
- People Management
- Strategic Marketing
- Supply Chain and Project Management

**Modules (12 credits each) constituting the part-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are selected from (7 in total):**

- Business Development and Consulting
- Financial Management
- Intrapreneurship

- Leadership for Sustainability
- People Management
- Strategic Marketing
- Strategic Operations Management
- Sustainable Business Modelling
- Sustainable Economics

**The Project (36 credits) and module descriptions are:**

- Alpha Project (Full-time option)

This is a group project, which requires students run a micro-business for the duration of the academic year. The Alpha project is evaluated via a series of written reports, comprising a business plan, evidence of establishing the micro-business (e.g. minutes of meetings, social media campaigns, website) and a reflective report with a portfolio of evidence. The project includes these support activities:

**BizzSupport** - incorporates a focus on community led businesses/enterprises/cooperatives with social impact to offer business support services and document case studies from these entities.

**Lean Bootcamp for StartUps** - Design Thinking using business model canvas for Lean Startup, namely, Value Proposition, Customer Discovery, Empathy Map, Systems Mindwash and context using the HMW (How might we...?) statement. Design and develop a minimum viable product (MVP) and then test the prototype for market validation.

- Alpha Project (Part-time option)

This is normally a group project, which entails analysing a business case and providing an integrated review and response to the challenges and opportunities raised. The project is evaluated via a group prepared 8 000-word report and online virtual presentation in addition to an individual self-reflection report.

**Modules: all modules are normally assessed via assignments and/or in-class task and/or tests under examination-type conditions and/or three-hour examinations**

- Business Development and Consulting: Focus on the important role that consultants play in developing new business opportunities. There

are three components to this module, run at three different intervals. This first investigates the role of the business consultant and the consulting frameworks that support successful consulting engagements. The second investigates the role played and the importance of knowledge management within the developing organisation. The third examines communication theory and the critical role played by effective, ethical communicators within a business, both from a consulting as well as a general perspective. Assignments for each component are applied and unique to each students' business environment.

- Computerised accounting of small businesses: Focus on providing aspirant entrepreneurs with basic accounting principles, development of appropriate accounting systems for a small business, and preparing post the cash book for bank reconciliation. The course uses software to help students to design and use the Debtors and Creditors system, design and use the Inventory system and teach on how to extract information, such as reports and financial statements, to analyse small business's performance. A touch on the basics of tax in a small business, thus enabling the keeping of accurate records of financial transactions and managing assets and liabilities on a sound basis.
- Entrepreneurial Law: Focus on forms of business ownership, dispute resolution, business structures, law of contract, labour law, special contracts, copyright, trademarks and insolvency.
- Entrepreneurship: Focus on fundamentals for new product and services development to sustain a company's long-term competitive advantage targeting StartUp and Small enterprise. Capitalising on R & D units, and a small business who take risks and embrace technology and innovative approaches. This explores how these complex activities must be integrated using a procedural framework that acknowledges barriers and other obstacles whilst incorporating contributions made by networks, resources, technologies in

developing products and services that are saleable.

- **Financial Management:** Focus on aspects specific to entrepreneurs and intrapreneurs, inter alia, alternative sources of capital, bootstrapping, financial contracting issues, insurance, private equity, taxation, valuing a business and key decision making concepts and tools including ratio analysis, break even analysis, budgets and working capital management.
- **Intrapreneurship:** Focus on growth using new products and new markets to sustain a firm's long-term competitive advantage targeting medium to large companies capitalising on innovation. Harnessing of R & D special projects, to embrace technology and innovative ways to explore complex activities to help firm rejuvenation and growth strategies.
- **Leadership for Sustainability:** Focus is on considering the changes to the organisational "playing field" resulting from increased awareness and demands for sound corporate governance and social and environmental accountability and how an understanding of these changes can assist in leveraging competitive advantage. Key themes that will be introduced are concepts of sustainable development within the South African, regional and international contexts, governance and corporate social responsibility, plus local and international drivers and considerations for business organisations.
- **People Management:** Focus from the perspective of the owner/manager of an SME, manage organisational behaviour, exercise leadership, carry out various human resource functions and comply with the South African labour relations framework and supporting legislation.
- **Strategic Marketing:** Focus is on the place a marketing plan has within the overall business plan. It examines the marketing strategies most appropriate under a range of different market and product life-cycle circumstances. The approach offers a template for developing a case study-based marketing plan that meets the

needs of the firm's aims and objectives within the context of a viable product and market for any aspiring entrepreneur.

- **Strategic Operations Management:** Focus on process types and process flows in manufacturing, performance measurement, benchmarking and re-engineering, production planning, quality management, lean thinking and world class manufacturing, sustainable supply chain management and procurement, risk assessment, life-cycle analysis and systems.
- **Supply Chain and Project Management:** Focus on supply chain management, supply strategies, organisation of the supply chain, managing inventories, quality management, total cost of ownership, integrated logistics management, distribution management and managing the global supply chain. Introduction to project management, project lifecycle phases, stakeholders' communication, cost, quality, time management, risk management, tools and techniques as well as a focus on special Projects for StartUps/SME/ Co-ops.
- **Sustainable Business Modelling:** Focus is on developing an in-depth understanding of the value creation process of a business as an integrated model.
- **Sustainable Economics:** Focus is on presenting an insight into the theoretical and applied Economics concepts required to engage successfully as a manager or business leader in a sustainable economy. The module relies on two principal theoretical frameworks, namely Resource-Based Theory and Bourdieu's Theory on Capital. Key topics covered include scarcity, supply and demand, elasticity, competition and the regulation of markets, externality, poverty and inequality, the macroeconomic perspective, economic growth, inflation, money and banking, and the government's role. Also explores environmental economics.

***The School reserves the right to teach the modules in any order.***

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to strategically, operationally and critically address relevant methods, processes, systems and techniques that should be applied to achieve sustainable business performance. In so doing, the number and quality of working Business Analysts in Africa who are able to effectively communicate and apply their understanding of the theory, principles, purpose, role, methods and techniques of business analysis, business modelling and business process improvement to achieve sustainable business performance will be achieved.

The PGDip(Business Analysis) is a one year, full-time or one and a half year, part-time modular programme, comprising four modules, where students are required to attend four teaching blocks. Between teaching blocks, students are required to complete practical assignments. A practical 24 hour examination is undertaken at the commencement of the 4th teaching block, covering all four modules. A Project (40 credits), with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE), is to be submitted by the end of the second semester for full-time students or at the end of the first semester of the second year for part-time students.

### Modules constituting the PGDip(Business Analysis) course and their respective aims, taught in this order, are:

- Sustainable Business Models (13 credits): Provide a strategic context to Business Analysis and develop capability to effectively engage with the entity's stakeholders to design and implement sustainable business models, processes and systems.
- Business Process Modelling (21 credits): Undertake critical evaluation of business process methodologies and tools and develop capability in utilising them to achieve sustainable business performance.
- Business Process Analysis (25 credits): Undertake critical evaluation of business process improvement approaches and develop

capability to deploy and harness them to achieve sustainable business performance.

- Communicating and Consulting (21 credits): Undertake critical evaluation of all the soft skills requirements, aptitude, and characteristics to be an effective Business Analyst.

### Qualifying:

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must pass each module and attain at least a 50% aggregate for the coursework and 50% for the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE).

In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 40% applies to each component of each module. In the case of a candidate passing three modules and attaining an overall aggregate of 50% or more but failing to attain the sub-minimum in one module, they shall be awarded a supplementary examination in that module. The Coursework comprises 67% (80 credits) of the diploma and the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE) 33% (40 credits). The overall mark is a weighted average of Coursework and Project with supporting POE.

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ADVANCEMENT AND RESOURCE MOBILISATION

The diploma strives to grow and build the number and quality of working Advancement professionals in Africa who are able to engage systematically and purposefully with their internal and external stakeholders to attract resources and, thus, contribute to the long-term sustainability of these non-commercially minded entities.

The programme seeks to equip participants with core Advancement skills and tools such as those relating to strategy and planning, leadership, good governance, communication and marketing, project development, cases for support, legal requirements, financial management imperatives, and the structuring of an Advancement operation. The programme



also seeks to give credence to Advancement principles that can be used to inform integrated and holistic practice by promoting research, as well as the creation and dissemination of knowledge in this area.

The diploma is a programme which is aimed at creating knowledgeable, competent, and innovative Advancement professionals who are able to be responsive to the constant turbulence of their internal and external environments. Furthermore, the Rhodes Business School's essence of "Leadership for Sustainability" underlies all subjects in the curriculum by encouraging thinking around economic, social and environmental sustainability.

The PGDip (Advancement and Resource Mobilisation) is a two-year part-time coursework programme, targeting working professionals, comprising five compulsory modules. Three of these modules will be run over the course of the first year, with the remaining two occurring in the second year. Modules are assessed by a combination of tests, assignments, and/or exams, as well as a research (capstone) project related to work-based or real-world scenarios in the field of Advancement and resource mobilisation.

**Modules constituting the PGDip (Advancement and Resource Mobilisation) course are:**

- Module 1: Introduction to Advancement (10 credits) This module introduces the development of advancement practices over the decades, to illustrate the contextual considerations in managing advancement practices in the 21<sup>st</sup> Century. Particular emphasis will be on reflecting on advancement and resource mobilisation in the African context and on the essence of advancement as a profession in this context. The relationship of different schools of ethics to Advancement will also be explored.
- Module 2: Research for Advancement (15 Credits) This module aims to develop an appreciation of the role of research in thinking dynamically and reflecting

critically on advancement practices and principles. It also provides the foundation for students to start developing their own case studies, research reports and articles that can contribute to the creation and dissemination of knowledge in the area of Advancement and Resource mobilisation in the local context.

- Module 3: Advancement Practice (30 Credits) This module provides the key knowledge and understanding needed for non-commercial organisations to effectively manage their fundraising process and opportunities. Working within an Advancement framework, the module aims to create a fundamental shift in thinking around organisational and institutional mission, objectives and delivery – and how to attract the donor resources in support of this. This module is designed to strengthen the capacity of participants to increase their organisation/institution's potential for long-term financial sustainability. There is a strong focus on the relationship management aspect of fundraising, instead of the transaction. This module also explores issues around strategy and leadership as well as the relationship building blocks of identification, cultivation, solicitation and stewardship.
- Module 4: Advancement Leadership and Stakeholder Relations (10 credits) The aim of this module is to develop within learners a valid conceptual understanding of effective and responsible leadership and stakeholder management in relation to the field of Advancement. Theories and models pertaining to leadership will be explored with particular reference to their applicability to Advancement and resource mobilisation on the African continent. The module will also aim to develop a framework for external stakeholder engagement and mapping.
- Module 5: Responsibility and Accountability in Advancement (20 credits) This module aims to develop an appreciation of the role of governance and

benchmarking in advancement practices and principles. It also provides the foundation for students to understand proper legal requirements, financial management, monitoring and evaluation practices, maintenance of stakeholder relations and sustainability considerations for improved advancement practices.

- **Capstone Project** (35 credits): an integrated and applied assignment aimed at synthesising learning from all the modules of the programme, within an organisational / institutional setting. Thus, the capstone project is a culminating project aimed at assessing critical and integrative thinking skills and ability to generate coherent knowledge in the field of Advancement and Resource Mobilisation.

### Qualifying:

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must complete and pass all five modules and the capstone project with a mark of 50% or above. To obtain a distinction for the diploma, a weighted average of 75% must be obtained for all modules together with the capstone project. In the event that an OVERALL weighted average of 50% or above is achieved for ALL modules and the Capstone Project, but a module/s has been failed, then a supplementary examination may be awarded for the failed module/s.

## MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION

The Rhodes MBA is a course-work degree comprising 13 courses (made up of 12 core courses and 1 elective) and mini-thesis of 15 000 words. The degree is offered on a part-time, modular basis over two years or on a full-time, modular basis over one and a half years. If part-time, candidates are required to attend teaching blocks in Makhanda over two years and to typically complete work-based assignments. If full-time, the coursework is normally completed in the first year. The final six months in both cases, is dedicated to the completion of the mini-

thesis. Additional contact sessions will also be scheduled virtually.

Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least a NQF level 8 qualification (e.g. an Honour's Degree, four-year Bachelor's Degree or Postgraduate Diploma) in any discipline, are fluent in English, and have had at least three years relevant practical experience. All applicants are required to sit the NMAT by GMAC™ Admission Test, or GMAT if the NMAT is not available in their country of residence. Furthermore, those applicants for whom English is a foreign language are required to sit an appropriate English language test.

### Curriculum and Module Descriptions:

The MBA is integrated according to our unique 4E Model (Economy, Ethics, Ecology and Equity) and is focused on embedding sustainability and leadership concepts and contexts within a range of management functions and disciplines.

- **Academic Skills:** academic knowledge, academic writing, academic assessment, writing skills. (NQF9: four (4) credits, one assignment).
- **Business Development and Consulting (elective):** consulting to the business in a way that adds value by presenting innovative ideas and projects that can help the organisation be sustainable. (NQF8: ten(10) credits, three assignments).
- **Dissertation:** A mini-thesis of 15 000 words on a research or teaching case topic of the candidate's choice but aligned with some aspect of resource-based theory, resilience theory, systems theory, and/or stakeholder theory and subject to suitable supervisory support. (NQF9: sixty (60) credits).
- **Ethical Organisation and Governance:** business ethics, corporate citizenship, corporate social responsibility and investment, corporate governance, and integrated thinking. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment: Integrated Project).
- **Financial and Quantitative Skills:** this course is only required for those candidates who have not had any formal accounting qualification or

prior accounting work experience. This course is also recommended for candidates wanting to review accounting principles (zero (0) credits).

Finance and Management Accounting: six capitals framework, working capital decisions, capital investment appraisal, measuring and dealing with risk, sources of finance, cost of capital, ratio analysis, dividend decision, cost-volume-profit analysis, measuring relevant costs and revenues for decision making, cost assignment, activity-based costing, the budgeting process, standard costing and variance analysis. (NQF8: ten (10) credits, two assignments).

International Option: It is possible to attend an approved programme at an international institution, in lieu of two modules offered. There are certain conditions attached to this option, covered in the School rules.

- People Management: the human resource management function and its role, role of managers in managing people, strategic human resource management (HRM), labour legislation, organisational behaviour, sustainable organisations and implications for HRM, stakeholder engagement, researching critical people management issues, change management. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment).
- Quantitative Decision-Making for Business and Research: organising and summarizing data statistically, presenting and interpreting data, inferential statistics, significance testing, time series analysis and forecasting, marketing research practice (NQF8: ten (10) credits, one test or assignment, one examination).
- Research Methods: the research proposal, research paradigms, research methods, data collection methods, quantitative and qualitative data analysis. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, four assignments).
- Responsible Leadership: Leadership theory and principles, Leadership styles, Systems theory and how it applies to Responsible Leadership, Servant leadership, Philosophy of African leadership and Sustainable

Leadership (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment).

- Strategic Management: strategic intent, strategy maps, the business environment, SWOT analysis, core competency analysis, strategic objectives and the Balanced Scorecard, corporate level strategies, business level strategies, Business Model and value creation. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment: Integrated Project).
- Strategic Marketing: the marketing concept, market segmentation,, marketing research, distribution strategy, product strategy, pricing strategy, promotional strategy, services marketing, relationship marketing, social marketing, responsible consumption, emerging markets and digital marketing. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, two assignments).
- Strategic Operations Management: process types and process flows in manufacturing, performance measurement, benchmarking and re-engineering, production planning, quality management, lean thinking and world class manufacturing, sustainable supply chain management and procurement, risk assessment, life-cycle analysis, and managing by projects. (NQF8: ten (10) credits, one assignment)
- Sustainability: sustainability concepts and definitions, corporate social responsibility, triple/quadruple bottom line, triple top line, integrated reporting, climate change, trends in sustainability and its management. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment, one examination).
- Sustainable Economics: macro and microeconomics. Factors and policy that influence the firm and decision- making, monetary policy, nature and trends of the South African economy and challenges confronting it, indicators of economic activity. Managerial and environmental economics and its application to problem solving and decision-making, pricing, costs & profits, pricing for greater profits, decision-making in uncertainty, organizational design and firm decision-making (NQF8: ten (10) credits, two

assignments).

Sustainable Entrepreneurship (elective): characteristics of an entrepreneur, generating entrepreneurial and intrapreneurial ideas, feasibility studies, growth and turnaround strategies, business plans, social entrepreneurship, international business. (NQF8: ten (10) credits, one assignment).

***Note: The School reserves the right not to offer a particular elective module.***

### **PRE-MBA COURSE**

For certain candidates, acceptance onto the MBA programme will be dependent on their attendance at a Financial and Quantitative Skills course at the beginning of the first teaching block. This course is also open to anyone who wishes to refresh their knowledge of finance and accounting.

#### **Qualifying:**

To qualify for the Degree, candidates must pass each module and the mini-thesis. A distinction will be awarded if the final mark is greater than or equal to 75%, provided that a sub-minimum of 70% is obtained for each of the coursework (weighted 67%) and mini-thesis (weighted 33%). The course-work component will comprise the weighted average mark of all the modules making up the course-work, according to their credit load.

### **MASTER OF COMMERCE DEGREE**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the full thesis research degree of MCom under the supervision of staff of the Business School. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on a good academic record, the acceptance of a topic statement and the availability of expertise in the Business School to supervise the project. Further details for this degree is given in the General Regulations.

### **DOCTORAL DEGREES**

Candidates are required to hold a Master's level qualification at NQF level 9 in a relevant discipline (for example, Commerce, Management, Leadership or Business Administration). This would include course-work Master's degrees such as an MBA degree. In the case of a coursework masters, the applicant must have achieved an aggregate mark of 65% or more for the degree. In reviewing the application, the School will consider the following:

- Research capability: Proven ability to conduct independent research. This would be reflected in good research performance and output during the Master's programme. Evidence of publishing research findings would be a distinct advantage.
- Attendance: While the PhD degree is usually offered on a part-time basis and not in attendance, candidates are expected to regularly attend the online PhD seminars that are arranged from time to time.
- Capacity and alignment: Matching supervisor and student research interests, along with supervision capacity.
- Access to data: Applicant has access to a potential site for conducting field work.

Further details for this degree are given in the General Regulations.

# CHEMISTRY

## Associate Professor, Green Chemistry and Head of Department

R Klein, BSc (Hons) (UCT), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Miami)

**DSI/NRF Professor of Medicinal Chemistry and Nanotechnology, Director: Rhodes/DSI Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation, Distinguished Professor, Rhodes University**  
T Nyokong, BSc (Lesotho), MSc (McMaster), PhD (Western Ontario), OMB, FRS, FRSSAf, HonFRSC, FSACI

**Professor of Organic Chemistry & Nanomaterials and Director, Centre for Chemico- and Biomedical Research (CCBR)**  
RWM Krause, PhD (Wits), MSACI, MACS, MRSC

## Associate Professor, Physical Organic Chemistry

KA Lobb, PhD (Rhodes), FRSC

**Associate Professor, Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry, Deputy Director: Rhodes/DST Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation**  
PN Mashazi, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

## Senior Lecturer, Academic Development

JD Sewry, MSc (Rhodes), HDE (UNISA)

## Senior Lecturer, Physical Organic and Inorganic Chemistry

NF Molefe, PhD (UFS)

## Lecturer, General & Analytical Chemistry

T Geswindt, PhD (US)

## Lecturer, Physical & Inorganic Chemistry

VJ Smith, PhD (UCT)

## Lecturer, Physical Chemistry

T Tshiwawa PhD (Rhodes)

## NMR Specialist

K Ramollo, PhD (Wits)

**Associate Professor Emeritus** GM Watkins, PhD (UCT)

## ASSOCIATED STAFF

### Rhodes/ DSI Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation

### Manager and Senior Researcher

J Britton, BSc, PhD (Rhodes)

## Nanotechnology Specialist and Associate Professor

J Mack, BSc (Hons) (Aberdeen University, Scotland), PhD (Western Ontario)

## Research Associates

Distinguished Fellow of Rhodes University, Professor Emeritus PT Kaye, BSc (Natal), BSc (Hons)(UNISA), MSc (Natal), DPhil (Oxon), FRSC, FRSSAf

N Torto, BSc (Hons)(Manchester), MSc (Botswana), PhD (Lund), FRSC

MS Khene, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), PGDHE (Rhodes), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Z Tshentu, PhD (NMMU)

Chemistry (CHE) is a six-semester subject, which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn. To major in Chemistry a candidate is required to obtain a pass in CHE 1; CHE 2; and CHE 3; as well as two semester-long courses, normally comprised of one full first-year course in Mathematics (MAM 1), or two semesters of any of Physics (PHY 1S1, 101 or 102), Mathematics (MAM 101 or MAT 1S1) and Statistics (STA 1S1, STA 1C2, MST 102). Students are advised to discuss their choice of the above courses with the Head of the Chemistry Department. Two, or in some cases four, Chemistry semester courses are allowed for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education. In particular, both CHE 101 and CHE 102 are required (or the equivalent aggregated course CHE 1) for admission to BPharm 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in the theory section of each course separately. Each undergraduate year is offered as a pair of semester-long courses. All semester- courses are subject to a sub-minimum in the theory paper/s. See the departmental webpage for further details, particularly the content of courses and their requirements.  
<http://www.ru.ac.za/chemistry>

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN CHEMISTRY

4 lectures, 1 tutorial and 3 hours of practical weekly.

*Note: Students in Chemistry in 101 are expected to have a knowledge of chemistry at the standard of Physical Science in the National Senior Certificate.*

There are two semester courses in Chemistry in first-year: CHE 101 is offered in the first semester and CHE 102 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately or, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CHE 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 40% in the theory papers of each course separately and 40% of the overall for each course. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the department.

### Continuation requirements

Candidates obtaining less than 20% in the theory paper of CHE 101 in the June examination are not permitted to continue with any Chemistry course in that year. A mark of at least 40% in the theory paper of CHE 101 is required for entry into CHE 102. Candidates who achieve this standard, but fail to obtain at least 50% overall, may join the CHE 102 course in July, but must write the CHE 101 supplementary examination paper. The higher of the two marks for the CHE 101 papers will count (see Rule S.25.5). Candidates who obtain between 20% and 39% in the theory paper of CHE 101 in June cannot continue into CHE 102. They must transfer to the remedial course, Chemistry 1R1, to revise the topics from CHE 101 for re-examination in November but will continue with the CHE 102 practical course. In the following year, candidates with CHE 101 or 1R1 (but not for CHE 102) must register for CHE 1R2 in the first semester and if they pass the course requirements satisfactorily in June, will obtain CHE 1R2, which is equivalent to CHE 102. Those students who fail the CHE 1R2 examination in June will proceed into the

mainstream CHE 102 in the second semester, and rewrite the CHE 102 paper in November.

### CHE 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** The course consists of an introduction to chemistry, including chemical symbols and numeracy, atomic structure and bonding, chemical and physical equilibrium and an introduction to organic chemistry and biological molecules.

**DP requirements:** Writing all tests and submitting all assessments, as well as AT LEAST 90% attendance at all practical and tutorial sessions is a requirement for Due Performance (DP).

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%. The Overall mark for each course comprises a class mark (40%) and an end-of-semester Theory examination mark (60%). The class mark consists of a combination of practical assessments, short tests, tutorial tests, and a mid-semester departmental test.

**Supplementary Exam:** 40-49%. This exam is written in November.

**Subminimum for June:** 40% Theory and 40% CHE 101 to aggregate with CHE 102

### CHE 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Pass CHE 1R1 or at least 40% for CHE 101

**Course description:** This course builds on the foundations developed in the previous course, with emphasis on properties of inorganic systems, atmospheric and environmental chemistry, organic functional group chemistry, biological building blocks, reaction rates, chemical thermodynamics, and electrochemistry.

**DP requirements:** Writing all tests and submitting all assessments, as well as AT LEAST 90% attendance at all practical and tutorial sessions is a requirement for Due Performance (DP).

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%. The Overall mark for each course comprises a class

mark (40%) and an end-of-semester Theory examination mark (60%). The class mark consists of a combination of practical assessments, short tests, tutorial tests, and a mid-semester Departmental test.

**Supplementary Exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% Theory and 40% CHE 102 to aggregate with CHE 101

### CHE 1R1

This semester course is equivalent to CHE 101 (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A minimum of 20% in the Theory paper for Chem 101.

**Course description:** See CHE 101

**DP requirements:** 90% attendance at lectures and tutorials; write all tests and assessments

**Assessment:** November exam: 60%; Practical mark (from Chem 101) 25%; Class tests: 15%

**Supplementary exam:** No supplementary exam is normally given

**Subminimum for November:** 40% theory

### CHE 1R2

This semester course is equivalent to CHE 102, but is offered in the first semester (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Pass CHE 1R1 or CHE 101, or a minimum of 20% for CHE 102 in the previous exam

**Course description:** See CHE 102

**DP requirements:** 90% attendance at lectures and tutorials; write all tests and assessments

**Assessment:** June exam: 60%; Practical mark (Chem 102 practicals completed previous semester) 25%; Class tests: 15%

**Supplementary exam:** No supplementary exam is normally given.

**Subminimum for June:** 40% theory

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN CHEMISTRY

These courses comprise 5 lectures and 4.5 hours of practical work weekly with an additional one-hour tutorial every week. There are two independent semester courses in Chemistry at second year. CHE 202 is offered in the first semester and CHE 201 in

the second semester. Credit for both courses may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CHE 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 40% in the theory paper of each course separately and 40% of the overall for the course. Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for either CHE 201 or CHE 202.

### CHE 201

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CHE 1 and pass or concurrent registration in Mathematics or Statistics

**Course description:** This course comprises Sampling and Sample Handling, Statistical and Classical Methods in Chemistry, Principles of spectroscopic methods: UV, IR,  $^1\text{H}$  - and  $^{13}\text{C}$  - NMR, MS, Atomic absorption/ emission; Electroanalytical techniques; and Chromatography.

Practical components are aligned with theory and deal mostly with Analytical Chemistry. A second-year project is also undertaken as part of the practical component, usually as a group project throughout the semester.

**DP requirements:** a student must have attended AT LEAST 80% of all lectures and performed all assigned tutorials, essays and practical work satisfactorily

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Theory examination A 30%, Theory examination B 30%. The class record comprises a mid-semester Departmental test, a number of class assessments and marks from the practical courses.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% theory and 40% overall to aggregate with CHE 202

### CHE 202

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CHE 1 and a pass in one of the Mathematics or Statistics courses.

**Course description:** This follows on from foundations in Chemistry 1, dealing with intermediate Organic Chemistry, particularly fossil

fuels, feedstocks and organic reactions, reactions of unsaturated systems, cycloalkanes, and aromatic compounds, as well as an introduction to stereochemistry, and an introduction to polymer chemistry. In the latter half of the semester students study chemical thermodynamics, chemical kinetics of complex reactions, and intermediate-level inorganic chemistry.

Practical Components deal with techniques and skills in physical chemistry, organic and polymer chemistry.

**DP requirements:** a student must have attended AT LEAST 80% of all lectures and performed all assigned tutorials, essays and practical work satisfactorily

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, The theory examinations count 60%. The class record comprises a mid-semester Departmental test, a number of class assessments and marks from the practical courses.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% theory and 40% overall to aggregate with CHE 201

### THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN CHEMISTRY

These courses consist of 5 lectures and 6 hours of practical per week, and a practical-based research internship. Tutorials of 1 hour are held weekly. The internship may usually be taken either in the first or second semester but is recorded as part of the second semester class mark. There are two independent third-year courses in Chemistry. CHE 301 is held in the first semester and CHE 302 in the second semester. Credit for both semester courses may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CHE 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in the theory paper of each course separately.

Chemistry 2 (CHE 2), as well as two semester-long courses, normally comprised of one full first-year course in Mathematics, or a semester each of Mathematics, and/or Physics and/or Statistics are required before a student may register for CHE 301 or CHE 302. Note also that the university timetable may prevent certain first year courses from being

taken concurrently with Chemistry 3. See also Rule S.23.

#### CHE 301

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CHE 2

**Course description:** Topics covered in third year build on the second year with Advanced Organic Chemistry, Synthesis and Retrosynthesis; Green Chemistry; Quantum Mechanics and Molecular Modelling; Linear Free Energy; Photochemistry; Nanotechnology. There is also a short component linked to one of our industry partners. Practicals are for Physical and Organic chemistry.

**DP requirements:** a student must have attended AT LEAST 80% of all lectures and performed and submitted ALL assigned tutorials, essays and practical work satisfactorily

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, The theory examinations count 60%. The class mark comprises the mid-semester departmental tests, combined coursework continuous assessment tasks, and a mark for both the organic and physical chemistry practical course modules.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% in each of the theory papers to aggregate with CHE 302

#### CHE 302

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CHE 2 and a pass or previous registration in CHE 301

**Course description:** Transition Metal Chemistry; Crystallography; Organometallic Chemistry; Bioinorganic Chemistry; Statistical Kinetics and Energetics. Practicals are in Research internship and Inorganic chemistry.

**DP requirements:** a student must have attended AT LEAST 80% of all lectures and performed and submitted ALL assigned tutorials, essays and practical work satisfactorily

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Theory examination A 30%, Theory examination B 30%. The class mark comprises the mid-semester departmental tests, combined coursework continuous assessment tasks, and a mark for the



inorganic chemistry practical course module as well as the mark for the research internship.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% in each of the theory papers to aggregate with CHE 301

### CHEMISTRY HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Students who achieve a satisfactory standard in Chemistry 3 (normally 65% or above) may be accepted for the Honours course (normally 75% is required for consideration in a Joint Honours with another department). The Honours course consists of lectures on advanced topics selected from around 20 modules offered each year as electives, together with four compulsory core modules: Symmetry and Group Theory, Advanced Synthetic Techniques, Spectroscopy, and one of the Industrial Chemistry modules.

A review essay is completed in the first semester, and a research project (conducted over most of the year in one of the department's research groups) is

submitted as a mini-thesis and presented at the end of the year.

Further details are available on the website at <https://www.ru.ac.za/chemistry>

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Theory examination 5% in June and 55% in November. The theory consists of a combination of continuous assessment and end-of-year examinations. Further details are available on the website at <https://www.ru.ac.za/chemistry>

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Subminimum for November Exam:** 40% in each of the theory papers and 50% for the project

### MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

## CENTRE FOR HIGHER EDUCATION RESEARCH, TEACHING AND LEARNING (CHERTL)

### Associate Professor and Head of Department

JE Vorster, BA(Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

### Associate Professors

MAL Blackie BSc(Rhodes), BSc(Hons),  
PhD(UCT), PhD(Stell)

K Ellery, BSc(Hons), MSc(Wits), MEd(Higher  
Ed)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes)

### Senior Lecturers

AI Hlengwa, NDip, BTech(Technikon Natal),  
MEd(Melbourne), PhD(Rhodes)

N Pallitt, BA(Hons), MA, PhD, PGDip(HE)(UCT)

KD Wilmot, BA(Rhodes), BA(Hons)(UCT),  
MA(UCT), MPhil(Cantab), PhD(Sydney)

### Lecturers

A Adams, NDE(Bellville College of Education),  
BA(Hons), MA(UWC), HD HET(CPUT)

M Booi BA(Hons)(NMU), MA(Rhodes)

N Kramm, BA(Hons)(, MA(SUN)

K Solomon BA, BAH, MA(Rhodes)

### Extended Studies Unit

#### Lecturers

Z Dana, BA (Hons), MA(Rhodes)

OS Gotor, BCom(Rhodes), PGDip(ASS)

UNISA, MBA(Rhodes), CA(SA)

C Knowles BA(UPE), HDE(UCT), MA,  
PGDip(HE)(Rhodes)

S Mawonga, BA(Hons), MA(Rhodes)

A Matiwan, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes)

N Matiwan, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes)

J Reynolds, BA(Hons), MA, PGDHE (Rhodes),  
DELTA (Cantab)

### Junior Lecturer

A Magadza, NDip, HNDip (KPTC)

In addition to functioning as an academic department offering qualifications, the Centre is also a resource for the University in support of the achievement of its mission and vision. To this end, it is involved in the promotion and assurance of quality in relation to teaching and learning and the development of academic staff as professional educators. Educational Technology Specialists in the Centre provide support for and manage RUCConnected (Learning Management System).

The Educational Technology team further supports learning technologies to enable blended and online teaching and learning. The team supports academics by providing academic development opportunities to enable blended and online course design and technology integration. The Educational Technology Specialists also undertake research about the use of educational technologies in Higher Education and contribute to policy development and provide advice on online education for applications for accreditation of new programmes.

The Centre also incorporates an Extended Studies Unit which is responsible for the development, co-ordination and teaching of four-year degrees in the Faculties of Commerce, Humanities and Science.

The Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning specialises in the study of the field of higher education. The Centre offers programmes leading to a range of qualifications in higher education including:

- Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (Lecturers)
- Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (Academic Developers)
- Master of Education
- Doctor of Philosophy

CHERTL staff also undertake research into higher education.

### FACULTY OF COMMERCE EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME

The Faculty of Commerce Extended Studies Programme extends over four years, the first two years of which comprise a foundation phase. On completion of the programme, students join students enrolled in three one-year programmes for their final two years of study.

Courses include:

Foundation Phase Year One	
First Semester	Second Semester
Accounting 1F	Accounting 1F
Theory of Finance	Theory of Finance
Management 101	Management 102
Management 101 (Augmented)	Management 102 (Augmented)
Introduction to Computers	
Foundation Phase Year Two	
First Semester	Second Semester
Accounting 1G	Accounting 1G
Computer Science 11F	Computer Science 11F
Commercial Law 101	Commercial Law 102
Economics 101	Economics 102
Economics 101 (Augmented)	Statistics 1C2

The Extended Studies Unit offers the following courses:

Accounting 1F, Accounting 1G, Introduction to Computers and Computer Science 11F.

### Accounting 1F and 1G

Accounting 1F and 1G are equivalent to Accounting 101 and 102 (see Calendar entry for Department of Accounting), but each is presented in Extended mode over a full year:

### Accounting 1F (ACC 1F)

First-year, full-year course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** none

**Course description:** See Accounting 101

**DP Requirements:** attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend at least 80% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all tutorial assignments (these must be handed in on time, complete and of an acceptable standard); write all formal tests and obtain an average mark of at least 35% of all the formal tests; obtain at least 35% in the June examination.

**Assessment:** first semester class record counts 3%; June examination counts 12%; second semester class record counts 25%; November examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** Students who attain between 40% and 49% for their final mark may sit the Supplementary examination.

### Accounting 1G (ACC 1G)

First-year, full-year course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** Acc 1F

**Course description:** See Accounting 102

**DP Requirements:** attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend at least 80% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all tutorial assignments (these must be handed in on time, complete and of an acceptable standard); write all formal tests and obtain an average mark of at least 35% of all the formal tests; obtain at least 35% in the June examination.

**Assessment:** first semester class record counts 3%; June examination counts 12%; second semester class record counts 20%; November examination counts 65%

**Supplementary examination:** Students who attain between 40% and 49% for their final mark may sit the Supplementary examination.

### Introduction to Computers

Introduction to Computers is a fully foundational course. Students undertaking this course will be prepared for Computer Science 112, which is a prerequisite course for Information System 2, which is important for any student completing a Commerce degree.

### Introduction to Computers (INT ICT)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** none

**Course description:** introduction to the computing environment; use of the Internet; use of email; introduction to information systems including their importance and use in society; impact of computing on society; ethics in computing; introduction to word processing, spreadsheets and databases.

**DP Requirements:** attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend at least 80% of the practical sessions; hand in 100% of all practical assignments (these must be handed in on time, complete and of an acceptable standard) and maintain an average mark of at least 40%; write all formal tests and obtain an average mark of at least 40% for all the formal tests.

**Assessment:** Class record (calculated from the results of practicals and test assessments) counts 40%, final examination (theory and practical components assessed in one examination, written in a computer laboratory) counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** Students who attain between 40% and 49% for their final mark may sit the Supplementary examination.

### Computer Science 11F

Computer Science 11F is equivalent to Computer Science 112 (See Calendar entry for Department of Computer Science), but presented in Extended mode over a full year:

### Computer Science 11F (CSC 11F)

First-year, full-year course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** none

**Course description:** See Computer Science 112

**DP Requirements:** attend at least 80% of the class and practical sessions; maintain an average of at least 40% for practicals and achieve an average of at least 40% for tests.

**Assessment:** first semester class record counts 10%; June examination counts 10%; second semester class record counts 10%; November examination counts 70%

**Supplementary examination:** Students who attain between 40% and 49% for their final mark may sit the Supplementary examination.

## FACULTY OF SCIENCE EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME

The Faculty of Science Extended Studies Programme extends over four years, the first year of which comprises a foundation phase.

Courses include:

Foundation Phase Year	
First Semester	Second Semester
Computer Skills for Science	Computer Skills for Science
Mathematics 1F	Mathematics 1F
Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods	Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods

The Extended Studies Unit offers the following courses:

Computer Skills for Science, Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods.

### Computer Skills for Science

Computer Skills for Science comprises necessary computing skills for Science students including basic computer concepts, the Internet, Microsoft Office, Web designing, developing the fundamentals of programming and understanding basic information systems theory:

### Computer Skills for Science (CSC 1S)

First-year, year-long course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** The course covers basic computer concepts, the Internet, Microsoft Office, Web designing, developing the fundamentals of programming and understanding basic information systems theory. The course, which has six contact periods per week, is taught solely in the computer laboratories in an interactive, hands-on manner. Four of the weekly contact periods are used for teaching new material, and two are practical periods used to consolidate course content.

**DP Requirements:**

- Achieve 40% for practicals
- Achieve at least 40% for the class mark.
- Attend 80% of the class and practical sessions.

No extensions will be granted for tests, but you may be given an average at the end of the second semester if you have been granted a leave of absence. Practical, assignments and tests missed without leave of absence will gain a mark of zero (0). It is in your best interests to ensure that you hand in all your practical assignments and write all tests, otherwise, you will endanger your chances of achieving the minimum requirements as stated above.

**Assessment:** June class record 20%, June exam 20% (practical and theory), November class record 30%, November examination 30%

**Supplementary exam:** A 40-49% for the final course mark will result in a student being allowed to write a supplementary examination.

### Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods

Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods is an integrated and multidisciplinary course where

students are exposed to scientific concepts and methods commonly encountered in science:

### **Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods (ISCM 1F)**

First-year, year-long course (NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** This is an integrated and multidisciplinary course where students are exposed to scientific concepts and methods commonly encountered in science. Academic staff from disciplines such as Botany, Chemistry, Geography, Geology, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Physics, and/or Zoology contribute to the course, in the form of lectures and practicals. Two lecturers (a science lecturer and an academic literacy lecturer) ensure continuity within and between concepts throughout the year. This is done through interactive lectures and tutorials that augment the content provided by the mainstream discipline lecturers and integrate scientific and academic literacies into the offerings of each concept. The course has 16 contact periods per week.

#### **DP requirements:**

- Write all tests
- Submit all assessments on time (late work 5% deducted per day, after 3 days a mark of zero)
- Attend 90% of lectures, and 100% of tutorials and practicals
- Achieve at least 40% for the class mark

If a student is sick, or for some other major reason they cannot complete a tutorial, test, lecture or assignment, they need to submit a Leave of Absence (LOA) form. The student will still be required to complete assignments and write make-up tests.

**Assessment:** June class record 20%, June examination 20%, November class record 30%, November examination 30%

**Supplementary exam:** A 40-49% for the final course mark will result in a student being allowed to write a supplementary examination.

### **FACULTY OF HUMANITIES EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME**

The Faculty of Humanities Extended Studies Programme extends over one year and accommodates students who would not normally be

admitted to the curricula for the degrees of BA, BSocSc or BJourn. A number of special credit-earning courses are offered from which a curriculum suited to the needs of each student admitted to the Extended Studies Programme is drawn up at Curriculum Approval by the Dean, in consultation with appropriate Heads of Departments.

Courses include:

<b>Foundation Phase Year</b>	
<b>First Semester</b>	<b>Second Semester</b>
<b>Academic and Computer Literacies</b>	<b>Academic and Computer Literacies</b>
Any two courses from: Anthropology, Journalism and Media Studies, Politics and Sociology.	A continuation of the same two courses selected from: Anthropology, Journalism and Media Studies, Politics and Sociology.
PLUS the corresponding Extended Studies support course for each course selected: Anthropology Extended Studies, Journalism and Media Studies Extended Studies, Politics Extended Studies and Sociology Extended Studies.	PLUS a continuation of the same corresponding Extended Studies support course for each course selected: Anthropology Extended Studies, Journalism and Media Studies Extended Studies, Politics Extended Studies and Sociology Extended Studies.

The Extended Studies Unit offers the following courses:

Academic and Computer Literacies.

#### **Academic and Computer Literacies**

Academic and Computer Literacies is a two-semester course designed to build confidence and familiarity with computers. This course will equip students with computer skills required at university and beyond. As part of their practical work, students will predominantly work with a computer for purposes of developing and fostering computer skills. Students undertaking this course will be

prepared to face some of the computer literacy challenges facing students entering tertiary education with or without computer skills.

### **Academic and Computer Literacies (ACL 1)**

First-year, year-long course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** none

**Course description:** Develop and foster computer skills using a variety of home and office applications including word processing, spreadsheets, PowerPoint and databases.

#### **DP Requirements:**

- Achieve 40% for practicals
- Achieve at least 40% for the class mark.
- Attend 80% of the class and practical sessions.

No extensions will be granted for due assignments without a valid leave of absence.

**Assessment:** June class record 9%, June exam 21% (practical and theory), November class record 49%, November examination 21%

**Supplementary examination:** A 40-49% for the final course mark will result in a student being allowed to write a supplementary examination.

### **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION [PGDIP (HE)]**

The purpose of the Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (PGDip (HE)) is to facilitate the professional development of lecturers as reflexive practitioners in higher education by developing their knowledge of Higher Education (HE) as a field of study. The programme is designed to enhance participants' competence in facilitating, enabling and assessing students' learning. It provides professional accreditation for HE practitioners. Shifts in higher education around globalisation and transformation imperatives have increased expectations that academics should negotiate new challenges and identities. These international changes have particular nuances in the South African context where historical disadvantage, social justice and transformation need to be redressed. This course aims to strengthen lecturers' ability to respond meaningfully to these challenges and to meet the learning needs of their students.

The Centre offers two Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (PGDip (HE)) programmes:

- one for university lecturers
- one for academic developers

### **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION [PGDIP (HE)] FOR ACADEMICS**

The Diploma is registered as a NQF level 8, 120 credit qualification on the HEQSF. Rhodes University is a registered provider for the course and the qualification is awarded by the Rhodes Education Faculty. Participants must complete normal registration procedures through the Faculty of Education at the beginning of each year.

#### **Structure of the Diploma**

In order to obtain the qualification participants are required to meet the outcomes of five compulsory modules.

#### **Becoming a Reflective Practitioner in Higher Education: 9201024 (15 credits)**

The purpose of this module is to provide an overview of the PGDip (HE) and to introduce participants to the field of higher education studies (HES). Higher Education is contextualised so that participants are able to reflect on and articulate their beliefs about teaching and their understanding of how students learn in their disciplines. They are introduced to criticality, reflexivity and praxis as core practices in the course.

#### **Learning and Teaching in Higher Education: 9201018 (30 credits)**

The purpose of this module is through participants' reflection and critical practice, to deepen their understanding of the nature of learning in higher education and to gain a practical understanding of the ways in which to facilitate students' access to knowledge in the disciplines.

#### **Curriculum Development: 9201019 (30 credits)**

The purpose of this module is to develop participants' theoretical understanding of the different approaches to curriculum development in higher education and to enable them to design,

interpret and implement curricula that are aligned to the HEQSF.

**Assessment of and for Student Learning: 9201020 (30 credits)**

The purpose of this module is to deepen participants' theoretical understanding of assessment and to enable the informed implementation of assessment principles and processes into their practice.

**Evaluation of Teaching and Courses: 9201021 (15 credits)**

The purpose of this module is to engage with the theories and principles of evaluation in higher education, thus enabling participants to evaluate their own practice as educators.

**Assessment of the course**

The course as a whole will be assessed by means of an integrated teaching portfolio. Participants will be required to submit an assignment on completion of each module. The submission of these assignments constitutes a DP requirement for the course. The objective of the assignments is to provide formative assessment to support the participants in the building of the teaching portfolio and meeting the outcomes of the qualification, appropriate to the purpose, exit level outcomes and HEQSF level of the PGDip (HE) qualification.

A candidate may only be allowed to proceed to Year 2 if they have passed at least two modules in Year 1.

Participants are required to submit their electronic portfolios in November of the second year of their studies in order to graduate in April the following year. The portfolio will be subject to internal, as well as external, examination. A defence of the portfolio may be required.

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION [PGDIP (HE)] FOR ACADEMIC DEVELOPERS**

The Diploma is registered as a NQF level 8, 120 credit qualification on the HEQSF. Rhodes University is a registered provider for the course

and the qualification is awarded by the Rhodes Education Faculty. Participants must complete normal registration procedures through the Faculty of Education at the beginning of each year. The purpose of this Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education is to advance academic developers' knowledge of higher education as a field of study and to enable them to conceptualise, design and implement formal and informal academic development initiatives appropriate to their contexts and the challenges facing contemporary South African higher education.

**Structure of the course**

In order to obtain the qualification participants are required to meet the outcomes of six compulsory modules (20 credits each). The total credits for the course are thus 120 credits.

**The Higher Education Context: 9201011 (20 credits)**

The purpose of the module is to enable participants to analyse the higher education context (at international, national, departmental and disciplinary levels) in order to understand specific institutional academic development needs (including the developmental needs of academic staff) in their contexts.

**Teaching and Learning in Higher Education: 9201014 (20 credits)**

The purpose of this module is to develop participants' knowledge of the nature of student learning in higher education and to enable them to contribute to driving a teaching and learning agenda in their institutions.

**Curriculum Development: 9201015 (20 credits)**

The purpose of this module is to enable participants to conceptualise the role of academic development (and their role) in relation to the design and quality assurance of HEQSF-aligned curricula (at all levels) in their institutions.

**Assessment of Student Learning: 9201016 (20 credits)**

The purpose of this module is to enable participants to conceptualise the role of academic development (and their role) in relation to the design,

implementation and quality assurance of student learning in their institutions.

**Development, Enhancement and Assurance of Quality Teaching and Learning: 9201012 (20 credits)**

The purpose of this module is to enable participants to critically examine the notion of quality assurance in higher education. In addition, the module will help participants to use evaluation processes to enhance, develop and assure the quality of teaching and learning appropriate to their contexts.

**Conceptualising and Designing Contextually appropriate Academic Development Initiatives: 9201013 (20 credits)**

The purpose of this module is to integrate ideas and strategies conceptualised over the course of the Diploma thus far. In particular the module focuses on participants designing principled and theoretically sound academic development initiatives appropriate to their institutional contexts

**Assessment**

Participants will be required to complete module tasks as well as an integrated final assignment for each module which will require them to document the design and implementation of strategies for academic/ higher education development initiatives

for their institution. This assignment will include inter alia discussion of theories and principles underpinning the proposed initiatives. The objective of the assignments is to provide formative assessment to support the participants in the building of an integrated teaching portfolio and meeting the outcomes of the qualification appropriate to the purpose, exit level outcomes and HEQSF level of the PGDip (HE) qualification.

A candidate may only be allowed to proceed to Year 2 if they have passed at least two modules in Year 1. Portfolios will be assessed by two CHERTL staff/associates and will be externally examined. Candidates may be requested to defend their portfolios in an oral examination.

**MASTER OF EDUCATION BY COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH**

(Coursework NQF level 9, 90 credits; Thesis NQF level 9, 90 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information

**DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information.



# COMPUTER SCIENCE

## Professor and Head of Department

KL Bradshaw, BSc (Inf Sys), BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab)

## Professor

GC Wells, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Bristol), MICS, MACM

## Associate Professor

N Dlodlo, MSc (Leningrad Eng. and Econ. Institute), PhD (LIMU)

## Senior Lecturers

J Connan, BSc (Stell), MSc (Stell)

YM Motara, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

DL Brown, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (UWC), PhD (Rhodes)

ZS Shibeshi, BSc (AAU), MSc (AAU), PhD (Rhodes)

## Lecturers

SD Chindipha, BSc (Malawi), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

JM van Staden, BSc, BSc (Hons), , MSc (Rhodes)

## Emeritus Professors

PD Terry, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab), FICS, MACM

EP Wentworth, PhD (UPE), FICS, MCSSA, MACM

A Terzoli, Laurea in Physics (Univ of Pavia)

## Emeritus Associate Professors

RJ Foss, BSc (Natal), MSc (UNISA), PhD (Rhodes), MACM

P Machanick, BSc (Natal), MSc (Wits), PhD (UCT), MACM, MIEEE

**Visiting Professor** BVW Irwin, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes), CISSP, MACM, MIEEE

## Research Associate

A Herbert, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Candidates who aim to major in Computer Science are advised to register for the ancillary course in Mathematics or Statistics in their first or second year of study; permission will not normally be granted to repeat a prerequisite course concurrently with CSC 301 and CSC 302.

The attention of students who hope to pursue careers in the fields of Computing and Information Systems in general is drawn to the degree of BSc (Information Systems), in which Computer Science and Information Systems are the usual major subjects, supported by other appropriate courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

The courses offered in Computer Science concentrate on the technology, engineering, project management and professional topics of computing, such as programming and application development, algorithm and system design, software engineering, operating systems and real-time computing, graphics, multimedia, artificial intelligence, networks and distributed computing, telecommunications and the Internet, and formal computer science theory. Management and organisational aspects of computing are handled more specifically in courses offered by the Department of Information Systems, and aspects such as computer and digital electronics and hardware are complemented by courses offered in the Department of Physics and Electronics. In all courses students are required to perform practical work on the computer, the marks of which might count towards the final assessment. See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/computerscience> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

There are four first-year courses in Computer Science, each contributing a semester-course towards a degree.

CSC 101 is offered in the first semester only, and leads on to CSC 102 in the second semester. This is the conventional first year combination, which prepares students for further study in the subject. Each course may be obtained separately and, in

Computer Science (CSC) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BSc(InfSys), BCom, BJourn, BA and BEcon.

To major in Computer Science, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CSC 1; CSC 2; CSC 3; one of MAM 101 (or MAM 1), MAT 1S1, STA 1S1, STA 1C2, or MST 102. See Rule S.23.

addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CSC 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Computer Science must obtain both CSC 101 and CSC 102. Students admitted to the Science, Commerce or Humanities Extended Studies Programmes, or who have little or no experience of computers, are required at the discretion of the Dean and Head of Department to complete a Computer Skills course in the Extended Studies Unit before registering for CSC 101.

CSC 1L1 (Introduction to ICT) is offered in the first semester, and is intended as a terminal course.

CSC 112 is offered in the second semester and is the prerequisite for Information Systems 201.

A candidate is not allowed to obtain CSC 1L1 and CSC 1S, offered by the CHERTL.

A candidate may also not obtain CSC 101 and CSC 1L1, or CSC 1L1 and CSC 112.

### **CSC 1L1: Introduction to ICT**

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** CSC 1L1 is intended as a non-continuing course for students who require computing principles and skills to support their activities in other disciplines. Topics include an introduction to the fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, publishing and presentations, spreadsheets, other software packages, networks, the Internet, and social issues. Practical submissions and class tests collectively contribute to the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

**DP requirements:** 40% test average and 50% practical average

**Assessment:** Class record 25%, Examinations 75%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

### **CSC 112: Business Problem Solving with Computers**

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** CSC 112 is the first course for students who intend to continue to INF 201, and is

offered in the second semester. The course introduces students to a modern computing environment with an understanding of ethical considerations, and teaches skills that enable the application of computers to typical business problems. These skills include internet-based skills for web page creation and knowledge discovery, as well as problem solving and knowledge retrieval skills using tools such as spreadsheets. Business problem solving and IS Theory are introduced, and contextualised by an overview of the place of IT in a typical organization.

**DP requirements:** 40% test average and 50% practical average

**Assessment:** Class record 25%, Examinations 75%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

### **CSC101: Problem Solving and Introductory Programming**

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Co-requisite:** One of MAM 101 (or MAM 1), MAT 1S1, STA 1S1, STA 1C2, or MST 102

**Course description:** This course presents basic problem-solving techniques with an emphasis on logical, algorithmic and computational processes, using the Python programming language. Students are introduced to programming concepts, including: output, input, variables, types, operators and operands, debugging, iteration, modules, functions, selection, strings, lists and files.

**DP requirements:** 40% test average and 40% practical average

**Assessment:** Class record 20%, Examinations 80%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with CSC 102

### **CSC102: Intermediate Programming**

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% CSC 101 in same calendar year or CSC 101

**Co-requisite:** One of MAM 101 (or MAM 1), MAT 1S1, STA 1S1, STA 1C2, or MST 102

**Course description:** This course further develops programming skills, and deals with algorithms, object-oriented principles and practices, the software development life cycle, and more advanced language

features, in the scope of the Java programming language.

**DP requirements:** 40% test average and 40% practical average

**Assessment:** Class record 20%, Examinations 80%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with CSC 101

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

There are two second-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 201 is held in the first semester and CSC 202 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CSC 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Practical submissions and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Computer Science 1 (CSC 101 and CSC 102) is required before a student may register for second year courses. Adequate performance in CSC 201 is required before a student may register for CSC 202.

The second year of Computer Science is devoted to foundational computing and system design concepts.

### CSC 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CSC 101 and CSC 102

**Course description:** Machine organization and low-level programming; advanced data structures and data abstraction; object-oriented principles; advanced programming concepts. The practical work covers low and high-level imperative programming and design principles.

**DP requirements:** 40% test average and 40% practical average

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with CSC 202

### CSC 202

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% CSC 201

**Course description:** Theoretical foundations of computing; database theory and query languages; the theory and practice of operating systems. The practical work covers the use of software engineering techniques, operating systems, and database design and query.

**DP requirements:** 40% test average and 40% practical average

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with CSC 201

## THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

There are three third-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 302 and CSC 303 (not offered in 2024) are normally held in the first semester and CSC 301 in the second semester, but the department reserves the right to offer them in either semester, according to timetable constraints. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% for CSC 301 and CSC 302 will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CSC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component.

A major in Computer Science requires both CSC 301 and CSC 302, or an aggregate course for CSC3. Practical submissions and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Computer Science (CSC 2) and in one of MAM 101 (or MAM 1), MAT 1S1, STA 1S1, STA 1C2, or MST 102 is required before a student may register for CSC 301 or CSC 302. Credit in CSC 201 is required before a student may register for CSC 303. The student should also be in his/her third year of study.

The third-year of Computer Science is devoted to systems programming, functional programming paradigm, and digital lifestyle technologies.

### CSC 301

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CSC 2

**Pre-requisite:** One of MAM 101 (or MAM 1), MAT 1S1, STA 1S1, STA 1C2, or MST 102

**Course description:** Web and Internet technologies; theory and implementation of computer languages. Practical work reinforces these aspects of application development and systems programming.

**DP requirements:** 40% test average and 40% practical average

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with CSC 302

### CSC 302

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CSC 2

**Pre-requisite:** One of MAM 101 (or MAM 1), MAT 1S1, STA 1S1, STA 1C2, or MST 102

**Course description:** Data communications and computer networks; functional programming; software development practices.

**DP requirements:** 40% test average and 40% practical average

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with CSC 301

### CSC 303

This course will not be offered in 2024.

**Course description:** Data analytics, parallel patterns, and machine learning.

## COMPUTER SCIENCE HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** The course consists of a selection of six topics and a large research project. To this selection is added a compulsory module in project management and communications, and a portfolio of practical assignments. The course work comprises the advanced treatment of an approved selection from the following list of topics (the list is not exhaustive and not all topics are offered in every

calendar year): real time multimedia; Java enterprise programming; image processing; networks and data communications; distributed and parallel processing; security and cryptology; computer-based education; artificial intelligence; human computer interfaces; advanced computer architecture; microcomputer hardware and interfacing; operating system design; systems analysis and design methodologies; functional programming; real-time programming; data abstraction; modelling; formal aspects of computer science; software and hardware engineering in low resource settings; general purpose parallel computing using GPUs; bioinformatics; machine learning. At the discretion of the Head of Department, the course may include topics from Electronics, Information Systems, Pure and Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, or any other topics approved by the Head of Department.

**DP requirements:** Each module's requirements are set by the lecturer. Must pass at least half of the courses written in the mid-year examinations.

**Assessment:** 6 x 10% modules, 10% Project Management, 30% Project

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Subminimum:** a student must normally pass all courses and the project

## MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Current areas of specialisation are machine learning, real time distributed multimedia, image processing, audio networking, computer security, parallel and distributed processing, computer modelling and simulation, and ICT for development. The coursework MSc specialising in Information Security is not currently being offered.

More information on research can be found on the departmental web site.

# DRAMA

## Head of Department and Associate Professor

H Gehring, PhD (Rhodes)

## Associate Professor

A Krueger, DLitt (UP)

## Senior Lecturer

A Parker, PhD (UCT)

## Lecturers

S Mokuku, MA (Wits)

G Krastin, MA (Rhodes)

## Emeritus Professors

A Buckland

G Gordon

J Finestone-Praeg

Drama is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Drama courses are designed to give wide experience in and appreciation of the creative and technical skills associated with theatre. The courses on offer are: acting, creative writing, movement, design, physical theatre, stage management, theatre-making, and voice. On a personal level, drama encourages growth, self-esteem and confidence by developing communication, interpersonal and collaborative skills. All courses have a theoretical component including literary, critical and performance studies. Professional theatre practitioners are periodically invited to contribute to the production and learning programme. As the department is relatively small, there are ample opportunities in theatre-making and choreography as well as in performance and stage management. Students are required to take part in the production, community and learning activities of the department.

The department also hosts two acclaimed theatre companies: the First Physical Theatre Company and the Ubom! Eastern Cape Drama Company. The department participates extensively in the National Arts Festival, Regional Schools' Festivals and the National Schools' Festival.

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### Drama 1 (DRA 1)

First-year, full-year course

(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

#### Theatre Studies

A study of significant developments and current directions in the theatre using play texts, contextual studies, oral traditions, theories of performance, and visual documentation.

#### Theatre Practice

Voice and Communication Skills, Theatre Making and Physical Theatre.

**DP Requirements:** students must attend 70% of all theatre studies classes. Students must attend ALL practical classes.

**Supplementary Exam:** The subminimum for supplementary examinations is 40% for written examinations. No supplementary examinations for practical examinations.

### Drama 2 (DRA 2)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

#### Theatre Studies

A study of significant developments in theatre and performance, including historical and critical studies, play texts, current theatre trends, theatre design and dance traditions.

#### Theatre Practice

Voice and Communication Skills, Physical Theatre, Acting, Short form Improvisation and Theatre Design.

**DP Requirements:** students must attend 70% of all theatre studies classes. Students must attend ALL practical classes.

**Supplementary Exam:** The subminimum for supplementary examinations is 40% for written examinations. No supplementary examinations for practical examinations.

### Drama 3 (DRA 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

## Theatre Studies

The thematic study of significant developments in twentieth century theatre including historical studies, developments in the related arts, playtexts, contemporary theories of theatre, theatre design, and dance theatre.

## Theatre Practice

Students are required to undertake TWO of the following electives: Acting, Applied Theatre, Choreography on Site, Directing for the Theatre, Physical Theatre, Theatre Design, Theatre Technology and Writing for Performance or any other practical approved by the Head of Department.

*Not all electives are offered in any one academic year.*

**DP Requirements:** students must attend 70% of all theatre studies classes. Students must attend ALL practical classes.

**Supplementary Exam:** The subminimum for supplementary examinations is 40% for written examinations. No supplementary examinations for practical examinations.

## POSTGRADUATE COURSES

### Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Candidates are required to complete FIVE papers in consultation with the Head of Department. Paper 1 is compulsory and ensures that every student completes at least 50% theory. A student chooses a further FOUR papers, in any combination, from those offered in any one year.

*Not all papers are offered in any one academic year. The weighting of papers is subject to change.*

### GROUP A

Paper 1 Performance Studies (compulsory)

*Final Assessment: One extended research essay and a course record mark*

Paper 2 Dramatic Literature

*Final Assessment: Two research essays and a course record mark.*

### GROUP B

Paper 4 Applied Theatre

Paper 5 Directing

Paper 6 Choreography

Paper 7 Physical Performance

*Final Assessment: A practical examination, three research essays and a course record mark.*

### GROUP C

Paper 8 Acting

Paper 9 Performance Design and Scenography

Paper 10 Writing for Performance

*Final Assessment: A major practical project; a research essay, and a course record mark.*

Paper 11 Any other paper approved by the Head of Department.

*Not all papers are offered in any one academic year.*

**DP Requirements:** students must attend 70% of all theatre studies classes. Students must attend ALL practical classes.

**Supplementary Exam:** The subminimum for supplementary examinations is 40% for written examinations. No supplementary examinations for practical examinations.

### Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

There are three possible options by which the Master's degree may be taken;

1. combination of coursework, thesis project and half thesis, or
2. combination of coursework, practical thesis project, and research report or
3. by thesis only.

*The options are determined in consultation with the Head of Department.*

### Master's by coursework

#### Creative Practice Specialisations:

Candidates will select one specialisation from the following: Applied Theatre, Choreography, Contemporary Performance, Writing for Performance, Directing, Interdisciplinary Performance Practice or another specialisation in consultation with the Head of Department.

*Note: Not all specialisations are offered in any one year.*

### **Performance Research**

This core course is required for all first year Master's students. Topics include areas relevant to research practice in the performing arts such as practice as research, reflective writing, performative writing, research methodologies, applied case studies, interdisciplinary theatre interventions, integrated and interactive collaborations, and research ethics.

Candidates are required to submit two research papers (8000–10000 words), in their first year of study.

### **Thesis Project**

The candidate can select one of the following options:

1. Thesis Project to be completed at the end of the first year followed by a half thesis (30,000 words) in the second year.
2. Thesis Project to be completed in June of the second year of study followed by a Research Report in support of the research practice (12000 - 15000 words).

### **Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

The PhD in Drama is offered by thesis which may be practice based.

# ECONOMICS AND ECONOMIC HISTORY

## Professor and Head of Department

JD Snowball, MA, PhD (Rhodes)

## Senior Lecturer and Deputy-Head of Department

SA Khumalo, MCom, PhD (UFH)

## Professor

MJ Aziakpono, MSc (Ibadan), PhD (UFS)

## Professors Emeriti

GG Antrobus, MSc (Agric) (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

AP Faure, MA (US), DPhil (US), PhD (Stell)

GCG Fraser, MCom (Rhodes), PhD Agric (Stell)

H Nel, BCom, HED (UOFS), DCom (UPE)

## Associate Professors

TE Mutambara, MA, PhD (Rhodes)

MJ Rogan, MA, PhD (UKZN)

J Marire, MA (Econ) (Malawi), PhD (Rhodes)

## Associate Professor Emeritus

GR Keeton, BA(Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

## Senior Lecturers

NS Cattaneo, MSc (Rhodes)

DCA Fryer, MSc (Natal)

TJ Friederichs, MCom, PhD (Rhodes)

## Lecturers

SA Bom, MCom (UFH)

S Jobo, BCom (Hons) (Rhodes), MCom(UCT)

N Malimba, MCom (NMU)

S Phakathi, MSc (UKZN – Pietermaritzburg), PhD (Rhodes)

DV Tarentaal, BCom (Hons) (Rhodes)

## STRUCTURE OF COURSES AND RULES

Economics is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Humanities and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Economics are allowed as courses for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education and Law. Post graduate studies in Economics are available through Honours, Master's and Doctoral degrees.

### Economics 1

Economics 1 consists of TWO semester courses (1 per semester)

CODE	COURSE	SEMESTER OFFERED
------	--------	------------------

ECO 101	Microeconomics	1
---------	----------------	---

ECO 102	Macroeconomics	2
---------	----------------	---

Credit may be obtained in any of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ECO 1, provided that the courses constituting Economics 1 are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12).

### Economics 2

Economics 2 consists of TWO semester courses (1 per semester)

CODE	COURSE	SEMESTER OFFERED
------	--------	------------------

ECO 201	Microeconomics	2
---------	----------------	---

ECO 202	Macroeconomics	1
---------	----------------	---

Credit may be obtained in either of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ECO 2, provided that the courses constituting Economics 2 are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12).

### Economics 3

Economics 3 consists of FOUR half-semester modules from the following list

*CODE	MODULE	SEMESTER OFFERED
ECO 312	International Trade Theory & Policy	1
ECO 313	Public Finance	2
ECO 314	South African Economy	2
ECO 315	Econometrics	1
ECO 316	Money, Banking & International Finance	2
ECO 317	Environmental Economics	1
ECO 318	Mathematical Economics	1



ECO 319 Any other paper approved by the Department

Credit may be obtained in any four of the modules separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ECO 3, provided that the four modules constituting Economics 3 are read in the same year and that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained for at least two modules, with credits being obtained in the remaining two modules; or that a sub-minimum of 40% is obtained for one module, with credits being obtained for the remaining three modules (see Rule C.12).

**Economics 3B** consists of TWO half-semester modules (normally one per semester) from the list under Economics 3. Students registered for both Economics 3 and Economics 3B would take 6 courses (three per semester) in total.

Credit may be obtained in any of the two modules separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ECO 3B, provided that the two modules constituting Economics 3B are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12).

Econometrics is strongly recommended for students planning to do Honours. The Department reserves the right to offer second- and third-year courses in either Semester 1 or Semester 2 and to withdraw any of the third-year courses.

#### Admission Prerequisites

Course	Admission prerequisite
ECO 201,202	Economics 1 or ECO 101 & ECO 102
ECO 311,312,313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318	Economics 2 or ECO 201 & ECO 202

In addition to the above admission prerequisites, students are normally only allowed to register for

third-year courses after successful completion of a total of 14 semester courses.

#### Economics Honours

Economics Honours consists of a research project plus SIX courses from the following:

##### Compulsory Courses

Code	Course	Semester offered
ECO 401	Research project	1&2
ECO 418	Microeconomics	2
ECO 403	Macroeconomics	1

##### Elective Courses

**FOUR** courses are selected from the following list

*Code	Module	Semester offered
ECO 402	Mathematical Economics	1
ECO 404	Econometrics	1
ECO 405	Monetary Economics	1
ECO 406	Growth and Technology	1
** ECO 407	Financial Economics and Derivatives	2
ECO 408	Political Economy and Labour	1
ECO 409	Development Economics	2
ECO 410	Environmental and Resource Economics	2
ECO 411	Development of Capitalism in South Africa: history, theory and policy	
** ECO 412	Trade and Industrial Policy	2
ECO 415	Public Finance	
** ECO 416	Industrial Organisation	
** ECO 417	Any other paper approved by the Department	

*\*Internal departmental codes only*

***NB Not all the above courses will be offered in any one year. Economics Honours can only be taken fulltime.***

The TWO compulsory courses and ONE elective course in the first semester and THREE elective courses in the second semester will normally be taken. Examinations are written in June and November. The research project is completed over the whole year and should be handed in by 1 October in order to be examined in November. A student is permitted to take a paper from another department to the maximum weight of 0,2. Students who have not done Econometrics at the third-year level, are allowed to take ECO 315 in lieu of one of the elective Honours courses.

### **INTERDISCIPLINARY HONOURS DEGREE IN DEVELOPMENT STUDIES**

The Department offers courses as components of various interdisciplinary honours programmes (see Interdepartmental Studies in this Calendar) including Development Studies. Students should consult the Head of Department concerning available courses.

### **MASTER'S DEGREE IN ECONOMICS**

#### **Master's degree by research thesis**

This option is available to students wishing to pursue a clearly defined field of research and where such students have the ability to work independently.

The requirement for admission is an Honours degree in Economics, normally with an average mark of at least 65%.

#### **Master of Commerce (Financial Markets) by Coursework and Thesis**

This degree is aimed specifically at a specialised career in the financial/banking sector. A minimum registration of 5 students is normally required for the degree to be offered.

The requirement for admission is an Honours degree or a four-year degree, with a strong background in Economics. A satisfactory pass in econometrics and/ or mathematical economics at

the Honours level is required. Professional experience will be taken into account.

The courses are structured over a minimum of two years, with the above career in mind and all courses are compulsory. The degree consists of:

*Code	Course	Semester offered
ECO 501	Thesis (Year 2)	1&2
ECO 507	Financial Institutions, Regulation and Monetary Policy	1
ECO 508	Paper 1: Quantitative Finance	2
ECO 508	Paper 2: Financial Econometrics	2
ECO 504	Debt & Foreign Exchange Markets	1
ECO 505	Equity & Derivative Markets	1
ECO 506	Portfolio Theory & Management	2
ECO 509	Financial Markets Industry Exams	1&2

*\*Internal departmental codes only*

### **DOCTORAL DEGREE**

A PhD degree may be taken by research thesis. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record, an acceptable research proposal and the availability of expertise in the department to supervise the project.

### **COURSE CONTENTS**

#### **Economics 101 (ECO 101) – Microeconomics**

First-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** none

**Course description:** Fundamental economic concepts; comparative economic systems; demand, supply and market equilibrium; elasticities of demand and supply; consumer behaviour;

production and costs; price and output determination under competitive and monopolistic conditions. The South African economy, structure and development.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials, submit all essays on or before the due date and write all term tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and a three-hour examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Economics 102 (ECO 102) – Macroeconomics**

First-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** none

**Course description:** National income accounts; index numbers; determination of national output, income and employment; money and banking; quantity theory of money; money, prices and output; unemployment; inflation; introduction to international economics.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials, submit all essays on or before the due date and write all term tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and a three-hour examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Economics 201 (ECO 201) - Microeconomics**

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ECO 101 and ECO 102, or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated.

**Course description:** The economist's view of human nature; preferences, budgets, and consumer equilibrium; income and substitution effects; the Chicago school; production, technology and costs. Fundamentals of market structure; general equilibrium and second best; asymmetric information; the South African labour market; oligopoly and oil; product differentiation (automobiles and airlines); globalisation.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials, submit all essays on or before the due date and write all term tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and a three-hour examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **ECO 202 - Macroeconomics**

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ECO 101 and ECO 102, or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated.

**Course description:** Measurement of macroeconomic variables; classical macroeconomics; the role of aggregate demand; money, interest and income; policy effects in the ISTR model; aggregate supply and aggregate demand; output, inflation and unemployment; the balance of payments and exchange rates; monetary and fiscal policy in the open economy; the Mundell-Fleming model; cases of imperfect and perfect capital mobility. Money and monetary policy; the role of the Central Bank; changing nature of monetary control; the budget and fiscal policy (functions of fiscal policy, expenditure issues, revenue issues, and debt and the deficit); internal balance (unemployment and inflation); external balance (the balance of payments); and the growth debate in South Africa.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials, submit all essays on or before the due date and write all term tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 30% and three-hour examination counts 70%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Economics 312 (ECO 312) - International Trade Theory and Policy**

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

**Course description:** International trade theory: the classical (Ricardian) model and extensions; neoclassical trade theory and income distribution; technology theories of trade; the Linder theory; new trade theory based on economies of scale and imperfect competition; economic growth and international trade. Trade policy: the instruments of

trade policy and their effects; the arguments for protection; economic integration; trade and development; South Africa's trade policy and the World Trade Organization.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials, write and submit all mini-tests, assignments, tutorials on or before the due dates and write all term tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and a three-hour examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Economics 313 (ECO 313) - Public Finance**

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

**Course description:** Economic basis for investment activity; public versus private goods; externalities; government intervention in the market; financing of government expenditures; effect of taxation on the economy; the budget deficit; theory and structure of taxation; provincial expenditure and intergovernmental fiscal relations.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials, submit the term paper on or before the due date and write all term tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and a three-hour examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Economics 314 (ECO 314) - South African Economy**

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

**Course description:** South African economic since democracy. Overview of economic policy challenges facing South Africa against a backdrop of the economic legacy of apartheid. Examination of factors influencing economic policy decision-making, debate about policy appropriateness and available alternatives.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials, submit the essay on or before the due date and write the test.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 30% and a three-hour examination counts 70%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Economics 315 (ECO 315) - Econometrics**

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

**Course description:** The nature and scope of econometrics; basics of probability and statistics; the linear regression model: the two-variable model, estimation and hypothesis testing; multiple regression estimation, goodness of fit and hypothesis testing; functional forms of regression models: how to measure elasticity and the growth rate, reciprocal models; regression on dummy explanatory variables; regression analysis in practice: multicollinearity and heteroscedasticity; autocorrelation and spurious regression in economic time series data.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials, submit the assignment on or before the due date and write all term tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and three-hour examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Economics 316 (ECO 316) - Money, Banking and International Finance**

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

**Course description:** Money and interest rates; the demand for money; interest rate behaviour; transmission mechanism; rational expectations theory (traditional, new classical and new Keynesian models); financial instruments and markets; central banking and depository institutions; foreign exchange markets and the balance of payments accounts (monetary, portfolio balance, price adjustments approaches to the external balance); national income and current account; the exchange rate systems and

international monetary system, and macroeconomic policy in the open economy; contemporary issues; macroeconomic policy in South Africa.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials and write all term tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 30% and a three-hour examination counts 70%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Economics 317 (ECO 317) - Environmental Economics**

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated.

**Course description:** Scope and development of environmental economics; a model of the economy and the environment; the economics of pollution; the economics of climate change; measuring economic impacts on the environment; resource economics; sustainable development; issues and applications.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials, submit the essay on or before the due date and write the test.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and a three-hour examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Economics 318 (ECO 318) - Mathematical Economics**

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

**Course description:** Analytic and mathematical models in economics; linear models; Leontief input-output analysis; optimisation - single and several variables with constraints; consumer theory; demand theory; expenditure minimisation; production theory; profit maximisation; equilibrium and its basic welfare properties; dynamical models of economic processes.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 35%, attend all tutorials and write all term tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and a three-hour examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **ECO 401 - Research Project**

(NQF Level 8, 30 credits)

A research project of limited scope (in the form of a journal article) on an approved topic in economics to be selected by 28 February, handed in by 1 October, involving either a theoretical analysis or an application of economics. Empirical work is strongly recommended. A presentation of the results is to be made at the Departmental postgraduate conference. Candidates are encouraged to present a paper at an economics conference.

### **ECO 402 – Mathematical Economics**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Analytic and mathematical models in economics; linear models; Leontief input-output analysis; optimisation - single and several variables with constraints; consumer theory; demand theory; expenditure minimisation; production theory; profit maximisation; equilibrium and its basic welfare properties; dynamical models of economic processes; constrained optimisation, integration and applications.

### **ECO 403 - Macroeconomics**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Overview: South African policy formation since apartheid; The New Monetary Consensus and Financial Globalisation; Uneven development and hegemony in the global economy; the Keynesian critique of Classical economics; The long run; Embedded liberalism and neoliberalism; Sound money and functional finance; Keynes in the 1920s and developmentalism; Social democracy and the Rehn-Meidner model.

### **ECO 404 - Econometrics**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Dynamic econometric modeling: distributed lag and autoregressive models, Granger causality; Time series econometrics: stationarity, unit root tests, cointegration, forecasting with ARIMA and

VAR models; Simultaneous equation systems: simultaneous equation bias, the identification problem, indirect and two-stage least squares; Qualitative response models: LPM, logit and probit models; Panel data modeling: fixed versus random effects approaches.

### **ECO 405 - Monetary Economics**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

The monetary sector; money and credit; monetary theory (classical, Keynesian, portfolio models and post Keynesian); the demand for money; the transmission mechanism; the money supply process; theory and application of the definition of money; monetary policy; monetary control in South Africa; monetary vs inflation targeting.

### **ECO 406 - Growth and Technology**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Technology and macroeconomic growth models; technical change and the economic system; the sources of innovation; the new manufacturing technologies; international differences in growth and technology; national systems of innovation; foreign direct investment and multinational corporations in developing countries; technology and industrial policy: government intervention in the market; South Africa: a case study.

### **ECO 407 - Financial Economics & Derivatives**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Financial markets and the economy; portfolio theory; interest rate theory; capital market theory and the valuation of assets (the capital asset pricing model and arbitrage pricing); pricing of bonds and equities; the cost of capital, corporate finance and investment; money, bond and equity markets. Types of futures contracts; pricing of futures and the futures market; options; pricing of options including the Black- Scholes model; the regulation of financial markets; banking supervision and financial market efficiency.

### **ECO 408 - Political Economy and Labour**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

A preliminary organising framework: US and South African segmentalism and Swedish

solidarism; Economic determinism, class and social exclusion; Welfare regimes; Collective bargaining structures, class conflict, and macroeconomic considerations; Education and training systems and the ideological state apparatus; Workplace issues: voice, systems of pay, corruption; A revised organising framework: Smith and Marx.

### **ECO 409 - Development Economics**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

The meaning and measurement of development; theories of economic development: mainstream and alternative perspectives on development; structural adjustment programmes; the post-Washington consensus; globalisation; role of the state in development; the role of institutions in development; sustainable development; development in the 21st Century; the developmental state; South African economic policy in relation to development.

### **ECO 410 - Environmental and Resource Economics**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

The application of economic principles to the valuation of environmental services and of degradation; the Environmental Kuznets Curve; Climate Change adaptation and mitigation; natural resource valuation issues; economic sustainability; the development of Environmental Economics and of Ecological Economics.

### **ECO 411 - The development of capitalism in South Africa: history, theory and policy**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

History: Global, historical and comparative dimensions; sectoral trends and history; Theory: Liberal and early revisionist perspectives; other radical alternative perspectives; Policy: Evolution of economic policies; Social policy in historical context; Policy, power and politics - economic policy challenges of the post-apartheid period: Economic policy options; Politics, ideology and power relations.

**ECO 412 - Trade and Industrial Policy**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Historical background on the role of the state in development; Trade theory under imperfect competition and the case for a strategic trade and industrial policy; Industrial policy and the role of the manufacturing and services sectors in development; The articulation between macroeconomic and industrial policies; Economic concentration, competition policy and industrial development; Public procurement; Intellectual property rights; Technology, foreign direct investment and industrial policy; The WTO, the Doha Round and the shrinking of development policy space; Regional integration, industrial policy and South-South economic cooperation.

**ECO 416 - Industrial Organisation**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Origins of industrial organisation: the principle of total costs, the active firm, transaction costs and the firm; Market entry barriers: product differentiation, absolute cost advantage, economies of scale, imperfections in capital markets, other barriers; Market concentration: market share, concentration ratios, Herfindahl index; The theory of contestable markets; The market structure-conduct-performance (SCP) paradigm; Porter's five forces model; the Schumpeterian hypothesis; Behavioural theory of the firm; Evolutionary theory of the firm; Anti-trust laws/competition laws; Competition policy in South Africa; Alternative theories.

**ECO 418 - Microeconomics**

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Introduction to game theory, oligopoly and bargaining; bounded rationality and private information; moral hazard and performance incentives; risk sharing and incentive contracts, rents and efficiency, ownership and property rights; production, information costs and economic organisation; auction theory; intertemporal microeconomics; outlook on industrial organisation and on recent developments in microeconomics.

**ECO 504 - Debt and foreign exchange markets**

Economics of the money market, its instruments, its functions and development; role of interest rates and monetary policy role of the central bank via the two interbank markets; risk-free rates and the relationship between money market rates and other interest rates; the microstructure of money market; international aspects. The bond market, its instruments, development, importance and international aspects; economics of the bond market; theory of pricing; term structure theories; emergence of the corporate sector in the bond market; role of the Bond Exchange of South Africa; microstructure of the bond market. The foreign exchange market; exchange rate theory and determinants; exchange rate systems; exchange rate policy in South Africa; participants, including importers, exporters, speculators, the foreign sector; microstructure of forex market; derivatives - hedging tools, such as the forex and currency swaps, forwards, futures.

**ECO 505 - Equity and derivative markets**

Equity market - primary and secondary markets; role of the regulator and the JSE as manager of the market; participants, mechanics of the market; microstructure of the equity market; theories of valuation of shares; efficiency of equity market; behaviour of prices; international aspects of the market. The financial derivatives market - forwards, futures, options, swaps, hybrids such as swaptions, other such as weather and credit derivatives; valuation of derivatives; role of the exchange (Safex) and the regulator; use of markets - investors, hedgers, speculators, arbitrageurs; microstructure of the derivatives market.

**ECO 506 - Portfolio theory and management**

Macroeconomic analysis as it applies to financial markets; asset class analysis and strategic asset allocation as the first level of analysis; sector / industry analysis and security analysis; aspects of security analysis: financial statement analysis and ratio analysis; behavioural finance. Concepts, terminology and definitions in portfolio management; portfolio theory; modern approaches

to portfolio management including resample efficiency; types of portfolio managers; asset classes; types of financial portfolios; life staging; portfolio monitoring including performance and risk attribution, statutory environment of the portfolio manager in South Africa.

### **ECO 507 - Financial institutions, financial regulations and monetary policy**

This course is aimed at acquainting the student with the theories underlying the role of the financial system and institutions, financial regulation and monetary policy. The course is made up of three modules - financial institutions, financial regulation and monetary policy. The first module, financial institutions, covers asymmetric information and uncertainty, adverse selection and moral hazard, principal-agent theory, financial sector and macroeconomic performance, institutional aspects of financial sector development and private sector banking, operation and management of banks. The financial regulation module focuses on the theories and practice of financial regulation, drawing on South African experience. The third module focuses on the core theories underlying monetary policy formulation, analysis and implementation. The topics covered in this module are: central banking and monetary policy (goals, tools, targets, conflicts, independence and time consistency of policy); monetary aggregation; empirical models of money demand and money supply; theories of the interest rate; the monetary transmission mechanism; the international monetary system; and the practice of monetary policy formulation and implementation

in South Africa, other developed and emerging market economies.

### **ECO 508 - Quantitative techniques in financial markets**

The overall aim of this course is to acquaint students with modern quantitative techniques used in solving financial problems in a dynamic and complex financial environment. The course is made up of two modules - financial mathematics and financial econometrics.

#### **Paper 1: Quantitative Finance**

This course contains an introduction to selected mathematical principles that can be applied to the valuation of plain vanilla and exotic contingent claims on assets traded in various markets. Topics covered include asset price dynamics in a deterministic and stochastic setting, the risk-neutral pricing technique and the application of the finite differencing method to contingent claim valuation.

#### **Paper 2: Financial Econometrics**

The financial econometrics component focuses on the application of statistical and econometric methods in financial analyses. The module covers: univariate linear time series models (AR, MA, and ARIMA, Box Jenkins approach, forecasting using ARIMA models); multivariate models (simultaneous equation models and vector autoregressive models); long-run relations models (unit root testing, cointegration, and the error correction model); volatility modelling and forecasting (ARCH, GARCH, EGARCH etc.); and simulation (Monte Carlo simulation, bootstrapping).

*For more information, see the departmental website: <http://www.ru.ac.za/economics/>*



## PRIMARY AND EARLY CHILDHOOD EDUCATION

### Associate Professor and Head of Department

I Schudel, BSc(UCT), MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

### Deputy Dean & Senior Lecturer

L Westaway, BPrimEd, MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

### Professor & South African Numeracy Chair

M Graven, BSc(Ed), BSc(Hons)(Wits),

MPhil(Cantab), PhD(Wits)

### Professor

C Grant, HDE(Edgewood), BA(UNISA), BEd,

MEd(Natal), PhD(UKZN)

### Associate Professor

B Brown, BSc(Wits), BSc Hons, MSc(UNISA),

MEd(Rhodes), PhD(UCT)

### Lecturers

S Chikiwa, Dip in Ed(UZ), BEd(MSU),

MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

P Hellemann, BA, BAH, PGCE, MA,

PhD(Rhodes)

A Gobodwana, BA(UFH), PGCE, BA(Hons),

MA, PhD(UCT)

A Jones, HDE(PECE) BEd(Hons)(NMMU)

P Vale, BA(NMMU), BA(Hons)(UNISA),

MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

### Senior Research Associates

S-A Robertson, BA, DPM, HDE, BEd,

MEd(General Educational Theory and

Practice), MEd(ELT), PhD(Rhodes)

A Westaway, BA, BA(Hons), MEd(Rhodes),

PhD(Fort Hare)

### Emeritus Professor

PD Wilmot, BA, HDE (PG Sec), BEd, MEd,

PhD(Rhodes)

## BACHELOR OF EDUCATION

**(Foundation Phase Teaching) [Full-Time, Initial Teacher Education]**

### YEAR 1

**Education Studies 1A: 9110044 (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)**

**Course description:** This introductory course offers an overview of many of the important issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding, engaging, and critically reflecting on and in the field of education.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49 %

**Subminimum:** 40%

**Professional and Pedagogical Studies 1A: 9110045 (NQF Level 5, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This introductory course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general education methodologies and pedagogic approaches that can be utilised across all subjects in the school curriculum; and creates a link between Education Studies and the teaching method courses. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Mathematics for Teaching: 9110043 (NQF Level 5, 25 credits)**

**Course description:** This course aims to teach mathematics and to help students to develop a background in mathematical thinking that will be needed for later courses in teaching mathematics.

**Assessment:** Class record 40% Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Teaching Practice 1A: 9110004 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This involves some form of service learning with Foundation Phase learners

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### YEAR 2

**Educational Studies 1B code 9110046 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** Education Studies 1A

**Course description:** This introductory course offers an overview of many of the important

issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding, engaging, and critically reflecting on and in the field of education.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** 40%

### **Professional and Pedagogical Studies 1B code 9110047 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** Professional and

Pedagogical Studies 1A

**Course description:** This introductory course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general education methodologies and pedagogic approaches that can be utilised across all subjects in the school curriculum; and creates a link between Education Studies and the teaching method courses. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language English 9110009 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. It is an introductory course that aims to prepare prospective teachers to be able to teach Home Language English competently.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language isiXhosa 9110010 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. It is an introductory

course that aims to prepare prospective teachers to be able to teach Home Language isiXhosa competently.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 1: Introduction to First Additional Language 9110041 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course provides a framework for understanding the teaching and learning of first additional language in the Foundation Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 1: Life Skills 911001 5 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** The course aims to develop students' understanding about Life Skills education as well as Life Skills content knowledge and the curriculum. It develops students' teaching pedagogies and methodological approaches in relation to personal and social development and beginner knowledge.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 1: Mathematics 9110042 (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)**

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course provides a sound framework for understanding mathematics education in the Foundation Phase. It aims to prepare mathematics teachers who have strong pedagogical content knowledge related to number sense development and who

are competent in the appropriate pedagogical practices.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Performance and Multimodalities 1 9110005 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course offers the students opportunities to engage in visual art and physical education. Students are equipped and introduced to the above components to enable them to have content knowledge that supplements the teaching of Life Skills in Foundation Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### **Understanding the Social & Physical World 1 9110006 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course offers the students opportunities to engage in science and technologies various. It provides the subject matter knowledge for teaching Life Skills in the Foundation Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### **Teaching Practice 1B 9110008 (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)**

**Entrance Requirement:** Teaching Practice 1A

**Course description:** This course consists of micro teaching and school visits. The emphasis is on building an understanding of the school system and how to teach.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

## **YEAR 3**

### **Education Studies 2 code 9110048 (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** Education Studies 1B

**Course description:**

This course offers an opportunity to engage with many of the important issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding, engaging, and critically reflecting on and in the field of education.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Professional and Pedagogical Studies 2 code 9110049 (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** Professional and Pedagogical Studies 1B

**Course description:** This course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general education methodologies and pedagogic approaches that can be utilised across all subjects in the school curriculum; and creates a link between Education Studies and the teaching method courses. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language English 9110022 (NQF Level 6, 9 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1 HL English

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 Home Language (HL) English course and it seeks to develop English HL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting English HL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in English HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language isiXhosa 9110023 (NQF Level 6, 9 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1 HL isiXhosa

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 IsiXhosa Home Language (HL) course and it seeks to develop isiXhosa HL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting isiXhosa HL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language English 9110026 (NQF Level 6, 9 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting English FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in English FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language Afrikaans 9110024 (NQF Level 6, 9 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting Afrikaans FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in Afrikaans FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language isiXhosa 9110023 (NQF Level 6, 9 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting isiXhosa FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics 9110027 (NQF Level 6, 9 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1 Mathematics

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course provides a

sound framework for understanding mathematics education in the Foundation Phase. It aims to prepare mathematics teachers who have strong pedagogical content knowledge related to number sense development and spatial relations and who are competent in the appropriate pedagogical practices.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49 %

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills 9110028 (NQF Level 6, 9 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1 Life Skills

**Course description:** The course aims to develop students' understanding about Life Skills education as well as Life Skills content knowledge and the curriculum. It develops students' teaching pedagogies and methodological approaches in relation to creative arts and beginner knowledge.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** None

### **Performance & Multimodalities 2 9110017 (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** PMM 1

**Course description:** This course equips students with content and skills of the creative arts in education (drama, dance and music) with regards to Foundation Phase teaching. Students are equipped and introduced to the above creative art components to enable them to have content knowledge that supplements the teaching of Life Skills in Foundation Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 100 %

### **Understanding the Social & Physical World 2 9110018 (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** USPW 1

**Course description:** This course gives students the opportunity to engage with geography and history content knowledge. It develops students' subject matter knowledge in the above-

mentioned components in order to teach Life Skills in the Foundation Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### **Teaching Practice 2 9110020 (NQF level 6, 25 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** Teaching Practice 1B

**Course description:** This course provides students with the opportunity to engage with learners at various schools. The aim of the course is to understand the school context and to implement the pedagogies and methodologies the students have learnt in their Education Studies and Professional and Pedagogical Studies courses as well as their method courses.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

## **YEAR 4**

### **Education Studies 3: code 9110050 (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** Education Studies 2

**Course description:**

This course offers an opportunity to engage with many of the important issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding, engaging, and critically reflecting on and in the field of education.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Professional and Pedagogical Studies 3: code 9110051 (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** Professional and Pedagogical Studies 2

**Course description:** This course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general education methodologies and pedagogic approaches that can be utilised across all subjects in the school curriculum; and creates a link between Education Studies and the teaching method courses. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home**

**Language English: 9110032 (NQF Level 7, 14 credits)**

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 2 English HL

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 Home Language (HL) English course and it seeks to develop English HL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting English HL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in English HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home**

**Language isiXhosa: 9110033 (NQF Level 7, 14 credits)**

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 2 isiXhosa HL

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 isiXhosa Home Language (HL) course and it seeks to develop isiXhosa HL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting isiXhosa HL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language English: 9110036 (NQF Level 7, 14 credits)**

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 2 English FAL

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 English First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting English FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in English FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language Afrikaans: 9110034 (NQF Level 7, 12 credits)**

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 2 Afrikaans FAL

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 Afrikaans First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting Afrikaans FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in Afrikaans FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language isiXhosa: 9110035 (NQF Level 7, 12 credits)**

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 2 isiXhosa FAL

**Course description:**

This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 isiXhosa First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting isiXhosa FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics:  
9110037 (NQF level 7, 14 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 2 Mathematics

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course provides a sound framework for understanding mathematics education in the Foundation Phase. It aims to prepare mathematics teachers who have strong pedagogical content knowledge related to number sense development and early algebra and who are competent in the appropriate pedagogical practices.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills:  
9110038 (NQF level 7, 14 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 2 Life skills

**Course description:** The course aims to develop students' understanding about Life Skills education as well as Life Skills content knowledge and the curriculum. It develops students' teaching pedagogies and methodological approaches in relation to Grade R and teaching across the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Subminimum:** Class record 40%, Examination 40%

**Teaching Practice 3 9110039 (NQF level 7, 24 credits)**

**Entrance requirement:** Teaching Practice 2

**Course description:** This course provides students with the opportunity to engage with learners at various schools. The aim of the course is to understand the school context and to implement the pedagogies and methodologies the students have learnt in their Education Studies and Professional and Pedagogical Studies courses as well as their method courses.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

## SECONDARY AND POST-SCHOOL EDUCATION

### Senior Lecturer & Head of Department

K Jawahar, BSc(Hons)(Natal), PGCE, MEd, PhD(UKZN)

### Professor & Dean of Education, Chair of Environment and Sustainability Education

E Rosenberg, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)  
MMedSci(UOFS), MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

### Distinguished Professor & SARCHI Chair: Global Change and Social Learning Systems ‘Transformative Social Learning and Green Skills Learning Pathways’

H Lotz-Sisitka, BPrimEd(JP)(UPE), BEd, EdEd(Stell)

### Professor

ZMM Jojo, JSTC, BEd(UNITRA), FDE(RAU), MEd, PhD(UKZN)

### Associate Professor

L Olvitt, BA, HDE(Natal), MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

### Senior Researcher

D McGarry, BSc MSc, PhD(Rhodes)

### Senior Lecturers

F Kajeje, BCom(UNISA), SPED(RAU), PGCE(Natal), BEd(Hons), MEd(UKZN), PhD(Rhodes)

I Kulundu-Bolus, BA, PGDIP, BA(Hons), MA, PhD( Rhodes)

C Simuja, BSc Computing(London Metropolitan), MSc Informatics(Malawi), PGDHE, MPhil, PhD(Rhodes)

Z Songqwaru, STD(Cape), ACE, BEd(Hons), MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

### Lecturers

M Barnes, BA, BA(Hons), MA, PGCE(UCT)

NS Nkosi, BEd, BEd(Hons), MEd(Wits)

### Professors Emeritus

M Schäfer, BSc, HDipEd (Wits), BEd, MEd, (Rhodes), PhD (Curtin)

K Ngozoa, JSTC(Cape College), BSc, BEd, MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

### Visiting Professors

Y Engeström (Helsinki)

A Sannino (Tampere)

### Senior Research Associates

K Erwin, BSocSci(Hons), MPhil(Cantab), PhD(UKZN)

S Vermeulen, Doctoraal(International Relations & Human Rights Law)(UU)(Robert Schuman), LLM(Brussels), MBA(Nottingham), PhD(Surrey)  
T Smits, MA(Antwerp) and (Vienna), PhD(Antwerp)

N Mpofu, BA, MEd (Solusi), PhD(UP)

K Kotschy, BSc(Hons), HDipEd, MSc, PhD (Wits)

### Research Associates

L Price, MSc(UZ), PhD(Rhodes)

D Samson, MSc(UPE), PGCE, MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

C Chikunda, MEd(UZ), PhD(Rhodes)

P Ramsarup, MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

## BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (SENIOR PHASE AND FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING)

(Part time, in-service)

### BACHELOR OF EDUCATION in Science Education (SP and FET Phase Teaching)

#### [Part-time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education]

The part-time BEd in Science Education (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching) programme is offered over three years for candidates admitted under E.13.2. In each year there are common core modules, a major specialisation in Physical Sciences or Life Sciences at FET level, and two minor specialisms in Natural Sciences and Mathematics at SP level.

### COMMON CORE MODULES (2022)

#### Education Studies 5: 9000455 (NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge in the study of education (history of education, theories of pedagogy), with particular emphasis on grounding this knowledge in a socio-culturally situated South African educational practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%



**Teaching Tools and Technologies 5: 9000454 (NQF level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course develops a sound, reflective, practice-based engagement with educational technology and the cognitive tools of the teaching community of practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

**Professional Studies 5: 9000456 (NQF level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge of professional issues in teaching and grounds this knowledge in educational and classroom practice: classroom management, planning, sequencing, pace and progression, integration.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

**MAJOR SPECIALISATION (2022)****Physical Sciences (FET) 1: 9000457 (NQF level 6, 20 credits)**

**Course description:** This course offers extensive and detailed development of concepts, experience and precision in process, computational and technical elements of Physical Sciences. It also develops pedagogical content knowledge, understanding of and experience in teaching Physical Sciences.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Life Sciences FET 1: 9000458 (NQF level 6, 20 credits)**

**Course description:** This course offers extensive and detailed development of concepts, experience and precision in the process of Life Sciences. It also develops pedagogical content knowledge, understanding of and experience in teaching Life Sciences.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**MINOR SPECIALISATIONS (2022)****Natural Sciences (SP) 1: 9000459 (NQF level 6, 13 credits)**

**Course description:** This course offers detailed development of concepts, experience and precision in process, and computational elements of Natural Sciences. It also develops pedagogical content knowledge, understanding of and experience in teaching Natural Sciences.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**Mathematics (SP) 1: 9000460 (NQF level 6, 12 credits)**

**Course description:** This course develops more specialised and detailed mathematical content and pedagogical content knowledge.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

**BACHELOR OF EDUCATION in Life Orientation Education (SP and FET Phase Teaching)****[Part-Time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education]**

The part-time BEd in Life Orientation (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching) programme is offered over three years for candidates admitted under E.13.2. In each year there are common core modules, a major specialisation in Guidance Counselling and specialised learning support, and two minor specialisms in Life Orientation at FET and SP levels.

**COMMON CORE MODULES****Education Studies 5: 9000436 (NQF level 6, 15 credits)**

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge in the study of education (history of education, theories of pedagogy), with particular emphasis on grounding this knowledge in a socio-culturally situated South African educational practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

### **Teaching Tools and Technologies 5: 9000435 (NQF level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course develops a sound, reflective, practice-based engagement with educational technology and the cognitive tools of the teaching community of practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### **Professional Studies 5: 9000437 (NQF level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge of professional issues in teaching and grounds this knowledge in educational and classroom practice: classroom management, planning, sequencing, pace and progression, integration.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

## **MAJOR SPECIALISATION (2022)**

### **Guidance Counselling and specialised learning support 1: 9000438 (NQF level 6, 17 credits)**

**Course description:** This course prepares and empowers the Life Orientation educator to engage with learners of different levels of development within the counselling environment. It explores the role of the dysfunctional family, foundational counselling skills and supportive intervention strategies within a particular cultural context.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

## **MINOR SPECIALISATIONS (2022)**

### **Life Orientation (FET) 1: 9000439 (NQF level 6, 14 credits)**

**Course description:** This course aims to develop the educator's understanding and appreciation of the Life Orientation curriculum content, focusing on specific content knowledge relevant to the FET learner, with special emphasis on career choice. It engages the student on the pedagogical relevance of motivation to learn, the emotional underpinnings thereof and the role of critical thinking in self-reflective practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

### **Life Orientation (SP) 1: 9000440 (NQF level 6, 14 credits)**

**Course description:** This course aims to develop the educator's understanding and appreciation of the Life Orientation curriculum content, focusing on specific content knowledge relevant to the SP learner and preparation for the FET phase. It engages the student on the pedagogical relevance of motivation to learn, the emotional underpinnings thereof and the role of critical thinking in self-reflective practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

## **BACHELOR OF EDUCATION in ICT Education (SP and FET Phase Teaching)**

### **[Part-Time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education]**

The part-time BEd in ICT in Education (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching) programme is offered over three years for candidates admitted under E.13.2. In each year there are common core modules, a major specialisation in ICT in Education, and two minor specialisms in Computer Applications Technology (CAT) at FET level and Technology at SP level.

## **COMMON CORE MODULES**

### **Education Studies 5: 9000401 (NQF level 6, 15 credits)**

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge in the study of education (history of education, theories of pedagogy), with particular emphasis on grounding this knowledge in a socio-culturally situated South African educational practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

### **Teaching Tools and Technologies 5: 9000400 (NQF level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course develops a sound, reflective, practice-based engagement with educational technology and the cognitive tools of the teaching community of practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### **Professional Studies 5: 9000402 (NQF level 6, 10 credits)**

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge of professional issues in teaching and grounds this knowledge in educational and classroom practice: classroom management, planning, sequencing, pace and progression, integration.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

## **MAJOR SPECIALISATION (2022)**

### **ICT in Education 1: code 9000403 (NQF level 6, 15 credits)**

**Course description:** This course provides detailed and comprehensive knowledge of how to use techniques and tools for accessing, storing, retrieving, and selecting appropriate information from a variety of electronic sources and how to manage them.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

## **MINOR SPECIALISATIONS (2022)**

### **Computer Applications Technology (CAT)**

#### **FET 1: 9000404 (NQF level 6, 15 credits)**

**Course description:** This course develops detailed and comprehensive knowledge of a broad range of operating skills in Computer Applications Technology (CAT) and generates experience to allow mastery of these skills.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

### **Technology (SP) 1: code 9000405 (NQF level 6, 15 credits)**

**Course description:** This module develops detailed and more extensive knowledge of design processes and skills, as well as of general principles

and application for technology transfer. It also generates the experience to allow the effective development of these design processes and skills.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

### **BACHELOR OF EDUCATION in English Language Teaching Education (SP and FET Phase Teaching)**

#### **[Part-Time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education]**

For the details of this qualification, refer to THE INSTITUTE FOR THE STUDY OF THE ENGLISHES OF AFRICA (ISEA) section.

### **BACHELOR OF EDUCATION in Mathematics Education (SP and FET Phase Teaching)**

#### **[Part-Time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education]**

For the details of this qualification, refer to RHODES UNIVERSITY MATHEMATICS EDUCATION PROJECT (RUMEP) section.

### **POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching)**

Our aim in the professional preparation of our candidates is to develop critically reflective practitioners who have the capacity and the will to act as agents of appropriate change in the southern African context. The course consists of the following major components:

#### **Educational Studies 9061100 (NQF 7, 42 credits)**

This course offers an overview of many of the important issues in education. The aim is to provide students with a framework for understanding the field of education using sociological, philosophical and psychological lenses. The course explores aspects such as: classroom interaction and various classroom dynamics which includes micro-teaching in small peer groups; historical and contemporary aspects of South African education;

environmental education and sustainability; human development, barriers to learning, mediating learning, curriculum processes, different pedagogical approaches, assessment, values, teachers' rights and responsibilities, organisational dimensions of schooling and educational technology.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

### **Teaching Method Courses (NQF level 7, 24 credits)**

A broad range of teaching method courses is offered. These are aligned to national curriculum policy. Each course aims to prepare prospective teachers to be able to teach a subject or learning area competently in a variety of situations. Students acquire a critical understanding of the curriculum and its philosophical underpinnings, and learn how to implement it in a practical and reflective manner. Students are encouraged to become innovative and inspirational teachers.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%

### **Teaching Practice (NQF level 7, 13 credits)**

Students get a taste of a range of different schools, and finally spend the equivalent of a school term as fully integrated members of a school's staff. As such, they become involved in the academic, cultural, sporting and administrative activities of a particular institution, and so experience a full immersion into what it means to be a practicing professional.

**Assessment:** Observation, mentor teacher evaluation report, portfolio 100%

### **Community Engaged Research 9061102 (NQF level 7, 4 credits)**

This course provides students with an introduction to educational research that incorporates service-learning and situational learning component of the PGCE. The aim is to provide candidates with an opportunity to learn about context and to learn in context.

### **Endorsements**

Endorsements are obtainable in the following: Computer Literacy, Educational Technologies and Languages. Teacher education certificates must give some indication of the ability of the holder to use any of the official languages of South Africa as a medium of instruction. Opportunities are provided during the year for students to obtain such endorsements in English, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

## **BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (HONOURS) (NQF Level 8, 120 credits)**

### **These courses fall across both the Department of Primary and Early Childhood Education and The Department of Secondary and Post-school Education**

The BEd Honours qualification consists of two foundation courses in Year One and a specialism made up of two electives in Year Two. The degree is normally offered on a two-year part-time basis. It is intended to prepare candidates for research-based postgraduate studies in a particular field of education. It serves to consolidate and deepen candidates' expertise and theoretical engagement in educational practice and develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of educational research. The qualification is offered alternately in Makhanda and Okahandja, Namibia. In 2024, the foundation programme will be offered in Makhanda while the specialisms will be offered in Okahandja, Namibia.

### **FOUNDATION COURSES (Year 1)**

The foundation programme comprises a 30-credit course called "Educational Ideas and Issues" and a 30-credit course called "Research in Education". Each of these courses is at NQF Level 8 and each is weighted as follows: coursework (50%) and an exam equivalent (50%).

### **Educational Ideas and Issues 9045000 (NQF level 8, 30 credits)**

This compulsory course provides opportunities to analyse and evaluate educational ideas and issues relevant to a South and Southern African context using philosophical, psychological and sociological lenses. It will examine, inter alia,

issues of equity (in relation to, for example, language, gender, culture and socio-economic status), the role of language in mediating learning, and issues relating to knowledge and knowing. Students' critical engagement with these issues and ideas will be underpinned by theories of teaching and learning (including, but not limited to, Piaget, Vygotsky, Bruner), debates around issues of quality in education, and in-depth consideration of the above in terms of curricular design and implementation. The course will also include philosophical, psychological and sociological perspectives on the role of values, creativity and democracy in education. Wherever possible, candidates will be required to consider these perspectives in relation to their own educational experience and context.

### **Research in Education 9045001 (NQF level 8, 30 credits)**

In this compulsory course, students will “develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of that discipline [Education]” (HEQSF, 2013), by “conducting and reporting research under supervision, worth at least 30 credits, in the form of a discrete research component” (MRTEQ, 2015). This course forms the discrete research component required according to the policy. The ‘Research in Education’ course is to be conducted as a supported educational research course, that is, through supervision, the student is closely guided through an independent research process, by means of selected readings and developmental on-course activities.

### **SPECIALISM COURSES (Year 2)**

Below is a list of the specialisms. Each specialism is worth 60 credits and all are at NQF Level 8. The specialisms may not all be offered in any given year and are dependent on staff availability, timetabling and viable class sizes. Students have to have passed the foundation programme in order to gain entry into the specialisms. Specialisms are assessed through coursework (50%) and an exam equivalent (50%). The specialisms are:

**Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access 9045002 theory, 9045003 research (NQF level 8, 60 credits)** For the description of these courses, refer to THE INSTITUTE FOR THE STUDY OF THE ENGLISHES OF AFRICA (ISEA) section.

### **Curriculum Studies (NQF level 8, 60 credits)**

This specialism provides an overview of the core functions and characteristics and underpinnings of curriculum and pedagogy from a national and international perspective focusing on curriculum processes and the socio-political and economic drivers of national curriculum development and change in post-apartheid South Africa. It challenges students to critically analyse and evaluate their lived experiences of curriculum implementation and to critically analyse and evaluate curriculum policy and the emergent and ongoing issues associated with curriculum. Students will review contemporary curriculum research in southern Africa and engage in debate about decolonising and Africanising the curriculum.

### **Educational Leadership & Management theory, policy and practice 9045004 theory, 9045005 research (NQF level 8, 60 credits)**

This specialism introduces students to the field of Educational Leadership and Management (ELM) and particularly distributed approaches to leadership which include the leadership of teachers, learners and parents. The specialism takes a strong cultural historical orientation to developing and researching leadership and students are challenged to develop more nuanced, contextually situated understandings of leadership through a small-scale qualitative research project.

### **English Language Teaching 9045013 theory, 9045014 research (60 credits, NQF level 8)**

This research-based specialism introduces English Language educators to the broad field of English Studies and its three disciplines: *Language, Literature and Culture, Communication and Media*. The specialism is designed to encourage students to engage critically with theoretical, philosophical, and research-based studies of the English Studies field, and the implications for

teaching, research, curriculum design and assessment, both within schooling and higher education contexts.

### **Geography Education (NQF level 8, 60 credits)**

This research-based specialism is designed for practicing geography educators wishing to re-orient school geography to education for sustainable development. It seeks to develop an understanding of contemporary challenges and developments in the field of Geography Education with a specific focus on curriculum. It addresses contemporary issues in Geography Education and looks at how professional skills can be enhanced through: change oriented pedagogical approaches; experiential learning; spatial conceptual understanding and graphicacy.

### **Information and Communication Technology (ICT) in Education 9045007 theory, 9045008 research (NQF level 8, 60 credits)**

This research-based specialism is aimed at providing students with a wide range of knowledge, concepts and applications of ICT in education as well as fundamental research skills suited to researching the use of ICT in educational settings. It also aims to provide students with the opportunity to realise the social, ethical and legal issues pertaining to the use of ICT and appreciate how the sharing of knowledge using ICT influences decision-making.

### **Maths Education 9045015 theory, 9045016 research (NQF level 8, 60 credits)**

This specialism introduces mathematics educators to the systematic, research-based and critical study of mathematics education. It will consolidate and deepen students' expertise in the teaching and learning of mathematics and develop their capacity to undertake research into the practice of mathematics education. Students will engage in advanced reflection on current thinking, practice and research methods relating to mathematics teaching in particular phases and content areas.

### **Primary Education 9045009 theory, 9045010 research (NQF level 8, 60 credits)**

This specialism is for primary school teachers, heads of departments, principals, subject advisors or education development officers. Its purpose is to orientate participants to contemporary debates and issues related to teaching and learning in primary schools. Participants will critically engage with the complex interrelationship between discourses on quality education, and the issues that mediate and impact quality teaching and learning. The specialisation culminates with a research project into quality teaching and learning practices in primary schools.

### **Science Education 9045011 theory, 9045012 research (NQF level 8, 60 credits)**

This research-based specialism aims to enhance the study of science teaching and learning. It focuses on issues that are directly or indirectly related to science teaching and learning such as the active involvement of learners in practical activities, investigations and real-life experiences, science curriculum knowledge and discourse, as well as science literacy/multiliteracy. Other aspects of the specialism include human rights, inclusivity and issues of diversity as they relate to Science Education as well as the importance of Education for Sustainable Development and valuing of indigenous knowledge systems.

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN SUSTAINABILITY LEARNING**

The PGDip (SL) is designed to give students the ability to understand, critique, plan and implement socially-engaged learning processes aimed in turn at supporting society to transition to social-ecological sustainability. The qualification responds to intensifying environmental degradation which puts human health and the sustainability of rural and urban communities at risk. The PGDip seeks to complement graduates' existing technical and academic skills in order to help them navigate the intersecting social, cultural, economic, ecological, political and technological dimensions of a variety of current work contexts. The qualification is relevant in a range of sectors (e.g. environmental officers in local and provincial government; community activists; environmental journalists; agricultural extension workers;

educators in the biodiversity sector; and community development facilitators) and to a range of disciplines including Environmental Science, Journalism, Education, Geography, Fine Arts, Drama, Sociology and Anthropology.

### **COURSE STRUCTURE**

The PGDip (SL) is offered part-time over two years. The qualification is taught by lecturers from a range of disciplines and jointly coordinated by the Environmental Learning Research Centre within the Department of Secondary & Post-School Education and by the Department of Environmental Science.

The overall credit value of the diploma is 120 credits (60 credits in Year 1, 60 credits in year 2). All courses are at NQF Level 8.

The PGDip (SL) is composed of six courses: there are four core courses which are compulsory (1-4), and two elective courses (5-6) (see course details below). Each year, students are required to attend four teaching blocks (each running from Monday to Friday) and complete individual and group assignments in between (as summarised in Table 1).

#### **Core Courses (compulsory)**

#### **FOUNDATIONS OF SUSTAINABILITY LEARNING [50 credits]**

- Module 1.1: Sustainability Concepts and Critique [10]
- Module 1.2: Systems Thinking: History, Context and Future [10]
- Module 1.3: Interdisciplinarity, Knowledge and Power [10]
- Module 1.4: Participation, Solidarity and Sustainability Ethics [10]

Module 1.5: Introduction to Social Learning Processes [10]

#### **INTRODUCTION TO INTERDISCIPLINARY SOCIAL SCIENCE RESEARCH [10 credits]**

#### **ACTION RESEARCH CHANGE PROJECT [30 credits]**

- Module 3.1: Describing Sustainability Learning Contexts [10]
- Module 3.2: Envisioning Change for Sustainability [10]
- Module 3.3: Enacting Change for Sustainability [10]

#### **EVALUATION AS LEARNING [10 credits]**

#### **Elective Courses**

Students select ONE course from Elective A options, and ONE from Elective B.

#### **ELECTIVES IN SUSTAINABILITY LEARNING PRACTICE - ELECTIVE A**

**[10 credits]**

#### **ELECTIVES IN SUSTAINABILITY LEARNING PRACTICE - ELECTIVE B**

**[10credits]**

Note: The suite of available 2nd year electives will vary from year to year, influenced by the class profile and lecturer availability. Some examples of possible electives include:

- Reflective Social Practice for Sustainability Learning
- Indigenous Knowledge Systems, Heritage and Sustainability
- Adaptive Systemic Approaches to Governance and Learning in Social-Ecological Systems
- School and Community Partnerships for Sustainability

#### **ASSESSMENT**

The PGDip (SL) combines formative and summative assessment and a range of assessment methods and tasks. Details are summarised in Table 1 below. Over two years of part-time study, students will be required to:

- submit 10 individual assignments, including a short research report,
- complete 2 group assessment tasks,
- present 1 seminar and 1 conference-type presentation, and
- write 1 two-hour examination.

**Table 1. Summary of PGDip (SL) assessment tasks and mark allocation per course**

<b>Module</b>	<b>Credits</b>	<b>Summary</b>
<b>Foundations of Sustainability Learning (Year 1)</b>	50	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5x individual assignments (one per module)</li> <li>• 2x group tasks</li> <li>• 1x two-hour exam FINAL MARK: 50% Class mark + 50% Exam mark</li> </ul>
<b>Introduction to Interdisciplinary Social Science Research (Year 1)</b>	10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1x 50 mark seminar</li> <li>• 1x 50 mark draft action research proposal</li> </ul>
<b>Action Research Change Project</b>	30	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1x 100 mark individual assignment (contextual profile report)</li> <li>• 1x 100 mark individual assignment (reflective report)</li> <li>• 1x 100 mark presentation</li> <li>• 1x 100 mark short research report.</li> </ul>
<b>Elective Course A</b>	10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1x 100 mark individual assignment</li> </ul>
<b>Elective Course B</b>	10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1x 100 mark individual assignment</li> </ul>
<b>Evaluation as Learning</b>	10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1x 100 mark individual assignment</li> </ul>

For all courses, the pass mark is 50%.

The only course that is partly assessed with a written exam is Foundations of Sustainability Learning in Year 1. Candidates must obtain a Class Record of 45% to enter the examination for that course at the end of the year (i.e. an average of at least 45% for the 5 individual assignments and 2 group assignments).

**Supplementary exam:** 40 – 49%



## ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

### Associate Professor & Head of Department

G Thondhlana, BA, BA Hons, MA (Zimbabwe), PhD, PGDHE (Rhodes)

### Distinguished Professor and SARChI Chair in Interdisciplinary Science in Land & Natural Resource Use for Sustainable Livelihoods

CM Shackleton, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc, PhD (Wits)

### Professor

J Gambiza, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc (Zimbabwe), PGDHE (Rhodes), MEd (Rhodes), PhD (Zimbabwe)

### Associate Professor

Sheunesu Ruwanza, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc (Zimbabwe), MSc, PhD (Stell), PGDHE (Rhodes)

### Senior Lecturer

Jessica Cockburn, BSc, BSc Hons (Rhodes), MSc (NWU), PhD (Rhodes)

### Honorary Professor

SE Shackleton, PhD (Rhodes) (Honorary Professor)

### Senior Research Associates

C Grant-Biggs, PhD (UP)

HC Biggs, BVSc (UP)

### Research Associates

K Coetzer-Hanack (Wits)

GNR Cundill, PhD (Rhodes)

M Powell, MSc (Rhodes)

S Shwababa, PhD (UFS)

Environmental Science (ENV) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BEcon, BJourn and BA, subject to the conditions specified below.

The Department takes an inter/transdisciplinary approach to sustainable environmental management and aims to attract students from a variety of academic disciplines. Candidates who wish to major in Environmental Science should, however, structure their degrees around a specific sub-discipline of Environmental Science, for example biological resources, earth resources, water resources, environmental policy, environmental economics, or people and the environment. Their choice of additional subjects at

the second and third level should thus reflect a specific focus.

To major in Environmental Science a candidate is required to obtain credit for the following first year level courses: EAR 101 and GOG 102, and one of ANT 1, BOT 1, ECO 1, GLG 1 or ZOO 1; followed by ENV 201 and ENV 202 at second year level, and then ENV 301 and ENV 302 at the third-year level.

An exception is made for Law students who, due to a timetable clash between Legal Theory 1 and EAR 101 and GOG 102, are permitted to enter ENV 201 and ENV 202 without having completed EAR 101 and GOG 102. Such students shall register for EAR 101 and GOG 102 concurrently with ENV201 and ENV 202. They must obtain credit for EAR 101, GOG 102, and ENV 2 in order to be eligible to register for ENV 3. See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/environmentalscience/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

### Recommended curricula

The following are examples only. Not all the options and possible subject combinations are covered, and curricula are subject to timetable constraints. Students with particular interests are encouraged to discuss other possible course combinations with the Head of Department.

Where both semesters of a year course are recommended, the subject is indicated by its year number only, e.g. ENV 2 instead of ENV 201 and 202. GOG 1 is used instead of EAR 101 and GOG 102.

Curricula could, for example, be structured around one of the following sub-disciplines:

#### • Biological resources

Year 1: CHE 1; CEL 101; BOT 102; ZOO 102; EAR 101; GOG 102; STA 101.

Year 2: ENV 2; two of BOT 2, ENT 2, ICH 2, MIC 2 or ZOO 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; and one of BOT 3, ENT 3, ICH 3, MIC 3 or ZOO 3 depending on the choice of second year subjects.

● **Earth resources**

Year 1: CHE 1; CEL 101; BOT 102; EAR 101; GOG 102; GLG 102; MAN 101.

Year 2: ENV 2; GLG 2; GOG 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; GOG 3 or GLG 3.

● **Water resources**

Year 1: CHE 1; CEL 101; ZOO 102 or BOT 102; EAR 101; GOG 102; GLG 102; MAN 101.

Year 2: ENV 2; one of GLG 2 or GOG 2; and one of BOT 2, ZOO 2 or ENT 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; GLG 3 or GOG 3.

● **People and the environment**

Year 1: ANT 1; CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; EAR 101; GOG 102; STA 101.

Year 2: ENV 2; ANT 2; ECO 1; GOG 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; ANT 3 or ECO 3.

● **Environmental Economics**

See the BEcon calendar entry under the Faculty of Commerce.

● **Environmental Law**

Year 1: Legal Theory 1; ECO 1; ANT 1; BOT 1 or ZOO 1

Year 2: Legal Theory 2; ENV 2; GOG 2

Year 3: Legal Theory 3; ENV 3

Note: These are illustrative curricula only and students must ensure that they have the correct number of NQF credits to meet their respective faculty needs.

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

There are two second-year level courses in Environmental Science. ENV 201 is normally taught in the first semester and ENV 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course can be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course ENV 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required 40% sub-

minimum in each component (i.e. the class mark and for written examination combined) and obtains DP. However, students who wish to major in Environmental Science must obtain credit for both ENV 201 and ENV 202. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Geography (EAR 101 and GOG 102) and either Anthropology (ANT 1), Botany (CEL 101 and BOT 102), Economics (ECO 1), Geology (GLG 1) or Zoology (CEL 101 and ZOO 102) are required before a student may register for ENV 201 or ENV 202, other than for Law students. These students shall register for EAR 101 and GOG 102 concurrently with ENV201 and ENV 202. Adequate performance in ENV 201 (i.e., obtains the required 40% sub-minimum and DP) is required before a student may register for ENV 202.

### ENV 201 (Foundations of Environmental Science)

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** EAR 101 and GOG 102, and one of ANT 1, BOT 1, ECO 1, GLG 1 or ZOO 1.

**Course description:** ENV 201 provides the conceptual foundation for all other courses in Environmental Science, and covers the following topics: integrated perspectives on environmental issues; ecosystem services and human well-being; characteristics of complex adaptive social-ecological systems; introduction to inter/transdisciplinary and local ecological knowledge; ecosystem services and human well-being; complexity; social-ecological systems; planetary boundaries and sustainability; social systems; economic valuation of natural resources; ecological systems. Practicals: interaction between social, economic and ecological components of the environment. Students will be required to undertake compulsory field site visits during one weekend as part of their practicals.

**DP requirements:** The following DP requirements are applied within the Department of Environmental Science. (1) Attend all practicals

and 80% of the lectures; (2) hand in all assignments for marking on the due date. Any assignments handed in late without prior permission from the lecturer concerned will be penalised by a deduction of 5% per day or part thereof; and (3) a sub-minimum of 40% in the class mark. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester course.

**Assessment:** Class record 64%, Examinations 36%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with ENV 202 but cannot proceed to ENV 3 without passing both ENV 201 and ENV 202

Class attendance: at least 80%

### **ENV 202 (Global Environmental Challenges and Policies)**

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% ENV 201

**Course description:** The ENV 202 course is designed to cover a selection of current major global issues and challenges in environmental science. The purpose of the course is to apply interdisciplinary skills, systems approaches and perspectives to analyse and understand environmental issues and policies of global and local concern. Critical analysis and consideration of counter-viewpoints, from a systems perspective, is central. This will be done at different spatial and temporal scales. The skills covered in Environmental Science 201 are particularly relevant, especially those relating to systems analysis, team work, and interdisciplinarity as well as rigorous and in-depth critical analysis and thinking. Practicals: a variety of different classroom and field exercises pertaining to the issues covered in lectures.

**DP requirements:** The following DP requirements are applied within the Department of Environmental Science. (1) Attend all practicals and 80% of the lectures; (2) hand in all assignments for marking on the due date. Any assignments handed in late without prior permission from the lecturer concerned will be penalised by a deduction

of 5% per day or part thereof; and (3) a sub-minimum of 40% in the class mark. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examination. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester course.

**Assessment:** Class record 64%, Examinations 36%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with ENV 201

Class attendance: at least 80%

### **THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE**

There are two third-year level courses in Environmental Science. ENV 301 is normally taught in the first semester and ENV 302 in the second semester. Credit for each course can be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course ENV 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required 40% sub-minimum in both components (i.e. the class mark and exam mark) and obtains DP. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. Students will be required to plan, execute and write up a mini-research project starting in the first term and spanning the whole academic year.

There is one compulsory weekend field trip during the first semester. Environmental Science 2 (ENV 201 and ENV 202) is required before a student may register for ENV 301 or ENV 302. Concurrent registration is not allowed for second-year and third-year courses in Environmental Science. In addition, candidates must have satisfied the prerequisites for ENV 201 and ENV 202.

#### **ENV 301 (Integrated environmental management for sustainability)**

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: ENV 2 (both ENV 201 and ENV 202)

**Course description:** This course focuses on sustainable natural resource management in practice. The aim is to develop applied professional skills, coupled with rigorous analysis, to promote more effective environmental thinking and management. The emphasis is on conceptual frameworks to evaluate, understand and study environmental impacts and resource use patterns. (Concepts include political ecology, integrated landscape management, adaptive management, participatory natural resource management, adaptive co-management, etc.). The course also focuses on environmental methods for collection, analysis and interpretation of data to support environmental management and decision-making. The aim is to develop applied professional skills, coupled with rigorous analysis, to promote effective environmental management. Each topic is illustrated by up to date examples. Practicals: the practical application of the course will be incorporated into the year-long mini- research project. Field visits may take place over a limited number of weekends.

**DP requirements:** The following DP requirements are applied within the Department of Environmental Science. (1) Attend all practicals and 80% of the lectures; (2) hand in all assignments for marking on the due date. Any assignments handed in late without prior permission from the lecturer concerned will be penalised by a deduction of 5% per day or part thereof; and (3) a sub-minimum of 40% in the course mark. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examination. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester course.

**Assessment:** Class record 64%, Examinations 36%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with ENV 302

Class attendance: at least 80%

### **ENV 302 (Environmental monitoring and monitoring systems)**

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% ENV 301

**Course description:** This course builds on the foundations laid in ENV 2 in terms of systems thinking, interdisciplinarity and the scientific analysis of environmental challenges and on the integrated management approaches covered in ENV 301. The focus is on the design and implementation of environmental monitoring systems appropriate at different spatial and temporal scales integrating across the biological, social and economic components of an environmental system. Examples will include industrial, terrestrial and aquatic systems and different types of monitoring approaches. The course also covers sustainability assessments, strategic environmental assessment, environmental management programme reports, ISO 14000 and environmental impact assessment. Practicals: the practical application of the course will be incorporated into the year-long mini-research project. Field visits may take place over a limited number of weekends.

**DP requirements:** The following DP requirements are applied within the Department of Environmental Science. (1) Attend all practicals and 80% of the lectures; (2) hand in all assignments for marking on the due date. Any assignments handed in late without prior permission from the lecturer concerned will be penalised by a deduction of 5% per day or part thereof; and (3) a sub-minimum of 40% in the year mark. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examination. A student obtaining less than 40% in the examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester course.

**Assessment:** Class record 64%, Examinations 36%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with ENV 301

Class attendance: at least 80%

### **ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE HONOURS**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** The Honours course in Environmental Science is designed as an interdisciplinary programme. It consists of four modules selected from a list of available options along with a short course in Statistics. Additionally,

candidates undertake an independent research project. The course may be done full-time over one academic year, or, rarely, part-time over two academic years with the agreement of the Head of Environmental Science. Tuition emphasis is on self-learning guided through lectures, tutorials, seminars and practical work. Students are encouraged to work in interdisciplinary teams and to address practical, “real life” issues in their projects and seminars. A limited number of students are selected annually on the basis of academic excellence, previous experience, and qualifications in environment-related fields, group diversity and staff availability. Candidates must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelor’s degree, majoring in at least one of the following: Anthropology, Botany, Economics, Environmental Science, Entomology, Geography, Geology, Ichthyology, Microbiology or Zoology. Preference will be given to applicants with undergraduate Environmental Science qualifications and/or with applicable practical experience. For internal (RU) applicants, adequate performance and participation in ENV 3 is necessary.

Students may be required to attend blocks of lectures and practicals before the official commencement of the first term (typically the last week of January or first week of February) and during vacations. This usually takes the form of a compulsory field trip of 5-10 days. Candidates should consult the Head of Department in this regard before registering for the course.

Students may consider registering for a joint course with other relevant departments.

**DP requirements:** (1) Sub-minimum of 40% for the research project; (2) attend the honours fieldtrip; and (3) attend 80% of all honours programme activities (seminars, classes, community engagement).

**Assessment:** Assessments comprise Foundation module tests, a year-long research project, including a written and verbal research proposal, a final research paper, a paper presentation, and a popular article. Students select three modules, weighted 12.5 % of their overall course value (see below for module descriptions). Module coordinators set assignments such as essays, tests, reports, and verbal presentations as assessment

tasks. All modules have exams, or assignments that replace exams, in the semesters they are offered.

Supplementary exam: None

## Modules

The Foundations course must be taken by all students. For the optional modules, candidates must select three from the list of available modules, with at least two Environmental Science modules. The list changes from year to year, and not all are available to part-time candidates. Some modules are offered by Departments collaborating with Environmental Science and candidates should discuss their options with the course-coordinator and Head of Department and, where applicable, with the staff member offering that module. Modules offered by Environmental Science may include: Land Degradation Neutrality; Biodiversity, Non-timber Forest Products and Rural Livelihoods; Environmental Modelling; Environmental Impact Assessment; Urban Forestry; Conservation and Livelihoods in Protected Areas; Urban Ecology; Food Security, Interdisciplinarity, Knowledge and Power and Restoration Ecology. The Geography department offers GIS for students who have completed GOG 3. The Institute for Water Research offers Environmental Water Quality. Modules offered by Economics Department: Environmental and Resource Economics. Additional suitable environmental related modules may be available in other departments at the time of registration, and prospective candidates should consult with the Head of Department and Honours Coordinator regarding the availability and choice of such modules. Students will also undertake a research project related to their selected courses.

## MASTER’S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits), MA (180 credits at NQF level 9) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc, MA and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. An Environmental Science Master’s degree is by dissertation. It has four distinguishing characteristics:

- the research and dissertation deal with integrative ecological, social and economic systems; it incorporates the concept of sustainability, e.g., sustainable use and management of the environment and sustainable consumption and living;
- it addresses issues affecting people's quality of life and their livelihoods;
- it is interdisciplinary, i.e. it is not confined to a single academic discipline, and is often linked to a broader programme with several related projects.

The following candidates are eligible to register:

- applicants in possession of an Honours degree in Environmental Science; if Rhodes University Honours graduates, adequate performance and participation in the Honours year is necessary;
- applicants with a good Honours degree in any other discipline which has covered either biological, physical, human or economic aspects of the environment;
- environmental practitioners with an appropriate Bachelor's degree in an environmental discipline, plus a minimum of two years relevant practical experience, at the discretion of the Head of Department and Senate;

- environmental practitioners without a Bachelor's degree, but with 5-10 years in-depth experience and proven achievements and skills in an environmental field, may be admitted as Ad Eundem Gradum students at the discretion of the Head of Department and Senate.

Students also have the option of attending appropriate undergraduate and Honours modules during their period of registration. Part-time students should aim to spend two to four months on campus at the early stage of registration and another two to four months during the final writing-up stage.

### **Master's in Business Administration - Environmental Electives**

The Rhodes MBA is designed to enable practising and potential managers to succeed in creating, developing and directing successful organizations in a competitive business environment. The Rhodes MBA is now able to offer business the opportunity to engage with the challenges of sustainable development and environmental management through its new electives programme. Details of the six environmental electives can be found under the Faculty of Commerce.

## FINE ART

### Head of Department and Associate Professor

M de Jager, BAFA, MAFA (Wits), PhD  
(Kingston, London)

### Professors

D Thorburn, BFA, MFA (Rhodes), TPP (New Mexico)

R Simbao, BFA (Stell), MWS, MPhil  
(Toronto), AM, PhD (Harvard)

### Associate Professor

S Fóláránmí, BA, MFA, MPhil, PhD (Ifè)

### Senior Lecturers

C Dixie, BAFA (Wits), MFA (UCT)

T Goniwe, MFA (UCT), MA, PhD (Cornell)

N Western, BAFA, MAFA (Wits)

### Lecturers

L Anguria, BAFA, MAFA, PhD (Wits)

M Khoza, BAFA, MAFA (Wits)

S Makandula, BFA (Rhodes), MFA (UCT)

R Munnick, BTech, MTech (NMU)

The Department of Fine Art, which is part of the Faculty of Humanities, provides comprehensive tuition in the practical, theoretical and historical aspects of the visual arts. Our courses ensure a solid grounding for those wanting to pursue careers as professional artists, but are equally valuable to those with an interest in arts education and a wide variety of creative industries - including arts administration, community arts, design, and curation. Most undergraduate students enrol for a BFA, a professional 4-year honours-equivalent degree. But our courses are also open to BA students, and students from other Faculties, who may benefit from the creative problem-solving, visual literacy, and/or practice-based research methodologies foregrounded in our course offerings.

Fine Art Practice courses are those in which students engage with art making, and the professional practice aspects of art making. Art History & Visual Culture courses do not involve the making of art but are studies in the theory and history of visual representations.

Bachelor of Fine Art students must major in both Fine Art Practice and Art History & Visual Culture and should thus enrol for Fine Art Practice and Art History & Visual Culture concurrently.

Non-BFA students may study Fine Art Practice without Art History & Visual Culture but can only take Fine Art Practice as a minor in this case (at a first-year level or to a second-year level). To major in Fine Art Practice, students must have a corresponding major in Art History & Visual Culture.

Non-BFA students may study Art History & Visual Culture independently without also studying Fine Art Practice - either as a major or for only one or two years.

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### FINE ART PRACTICE

#### Fine Art Practice 1A (FAP 1A)

First-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Applicants who have at least one art subject at Grade 12 level with 60%+ in this subject will be considered for admission to Fine Art Practice 1A on this basis. Applicants without a Grade 12 art subject, or with 59% and lower for this subject, will be required to submit an art portfolio and will be accepted at the discretion of the HoD. Bachelor of Fine Art students should take both FAP1A and FAP1B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 1 (AHV1) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP1A as a standalone credit, with or without FAP1B, and with or without AHV1.

**Course description:** Fine Art Practice 1A serves as an introduction to practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. The course comprises a series of directed projects, covering both 'traditional' and 'new' media.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (provisional assignment marks, interim portfolio review in midyear and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

**Supplementary exam:** None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

### **Fine Art Practice 1B (FAP1B)**

First-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Acceptance into FAP1A is a prerequisite for entry into FAP1B (see Entrance Requirements for FAP1A above). Bachelor of Fine Art students should take both FAP1A and FAP1B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 1 (AHV1) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP1A as a standalone credit, with or without FAP1B, and with or without AHV1. However, FAP1B cannot be taken as a standalone credit – it can only be taken concurrently with FAP1A.

**Course description:** Fine Art Practice 1B is an introduction to the professional practice aspects of art-making, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. It introduces students to a range of professional practice skills, including drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (provisional assignment marks, interim portfolio review in midyear and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

**Supplementary exam:** None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

### **Fine Art Practice 2A (FAP2A)**

Second-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** At least FAP1A. Bachelor of Fine Art students should take both FAP2A and FAP2B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 2 (AHV2) (see below). Non-BFA

students may take FAP2A as a minor credit, with or without FAP2B, and with or without AHV2.

**Course description:** Fine Art Practice 2A extends and develops students' practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. For the most part, the course follows an elective-based structure: students choose between two projects offered concurrently, thus testing and honing their preferences for working in particular media.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (provisional assignment marks, interim portfolio review in midyear and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

**Supplementary exam:** None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

### **Fine Art Practice 2B (FAP2B)**

Second-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** At least FAP1A; preferably FAP1A and FAP1B. Bachelor of Fine Art students should take both FAP2A and FAP2B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 2 (AHV2) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP2A as a minor credit, with or without FAP2B, and with or without AHV2. However, FAP2B cannot be taken as a standalone credit – it can only be taken concurrently with FAP2A.

**Course description:** Fine Art Practice 2B extends and develops students' professional practice skills, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. Projects enable students to hone their expertise in areas such as drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.



**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (provisional assignment marks, interim portfolio review in midyear and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

**Supplementary exam:** None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

### **Fine Art Practice 3 (FAP3)**

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** At least FAP2A; preferably FAP2A and FAP2B.

**Course description:** Fine Art Practice 3 enables students to work more concertedly in particular media, in the broadly defined media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. Students are also encouraged to work across media as this suits their purposes. The course aims to develop students' technical skills alongside their professional practice, and self-reflexivity as creative practitioners.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (interim portfolio review in midyear and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

**Supplementary exam:** None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

### **Fine Art Practice 4 (FAP4)**

Fourth-year, full-year course

(NQF level 8, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FAP3

**Course description:** Fine Art Practice 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Art History & Visual Culture 4 (AHV4). The course is largely self-directed, and lecturers facilitate and support students' development of a cohesive body of work, culminating in a solo exhibition.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods.

**Assessment:** A work-in-progress assessment in mid-year, and summative assessment at the end of the year.

**Supplementary exam:** None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

## **ART HISTORY & VISUAL CULTURE**

### **Art History & Visual Culture 101 (AHV101)**

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** None

**Course description:** Art History & Visual Culture 101 introduces the subject of 'art history and visual culture', developing practical skills in reading and looking as well as the politics of visibility and representation within a South African context.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 100%

**Supplementary assessment:** Final mark 40 – 49%  
The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### **Art History & Visual Culture 102 (AHV102)**

First-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Art History & Visual Culture** None.

**Course description:** Art History & Visual Culture 102 engages with the colonial realities of Western art history and the politics of representation while developing critical skills in the visual analysis of arts and visual culture.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 100%

**Supplementary assessment:** Final mark 40 – 49%. The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**Art History & Visual Culture 2 (AHV2)**

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** At least one of AHV101 and AHV102.

**Course description:** Art History & Visual Culture 2 examines the concept of authorship in artistic practice.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 100%

**Supplementary assessment:** Final mark 40 – 49%. The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40%

**Art History & Visual Culture 3 (AHV3)**

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** AHV2

**Course description:** The course focuses on the overall theme of “Art, Power and Society”, deconstructing various politics of display, discourse and visual languages at work in the field of visual arts and culture.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 100%

**Supplementary assessment:** Final mark 40 – 49%. The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40%

**Art History & Visual Culture 4 (AHV4)**

Fourth-year, full-year course

(NQF level 8, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** AHV3

**Course description:** Art History & Visual Culture 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Fine Art Practice 4. It comprises two research seminars and an independently researched long essay. The course aims to consolidate students’ critical, writing and

researching skills through a sustained research enquiry.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Coursework and continuous assessment counting 100%

**Supplementary assessment:** None. Opportunities for resubmission are intrinsic to the structure of the course

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40%

**POSTGRADUATE COURSES****Honours in Art History & Visual Culture**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed NQF level 7 degree, normally with Art History & Visual Culture (or similar) as a major.

**Course description:** This course comprises a series of papers, as well as an independently researched long essay (of approximately 10 000-15 000 words).

**Master’s Degree in Art History**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed NQF level 8 honours degree, or honours-equivalent degree, normally in Art History, Fine Art or similar.

**Course description:** Students write a thesis of up to 50 000 words on a topic within the broadly-defined field of Art History, approved by the Supervisor and the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. Examination is by thesis only. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity’s rules governing Master’s degrees by thesis apply.

**Master of Fine Art**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed NQF level 8 honours degree, or honours-equivalent degree, normally in Fine Art or similar.

**Option 1: Practice as Research**

**Course description:** The degree is by Practice as Research and mini-thesis. The candidate produces an exhibition or installation of original work as well as a mini thesis of 12 000 – 15 000 words positioning this artwork in relation to an existent body of work or theory. The two components form an integrated

submission. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Supervisor and the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. The completed mini thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least three days before the exhibition is submitted for examination. A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the exhibition and mini thesis is given to each candidate.

**Option 2: Curatorial Practice**

**Course description:** The degree is by Curatorial Practice and thesis and caters specifically for candidates looking to develop their capacities and understanding of professional curatorial practices. A candidate is required to curate an exhibition (rather than producing an exhibition of own work) in an established art museum or gallery and to develop a thesis of between 25 000 and 30 000 words exploring the curatorial theme, logistic approach, and exhibition strategy. The final mark for the degree comprises 50% for the exhibition and 50% for the thesis. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Supervisor and the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. The completed thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least two weeks before the exhibition is submitted for examination. A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the exhibition and thesis is given to each candidate.

**Doctoral Degree in Art History**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed NQF level 9 master's degree, normally in Art History or similar; plus recent writing samples. Students who have completed a MFA rather than a MA may qualify for entrance into the degree if they demonstrate strong abilities in relevant history and theory.

**Course description:** Students write a thesis on an approved topic within the broadly-defined field of Art History. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's Rules governing Doctoral Degrees apply.

**Doctoral Degree in Fine Art**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed NQF level 9 master's degree, in Fine Art/Visual Art or similar; plus a portfolio of recent work.

**Course description:** Students produce a body of creative practice and a thesis, conceptualised and developed as an integrated, practice-based research endeavour. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's Rules governing Doctoral Degrees apply.

Additional Faculty rules will be amended as follows:

**FINE ART****DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ART**

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Department of Fine Art only. Except as provided in General Rules

G.44 to G.48 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

**FIRST YEAR****Fine Art Practice 1A**

Fine Art Practice 1A serves as an introduction to practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. The course comprises a series of directed projects, covering both 'traditional' and 'new' media.

**Fine Art Practice 1B**

Fine Art Practice 1B is an introduction to the professional practice aspects of art-making, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. It introduces students to a range of professional practice skills, including drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

**Art History & Visual Culture 101**

Art History & Visual Culture 101 introduces the subject of 'art history and visual culture', developing practical skills in reading and looking as well as the politics of visibility and representation within a South African context.

**Art History & Visual Culture 102**

Art History & Visual Culture 102 engages with the colonial realities of Western Art History and the politics of representation while developing critical skills in the visual analysis of arts and visual culture.

**SECOND YEAR****Fine Art Practice 2A**

Fine Art Practice 2A extends and develops students' practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. For the most part, the course follows an elective-based structure: students choose between two projects offered concurrently, thus testing and honing their preferences for working in particular media.

**Fine Art Practice 2B**

Fine Art Practice 2B extends and develops students' professional practice skills, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. Projects enable students to hone their expertise in areas such as drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

**Art History & Visual Culture 2**

Art History & Visual Culture 2 examines the concept of authorship in artistic practice.

**THIRD YEAR****Fine Art Practice 3**

Fine Art Practice 3 enables students to work more concertedly in particular media, in the broadly defined media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. Students are also encouraged to work across media as this suits their purposes. The course aims to develop students' technical skills alongside their professional practice, and self-reflexivity as creative practitioners.

**Art History & Visual Culture 3**

The course focuses on the overall theme of "Art, Power and Society", deconstructing various politics of display, discourse and visual languages at work in the field of visual arts and culture.

**FOURTH YEAR****Fine Art Practice 4**

Fine Art Practice 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Art History & Visual Culture 4 (AHV4). The course is largely self-directed, and lecturers facilitate and support students' development of a cohesive body of work, culminating in a solo exhibition.

**Art History & Visual Culture 4**

Art History & Visual Culture 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Fine Art Practice 4. It comprises two research seminars and an independently researched long essay. The course aims to consolidate students' critical, writing and researching skills through a sustained research enquiry.

**FINE ART OPTIONS FOR DEGREES****OTHER THAN BFA**

NOTE: Non-BFA students may study Fine Art Practice without Art History & Visual Culture, but can only take Fine Art Practice as a minor in this case (at a first-year level or to a second-year level). To major in Fine Art Practice, students must have a corresponding major in Art History & Visual Culture. Non-BFA students may study Art History & Visual Culture independently without also studying Fine Art Practice - either as a major or for only one or two years.

\* Non-BFA students may take Fine Art Practice 1A, with or without Fine Art Practice 1B, and with or without Art History & Visual Culture. Non-BFA students may continue to Fine Art Practice 2A, with or without Fine Art Practice 2B, and with or without Art History & Visual Culture, but would not be able to proceed to Fine Art Practice 3 without a corresponding major in Art History & Visual Culture.

\* Non-BFA students may only major in Fine Art Practice if they also major in Art History & Visual Culture.

\* Non-BFA students may study Art History & Visual Culture without studying Fine Art Practice, either as a major or for one or two years.

# GEOGRAPHY

## Professor & Head of Department

I Meiklejohn, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD, HDE (Natal)

## Senior Lecturer

S Strydom, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UKZN)

## Lecturers

P Irvine, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

G McGregor, BA, BA (Hons), MSc (Rhodes)

S Memela, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (UKZN), PhD (Rhodes)

## Professors Emeritus

W Ellery, PhD (Wits)

R Fox, PhD (Strathclyde), PGDHE (Rhodes) C Lewis, BA (Wales), PhD (Ireland)

Prof J Daniel, MA (Cantab), PhD, UED (Natal)

K Rowntree, MSc (Bristol), PhD (Strathclyde)

## Visiting Professors

P Assmo, PhD (Göteborg)

J Boelhouwers, BSc (Utrecht), MSc (Natal), PhD (Western Cape)

I Foster, BScHons (London), PhD (Exeter)

K Hall, BScHons (Swansea), MPhil (Reading), PhD (Free State), DSc (UKZN)

T Kepe, B.Agric (Fort Hare), MSc (Guelph), PhD (Western Cape)

E Nel, BAHons (Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes), MA (Wits), PhD (Rhodes)

## Research Associates

B Cobbing, MSc (Rhodes)

J Heemstra, BA (Hobart

& William Smith Colleges), MA (Oxford Brookes)

D Pyle, PhD (Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes)

B van der Waal, BSc (North West), BSc (Hons) (Rhodes), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Geography (GOG) is a six-semester subject that may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn and BSocSc.

To major in Geography, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: EAR 101; GOG 102; GOG 201; GOG 202; GOG 301; and GOG 302. See Rule S.23. At the discretion of the Head of Department students may replace one third level

course with an acceptable alternative course deemed to be its equivalent.

EAR 101 and GOG 102 are prerequisites for students majoring in Environmental Science (ENV), details of which are given in a separate entry.

Students are expected to participate in Departmental excursions. Costs are kept as low as possible. Honours students are encouraged to attend the South African Student Geographical Conference, which is held at a different university each year. See the Departmental Web Page (<http://www.ru.ac.za/geography>) for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOGRAPHY

Geography 1 consists of two first-year semester courses, namely Earth Science 101 (jointly taught by the Geography and Geology Departments) and Geography 102 (Exploring Global Human Geographies), which are typically taught in the first and second semesters, respectively. Students who take both Geography 1 and Geology 1 will have to take an additional semester course in an appropriate subject during the first semester to ensure that they have enough NQF credits for their degree. Each semester course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course GOG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. However, students wishing to major in Geography must normally obtain both semester-courses components separately. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

These courses provide a sound foundation for the student majoring in Geography and for those only taking Geography for one year. Practical work, including fieldwork, and tutorials are integral to both courses that reinforce themes covered in lectures and ensure that academic and geographic literacy are developed within the curriculum. Students reading for an "Environmental Law" degree (i.e. with Environmental Science and Law

as majors) may complete EAR 101 and GOG 102 in their second year of study, as both these courses have timetable clashes with first-year Law modules.

At least 50% for Geography in the National Senior Certificate (or equivalent) is recommended for entry into Earth Science. Students may not register for Geography 102 unless they have met the subminimum requirements in both the Geography and Geology component of at least 50% in Geography in the National Senior Certificate (or equivalent).

Notwithstanding Regulation S.24.2, a supplementary examination will be permitted for the last semester course outstanding for the degree and for a course taken in the final calendar year of study provided that the student has previously written the examination for the course concerned. This is known as a Last Outstanding Semester Course (LOC), and applies only to a single semester course and not an entire year of study.

### EAR 101

First-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

**Entrance requirements:** Level 4 NSC Geography, or Maths, or Physical Science, or Biology.

**Course description:** Introduction to Earth Systems. This course introduces the processes that have shaped the Earth and its environment over both geological and recent time scales. The interrelationships between the Earth, the atmosphere, and living organisms form key themes through the course. EAR 101 comprises five lectures/tutorials, plus one three-hour practical per week.

**DP requirements:** Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with GOG 102 and 40% for each discipline (i.e. Geography and Geology)

### GOG 102

First-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% EAR 101 or over 50% for NSC Geography

**Course description:** Exploring Global Human Geographies. This course examines key concepts and understanding within Human Geography that serve as an introduction to the sub-discipline. Space and place are considered fundamental to understanding human societies and structures. Key themes include: modes of production and consumption; demography and migration; inequalities and development; globalisation; and exploration of urban and rural spaces within historical, political, economic, social and spatial contexts. GOG 102 comprises five lectures/tutorials, plus one three-hour practical per week.

**DP requirements:** Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with EAR 101

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOGRAPHY

There are two independent second-year courses in Geography. GOG 201 is normally held in the first semester and GOG 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course GOG 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical work is an integral part of both courses and is related to the relevant lecture courses and the development of research techniques.

Both GOG 102 and EAR 101 are required before a student may register for GOG 201 or GOG 202. At the discretion of the Head of Department, students who have an aggregated pass of at least 60% for GOG 1 (i.e. EAR 101 plus GOG 102) may be allowed to register for GOG 201 and

GOG 202.

### GOG 201

Second-year, first-semester course (20 credits at NQF level 6)

**Entrance requirements:** EAR 101 50% and GOG 101 50% (or GOG 1 60%)

**Course description:** Space and place in Southern Africa 1. This course examines the key processes that determine the physical and human geography of southern Africa. Concepts, theories and examples from other regions will be used where appropriate to help us understand the southern African experience. Contemporary issues such as environmental change and associated problems of human development will be examined. Selected human and physical geographical perspectives are used to understand the rural and urban landscapes. The complementary course for GOG 201 is GOG 202, and it comprises five lectures/tutorials, plus one three-hour practical per week.

**DP requirements:** Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with GOG 202

### GOG 202

Second-year, second-semester course (20 credits at NQF level 6)

**Entrance requirements:** EAR 101 50%, GOG 101 50% (or GOG 1 60%)

**Course description:** Space and place in Southern Africa 2. This course examines the key processes that determine the physical and human geography of southern Africa. Concepts, theories and examples from other regions will be used where appropriate to help us understand the southern African experience. Contemporary issues such as environmental change and associated problems of human development will be examined. Selected human and physical geographical perspectives are used to understand the rural and urban landscapes. The complementary course for GOG 202 is GOG 201, and it comprises five lectures/tutorials, plus one three-hour practical per week.

**DP requirements:** Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials,

assignments and practicals.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with GOG 201

## THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOGRAPHY

There are two independent third year courses in Geography. GOG 301 is offered in the second semester and GOG 302 in the first semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course GOG 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Normally, both GOG 201 and GOG 202 are required before a student may register for either or both of the third year semester courses GOG 301 and GOG302.

At the discretion of the Head of Department a student with only an aggregated year-course GOG 2 may be allowed to register for either or both of the semester courses GOG 301 and GOG 302.

### GOG 302

Third-year, first-semester course (30 credits at NQF level 7)

**Entrance requirements:** GOG 201 50% and GOG 202 50%

**Course description:** Applied Spatial Technologies in Geography. The aim of this course is to provide students with the theoretical background and related practical competencies in Geospatial thinking utilising Geographic Information Systems and Remote Sensing. The course comprises five lectures/tutorials/practical preparation sessions and a three-hour practical per week, while a compulsory field weekend may be a component of the course.

**DP requirements:** Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with GOG 301

### GOG 301

Third-year, second-semester course (30 credits at

NQF level 7)

**Entrance requirements:** GOG 201 50% and GOG 202 50%

**Course description:** African Geographical Studies.

In this course students will develop a critical understanding of Africa from a Geographical perspective through topics that relate to the Continent's complex social, built and physical environments, environmental processes, resources, as well as social, cultural, economic, and political systems. The specific content of the course will depend on the research and teaching interests of the academic staff who are available at the time and will vary from year to year. The course comprises five lectures/tutorials and a three-hour practical per week, while a compulsory field weekend may be a component of the course.

**DP requirements:** Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with GOG 302

## HONOURS DEGREES

The Department offers BScHons, BAHons or a BSocScHons degree in Geography and Environmental Water Management, depending on undergraduate qualifications and curricula. Humanities students are reminded of the alternative route to Honours. See Rules H.25(3) and H.25(4).

Each Honours degree is a year-long course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Students are required to read four modules, submit a research project proposal, a research project, and present at least two seminars during the year. To pass the Honours degree, a candidate must achieve a pass (i.e. a minimum of 50%) for all four courses and their research project. At the start of the academic year, all students will have to attend an orientation programme, which may include a compulsory field trip. Other field trips, which may be scheduled during a vacation, are also compulsory for several individual Honours modules and students will normally be expected to attend the annual Geography Students Conference.

For all programmes, the modules offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints. Other appropriate modules may be taken if approved by the Head of Department. Entry into any module will be dependent on being able to provide evidence of appropriate prior knowledge to the Head of Department.

Part of the Honours degrees may be taken in conjunction with modules in other departments. Where approximately 50% of a student's courses are examined in another department, a joint degree is awarded (for example, Honours in Geography/ Environmental Science). Any combined degree must be agreed to by both Heads of Department concerned.

## HONOURS IN GEOGRAPHY

Students are required to take a core, integrative, module (Research Philosophy and Methodology), and select three other courses from those offered by the staff of the Department, Visiting Professors, Visiting Lecturers and Research Associates. Our courses reflect the interests of the staff members and normally include a selection from the following: Extended GIS (Geographical Information Systems); GIS Internship; Integrated Catchment Management; Catchment Systems; Wetland Ecology and Management; Climate Change and Extreme Events; Critical Urban Geographies; Geography and Spatial Planning; Political Ecology; Hydrology; Environmental Water Quality; Freshwater Ecology; and Earth Observation in a Changing World. Course selection depends on the prerequisite knowledge and experience in the respective field at the undergraduate level. Specific specialisations in Geography may be taken (if the personnel and teaching programme allows it) in Landscape Processes and Management, or Spatial Development, where their curricula will be tailored by the course coordinator.

## HONOURS IN ENVIRONMENTAL WATER MANAGEMENT

Candidates must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelor's degree, normally majoring in at least one of Geography, Environmental Science or



Hydrology. Other candidates with appropriate professional experience in water resource management may be considered. This degree aims to equip students with the conceptual understanding and practical knowledge that are needed to make an effective contribution to the sustainable management of catchment systems and their associated water resources. Students are required to take a core, integrative course (Research Philosophy and Methodology) and the course Water Resources Management. Students must also select two other courses. Recommended elective courses include Catchment Systems; Wetland Ecology and Management; Climate Change and Extreme Events; Environmental Water Quality; Hydrology; Freshwater Ecology; Extended GIS (Geographical Information Systems); Earth Observation in a Changing World; or other appropriate courses approved by the Course Coordinator. Course selection depends on the prerequisite knowledge and experience in respective field at the undergraduate level and the research project must be related to Environmental Water Management and approved by the Course Coordinator.

**Entrance requirements:** 65% average for final year undergraduate studies, with a major in Geography or an equivalent subject (with 65% average). Entry into the GIS and Earth Observation modules requires a pass of 65% for GOG 302 (or an equivalent).

**DP requirements:** 100% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments, practicals and Departmental academic activities; involvement in demonstrating and tutoring in the Department undergraduate programme.

**Subminimum for Coursework and Exams:** 45% in each course.

## **INTERDISCIPLINARY HONOURS DEGREES**

The Geography Department offers courses as components of various interdisciplinary honours programmes (see Interdepartmental Studies in this Calendar) including Development Studies and Industrial Society. Students should consult the Head of Department concerning available courses.

## **MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc, MA, MSocSc (each is 180 credits at NQF level 9) and PhD (360 credits at NQF level 10), under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

# GEOLOGY

## Professor & Head of Department

SA Prevec, MSc (McMaster) PhD (Alberta)  
PGDHE (Rhodes)

## Associate Professor

SH Büttner, MSc (TU Darmstadt) PhD (Goethe Univ.  
Frankfurt) PGDHE (Rhodes Univ.)

## Senior Lecturer

E Grosch, PhD (UCT)

## Lecturer

S Mavuso MSc (Wits)

**Professors Emeritus** RE Harmer, PhD (UCT)

RE Jacob PhD (UCT)

JS Marsh, PhD (UCT)

## Research Associates

AE Moore, PhD (UCT)

R Gess, PhD (Wits)

N McLoughlin, PhD (Oxon)

RN Scoon, PhD (Rhodes)

Geology (GLG) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn and BEcon (Mineral Economics).

Geology is a recommended co-major with other Science majors such as Chemistry, Physics, one of the Mathematical Sciences, Life Sciences, Geography, and Environmental Science. A BSc in Geology and Economics is also offered. To major in Geology, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: GLG 1 (comprising EAR 101 and GLG 102); GLG 2; GLG 3. CHE 101 is also required and at least one other appropriate first year semester course chosen from amongst those offered in the departments of Chemistry, Mathematics or Physics. Students are strongly advised to include additional courses in these subjects in their curriculum. Two, or in some cases four, semester-courses in Geology are allowed for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Fieldwork is a necessary part of Geology courses and a field course fee is payable annually for GLG 2 and GLG 3 and per semester for GLG 102.

For further details see the Departmental web page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/geology/>, particularly on the contents of courses.

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOLOGY

Geology 1 consists of two first-year courses, namely Earth Science 101 (jointly taught by the Geology and Geography departments) and Geology 102 which are taught normally in the first and second semesters respectively. Students who take both Geography 1 and Geology 1 will have to take an additional semester course in an appropriate subject during the first semester to ensure that they have enough NQF credits for their degree. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course GLG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

Earth Science 101 (EAR 101) is taught jointly by the Departments of Geology and Geography, and focuses on the topic: "Introduction to Earth Systems". This course introduces the processes that have shaped the Earth and its environment over both geological and recent time scales. The interrelationships between the Earth, the atmosphere and living organisms forms a key theme through the course. No prior background in geology or geography is required.

EAR 101 is a suitable semester-course for non-Science majors. Students may not register for GLG 102 unless they have obtained at least 40% or greater in EAR 101, and have met the subminimum requirements in both the EAR 101 theory and practical papers. The GLG 1 credit is required before a student can proceed to any second-year course in Geology.

## EAR 101

This is a first-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits) jointly taught by the Departments of Geography and Geology.

See specific details in the Department of Geography.

**GLG 102**

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** EAR 101 40% or better.

**Course description:** GLG 102 provides a more detailed introduction to the basic principles of geology and to the geology of South Africa. Practical work focuses on the recognition and interpretation of geological maps. Short (one-day) local field excursions are also conducted.

**DP requirements:** Appropriate class attendance and submission of all assessed work (e.g. practical reports, tests). A class mark minimum of 40%.

**Assessment weighting:** Class record 50%, Examinations 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** An overall course mark (class record + exam) of 40-49% is required to qualify for a supplementary exam, with a minimum class record mark of 50% and a clean class record in terms of DP warnings required. If aggregation with EAR 101 is possible, the supplementary exams fall away.

**Subminimum for aggregation (ACR GLG 1):** at least 40% in GLG 102 and in EAR 101.

## **SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOLOGY**

There are two second-year courses in Geology: GLG 201 held in the first semester and GLG 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course GLG 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports may contribute to the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

The GLG 1 credit is required before a student may register for GLG 2 courses. Attendance in GLG201 and a valid DP certificate are required for a student to register for GLG 202. Credits in CHE 101 and at least one other appropriate first year semester course in Chemistry, Mathematics or Physics are required. Permission may be granted to repeat these courses concurrently with GLG 201 and GLG 202.

**GLG 201 and 202**

Second-year, first and second-semester courses (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** For GLG 201: GLG 1 credit and attendance of CHE 101. For GLG 202: adequate performance (i.e. a valid DP certificate) in GLG 201 required.

**Course descriptions:** These courses consist of lectures and associated practical work through introductory courses in mineralogy, geochemistry and petrology (igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic), as well as in structural geology, palaeontology, and hydrogeology. The course includes a compulsory field course in appropriate mapping and stratigraphic techniques.

**DP requirements:** Appropriate class attendance and submission of all assessed work (e.g. practical reports, tests). A class mark minimum of 40% in each semester.

**Assessment weighting:** Class record 50%, Examinations 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** An overall course mark (class record + exam) of 40-49% is required to qualify for a supplementary exam, with a minimum class record mark of 50% and a clean class record in terms of DP warnings required. If aggregation to obtain the GLG 2 credit is possible, the supplementary exams fall away.

**Subminimum for aggregation:** at least 40% in each semester course for aggregation to obtain an ACR GLG 2.

## **THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOLOGY**

There are two third-year courses in Geology. GLG 301 is held in the first semester and GLG 302 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course GLG 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports may contribute to the class mark, which forms part of the semester mark.

**Entrance requirements:** A student may not register for GLG 301 before (a) first obtaining at least one second-year semester credit in Geology and having adequately performed in the other (ie a valid DP certificate); (b) first obtaining credit in the

compulsory ancillary first year courses in Chemistry, Physics or Mathematics.

### GLG 301 and 302

Third-year, first and second-semester courses (NQF level 7, 30 credits).

**Course descriptions:** These courses include advanced-level modules in igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic petrology, structural geology and palaeontology, which follow on from the introductory courses in GLG 2. In addition, courses in economic geology (the geology of ore deposits) and stable isotope geochemistry may be offered. A field course normally held in the September term break.

**DP requirements:** Appropriate class attendance and submission of all assessed work (e.g. practical reports, tests). A class mark minimum of 40% in each semester.

**Assessment weighting:** Class record 50%, Examinations 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** An overall course mark (class record + exam) of 40-49% is required to qualify for a supplementary exam, with a minimum class record mark of 50% and a clean class record in terms of DP warnings required. If aggregation to obtain the GLG 3 credit is possible, the supplementary exams fall away.

**Subminimum for aggregation:** at least 40% in each semester course for aggregation to obtain an ACR GLG 3.

### GEOLOGY HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** The Honours course comprises a theoretical component (lectures, tutorials, seminars, essays) with related practical work, a field school and a research project. Depending on staff availability the topics covered in the course may be drawn from a selection of the following: research and analytical techniques, geochemistry, mineralogy, igneous petrology, metamorphic petrology, sedimentology, basin analysis, structural geology, palaeontology, Earth history, geotectonics, ore-forming processes, geohydrology, and exploration techniques.

Honours students should consult with appropriate members of staff for guidance regarding the research project and are encouraged to formulate their own projects. The results of the research project are submitted in the form of a comprehensive report.

**DP requirements:** Appropriate class attendance and submission of all assessed work (e.g. practical reports, tests, project report). Adequate engagement with the research project.

**Assessment weighting:** Class record 35%, research project 35%, examinations 30%.

**Supplementary exam:** None.

### MSC AND PHD DEGREES

The Department pursues an active programme of research into a wide range of problems in Earth Science, leading to the award of the MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) or PhD degree (NQF level 10, 360 credits). Students with Honours degrees are encouraged to participate in these research programmes and prepare theses on their research work.

In addition, the department usually offers a professionally oriented postgraduate programme leading to the award of Master's degrees in Exploration Geology or Economic Geology, through part time coursework and thesis. These degrees are currently not offered.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Prospective candidates may request further details on any of these programmes from the HoD. A detailed booklet on postgraduate courses is available on request.

### MSc in Exploration Geology (currently suspended)

(NQF level 9, 120 credits)

This advanced course is open to candidates holding the BSc (Hons) degree, or equivalent four-year degree. Three years' relevant professional experience is an additional requirement. In exceptional cases only, applications may be considered from candidates who hold a good BSc degree and have at least five years' relevant work

experience.

The course is designed to cover the most important theoretical and practical aspects of the exploration for, and evaluation of, mineral resources. Instruction is through the medium of lectures, seminars, directed reading, assignments and practical work led by the staff of the Department supported by inputs from experts drawn from industry and other universities. Field-work visits to areas of economic mineralization, and report writing, form integral parts of the course.

The course is offered on a part-time basis only. Coursework is divided into 4 modules presented over 2 years: 2 devoted to the characteristics, origin and distribution of the major ore deposit types and the appropriate exploration methods for discovery and development; the remaining 2 are devoted to exploration techniques, resource assessment, mineral economics and project evaluation. The ore deposit modules have an associated field exercise of two weeks. The ore deposit module is offered in the early part of the year (usually February-April); the techniques module in the third quarter (usually August).

Requirements for the award of the degree include the completion of four coursework modules, and the submission of a dissertation on a topic selected in consultation with the course Director. Coursework is evaluated based on written assignments, reports and verbal presentations throughout the course. Award of the degree requires an aggregate mark of at least 50% on all assessed components.

### **MSc in Economic Geology (currently suspended)**

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

This course is designed for graduates holding the qualification of BSc (Hons) or equivalent and lays greater emphasis upon a research thesis than the degree in Exploration Geology. Previous professional experience is preferred but not a pre-requisite for admission. The requirements for the degree are the completion of two of the modules offered for the MSc Exploration Geology, and the submission of a thesis based on original field or laboratory work on economic geology.

# HISTORY

## Head of Department and Associate Professor

A Kirkaldy, BSocSci, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA, PhD (UCT)

## Associate Professor

E Msindo, BA (UZ), MPhil, PhD (Cantab), (Dean of Humanities)

## Senior Lecturers

T Madimu, BA, BA (Hons), MA (UZ), PhD (Stell)

J Thumbran, BEd, BHCS (Hons) (UP), MA (Tilburg), PhD (Minnesota)

## Lecturer

CJ Paterson, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

History is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree in the Faculty of Humanities. The department offers a set of semester courses. A student majoring in History is normally expected to obtain 30 credits in History courses for the first and second-year levels of study and 60 in the third year, but in some instances that requirement can be waived (see below for specific rules).

Course codes: The digit indicates the year or level of study.

## General rules

- a) At every level, marks for semester courses are aggregated. Students achieving an aggregate of 50% will be deemed to have passed every course at that level except that at third-year level students who either fail more than one course or obtain a mark of less than 40% in a course will not be granted an overall pass.
- b) All final examinations are written at the end of the semester in which the course is offered (i.e. June or November).
- c) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for second-level courses in History, without having taken either of the first-level courses, or they may register for third-level courses without having taken any first or second-level courses.
- d) In some instances, with the permission of the two heads of department concerned, a student majoring in History may be allowed

to take a course in another department as part of the History major. This course must be in a history-related field.

- e) At all undergraduate levels of study where sit-down examinations are written, the subminimum coursework mark for admission into the examination is 40%. Students who obtain a final mark of 50% or above for the combined coursework and exam will be deemed to have passed the course.

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### History 101 (HIS101)

#### **Africa and the making of the World 1: From the earliest times to c. 1900**

First-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A university entrance pass or equivalent.

**Course description:** Varies from year to year, see course handbook.

**DP requirements:** See course handbook.

**Assessment:** A combination of summative and continuous assessment finalized in June for History 101, see our course handbook.

**Supplementary exams for History 101 where sit-down exams are written:** Final mark 40 - 49%

There are no supplementary exams for History 101 where assessment is by continuous assessment only.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### History 102 (HIS 102)

#### **Africa and the making of the Modern World 2: From Colonisation to Independence**

First-year, second-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A university entrance pass or equivalent.

**Course description:** Varies from year to year, see course handbook.

**DP requirements:** See course handbook.

**Assessment:** A combination of summative and continuous assessment finalized in November for History 102, see our course handbook.

**Supplementary exams for History 102 where sit-down exams are written:** Final mark 40 - 49%

There are no supplementary exams for History 102 where assessment is by continuous assessment only.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

- a) Students who fail either History 101 or History 102 but achieve an overall aggregate of 50% or more in both courses, will be deemed to have passed both courses.
- b) Students may register for History 102 at the beginning of the second semester, without having taken History 101. Should they wish to major in History, they will be required to pass History 101 before proceeding to History 201.

**History 201 (HIS 201)****Twentieth Century World History**

Second-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Course description:** Varies from year to year, see course handbook.

**DP requirements:** See course handbook.

**Assessment:** A combination of summative and continuous assessment for History 201, see our course handbook.

**Supplementary exams for History 201 where sit-down exams are written:** Final mark 40 - 49%

There are no supplementary exams for History 201 where assessment is by continuous assessment only.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%**History 202 (HIS 202)****Themes in Southern African History**

Second-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Course description:** Varies from year to year, see course handbook.

**DP requirements:** See course handbook.

**Assessment:** A combination of summative and continuous assessment for History 202, see our course handbook.

**Supplementary exams for History 202 where sit-down exams are written:** Final mark 40 - 49%

There are no supplementary exams for History 202 where assessment is by continuous assessment only.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

- a) Students intending to major in History must have passed History 101 and 102 (individually or on aggregate) in order to enter History 201 or History 202.
- b) Students who fail History 201 may register for History 202 but will need to pass both courses before being admitted to third year History courses.
- c) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for History 201 and/or History 202 without having previously taken either first-level courses in History.

**History 3**

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Students normally read for two term courses in each semester, giving a total of 30 credits at NQF level 7 for each semester, or 60 credits for the year. The Department cannot guarantee that all these options will be available in a particular academic year.

**History 301:** The Making of Modern South Africa  
Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 302:** Gender in southern African history  
Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 304:** Popular Culture, Politics and Protest  
Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 305:** History of modern South Asia  
Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 306:** Africa in crisis  
Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 307:** US imperialism in the modern world  
Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 309:** History of African intellectuality  
Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 310:** Introduction to Public History  
Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 311:** South African Environmental History  
Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 312:** Themes in Zimbabwean History

Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 313:** Contested Pasts: History and Memory

Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 318:**

A specialised course which may be offered in any field depending on student demand and/or the interests of staff members or visiting lecturers.

Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 319:** The University in South Africa: Past and Present

Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 320:** The History of the Corporation in South Africa

Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

**History 321-3:** Africa and its Maritime Worlds

Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

- a) Majoring students who have failed either History 201 or History 202 and have not achieved an aggregate pass will not be admitted to third-level courses until they have passed both second-level courses.
- b) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the Head of Department, register for one or more third-level courses without any History prerequisites.

**Course description:** Varies from year to year, see course handbook.

**DP requirements:** See course handbook.

**Assessment:** A combination of summative and continuous assessment finalised in June for the two courses presented in the first semester and November for the two second semester courses - see our course handbook.

**Supplementary exams for History 3 courses**

**where sit-down exams are written:** Final mark 40 – 49%

There are no supplementary exams for History 3 courses where assessment is by continuous assessment only.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**POSTGRADUATE COURSES****Honours Degree**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Students may read for Honours in either History or as part of a combined Honours degree in History and one other subject (see Rule H.24) or under one other programme. The course is normally entered in the fourth year of study, unless the student opts, with the permission of the Head of Department, to begin the course in the third year in terms of the alternative route (see Rule H.25.3).

**Course description:** Students will normally write three papers and a research essay. The three (or four) papers will be written on topics chosen from a range of courses offered by the department. These courses may vary from year to year according to the particular interests of staff and students. The research essay should be a maximum of 15 000 words in length (excluding end matter).

**Master's Degree**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A recognised Honours qualification in History or in a field which the Department feels will enable the student to cope with the demands of a Master's degree in History. Under special circumstances, *ad eundem gradum* applications may be considered.

**Course description:** Either a written full thesis or a Master's by coursework and a thesis. Master's by coursework and thesis will only be offered at the discretion of the Department. Students who wish to write a thesis should note that their research topics must be approved in advance by the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. Students will work under the supervision of a member of the staff of the Department of History. A student may select a co-supervisor from another department or faculty at the discretion of the Head of Department. The choice of subject or research is not restricted to those based on archival research.

Students who wish to take the Master's degree by coursework and thesis will offer the following:

- a) Three topics for advanced individual study to be selected from fields not previously studied for the Honours degree. These will



be selected by the candidate in consultation with the Head of the Department.

- b) A research thesis in a cognate field. Candidates must complete and present their thesis within six months of the completion of the written papers.

**Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A recognised Master's degree in History or in a field which the Department feels will enable the student to successfully undertake the writing of a PhD thesis in History

**Course description:** A written thesis under the supervision of a member of the staff of the Department of History. A student may select a co-supervisor from another department or faculty at the discretion of the Head of Department.

# HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS

## Head of Department and Senior Lecturer

S Wells, MSc (Dipl.-Ing.) (Berlin), PhD (Dr.-Ing.) (Berlin)

## Associate Professor

CJ Christie, BA (HMS)(UPE), BSc (Med)(Hons) (UCT), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

## Senior Lecturer

AI Todd, BA, BA Hons, MSc (Rhodes)

JP Davy, BA, BA Hons, MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

## Lecturer

MC Mattison, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc (Rhodes)

Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn and BA. HKE as a major is designed to provide students with an interdisciplinary academic approach to the analysis of performance and human health, in sport, at work and any other domains of life.

Each year (HKE 1, HKE 2, and HKE 3) comprises of modules from the bio-physical domain, the physiological domain, and the cognitive domain; as well as a module that focuses on the integration and application of the three domains. The subject aims at equipping students with an understanding of human responses to the environment they are interacting with. The professional aspects of the programme prepare students for careers or further education in diverse fields including Ergonomics, Sports Science, general health and rehabilitation.

To major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: HKE 1; HKE 2; HKE 3. See Rule S.23.

Notwithstanding Regulation S.24.2, a supplementary examination will be permitted for the last semester course outstanding for the degree and for a course taken in the final calendar year of study provided that the student has previously written the examination for the course concerned. This is known as a Last Outstanding Semester Course (LOC), and applies only to a single semester course and not an entire year of study.

For further details see the departmental web page <http://www.ru.ac.za/humankineticsandergonomics/>, particularly on the content of courses.

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS

HKE 1 is comprised of two first-year courses: HKE 101 is held in the first semester, and HKE 102 in the second semester. A sub-minimum mark of 40% is required to progress from HKE 101 to HKE 102. An aggregate mark for the two semester-courses of at least 50% allows the candidate to obtain the year-course HKE 1, provided the candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. HKE 1 is required before a student may register for HKE 2. A wide variety of tutorials and practicals, during which human responses to varying environmental demands are evaluated, complement the theoretical basis of all these courses. Supplementary examinations are offered in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

### HKE 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** Introduction and application: introduction to Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, the departmental philosophy and how it applies to the study of humans in the context of sport, work and activities of daily living, biophysical domain: basic introduction to the biophysical domain, physiological domain: cardiovascular and respiratory physiology

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance of tests and laboratories, minimum 75% tutorial attendance, 100% submission of all assignments, at least 40% of class record for admission to the examination.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with HKE 102

**HKE 102**

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Minimum of 40% for HKE 101

**Course description:** Biophysical domain: functional anatomy of the upper extremities, cognitive domain: sensory perception, integration and application

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance of tests and laboratories, minimum 75% tutorial attendance, 100% submission of all assignments, at least 40% of class record for admission to the examination.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with HKE 101

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS

HKE 2 is comprised of two second-year courses: HKE 201 is held in the first semester, and HKE 202 in the second semester. HKE 1 is required before registering for HKE 2. A sub-minimum mark of 40% is required to progress from HKE 201 to HKE 202. An aggregate mark for the two semester-courses of at least 50% allows the candidate to obtain the year-course HKE 2, provided the candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. HKE 2 is required before a student may register for HKE 3. Participation in a wide variety of laboratory experiences, as well as tutorials form part of all modules of both HKE 2 courses.

**HKE 201**

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** HKE 1

**Course description:** Integration and application; cognitive domain: human information processing; biophysical domain: functional anatomy of the lower extremities, linear kinetics and kinematics of human movement.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance of tests and laboratories, minimum 75% tutorial attendance, 100% submission of all assignments, at least 40% of class record for admission to the examination.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with HKE 202

**HKE 202**

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** minimum of 40% for HKE 201

**Course description:** Physiological domain: neuromuscular physiology, cognitive domain: attention and situational awareness; integration and application.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance of tests and laboratories, minimum 75% tutorial attendance, 100% submission of all assignments, at least 40% of class record for admission to the examination.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with HKE 201

## THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS

HKE 3 is comprised of two third-year courses: HKE 301 is held in the first semester, and HKE 302 in the second semester. HKE 2 is required before registering for HKE 3. A sub-minimum mark of 40% is required to progress from HKE 301 to HKE 302. An aggregate mark for the two semester-courses of at least 50% allows the candidate to obtain the year-course HKE 3, provided the candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. HKE 3 is required before a student may register for postgraduate (honours) studies in HKE. Participation in a wide variety of laboratory experiences forms part of all modules of both HKE 3 courses.

**HKE 301**

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** HKE 2

**Course description:** This course includes perceptual motor control; exercise physiology; integration and application, and a semester project.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance of tests and laboratories, 100% submission of all assignments, at least 40% of class record for admission to the examination.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with HKE 302

### **HKE 302**

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% HKE 301

**Course description:** The HKE 302 course focuses on the functional anatomy of the trunk and spine, angular kinetics and kinematics of human movement; human error, endocrinology, integration and application, and a semester project.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance of tests and laboratories, 100% submission of all assignments

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60% at least 40% of class record for admission to the examination.

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with HKE 302

### **HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS HONOURS**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** This one-year postgraduate course comprises a seminar block and a research project, complemented by field trips, research

seminars and exposition to advanced research. The seminar modules cover the whole range of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics subjects with consideration of theoretical and applied aspects. Modules offered include: Research methods, advanced physiology, ergonomics assessment and systems, advanced biomechanics and chronobiology. The research project is undertaken by the student in consultation with a supervising staff member, to add depth in an area of particular interest. These areas may include physical and mental performance, human responses and human behaviour to different types of tasks (incl. sport activities and lifestyle), as well as environmental influences. Scientific rigour, linked with application skills, is emphasised throughout the course.

**DP requirements:** 100% submission of all assignments

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Project 40%, November examinations 30%

**Supplementary exam:** None

### **MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to pursue research degrees at the MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) level. These involve preparation of a thesis under the supervision of a member of staff of the Department.

Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

# ICHTHYOLOGY AND FISHERIES SCIENCE

## Associate Professor and Head of Department

CLW Jones, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

## Professors

AJ Booth, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes),

H Kaiser, Dr. agr. (Bonn)

WM Potts, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

WHH Sauer, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UPE)

## Associate Professors

A-R Childs, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

WT Kadye, BSc, BSc (Hons), MPhil (Uni of Zim), PhD (Rhodes)

## Emeritus Professors

PJ Britz, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UCT), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

T Hecht, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UPE)

## Visiting Professors

K Cochrane, PhD (Wits)

N James, PhD (Rhodes)

B Mann, PhD (UKZN)

N Vine, PhD (Rhodes)

S Aswani, PhD (Hawaii)

P Cowley, PhD (Rhodes)

MR Lipinski DSc (Lodz)

M Roberts, PhD (UCT)

P Shaw, PhD (Swansea)

D Vousden, PhD (Bangor)

A Whitfield, DSc (Rhodes)

## Visiting Fellows

A Arkhipkin, PhD (Moscow)

J Augustyn, PhD (UPE)

## Senior Research Associates

R Bennett, PhD (Rhodes)

A Chakona, PhD (Rhodes)

M Duncan, PhD (Rhodes)

G Hofmeyr, PhD (UP)

J Lang-Mann, PhD (Queensland)

J Pegg, PhD (Bournemouth)

B Macey, PhD (UCT)

## Research Associates

T Andrew, PhD (Rhodes)

A Cockroft, PhD (UPE)

C Elston, PhD (Rhodes)

M Farthing, PhD (Rhodes)

E Gennari, PhD (Rhodes)

D Huchzermeyer, PhD (UP)

M Naylor, MSc (Rhodes)

T Murray, PhD (Rhodes)

G. Paulet, MSc (Rhodes)

T Shipton, PhD (Rhodes)

K Smith, MSc (Rhodes)

R Taylor, PhD (Rhodes)

M Smale, PhD (Rhodes)

K van der Walt, PhD (Rhodes)

A Winkler, PhD (Rhodes)

The Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science is a leading African academic institution supporting the sustainable utilisation and study of fishes, fisheries management, aquaculture and aquatic resource utilisation through teaching and training of students, community engagement, professional service provision and conducting research. It is recognised by the African Union as a *Centre of Excellence* for training in marine fisheries and aquaculture.

At the undergraduate level the Department offers a four-semester major in Ichthyology (ICH), which may be taken as a major subject for the BSc, BA and BJourn degrees.

At the postgraduate level the following degrees are offered: BSc Honours in Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Master of Science and Doctor of Philosophy in either Ichthyology or Fisheries Science. Masters and Doctoral degrees are by research only through the preparation of a thesis.

Detailed information on course work and curricula may be obtained from the Head of Department.

For further details See the departmental web page <http://www.ru.ac.za/ichthyology>, particularly on the contents of courses.

To major in Ichthyology, a candidate is required to pass the following courses: CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; ICH 201; ICH 202; ICH 301; ICH 302; CHE 1. Both ICH 201 and ICH 202 are required before a student may register for ICH 301.

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN ICHTHYOLOGY

There are two semester-long second-year courses in Ichthyology. ICH 201 is offered in the first semester and ICH 202 is offered in the second semester. Credit for each semester-course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course ICH 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Ichthyology must pass both ICH 201 and ICH 202. Adequate performance in ICH 201 is required before a student may register for ICH 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. An ecological fieldtrip is held jointly with the Departments of Entomology and of Botany, and all students are required to attend.

In addition to theme-centred topics, the ICH 2 course include theme-independent topics that include ecology, oceanography and evolution and systematics.

Cell Biology (CEL 101) and Zoology (ZOO 102) are required before a student may register for ICH 201 or ICH 202. CHE 1 and BOT 102 are required to major in Ichthyology. Students without CHE 1, CEL 101, ZOO 102 or BOT 102, but with appropriate alternative foundation degrees, for example EAR 101, GOG 102 or GLG 102, might be considered by exception, and at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

### ICH 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** CEL 101 and ZOO 102, or ZOO 1

**Co-requisites:** CHE 1, ZOO 102, BOT 102. Exceptions to these entrance requirements and co-requisites shall be considered, at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

**Course description:** The course is structured around the theme “fish form” and is comprised of lectures, tutorials and practicals in fish diversity and habitats, anatomy, larval fishes, sensory systems and communication and fish behaviour. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Project 20%, Theory Examination 1: 25%, Theory Examination 2: 25%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% for aggregation with ICH 202

### ICH 202

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% ICH 201

**Co-requisites:** CHE 1, ZOO 102, BOT 102. Exceptions to this shall be considered, at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

**Course description:** The course is structured around the theme “fish function” and is comprised of lectures, tutorials and practicals on fish life history styles, ecology, reproduction, feeding biology, nutrition, age and growth, physiology and aquaculture. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Theory Examination 1: 35%, Theory Examination 2: 35%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with ICH 201

## THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN ICHTHYOLOGY

The ICH 301 and 302 semester courses cover the modules aquaculture, fisheries science, conservation, limnology, biodiversity of freshwater, estuarine and marine fishes, population ecology, applied fish genetics, experimental design and scientific writing. Credit may be obtained for

each semester-course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course ICH 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Adequate performance in ICH 301 is required before a student may register for ICH 302. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

### ICH 301

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: 50% ICH 201, 50% ICH 202

Co-requisites: CHE 1, ZOO 102, BOT 102. Exceptions to this shall be considered, at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

**Course description:** The course consists of modules of different durations, offered by way of lectures, tutorials, practicals, and field trips. There are modules on aquaculture, and conservation of the aquatic environment, on fish biodiversity in the estuarine, freshwater, and marine environment. The writing of essays and presentation of seminars form an integral part of the course.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Theory Examination 1: 35%, Theory Examination 2: 35%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with ICH 302

### ICH 302

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% ICH 302

**Co-requisites:** CHE 1, ZOO 102, BOT 102. Exceptions to this shall be considered, at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

**Course description:** A module on experimental biology includes a third-year project, project-related data analysis, and scientific writing. The second part of ICH 302 covers fisheries

management and stock assessment and population ecology. The preparation of essays, writing of scientific papers, and the presentation of seminars are important components of the course.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Theory Examination 1: 30%, Theory Examination 2: 30%

**Supplementary exam:** 40%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% for aggregation with ICH 301

## ICHTHYOLOGY AND FISHERIES SCIENCE HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 65% ICH 3 or equivalent

**Course description:** The aim of the Ichthyology Honours degree is to produce free-thinking and critical young scientists capable of performing independent research and equipped with practical skills to work in fisheries, aquaculture, ichthyology, environmental and aquatic science related fields. Applicants for Honours in Ichthyology and Fisheries Science are required to have completed a BSc before the start of the honours year, with a major in the life sciences and normally with the equivalent of Chemistry 1 (CHE 1).

The Honours course is comprised of advanced studies in data analysis, evolution and systematics, speciation, biodiversity, fish biology and ecology, conservation, population dynamics and fisheries resource management, fisheries oceanography, aquaculture and an advanced course in scientific writing. There are two field excursions, the first to gain insight and practical experience in field sampling techniques and the second to obtain insight into operational aquaculture ventures. Students are required to design an aquaculture production facility, prepare a business plan for a hypothetical aquaculture venture and manage the DIFS hatchery during the trout spawning season. A major research project is undertaken through the year, and a report submitted for the final examination, in a form suitable for publication in a peer-reviewed journal. The course is run on the basis of lectures, tutorials, seminars and extended

essays. The examination consists of three theory papers, two practical examinations, an oral examination, and research project report. Practical and theoretical work done during the year counts towards the final mark.

Applications for the Honours course must be submitted to the Rhodes University administration ([academicadmin@ru.ac.za](mailto:academicadmin@ru.ac.za)). Besides this application, all applicants are also encouraged to forward a letter of motivation and a curriculum vitae directly to the department administration ([difs@ru.ac.za](mailto:difs@ru.ac.za)) at the time that they submit their application. The application and selection process will start 1st July of the preceding year. Late applications will be considered up until the start of the academic year, provided places are available.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Project 20%, Theory examinations (×3) 30%, Practical examinations (x2)

12%, Oral Examination 5%

**Supplementary exam:** None

## **MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES IN ICHTHYOLOGY OR FISHERIES SCIENCE**

Candidates who wish to register for the MSc degree (NQF level 9, 180 credits) in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a four-year BSc degree at the NQF 8 level or BSc Honours degree in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture, Zoology or equivalent (as approved by both the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

Candidates for the PhD degree (NQF level 10, 360 credits) in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a Master's degree or equivalent in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture or Zoology or equivalent (as approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

The degree of MSc or PhD in Ichthyology is awarded for the satisfactory preparation of a thesis based on original research on fishes (freshwater, estuarine or marine), especially in the classical fields of systematics, morphology, distribution, ecology, behaviour or biology. The degree of MSc or PhD in Fisheries Science is awarded for the satisfactory preparation of a thesis based on original research on aspects of fisheries management, fisheries modelling, aquaculture or fisheries economics. Candidates for MSc or PhD degrees may additionally be required to complete such examinable coursework as may be prescribed by the Head of Department.

The PhD degree must make a substantial contribution towards the advancement of knowledge in the chosen field.

All postgraduate students in attendance are required, if called upon, to assist as demonstrators in practical classes.

Applications for PhD and MSc in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must follow the department's application procedure that is available on the department's website:

<https://www.ru.ac.za/ichthyology/studying/prospectivestudents/applicationprocessformscephdcandidates/>



# INFORMATION SYSTEMS

## Associate Professor and Head of Department

GG Foster, MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

## Professor

DA Sewry, MSc, PhD (Rhodes), FICSIT,  
MIITPSA, MAIS (presently Dean of Commerce)

## Associate Professor

I Siebörger, MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

## Senior Lecturers

G Baduza, BCom (Hons), MCom, PhD (Rhodes)  
CT Upfold, MBA (Rhodes)

## Lecturers

O Lehasa, MCom (Rhodes), MM (Wits)  
M Nxoz, BSc (Rhodes), HDipCompAud (Wits),  
MBA (Wits), PhD (Rhodes)  
P Ramafi, MCom (NWU)  
L Salamntu, MCom (UCT)

## Visiting Professors

SV Flowerday, MBA (Oxford Brookes), DTech  
(NMU), FBCS, MAIS  
M Herselman, M BIS (PE Technikon), PhD(UP),  
C Khene, MCom, PhD (Rhodes)  
K Renaud, BSc (UP), PhD (Glasgow)

## Research Associates

N Isabirye, MCom (UFH), PhD (NMU)  
BJ Mallinson, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), MAACE,  
MIITPSA, MIEEE, MACM

Information Systems (INF) is a two-year major subject which is primarily studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. The subject is also studied for the specialist BSc (Information Systems) degree in the Faculty of Science.

The courses offered in the Department concentrate on aspects of the development, application and management of Information Systems in organisations and the technologies used in these processes. Other topics in the courses include project communications, project management, databases, data analytics, information systems theory, and the audit and control of information systems. There is an emphasis on computer-based information systems, and practical courses include the use of spreadsheets, financial modelling, database design, decision support systems, IT project management tools, data analytic tools, and web application development. In addition, various

guest lecturers present seminars during the year on a variety of topics relevant to all areas of Information Systems. The management and strategy aspects are well complemented by courses in the Department of Management, while technical and computer-specific aspects are handled in more depth by courses in the Department of Computer Science.

For further details, particularly on the content of courses, see the departmental web page (<http://www.ru.ac.za/informationssystemsf/>)

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN INFORMATION SYSTEMS

The Department offers three second-year level courses: INF 201, INF 202 and INF 203. Information Systems 2 consists of the two one-semester courses INF 201 and INF 202; or INF 201 and INF 203. Credit may be obtained in any of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course INF 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component (see Rule C.12). A candidate who fails INF 201 shall be permitted to proceed to INF 202 or INF 203 provided the required sub-minimum in INF 201 has been obtained. A pass in INF 202 or INF 203 in such circumstances shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass INF 201 in order to gain credit for the full course unless an aggregated pass is awarded.

INF 202 is normally taken by students following an Information Systems professional route, whilst INF 203 is normally taken by students following an Accounting professional route as set out in the Bachelor of Commerce (Accounting) curriculum or who intend to register later for the Post-Graduate Diploma in Accountancy or the Honours programme in Financial Management. Students are also permitted to take both INF 202 and INF 203, in which case Information Systems professional or Accounting professional routes are available to them.

Students must normally gain credit in INF 201 and INF 202, or INF 2 with INF 201 and INF 202 aggregated, before being permitted to register for INF 301.

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN INFORMATION SYSTEMS

### Information Systems 201 (INF 201)

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

**Admission Pre-requisites:** CSC 112; candidates deemed to be in their first year of study may not register for INF 201

**Course description:** Information Systems Analysis; User Interface Design; Database Fundamentals.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before due date; and write all term tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the INF 201 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### Information Systems 202 (INF 202)

Second-year, second semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** sub-minimum in INF 201

**Course description:** Web Development (HTML/CSS); Web Development (JavaScript); Databases SQL.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before due date; and write all term tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the

INF 202 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### Information Systems 203 (INF 203)

Second-year, second semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** sub-minimum in INF 201

**Course description:** Accounting Information Systems Security and Control; SQL for Accountants, Data Analytics for Accountants; Disruptive Technologies for Accounting.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before due date; and write all term tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the INF 203 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

## THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN INFORMATION SYSTEMS

Information Systems 3 consists of the two one-semester courses INF 301 and INF 302. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course INF 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component (see Rule C.12). A candidate who fails INF 301 shall be permitted to proceed to INF 302 provided the required sub-minimum in INF 301 has been obtained. A pass in INF 302 in such circumstances shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass

INF 301 in order to gain credit for the full course unless an aggregated pass is awarded.

### **Information Systems 301 (INF 301)**

Third-year, first semester course (NQF Level 7, 30 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** INF 201 and INF 202, or INF 2 with INF 201 and INF 202 aggregated

**Course description:** Project Management and Communications; Digital Transformation; Software Quality; Big Data; Information Systems Development Project.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before due date; and write all term tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the INF 301 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Every student is also expected to participate in and complete a group systems development project. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, tests, practical assignments, etc.) during the semester, contributes towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Information Systems 302 (INF 302)**

Third-year, second semester course (NQF Level 7, 30 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** sub-minimum in INF 301

**Course description:** Web Development (PHP); Data Analytics; Software Quality; Information Systems Development Project.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before due date; and write all term tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the INF 302 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Every student is also expected to participate in and complete a

group systems development project. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, tests, practical assignments, etc.) during the semester, contributes towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **INFORMATION SYSTEMS HONOURS**

The Honours course is a one-year, full-time programme and consists of a coursework component and a research project component. Students may also register for a joint Honours in which the honours programmes from Information Systems and Computer Science, are taken 60%:40% with some coursework and some project components selected from each department.

#### **Coursework component**

Students must take an agreed selection of modules. Students may also take any one equivalently weighted Honours level module from another department, provided that it is approved by the Head of Department, in consultation with the Head of the other department.

Modules offered by the Department include:

A selection of the following modules will be offered in any one year, subject to a minimum number of students per module and staff availability: Business Analysis; Business Consulting; Business Data Analytics; Enterprise Architecture; e-Governance; Information Systems Management; Information Systems Security; Research Methodology; User Experience; Data Visualisation.

In addition to the modules listed above, students are required to attend any other activities as may be deemed appropriate by the Head of Department.

#### **Project component**

All students are required to undertake a research project in a given area and to produce a written report.

**INFORMATION SYSTEMS MASTERS  
AND DOCTORAL DEGREES**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MCom and PhD under the supervision of staff in the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Regulations.

# JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES

## Head of School and Senior Lecturer

JE du Toit, BA, African Studies (Hons), MA, H  
Dip Ed (UCT), PhD (Stell)

## Deputy Heads of School

### Associate Professor

P Boshoff, BA, BA (Hons), PGDJMS, MA, PhD  
(Rhodes)

### Lecturer

K Aiseng, BAPVA, MA, PhD (Wits)

### Professors

L Dalvit, Laurea (Trento, Italy), MA, PhD  
(Rhodes)

AC Garman, BA (Wits), BA (Hons), MA  
(UKZN), PhD (Wits)

### Senior Lecturers

R Amner, BJourn (Rhodes), MA (Rhodes)

BD Garman, BSc, BSc (Hons) (Natal), MA  
(Rhodes)

A Schoon, BSc (UP), Dip in Film & Video  
(Technikon Pretoria), BA (Hons) (Wits), MA  
(Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

### Lecturers

H Gess, BA, BA (Hons), HDipJourn, PGDHE  
(Rhodes)

T Gqubule-Mbeki, MPhil (Columbia), M Phil  
(Gibs Business School)

T Isaacs de Vega, BA, MA (NMU)

S Mati, BJourn (Rhodes), MEd (UWC), MPhil  
(Stell)

L Mkaza, BA, PGCE (Rhodes), BEd  
Hons, MEd (UWC)S Pamphilon, BJourn, PGDHE  
(Rhodes)

G Rennie, BA (UN), NDip Journ (Technikon  
Natal), MPhil (Stell)

K Roux, BJourn, MA (Rhodes)

C Uzuegbunam, PGDip, BSc (Hons) Mass  
Communication, MSc Mass Communication  
(Nigeria), PhD Media Studies (UCT)

### Public Service Accountability Monitor

Director: J Kruuse BA LLB (Rhodes)

### Sol Plaatje Media Leadership Institute

Director: Vacant

### South African Reserve Bank Centre for Economics Journalism

#### Director

RL Hancocks, BEco, BCom (Hons), PGDJMS,  
MCom Financial Markets (Rhodes)

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### Journalism and Media Studies 1 (JMS 1)

First-year, full-year course

(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** An introduction to  
Communications Studies and Communication  
Practice, Journalism Studies and Journalism  
Practice, Media Studies and Digital Media Studies.

#### DP requirements

- 80% attendance of all course meetings and events, including lectures, tutorials, practicals, tests and examinations.
- Submission of all practical and essay assignments by the due date and time.
- If unable to do any of the above, a student must apply for a Leave of Absence (LOA) and/or an extension.
- A student may be excluded from continuing with a course if they miss more than 20% of lectures and tutorials/practicals.

**Assessment:** The programme is divided into modules, each between four and six weeks in duration. 50% of the course marks are based on assignments completed in Semester 1, and 50% for the same in Semester 2.

**Assessment mode:** Each module is designed around a process of continuous assessment.

**Supplementary exam:** None. Learning activities are designed around continuous assessment, so that students have multiple opportunities to receive feedback and improve on assignments as part of each course.

### Journalism and Media Studies 2 (JMS 2)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** JMS1. There are 120 places in JMS2 – entry into JMS2 is not guaranteed. Applications are submitted by students and reviewed in committee. The following areas are taken into account: individual academic performance; a portfolio of media work completed

by students during their first year; tutors' reports and students' progress; an evaluative and biographical questionnaire and a critical reflection of media work undertaken in the course of the year. Furthermore, students wishing to apply for entry to JMS2 must complete a portfolio of media work in order to meet the application criteria. NB: Students will not qualify to enter JMS2 unless they have passed at least two other first year credits in addition to JMS1.

**Course description:** This course is divided equally into two streams, which are taught concurrently: Media Production and Media Studies. Media Production consists of a semester-long module in Podcasting and another semester-long module in Publication Production.

IsiXhosa for Journalism is a one-year course offered by the School of Languages. This course is compulsory for all students majoring in Journalism and Media Studies and must be taken during the second year of their degree.

**DP requirements:** Same as JMS1. In addition, it is a DP requirement that all JMS2 students who intend to proceed to JMS3 complete a portfolio of media work, to be submitted as part of their applications for JMS3. The portfolio may include both coursework assignments and extra-curricular work. Work done in JMS1 will not count.

**Assessment:** Media Studies = 50%; Audio Storytelling = 25%; Publication Production = 25%

**Supplementary exam:** None. Students submit Media Production portfolios at the end of each semester and are provided opportunities to resubmit work for these portfolios during that semester. Media Studies courses are also assessed through continuous assessment, with opportunities to resubmit improved work during each course.

A candidate who fails to obtain 50% for one of the components but passes on aggregate will be granted a non-continuing pass. It is therefore strongly recommended that students who register for Journalism and Media Studies 2 also register for two other second year credits in order to ensure that they still have two major options should they fail

Journalism and Media Studies 2 or pass the year with a non-continuing pass.

### **Journalism and Media Studies 3 (JMS 3)**

Third-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** JMS2 + entry to Journalism and Media Studies 3 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 50% for both the Media Studies and Media Production components of the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course. Entry into the student's first-choice media specialisation is based on individual performance at Journalism and Media Studies 2 level as well as on written motivations and additional media experience. Students wishing to apply for entry to JMS3 must complete a portfolio of media work in order to meet the application criteria.

**Course description:** This course is divided equally into two streams, which are taught concurrently: Media Production Electives and Media Studies. Media Production Elective options include: Design, Photography, Audio, Television, Writing and Editing.

**DP requirements:** Same as JMS1 and JMS2

#### **Assessment:**

Media Production Elective = 50% of year mark

Media Studies = 50% of year mark

**Supplementary exam:** None. All coursework involves continuous assessment. For Media Production modules such assessment is designed around submission of a portfolio of work. Students collate this portfolio throughout the module with regular feedback so that they can improve on submissions. For Media Studies, students regularly submit assignments that support the learning process. In this way students are provided with multiple opportunities to resubmit work as an integrated aspect of the teaching and learning process.

### **Journalism and Media Studies 4 (JMS 4)**

Fourth-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** JMS3 (students wishing to enter fourth year must normally have completed two third-year majors). Acceptance into a fourth-year media practice specialisation will be decided on the basis of performance, portfolio and written

motivation and/or interview. Students who achieve below 60% for either their final JMS3 specialisation or Media Studies mark will jeopardise their chances of advancing into JMS4.

**Course description:** JMS4 consists of three courses, all of which are compulsory:

1. Media Production (possible options include Audio, Design, Multimedia, Photography, Video, and Writing and Editing).
2. Media Studies
3. Media Electives in which students select from a range of options related to media production or relevant media topics.

**DP requirements:** Same as JMS 1, JMS 2 and JMS 3.

**Assessment:** In order to complete Journalism and Media Studies 4, students must pass the Media Production and Media Studies courses and obtain a sub-minimum of 45% in their Media Elective.

Media Production = 60%

Media Studies = 20%

Media Elective = 20%

**Supplementary exam:** There are no supplementary exams because all teaching and learning is organised around continuous assessments. For Media Production modules, these tasks build towards the submission of a final portfolio. Assessment of Media Studies is supported through a series of assignments which operate as scaffolding for the learning process. In both cases, students are provided with multiple opportunities to improve on their work as part of the coursework process.

## POSTGRADUATE COURSES

### Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism and Media Studies (PGDIP JMS)

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** An undergraduate degree in any discipline.

**Course description:** The Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism is designed for students and working practitioners (with a previous NQF 7 qualification). It is organised around participation in *Grocotts Mail*, an award-winning digital news organisation, Rhodes Music Radio and other media platforms. Such participation enables students to experiment with emerging innovations in journalism, digital

media production and engagement while exploring relevant debates in the study of journalism, media and communication. In this way they develop the mindset and competencies required of journalists and communication practitioners more generally in the contemporary world.

#### **Assessment:**

Media Production = 60%

Media Studies = 20%

Media Elective = 20%

### Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management (PGDIP MM)

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** An undergraduate degree in any discipline.

**Course description:** This course provides graduate students with specialised skills in the management of media. There are eight modules in specialised areas of media management; an experiential learning component involving a media management research project and a further project relating to active participation in a media initiative.

#### **Assessment:**

Media management contexts, policy and institutions = 10%

Media management and leadership = 10%

New technology and convergence = 10%

Media economics and financial planning = 10%

Human resource management = 10%

Markets, audiences and advertising = 10%

Managing media content = 10%

Circulation, distribution and transmission = 10%

Portfolio assignment = 20%

### Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management (PGDIP MM)

#### **(Part-Time, Distance)**

Two-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Candidates may be admitted to the two-year, part-time and mostly online course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management if they have been admitted to the degree or status of a bachelor in any faculty of the University or from other recognised universities. Consideration will be given to admit students based on the Recognition of Prior

Learning (RPL) provided that these students have been in the media industry for at least five years and have a diploma and/or advanced certificate in a cognate discipline (e.g. Diploma in Journalism or Advanced Certificate in Journalism; Marketing and Communications, etc.). The numbers of RPL students each year will be capped at 10% of the total student cohort of that year of online students.

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in all of the four modules offered in the first year to progress to the second and final year, where the candidate must pass at least an additional three other modules and the academic portfolio. A pass mark for each module is an aggregated 50% composed of the course and examination marks. A pass mark for the overall course is also an aggregated 50% of the marks of the modules and portfolio.

#### **First Year Modules:**

- Media Management Contexts, Policy and Media Institutions: 10%
- Managing Media Convergence, Digital and Social Media: 10%
- Media Management and Leadership: 10%
- Managing Media Content (Research Module): 10%

#### **Second Year Modules:**

- Managing Media Economics and Financial Management: 10%
- Human Resources Management: 10%
- Managing Audiences, Advertising and Marketing: 10%
- Managing Media Distribution and Circulation: 10%
- Academic Portfolio Assignment: 20%

The duration of the Diploma shall be no less than two academic years.

### **Postgraduate Diploma in Economics Journalism (PGDIP EJ)**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** An undergraduate degree in in any discipline.

**Course description:** This course, which is run part-time over two years, builds on the journalistic skills of participants by giving them the intellectual tools to report on issues and events in the economic arena in a way that improves their career prospects and deepens their understanding of business journalism. The programme consists of eight modules.

#### **Assessment:**

Financial Journalism = 12.5%

Economics for Journalists = 12.5%

Financial Markets for Journalists = 12.5%

Accounting and Finance for Journalists = 12.5%

Data Analysis and Interpretation = 12.5%

Public Policy = 12.5%

Capstone Assignment = 12.5%

All assignments must be completed in order for the candidate to pass.

### **Honours Degree**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** An undergraduate degree in humanities or social sciences.

**Course description:** Honours students will complete three compulsory papers, two elective papers and a research essay of 10-15 000 words.

#### **Assessment:**

Media Studies and Social Theory (compulsory) = 15%

Research Methods (compulsory) = 15%

Academic Writing (compulsory) = 15%

Two electives are to be chosen from the list of those offered in a year = 2 x 15%

Research Report = 25%

### **Master's Degree**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: The student has:

- obtained a good Honours degree or fourth-year in Journalism and Media Studies or related discipline;



- provided that a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours degree,
- provided that candidates satisfy the general regulations governing Master's degrees in the Faculty of Humanities.

**Course description:** An MA degree can be obtained by a 100% thesis or there are three routes for the MA Degree by course work and thesis:

**Option A: Coursework and Thesis**

First year coursework consists of three compulsory papers and two electives. Second year thesis (30 000 – 50 000 words).

Compulsory courses (assessed by assignment and examination):

Media Studies and Social Theory = 10%

Media Research Methods = 10%

Academic Writing = 10%

Two electives must be chosen from a list of courses each of which is worth 10%

Students then complete a thesis which counts 50% of the degree.

**Option B: Media Practice Project and Thesis**

(The supervisor may specify that the student participate in/audit Media Studies courses to complement the research.)

Media Practice Project = 50%

Thesis = 50%

**Option C: Specialising in Digital Journalism**

This option is offered on a part-time basis subject to availability of resources

Compulsory courses (assessed by assignment):

Digital Journalism Studies = 15%

Digital Media Economics = 15%

Audience and Narrative in Digital Times = 10%

Digital Media Research Methods = 10%

Thesis = 50%

**Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A Master's Degree in Humanities or Social Sciences

**Course description:** Doctoral studies are undertaken by full thesis and under the guidance of supervisors.

# LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES (SCHOOL OF)

**Associate Professor (German Studies) & Head of School**

US Weber, Staatsexamen I (Bonn); PhD (Rhodes)

## INTERDEPARTMENTAL COURSES

### 1. Cultures and Languages in Africa (CLIA) 101 and 102

First-year level courses, NQF Level 5, 15 credits each

**Entrance requirements:** None. These two courses are open to all undergraduates, and can be taken independently of one another.

**PURPOSE OF CLIA 101 AND 102:** To familiarise students with the relationships between societies, cultures, identities and languages in Africa; to give students the tools to think holistically and critically about a multicultural, intercultural and multilingual world.

**OUTCOMES OF CLIA 101 AND 102:** An understanding of the relationships between cultures, languages, societies and identities in Africa; an understanding of inter-, intra- and cross-cultural communication; an understanding of what it means to be a socially engaged African and global citizen.

#### Course descriptions

##### Cultures and Languages in Africa 101

Students will engage critically with the relationships between cultures and languages in Africa. In CLIA 101 the focus will be on the relationships between languages, and the societies in which they are embedded.

##### Cultures and Languages in Africa 102

In CLIA 102 the focus will be on language as a site of struggle and identity formation in Africa.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lectures and tutorials; submission of assignments on time.

**Assessment:** Under normal circumstances, course work 40% and Exam 60% for both CLIA 101 and CLIA 102. In an online learning environment, coursework will count 60% and the exam 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** None, unless last outstanding credit.

### 2. Modern Fiction

Second-year, full-year course (NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Students must be at least 2nd-year level students and should usually have passed at least two first-year Humanities subjects.

**Course description:** This is a one-year non-initial course, presented by members of the various sections of the School of Languages and Literatures, for students who have already obtained two credits. (See also Regulation H.13.1). The course is designed to give students with an interest in literature and film a greater appreciation of modern fiction produced in languages other than English.

Major works of film and prose fiction written between 1850 and the present are studied in English translation. The course introduces students to relevant aspects of the structure of literary texts and film, as well as the intellectual and cultural currents within which the works were produced..

**DP requirements:** 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60%; Exams 40%. Paper 1 (3 hours) is written off in June; Paper 2 (3 hours) is written off in November.

**Supplementary exam:** June/November result 35-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 35% Further information, including lists of prescribed texts and recommended readings for the course are available from members of the Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies in the School of Languages and on the course website (<http://www.ru.ac.za/modernfiction>)

## AFRICAN LANGUAGE STUDIES

**Associate Professor and NRF SARCHI Chair in the Intellectualisation of African Languages, Multilingualism and Education**

D Nkomo, BA(Hons)(UZ), MPhil, PhD(Stell), PGDHE(Rhodes)

**Lecturer and Subject Head**

M Sam, BSc(Hons)(Fort Hare), MA(Rhodes)

**Associate Professors**

N Saule, STD, BA(Hons)(Fort Hare), PhD(UNISA)

**Senior Lecturers**

NR Mazwi, BA(UNISA), BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Stell), PhD(Rhodes)

K Ndhlovu BA(Hons)(MA) (UZ), PhD (Fort Hare)

**Lecturers**

BB Nosilela, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Stell), PGCE(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

S Sawula BA(Hons)(MA) (UWC)

African Languages at Rhodes is offered as both an academic course (African Language Studies) and a language acquisition course. Both are three-year major courses which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases, more than one course is allowed as a credit for a degree/ diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Law, Education and Science.

### African Language Studies 1

Full year course (NQF Level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** This course is offered to isiNguni (isiXhosa, isiNdebele, isiZulu, Siswati) language speakers who have matriculated with an isiNguni language.

**Course description:** The African Language Studies course takes a multi-disciplinary approach to isiXhosa, mainly, and other isiNguni languages. It can be taken in combination with any other discipline in the University. It is also market-driven and modules offered are meant to enhance the employability of the students. Presently the modules on offer are Introduction to Linguistics, Language and Society, Literary Studies, as well as Comparative isiNguni Language Studies. The medium of teaching and learning is, primarily,

isiXhosa but other isiNguni students are allowed to use their respective languages in both oral and writing engagements.

**Assessments:** The modules in the first semester count 50% towards the final year mark.

Coursework counts 40% and the examination in June/Nov counts 60%

**DP requirements:** Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.. Students should attain a minimum of 40% for their year mark.

### African Language Studies 2

Full year course (NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** This course is offered to isiNguni (isiXhosa, isiNdebele, isiZulu, Siswati) language speakers. African Language Studies 1 is a prerequisite to be admitted to this course. If a student has done an isiXhosa for Journalism course which forms part of Journalism and Media Studies at Rhodes then they can take African Language Studies 2.

**Course description:** The course consists of 4 modules per year which are divided into 2 modules per semester. The African Language Studies course 2 takes a multi-disciplinary approach to isiXhosa, mainly, and other isiNguni languages. It can be taken in combination with any other discipline in the University. It is also market-driven and modules offered are meant to enhance the employability of the students. Presently the modules on offer are Introduction to Linguistics, Human Language Technology, Translation Studies, Language and Society, Cultural Studies, Literary Studies, Lexicography, as well as Comparative isiNguni Language Studies. The medium of teaching and learning is, primarily, isiXhosa but other isiNguni students are allowed to use their respective languages.

**Assessments:** The modules in the first semester count 50% towards the final year mark.

Coursework counts 40% and the three-hour examination in June/Nov counts 60%

**DP requirements:** Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.. Students should attain a minimum of 40% for their year

mark.

### African Language Studies 3

Full year course (NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** African Language Studies 2

**Course description:** The course consists of 4 modules per year which are divided into 2 modules per semester. The modules in the first semester are a write-off and they count 50% towards the final year mark. The African Language Studies course takes a multi-disciplinary approach to isiXhosa, mainly, and other isiNguni languages. It can be taken in combination with any other discipline in the University. It is also market-driven and modules offered are meant to enhance the employability of the students. Presently the modules on offer are Introduction to Linguistics, Human Language Technology, Translation Studies, Language and Society, Cultural Studies, Literary Studies, Lexicography, as well as Comparative isiNguni Language Studies. The medium of teaching and learning is, primarily, isiXhosa but other isiNguni students are allowed to use their respective languages.

**Assessments:** The modules in the first semester count 50% towards the final year mark.

Coursework counts 40% and the three-hour examination in June/Nov counts 60%

**DP requirements:** Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.. Students should attain a minimum of 40% for their year mark.

### IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 1

Full year course (NQF 5, 30 credits consecutively)

**Entrance requirements:** This course is open to those students who have no prior knowledge of isiXhosa as well as those who have limited knowledge of the language, provided that they have not matriculated in isiXhosa or any isiNguni as home language.

Only at the discretion of the Head of the Section will students whose mother tongue is isiXhosa (or any isiNguni language) may be permitted to register for the course.

**Course description:** The course aims to equip students with both linguistic and cultural

competence so that they are able to cope in a multilingual and culturally diverse society. Students enrolled in these courses are exposed to themes that are appropriate to foster speaking, and understanding of the structure of the language. Furthermore, the students are introduced to issues of inter- and cross-cultural communication. The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literary and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year.

The course offerings are: Language acquisition, i.e. proficiency in speaking, listening, reading and writing the language and introduction to the sociolinguistics of the isiXhosa language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language.

**DP requirements:** Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.. Students should attain a minimum of 40% of the year mark.**Assessment:** Coursework counts 30%, June Exam 30%, Oral exam 10% and the final Oct/Nov exam counts 30%.

### IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 2

Full year course (NQF level 6, 30 credits consecutively)

Entrance requirements: Students need to have passed **IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 1**.

**Course description:** The course aims to equip students with both linguistic and cultural competence so that they are able to cope in a multilingual and culturally diverse society. Students enrolled in these courses are exposed to themes that are appropriate to foster speaking, and understanding of the structure of the language. Furthermore, the students are introduced to various literary discourses, as well as to issues of inter- and cross-cultural communication. The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literary and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year.

The course offerings are:

- Language acquisition i.e. proficiency in speaking, listening, reading and writing the language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language.

- Sociolinguistics of the isiXhosa language.
- Introduction to the various genres of literature, and study of selected isiXhosa literary works (abridged versions of isiXhosa novels are used for better understanding of the isiXhosa culture and use of language.)

**DP requirements:** Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.. Students should attain a minimum of 40% for their year mark.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 30%, June Exam 30%, Oral exam 10% and the final Oct/Nov exam counts 30%.

### IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 3

Full year course (NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 2

**Course description:** The course aims to equip students with both linguistic and cultural competence so that they are able to cope in a multilingual and culturally diverse society. Students enrolled in these courses are exposed to themes that are appropriate to foster speaking, and understanding of the structure of the language. Furthermore, the students are introduced to various literary discourses, as well as to issues of inter- and cross-cultural communication. The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literary and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year.

The course offerings are:

- Language acquisition i.e. proficiency in speaking, listening, reading and writing the language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language.
- Sociolinguistics of the isiXhosa language.
- Various genres of literature, and study of selected isiXhosa literary works (abridged versions of isiXhosa novels are used for better understanding of the isiXhosa culture and use of language.)

In addition, isiXhosa Language Acquisition 3 students will do a research project which forms part of their oral exam.

**DP requirements:** Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language

learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.. Students should attain a minimum of 40% for their year mark.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 30%, June Exam 30%, Oral exam 10% and the final Oct/Nov exam counts 30%.

Vocation specific isiXhosa courses can also be taken if you are studying Journalism, Pharmacy, Law or Education.

### IsiXhosa for Journalism

One-year course (NQF level 5, 30 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** This course is compulsory for all students majoring in Journalism and Media Studies and must be taken during the second year of their degree. If students fail the course at the end of this year, they will be allowed to repeat the course during their third year of study. The course must be completed before a student can graduate. Students who intend to graduate with a BJourn degree should note that the full course must be completed by the end of the third year of their Journalism and Media Studies major. Once the course has been passed, students can also proceed to second year. Such students will be allocated either to the African Language Studies or isiXhosa Language Acquisition stream, depending on their level of proficiency. in isiXhosa. Students who plan to proceed to isiXhosa 2 in this way may apply to complete the isiXhosa for Journalism course during their first year.

**Course description:** The purpose of the IsiXhosa for Journalism course is to enable students to work confidently and sensitively as journalists in multilingual and multicultural environments. It achieves this goal by focusing on what it means to work as a journalist in the environment in which Rhodes University is based. Because isiXhosa is the primary language of communication for the majority of people in this context, the course focuses on strengthening students' ability to communicate in this language. This aspect of the course is designed to accommodate students with widely different proficiency levels in isiXhosa, from those who are fluent to those who have no experience in speaking the language. The course also assists students in strengthening their ability to

reflect in an informed way on how journalism is produced and circulated in multicultural contexts. They do so by exploring cultural and linguistic questions and debates of relevance to the South African context, with particular reference to issues of relevance to environments in which isiXhosa is spoken. The knowledge students acquire in this way is, however, more widely applicable, strengthening their ability to engage with the languages and cultures that are of relevance to any work environment.

**Assessment:** It is both formative and summative and in the form of orals that simulate contexts where language is used in journalistic environments and journalistic projects and essays. Students are assessed throughout the duration of the course to evaluate whether they have accomplished the specific outcomes as given in the course. Formative assessment is 50% and summative assessment is 50%.

### IsiXhosa for Pharmacy

Semester course that can be taken in either semester (NQF level 5, 15 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** It is taken during the fourth year of the pharmacy degree where students are required to interact, during their Community Experience Programme, with speakers of isiXhosa in Grahamstown and in other communities where isiXhosa is spoken.

**Course description:** The purpose of the course is to give students language skills, specific to their vocation, to be able to cope during “patient-client” interviews in contexts where isiXhosa has to be spoken. This is a beginners course and other than basic literacy skills in English, there is no prior knowledge expected of isiXhosa from the students. During lectures the focus is in all four language learning skills (i.e. speaking, listening, reading and writing). Students are also provided with knowledge and skills which will be necessary for them to understand and interpret cultural issues embedded in isiXhosa communication, especially those specific in the context of medicine.

**Assessment:** It is both formative and summative and in the form of orals that simulate contexts

where language is used (or “On-site clinical examinations” – OSCEs) and reflective essays. Students are assessed throughout the duration of the course to evaluate whether they have accomplished the specific outcomes as given in the course.

## POSTGRADUATE COURSES

### Honours degree in African Language Studies

Full year course (NQF level 8, 120 credits).

It is offered for the duration of a year for full time students and two years for part time students.

**Entrance requirements:** Candidates with a three-year major in an African Language or an equivalent will be permitted in this degree. This course is meant for students who have taken African Language Studies or isiXhosa Language Acquisition or any other equivalent from a different institution. Students who have not majored in the course can take modules in this as part of the African Studies programme. In this case students are required to enrol for Joint Honours with another of the Humanities Faculty courses.

**Course description:** The course consists of the following modules:

- IsiXhosa literature (Modern and Traditional,
- Language Planning and Intellectualisation of African Languages,
- Translation Studies,
- Human Language Technology,
- Linguistic Theory,
- Research Methodology,
- Lexicography and Terminology Development.

Candidates will be required to choose 5 modules one of which must be a research

and mini thesis. They may choose to do joint Honours in African Language Studies and one/ two other courses or under the regulations of the African Studies Programme (see Interdepartmental Studies) as may be deemed appropriate by the Head of Section.

**Assessments:** Coursework counts 40% and the three-hour examination at the end of the year counts 60% for each module.

**DP requirements:** Subminimum for each module done is 40%

**Masters in African Language Studies**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed honours degree in African Language Studies or equivalent.**Course description:** This degree is offered by a thesis on any approved topic to full or part-time students. It caters for candidates who hold a Post-Graduate degree in any language related discipline.**Doctoral Degree in African Language Studies**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed Master's degree in African Language Studies or equivalent.**Course description:** A thesis on any approved topic within the field of African Language Studies. Periods of residence for consultation with the supervisor are required over the period.**AFRIKAANS AND NETHERLANDIC STUDIES****Lecturer and Subject Head**

AF Vorster, BA (UPE), MA (Rhodes)

**Senior Lecturer**

M Botha, BA (UPE), BA Hons (UPE), MA (NMMU), DLitt (NMMU)

Afrikaans en Nederlands can be studied as a major subject in the Faculty of Humanities and is currently a 2-year major. One or, in some cases, two courses in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands are allowed as credits for degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

\*Please note: there will be no first-year intake for Afrikaans 1 and Afrikaans 1(P) in 2022, until further notice.

**AFRIKAANS 1(P) (currently not on offer)**

First-year, full-year course (NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Usually a matric pass in Afrikaans First Additional Language. Exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Subject Head.**Course description:** Afrikaans I (Professional) is a one-year course with the emphasis on the development of written and oral proficiency in Afrikaans as used in a professional environment. Afrikaans 1(P) will not necessarily be offered in any particular calendar year.**DP requirements:** 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.**Assessment:** Coursework 60%; Exams 40%. Paper 1 (3 hours) is written off in June; Paper 2 (3 hours) is written off in November.**Supplementary exam:** June/November result 35-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

**AFRIKAANS 1 (currently not on offer)**

First-year, full-year course (NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Usually a matric pass in Afrikaans Home or First Additional Language. Exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Subject Head.**Course description:** This course introduces students to the academic study of prose, poetry and drama (including media texts). Specific focus areas such as gender, engaged literature, texts for film and television, popular fiction, the history of Afrikaans, ecology and postcolonialism are covered. Basic narratology is a fundamental part of the course.**DP requirements:** 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.**Assessment:** Coursework 60%; Exams 40%. Paper (3 hours) is written off in June; Paper 2 (3 hours) is written off in November.**Supplementary exam:** June/November result 35-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

**AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS 2**

Second-year, full-year course (NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Students must be 2nd-year level students and should usually have passed at least two 1st-year Humanities subjects and have passed Afrikaans as Home or First Additional Language at Matric level.**Course description:** Afrikaans en Nederlands explores the academic study of prose, poetry and drama (including media texts). Specific focus areas such as gender, engaged literature, texts for film and television, popular fiction, the history of

Afrikaans, ecology and postcolonialism are covered. Students are also introduced to Dutch language and literature as an invaluable and easily accessible entry point into the exploration of international culture and intellectual currents. Basic narratology is a fundamental part of the course.

**DP requirements:** 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60%; Exams 40%. Paper 1 (3 hours) is written off in June; Paper 2 (3 hours) is written off in November.

**Supplementary exam:** June/November result 35-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

### AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS 3

Third-year, full-year course (NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Afrikaans en Nederlands 2

**Course description:** In Afrikaans en Nederlands 3, specialised areas of knowledge, including the most recent developments in Afrikaans and Dutch literature and culture, are studied.

**DP requirements:** 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60%; Exams 40%. Paper 1 (3 hours) and Paper 2 (3 hours) are written off in June; Paper 3 (3 hours) and Paper 4 (3 hours) are written off in November.

**Supplementary exam:** June/November result 35-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

### HONOURS

Full-year course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 60% in Afrikaans en Nederlands 3

**Course description:** An Honours course in either Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands can be taken by students who satisfy the entrance requirements. Candidates usually take five modules chosen in consultation with the relevant lecturers from a range of topics provided by the Section. With the permission of the Subject Head, an independent research essay of no more than 10 000 words written in the course of the year may be substituted for one of the modules.

**Assessment:** includes coursework and examinations. All papers are written in November.

### MASTER'S DEGREE BY EXAMINATION

2-year course (NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** An Honours degree in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands is usually required. Candidates from other disciplines may be admitted on the discretion of the Subject Head and with the approval of the Dean of Humanities.

**Course description:** Candidates may work towards a Master's degree either by examination or by thesis, as recommended by the Subject Head. In consultation with the staff of the Section, candidates for the degree by examination are usually required to choose three areas for intensive research in Afrikaans and/or Dutch literature, language or literary theory. Although seminars are offered on the chosen topics, a large degree of independent research is required. A three-hour examination is written on each of the three topics. In addition, a short dissertation on an approved topic has to be handed in by the end of the second year of study.

**Assessment:** Exams 60%; dissertation 40%

### MASTER'S DEGREE BY THESIS

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** An Honours degree in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands is usually required. Candidates from other disciplines may be admitted on the discretion of the Subject Head and with the approval of the Dean of Humanities. Course description: Candidates are required to submit a thesis comprising independent research on a topic which has been approved by the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Humanities.

### DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY IN AFRIKAANS OR AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Candidates for this degree are required to submit a research dissertation on a topic approved by the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Humanities. Further information may be obtained from the Subject Head.

**MODERN FICTION** For a description of this course, see the entry on Interdepartmental Studies.



## CHINESE STUDIES

### Professor and Subject Head

D Liu, BA and MA (Jinlin University), PhD  
(Northeastern University).

Chinese Studies is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

### CHINESE STUDIES 1

First year, full-year course (NQF Level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** None, Chinese native-speakers not allowed to enrol.

**DP requirement:** 70 % attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework: 40%, Examination: 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Subminimum:** None

**Course description:** Chinese Studies 1 is an introductory course that covers the study of the Chinese language and culture.

### CHINESE STUDIES 2

Second year, full-year course (NQF Level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** Chinese Studies 1

**DP requirement:** 70 % attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework: 40%, Examination: 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Subminimum:** None.

**Course description:** Chinese Studies 2 expands and refines the skills and content of CHI 1.

CHI 1 is a prerequisite for CHI 2.

### CHINESE STUDIES 3

Third year, full-year course (NQF Level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** Chinese Studies 2

**DP requirement:** 70 % attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework: 40%, Examination: 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Subminimum:** None

**Course description:** Chinese Studies 3 offers, in addition to an intensive focus on the Chinese

language, an introduction to Chinese civilisation and history.

CHI 2 is a prerequisite for CHI 3.

### UNDERSTANDING CHINA

Semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** None

**DP requirement:** 70 % attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework: 40%, Examination: 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Subminimum:** None.

**Course description:** Understanding China is a fifteen credit NQF level 6 course (i.e. formally called a semester long course at second year level). Understanding China offers an exploration of the key concepts, historical events and social processes for understanding China. This is a non-major course with no prerequisite requirements. Understanding China may be taken in the second or subsequent academic years (but not the first).

### BA (HONOURS) IN CHINESE STUDIES

Full-year course (NQF Level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** Chinese Studies 3

**DP requirement:** 70 % attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework: 40%, Examination: 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Subminimum:** None.

**Course description:** Students who choose to register for Honours in Chinese Studies have the following modules:

#### Compulsory core modules:

Paper 1: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese (Written)

Paper 2: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese (Spoken)

Paper 3: Research essay (10 000 words) on a topic relevant to Chinese Studies

#### Elective modules:

Paper 4: Chinese Philosophy

Paper 5: Chinese History

Paper 6: Classical Chinese

Paper 7: Business Mandarin Chinese

Paper 8: A module at honours level in another discipline (at the discretion of the Head of the Chinese Studies Section)

## CLASSICAL STUDIES

### Senior Lecturer

DJ van Schoor, BA(Hons), MA(UCT), PhD (Zurich)

### Lecturer and Subject Head

DSC Malamis, BA(Hons), MA (Rhodes)

The Classical Studies Division offers separate degree courses in three interrelated subjects: Classics, Classical Latin and Ancient Greek.

Classics is a two-year major subject that may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. The entry requirement for Classics 2 is a credit in either Classics 1 or a full year credit in any other subject.

### CLASSICS 101/102

This is a semesterised, one-year, self-contained course designed as a foundational and general introduction to the study of history, culture and some formative moments in human civilization. It may be included in degree/diploma curricula in most under-graduate programmes in the university. It is a useful, but not compulsory, prerequisite course for Classics 2. It offers an introduction to the Ancient World from the Neolithic Revolution to the rise of Civilization in Egypt and Mesopotamia through the Classical periods of Greece and Rome and up to the rise of Christianity and Islam in Late Antiquity.

#### Classics 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** This course takes up the origins of urbanisation in Egypt and Mesopotamia and entails a study of Greek mythology, focussing on the Trojan War and the adventures of the wandering hero Odysseus, the world of the Early Eastern Mediterranean, the colonization of the West by the Greeks and their war with the Persians.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at weekly tutorials, submission of one tutorial exercise per week and one assignment (test or

essay) per term. **Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%, one examination in June counts 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** All students are eligible for a supplementary exam, regardless of their final mark for Classics 101.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%.

#### Classics 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** This course examines the daily life and great events of the Classical period at Athens, Alexander the Great and his campaigns, the war with Hannibal and the Rise and Fall of Rome as a world power, daily life and art at Pompeii, Gladiators and Spectacles of Death in the Early Empire and the rise of Christianity and Islam.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at weekly tutorials, submission of one tutorial exercise per week and one assignment (test or essay) per term.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%, one examination in November counts 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%.

### CLASSICS 2 (CLA 201/202)

**Course description:** No previous study in Classics is required for entrance to this course. Classics 2, i.e. Classics 201/202, consists of a closer study of the history and great works of the Ancient World. It ranges in its specific content from close readings in Greek and Roman epic, tragedy, comedy and love poetry, to ancient philosophy, myth and religion, social and political history and Classical receptions. Modules on Bronze Age, African, Indian and Chinese civilisations may be included in the year's syllabus.

#### Classics 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Any first year Humanities credit.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at weekly tutorials, submission of one tutorial exercise per week and one essay per term.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Classics 202

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Any first year Humanities credit.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at weekly tutorials, submission of one tutorial exercise per week and one essay per term.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%, one examination in June counts 40%.

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%, one examination in November counts 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%.

### CLASSICS 3 (CLA 301/302)

The syllabus for Classics 2 & 3 is on a revolving two-year cycle so that Classics 2 & 3 students sit classes together. Classics 3 students, while studying the same content, are assessed differently and are set different assignments.

### Classics 301

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Classics 201 and 202 / Latin 2 / Greek 2.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at weekly tutorials, submission of one tutorial exercise per week and one essay per term.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%, one examination in June counts 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%.

### Classics 302

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Classics 201 and 202 / Latin 2 / Greek 2.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at weekly tutorials, submission of one tutorial exercise per week and one essay per term.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%, one examination in November counts 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%.

### CLASSICS HONOURS

Full-year (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed degree with Classics 3 as a major, with a final mark of 60% or above for Classics 3.

**Course description:** Five papers, by coursework and/or by research essay, tailored to the interests of the student, are written. Taught papers may cover individual Classical authors, literary genres, ancient history, religion, art and society, and are selected each year the discretion of the staff in consultation with students. Students are encouraged to prepare at least one of their papers for publication. Classics Honours students have a lecturer designated as a personal tutor with whom they regularly meet.

### MA IN CLASSICS

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed Honours degree in Classics, or a joint Honours degree with a Classics component.

Candidates may take the Master's degree in Classics by thesis alone, or by coursework and thesis, subject to approval by the Head of the School of Languages and Literatures. Candidates for the degree by coursework and thesis are examined on three taught papers and required to write at least one independent research essay in their first year, counting together for 45% of the final result, and to submit a short dissertation (of 25,000-30,000 words) by the end of their second year, counting for 55% of the final result.

### PHD IN CLASSICS

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed Master's degree in Classics.

## GREEK AND LATIN

Greek and Latin are three-year major subjects, which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. No previous knowledge of Latin is required to enter Latin 101 or of Greek to enter Greek 101. The second- and third-year classes of both languages will be offered each year at the discretion of the department.

### Latin 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** This is a beginner's course, which offers mainly an introduction to Latin, including the reading of selected passages, translation from Latin to English and from English to Latin, and the study of various aspects of the Graeco-Roman world. The course also focusses on developing students' general competence in language, especially through a study of the origins of English words and the acquisition of vocabulary.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%, one examination in June counts 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%.

### Latin 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A 60% pass or above for Latin 101.

**Course description:** In terms of language the focus will be entirely on Latin, with continued reading of texts, translation both ways and study of aspects of Roman culture.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%, one examination in November counts 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%.

### Latin 2

Second-year, full-year course (NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A 60% aggregate or above for Latin 101 and 102, or a rating of at least

5 in the National Senior Certificate. **Course description:** The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English, and English into Latin. A genre of Latin Literature and/ or a period of Roman history.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%, June and November examinations count 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None.

### Latin 3

Third-year, full-year course (NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A 60% pass or above for Latin 2.

**Course description:** The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English, and English into Latin. A genre of Latin literature and/ or a period of Roman history. Texts for self-study.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%, June and November examinations count 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

### Greek 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** This is a beginner's course, which offers an introduction to Greek, including the reading of selected passages, translation from Greek to English and from English to Greek, and the study of various aspects of the Greek world.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%, one examination in June counts 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%.

### Greek 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A 60% pass or above for Greek 101.

**Course description:** There will be continued reading of texts, translation both ways and study of

aspects of Greek culture, particularly in Classical Athens.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%, one examination in November counts 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%.

### Greek 2

Second-year, full-year course (NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A 60% aggregate or above for Greek 101 and 102.

**Course description:** The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and English into Greek. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history.

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%, June and November examinations count 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None.

### Greek 3

Third-year, full-year course (NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A 60% pass or above for Greek 2.

**Course description:** The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and English into Greek. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history. Texts for self-study.

## CREATIVE WRITING

Dr Hleze Kunju, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes), Subject Head

Mr Paul Wessels, MA (Rhodes), Senior Lecturer and Course Coordinator

Ms Stacy Hardy, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

Mr Mxolisi Nyezwa, MA (Rhodes)

Mr Mangaliso Buzani, MA (Rhodes)

### Secretary

A Clark

Masters in Creative Writing  
180 credits at NQF level 9

**DP requirements:** Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%, June and November examinations count 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** None

## GREEK AND LATIN HONOURS COURSES

Full-year (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed degree with Latin 3 and/or Greek 3 as a major, with a final mark of 60% or above in the relevant subject(s).

**Course description:** A paper in unseen translation. A research essay of 8000-10,000 words.

Any three further papers selected from the following: Translation and exegesis of Greek and/or Latin texts. Greek and/or Roman History and culture.

### MA in Greek and/or Latin

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed Honours degree in Greek and/or Latin.

We accept candidates for the Master's degree in Greek and Latin literature, language or history. This can be examined by full thesis.

### PhD in Greek and/or Latin

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed Master's degree in Greek and/or Latin.

**Entrance requirements:** Candidates require an Honours degree in any discipline or the NQF equivalent. A portfolio of creative work must accompany the application. For detailed guidelines please consult our Prospectus available for download from the Creative Writing section of our website.

**Course description:** Both full-time and part-time programmes are offered in 2022. The full-time programme consists of sixteen weeks of coursework during the first semester, presented by at least fifteen writers. During the second semester students create an extended creative

work under supervision. The part-time programme is completed over a two-year period. All coursework is presented in English but candidates may discuss language preferences at the beginning of the year with the Course Coordinator and the Section Head. Parallel seminars and reading groups are offered in isiXhosa and Kaaps, as well as for the Graphic Novel genre, where the need arises. Application portfolios should reflect both the language and the genre preference of the applicant.

Creative Writing is committed to innovative approaches to literary production that expand the possibilities of writing. At once, critical and creative, the programme emphasises the essential relationship between reading and writing. As such, a core requirements is the production of a formatively assessed record of reflection on this process as it is experienced across all facets of the course. These weekly reflections (bi-weekly for part-time students) are then compiled and edited into a process journal of critical reflection

on the creative process for submission with the final half-thesis of creative work.

In addition to seminars, coursework assignments, and reading groups, candidates are required to complete four book reviews, a short essay on book reviewing, a Community Project exercise and report, as well as a short essay on poetics.

The final half-thesis of poetry, prose, a hybrid genre, or a graphic novel is formatively assessed by an anonymous reader skilled within the particular genre of the thesis who produces a short report. This report is used by the student in consultation with their supervisor to reflexively assess the creative work and to write up the assessment for inclusion in the process journal.

Formal assessment of the creative work plus process journal is performed by two external examiners for monolingual theses and by four examiners for dual-language theses. Where possible we pair local and international examiners.

## FRENCH STUDIES

### Professor

PK Mwepe Licence es Lettres (Lubumbashi),  
Agrégation (Lubumbashi), MA (Lubumbashi),  
PhD (UCT)

### Associate Professor

AN Mukenge Licence es Lettres (Lubumbashi),  
Agrégation (Lubumbashi), MA (UCT), PhD  
(UKZN)

### Senior Lecturer

CJ Cordell BA (UPE), BA Hons (RAU), MA  
(RAU), PhD (UJ)

French is a three-year major subject which can be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

### French 1 (FRE 1)

First-year, full-year course (NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None. Students with no prior knowledge may take this course (A1 level according to the Common European Framework of Reference). Additionally, students with Matric,

‘O’-level and ‘A’-level French or similar qualifications, obtained in the past three years, may take this course. At the discretion of the Head of French Studies, mother-tongue speakers of French may take this course and students with prior knowledge may take some elective modules at a more linguistically advanced level.

**Course description:** This course aims to develop basic oral and written skills, and to provide an introduction to Francophone culture.

**DP requirements:** 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

**Assessment:** Under normal circumstances, coursework counts 40%; Paper 1 (June) + Oral exam (June) count 20%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 40%. In an online learning environment, coursework counts 60% and the exams 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** None, unless last outstanding credit.

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

**French 2 (FRE 2)**

Second-year, full-year course (NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A pass for FRE 1 or an equivalent qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of French Studies.

**Course description:** This course further develops language skills by means of translation and other linguistic activities. Course modules include: French for tourism; French for commerce; Francophone culture; Francophone cinema. French-language novels, poetry and plays mainly from the 20th and 21st centuries are studied. At the discretion of French Studies, mother-tongue speakers of French may take this course.

**DP requirements:** 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

**Assessment:** Under normal circumstances, coursework counts 40%; Paper 1 (June) counts 17%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 43%. In an online learning environment, coursework counts 60% and the exams 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** None, unless last outstanding credit.

**Sub-minimum for June:** None

**French 3 (FRE 3)**

Third-year, full-year course (NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FRE 2 or an equivalent qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of French Studies.

**Course description:** This course offers advanced translation and further develops spoken and written language skills. Course modules include: French for tourism; French for commerce Francophone cinema. French literature from the 17th to the 21st century is studied. At the discretion of French Studies, mother-tongue speakers of French may take this course.

**DP requirements:** 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

**Assessment:** Under normal circumstances, coursework counts 40%; Paper 1 (June) counts

12%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Paper 4 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 48%. In an online learning environment, coursework counts 60% and the exams 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** None, unless last outstanding credit.

**Sub-minimum for June:** None

**French preliminary (FRE 1P) – currently not on offer**

First-year, full-year course (NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** No prior knowledge of the language is required. (Students with O-level French or a pass in French in the National Senior Certificate examination may not take this course. Mother-tongue speakers of French may not take this course.)

**Course description:** This is a beginner's course designed to enable students who have not taken French as a National Senior Certificate subject to acquire the essential elements of the language and culture.

Students who obtain 70% or more in French 1P may proceed to French 1.

**DP requirements:** 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

**Assessment:** Under normal circumstances, coursework counts 40%; Paper 1 (June) + Oral exam (June) count 20%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 40%. In an online learning environment, coursework counts 60% and the exams 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** None, unless last outstanding credit.

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40%

This course will not necessarily be offered in each calendar year.

**French Honours**

Fourth-year, full-year course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** at least 60% for FRE 3 or equivalent qualification.

### Joint French Honours

Fourth-year, full-year course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** at least 60% for FRE 3 or equivalent qualification. Students may combine either two (or three) taught papers in French Studies with three (or two) papers from another subject at Honours level.

**Course description:** For full Honours, the examination consists of four written papers and one oral examination;

- Paper 1 (compulsory) Translation into and from French.
- Papers 2 to 4 Candidates may choose three study periods or authors. These authors or genres may be chosen from the Medieval period to the present day, depending on staff availability and interests. Alternatively, candidates may replace up to two literary study periods or authors with papers which focus on contemporary Francophone culture as mediated through film and/or French for Commerce and Tourism and/ or French for Pedagogical purposes. Study areas will be chosen in consultation with French Studies staff and need to be approved by the French Studies Subject Head.
- Paper 5: Oral examination Detailed analysis of a literary text chosen from one of the periods studied, or in the case of the Contemporary France / French for Commerce and Tourism / French for Pedagogical purposes modules, a presentation on a related topic.

In addition, candidates doing a full French Honours will be required to write a research essay of no more than 10 000 words. The subject will be chosen in consultation with French Studies staff and needs to be approved by the French Studies Subject Head.

**Assessment for full Honours:** Coursework counts 50%; Research essay + Paper 1 (Translation) +

Paper 2 (Chosen Topic) + Paper 3 (Chosen Topic) + Paper 4 (Chosen Topic) + Oral exam count 50%. All exams take place in November.

**Assessment for joint Honours:** Coursework counts 50%; Paper 1 (Translation) + Paper 2 (chosen topic) + Paper 3 (chosen topic) if the candidate is taking 3 papers in French and 2 in the other subject] + Oral exam count 50%. All exams take place in November. One of the chosen topics may be replaced by a research essay of no more than 10 000 words. The subject will be chosen in consultation with French Studies staff and needs to be approved by the French Studies Subject Head.

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Sub-minimum for June:** None

### Masters (French)

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** at least 60% for the Honours research essay and at least 60% for French Honours overall. For further information, please consult French Studies staff.

**Course description:** The course will consist of a thesis, the subject of which must be approved by the Head of French Studies and by the Faculty of Humanities.

### Doctorate (French)

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** at least 60% for Masters (French)

**Course description:** The course will consist of a thesis, the subject of which must be approved by the Head of French Studies and by the Faculty of Humanities.

### Modern Fiction and Cultures and Languages in Africa (CLIA 101 and CLIA 102)

For a description of these courses, please refer to the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

## GERMAN STUDIES

**Associate Professor and HOD**

U Weber, Staatsexamen I (Bonn), PhD (Rhodes)

**Lecturer and Subject Head**

N Engelbrecht, MA (Stell), MA (Leipzig)

German Studies is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty



of Humanities. In the literature and cultural studies sections the medium of instruction and examining is primarily English, though texts have to be read and studied in German. Cultural studies at second and third-year as well as Honours level can be taught concurrently; assessment will be appropriate to the year of study. One, or in some cases two courses in German Studies are allowed as credits for degree and diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Science and Law. As both staff members of the German Studies Section are Goethe Institute accredited examiners, students who have proven proficiency in German as a foreign language will be given the option to sit additional examinations set by the Goethe Institute in Germany at B1, B2 or C1 level.

### **German Studies 1 (GER 1FL)**

First-year, full year course (NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course description:** This is an introductory (A1-level) language and cultural studies (Landeskunde) course for students who have no prior knowledge of German. Students who have obtained a matric pass (or equivalent thereof) may proceed directly to German Studies 2 after consultation with a member of staff. Students who have proven competency of the German language (e.g. matric pass or equivalent from a German school like the Deutsche Schule Kapstadt or Deutsche Schule Johannesburg or a similar institution), or who are deemed suitable after assessment by German Studies staff may proceed to German Studies 2, possibly Elective 2, with advanced language instruction at the B2-C2 level of the Common European Framework of Reference (CEFR) for Languages, after consultation with German Studies staff.

**DP requirements:** attend 70% of all class meetings (incl. tutorials), hand in all assignments on time, sit all tests and examinations.

**Assessment:** 10% June examination, 50% November examinations, 40% tests (written and oral) and assignments.

No supplementary examinations (unless last outstanding credit), no subminimum for June.

Paper 1 Language

Paper 2 Text analysis, cultural studies (Landeskunde)

### **German Studies 2 (GER 2FL)**

Second-year, full year course (NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** GER 1FL or a similar qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

Paper 1 Language

Paper 2 Cultural studies (Landeskunde)

Paper 3 Literature

**DP requirements:** attend 70% of all class meetings (incl. tutorials), hand in all assignments on time, sit all tests (written and oral) and examinations.

**Assessment:** 20% June examination, 40% November examinations, 40% tests and assignments.

No supplementary examinations (unless last outstanding credit), no subminimum for June.

### **German Studies 3 (GER 3FL)**

Third-year, full year course (NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** GER 2FL or a similar qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

Paper 1 Language

Paper 2 Cultural studies (Landeskunde)

Paper 3 Translation

Paper 4 Literature

**DP requirements:** attend 70% of all class meetings (incl. tutorials), hand in all assignments on time, sit all tests (written and oral) and examinations.

**Assessment:** 20% June examination, 40% November examinations, 40% tests and assignments.

No supplementary examinations (unless last outstanding credit), no subminimum for June.

### **German Studies Honours**

Fourth-year, full year course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** a completed degree with GER 3FL as a major or a similar qualification

obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

### **Joint Honours**

Fourth-year, full year course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** a completed degree with GER 3FL as a major or a similar qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

Students may combine either two taught papers or two taught papers and a research essay in German Studies with three/ two papers from another subject at Honours level.

Paper 1 Language

Paper 2 Cultural Studies (Landeskunde; incl. diachronic and/ or synchronic aspects of German)

Paper 3 Literature

Paper 4 Translation theory, practice and methodology

Paper 5 In consultation with members of staff, a candidate may choose to submit a typewritten research essay of not more than 10 000 words.

**DP requirements:** attend 80% of all class meetings (incl. tutorials), hand in all assignments on time, sit all tests (written and oral) and examinations.

**Assessment:** 10% June examination, 30% November examinations, 40% tests and assignments, 20% research (long essay).

No subminimum for June.

### **Master's Degree**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits) By thesis only.

Details are available from members of staff.

### **Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits) By thesis only.

Details are available from members of staff.

### **Modern Fiction and Cultures and Languages in Africa (CLIA 101 and 102)**

For a description of these courses, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

# LAW FACULTY

## Professor & Dean

LO Juma, LLB (Nairobi), Dip.Law (Kenya), LLM (Pennsylvania), MA (Notre Dame), LLD (Fort Hare)

## Professor & Deputy Dean

EH van Coller, LLB, LLM (UFS), LLM (Utrecht), PGDHE (Rhodes), LLD (UJ)

## Professor

GB Glover, BA, LLB, PhD (Rhodes)

## Associate Professors

J Campbell, BA, LLB (UCT), LLM (Rhodes)

R Krüger, BA (Hons), LLB (Potch), PGDHE, PhD (Rhodes)

HJ Kruuse, BA, LLB, LLM, PGDHE (Rhodes) S

## Senior Lecturers

SEH Driver, BA, LLB (Rhodes), LLM (UNISA), PGDHE (Rhodes)

S Rahim, B.Juris, LLB (UPE), LLM (UNISA)

## Lecturers

S Bergover, LLB, LLM (UKZN)

FP Bothma, LLB, LLM (NWU)

P Jabavu, NDIP (WSU), BTech: Journalism (TUT), LLB (WITS)

L Katiyatiya, LLB (UFH), LLM (NWU), LLD (Stell)

Y Ndamase, LLB (UFH), LLM (UCT)

NA Nxumalo, LLB, LLM (UKZN)

S Somandi, LLB, LLM (NMU)

## Professors Emeriti

JR Midgley, BCom, LLB (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

ID Schäfer, BA, LLB (Rhodes), PhD (Natal)

## Associate Professor Emeritus

J Bodenstein BA (Stell), LLB, LLM (Natal)

## Research Associates

CJC McConnachie, BA, LLB (Rhodes), BCL, MPhil, DPhil (Oxon)

## Visiting Professors

A Cachalia, BA, LLB, H Dip Tax (Wits)

N Dambuza, Justice, B.Proc, LLM (Natal), LLM (Tulane)

## (Pret)Visiting Fellows

M Boqwana, BA, LLB (Rhodes)

M Mugangavari BA, LLB, LLM (Rhodes)

## Manager: Administration

A Comley

## Faculty Administrator

F Mwellie

## Faculty Librarian

S Gule BTech LIS (UNISA), Hons (UKZN)

## Librarian

T Mtshare, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes)

## BACHELOR OF LAWS

The Faculty of Law offers all the courses required for the LLB degree, and in addition offers courses for degree curricula in other faculties.

Legal Theory is a three-year major subject in the BA, BCom, BSc, BBusSci and BSocSci curricula. It involves study of key fields of South African public and private law, and forms an important stepping-stone towards the LLB degree.

Students registered in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science may register for Legal Theory which is recognised by those faculties for degree purposes. Students who pass Legal Theory component courses as part of a degree curriculum in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science are exempt from the equivalent courses in the LLB curriculum.

## Legal Theory 1

(two semester courses, 30 credits)

Paper 1: Foundations of Law (NQF Level 5, 15 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Introduction to Law (NQF Level 6, 15 credits) See the course structure set out below.

## Legal Theory 2

(four semester courses, 40 credits)

Paper 1: Legal Interpretation (NQF Level 7, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Constitutional Law A.(NQF Level 7, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Constitutional Law B (NQF Level 7, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Law of Persons (NQF Level 6, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

## Legal Theory 3

(six semester courses, 60 credits)

Paper 1: Law of Contract A (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Law of Life Partnerships (NQF Level 7, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Law of Property A (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Law of Contract B (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 5: Law of Property B (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 6: Legal Pluralism (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

### **Administrative Law**

(NQF Level 8, 20 credits)

(one year-course; one three-hour paper (50%, class work (50%), November examination)

Background and introduction to administrative law; the sources of administrative law, the constitutional right to just administrative action; introduction and overview of the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (PAJA); administrative action in terms of PAJA; judicial review of administrative action and the requirements of lawfulness, reasonableness and procedural fairness, the right to written reasons; procedural issues and remedies.

### **Alternative Dispute Resolution**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (50%), practical examination (20%), journal (20%), coursework (10%), November examination) Negotiation and mediation theory and the development of practical skills; arbitration legislation, and rules and enforcement.

### **Civil Procedure A**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Courts with civil jurisdiction; Locus Standi; Action Proceedings from letter of demand to trial in both

the High Court and the Magistrates' Court including commonly utilized interlocutory applications such as Summary Judgment, Exceptions and Applications to Strike Out.

### **Civil Procedure B**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Applications in both the High Court and the Magistrates' Court; Applications relating to Insolvency and related matters for example Sequestration, Voluntary Surrender, Rehabilitation and Liquidation of Companies; Other Specific Applications, for example, Interdicts, Anton Piller Orders, Matrimonial Matters (Rule 43) and Curatorship; Provisional Sentence; Appeals, Reviews and Rescission of Judgment; Costs; and Enforcement of Judgments and Administration Orders.

### **Commercial Law 1**

(two semester courses: COL 101 and COL 102)

(NQF Level 5, 30 credits)

COL101 (One three-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Introduction to the nature of law; general principles of the law of contract, including the administration of deceased estates; the law of insolvency.

COL102 (One three-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)

Introduction to business entities; company law and corporate governance. A credit in or a valid DP certificate for COL101 is required for entry into COL102.

### **Company Law A**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

The nature, formation and functional aspects of Companies and Close Corporations from a legislative, case law and practical perspective.

### **Company Law B**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The winding-up of companies; the law relating to mergers and acquisitions of companies; securities regulations, initial public offerings and private placements; legislation and rules governing black economic empowerment; and an introduction to corporate governance.

### **Competition Law**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The objects of, and rationale for, competition law; a brief history of the regulation of competition; restrictive horizontal practices: legislation and cases; restrictive vertical practices: legislation and cases; the abuse of dominance: legislation and cases; institutions, procedures and remedies.

### **Constitutional Law A**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Sources of constitutional law, key constitutional concepts in context of major constitutional models and a detailed analysis of the structures of government created by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

### **Constitutional Law B**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)

The protection of human rights in a constitutional state, judicially and extra-judicially, with an emphasis on the former; application and interpretation of the Bill of Rights; consideration of selected rights protected in the Bill of Rights (chapter 2 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996).

### **Constitutional Litigation**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)  
Litigating under the Constitution, the rules of the

Constitutional Court; constitutional remedies; consideration of selected constitutional law topics at advanced level.

### **Criminal Law A**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Introductory concepts and definitions; fundamental values, functions and objectives underlying criminal justice; general principles of criminal liability including: conduct, unlawfulness, causation, capacity and fault; defences; forms of participation in criminal activities; liability for inchoate crimes.

### **Criminal Law B**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)  
Selected common-law and statutory crimes.

### **Criminal Procedure A**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Structure of the courts; jurisdiction; search procedure; arrest; summonses; written notice; bail; indictments and charge sheets; essentials of a valid charge; defects etc. cured by evidence; amendments of charges; pleas of guilty and not guilty; conduct of criminal trials; verdict and sentence; automatic review and right of appeal.

### **Criminal Procedure B**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Who prosecutes; private prosecutions; stopping and withdrawal of prosecutions; prosecutions to be brought within reasonable time; search and seizure; legal representation; disclosure by prosecution; indictments in High Court; exemptions, exceptions, provisos; duplication of convictions; further particulars; autrefois convict and autrefois acquit; plea and sentence agreements; prosecution of corporations; appeals; taking of evidence under

s205 of Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977; inquests; extradition; asset forfeiture.

### **Environmental Law**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Scope and definition of environmental law; legal norms and standards underpinning environmental management; sources and history; overview of international environmental law; the Constitution and environmental legislation; administration and enforcement; environmental management tools; selected topics: natural resources and conservation management.

### **Ethics and Professional Responsibility**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work 40%), November examination)

The study of different approaches to ethical decision-making in the legal context; the purpose and function of ethics in the legal profession; the sources and content of legal ethical rules, including regulation of the profession; the kinds of ethical dilemmas which lawyers and judges face, and issues relating to professional negligence.

### **Foundations of Law**

(NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Part A: Historical foundations of South African law; sources of South African law; the Constitution, legislation, the common law, judicial precedent, custom and indigenous law.

Part B: The structure of the courts; dispute resolution methods; the legal profession; elementary outline of criminal procedure; elementary outline of civil procedure.

### **International Human Rights and Humanitarian Law**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%) class work (40%), June examination)

History and nature of international human rights law; selected human rights in international law; enforcement of international human rights law standards; international humanitarian law.

### **International Trade Law**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The origin and evolution of international trade; general concepts and principles; the United Nations Convention on the International Sale of Goods; the law of the World Trade Organization.

### **Introduction to Conveyancing**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

An introduction to the practice and procedure of the Deeds Registries Office.

### **Introduction to Law**

(NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Part A: Nature of law; law and justice; rights and duties; introduction to the legal systems of the world. Part B: Divisions of law: criminal law; contract; delict.

### **IsiXhosa**

(NQF Level 5, 10 credits)

(one semester course: assessment of practical work (100%, second semester) (Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations.) A discipline-specific introduction to isiXhosa language and culture. Communication skills developed and cultural knowledge imparted essential in lawyer-client interactions.

### **Jurisprudence**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%) class work (40%), June examination)

An introduction to the major theories of law, adjudication, justice and punishment (with a particular focus on the African context) and an

overview of the core jurisprudential debates that have preoccupied legal philosophers from ancient to modern times.

### **Labour Law**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The legal framework for the regulation of labour relations in South Africa in context; basic conditions of employment; individual labour law – contracts, transfer, dismissal and unfair labour practices and dispute resolution; employment equity, collective labour law – freedom of association, organisational rights, collective bargaining and its regulation, industrial action.

### **Law of Agency, Insurance and Credit Agreements**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Agency: Agency power and authority; the rights and duties of principals and agents; the relationships between principals and agents and third parties. Insurance: sources; essential elements; insurable interest; duty of disclosure; warranties; risk; loss; subrogation; over-insurance; under-insurance. Credit Agreements: a review of the National Credit Act.

### **Law of Banking and Payments**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The law of negotiable instruments and cheques; the law relating to credit cards and electronic financial transactions; the law of documentary credits; exchange control regulations; an introduction to the Financial Intelligence Centre Act of 2001; measures for the detection and prevention of money laundering; an overview of banking regulation and the role of the Reserve Bank.

### **Law of Contract A**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The historical antecedents of South African contract law; theories of contracts; the essentials of a valid contract, including capacity, consensus (offer, acceptance, mistake, misrepresentation, duress, undue influence), legality (statutory, common law, the influence of the Constitution), possibility of performance and formalities; rectification; suretyship.

### **Law of Contract B**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Types of contractual terms, interpretation of contracts; alteration and termination of contractual obligations; cession; performance; breach; remedies; parties to a contract.

### **Law of Copyright and Trade Marks**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper, (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Registration of trademarks; transactions involving trademarks; infringement of trademarks; domain names and the internet; requirements for the subsistence of copyright; transactions involving copyright; infringement of copyright; copyright and the internet; and counterfeit goods.

### **The Law of Delict**

(NQF Level 8, 20 credits)

(one year-course; one three-hour paper (50%); class work (50%) November examination)

General Principles and elements of delictual liability in terms of the *actio legis Aquiliae*, the action for pain and suffering and the action iniuriarum; forms of strict liability in terms of common law; liability imposed by statute (Road Accident Fund Act, Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, Consumer Protection Act); prescription of claims; delictual remedies and quantification of damages.

### **Law of Evidence A**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)  
Introductory terminology; the course of the trial; burden and standard of proof; judicial notice; opinion evidence; documentary; real and machine-generated evidence.

### **Law of Evidence B**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)  
Informal admissions; confessions; formal admissions; private privilege; state privilege; hearsay; previous consistent statements; similar fact evidence; entrapment; unconstitutionally obtained evidence.

### **Law of Life Partnerships**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)  
Evolution of the traditional concept of family and marriage; influence of the Constitution and international law; legal status of religious marriages; development of the law with respect to same-sex life partnerships and domestic partnerships; engagement; legal requirements for a valid marriage; void and voidable marriages; consequences of marriage in and out of community of property; antenuptial contracts; calculation of accrual; divorce and maintenance; changing trends in family law evident in recent Constitutional Court decisions.

### **Law of Partnerships and Trusts**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)  
The nature, formation, dissolution and functional aspects of sole proprietorships, co-operatives, partnerships and trusts from a legislative, case law and practical perspective.

### **Law of Patents, Designs and Geographical Indications**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)  
Nature and contents of patents; patentable subject matter and exclusions; patent ownership and exploitation; patent application procedure; infringement of patents; scope of design monopoly; design ownership; exploitation and procedure; infringements of designs; protection of geographical indications; legal regulation of geographical indications; geographical indications and dispute settlement.

### **Law of Persons**

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)  
General concept of legal personality: how it begins and ends and the rights and duties associated with it. Legal principles that affect legal status: domicile, age, mental illness, prodigality, change of sex. Protection of children in terms of the Children's Act 38 of 2005. Legal personality of systems of artificial intelligence.

### **Law of Property A**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)  
Meaning, function and scope of property law; definition, characteristics and classification of things; distinction between real and personal rights; general principles, limitation, and acquisition and protection of ownership.

### **Law of Property B**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)  
Possession; servitudes (definition and classification; creation, termination and enforcement); and real security (mortgage, pledge, notarial bonds, tacit hypothecs, lien).

### **Law of Sale and Lease**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)



(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Sale: the essential elements; passing of ownership; risk and benefit; conditional sales; residual obligations of the seller and remedies of the buyer; residual obligations of the buyer; sales affected by statute.

Lease: essential elements; types of leases; the rights and duties of lessors and lessees; the impact of the Constitution and various statutory enactments on leases; renewal; termination; lessee's rights in regard to improvements.

### **Law of Succession and Administration of Estates**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The scope of succession; intestate succession; executing wills; the contents of wills; collation; succession by contract; and administration of deceased estates including deceased insolvent estates.

### **Law of Tax and Estate Planning**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Selected material provisions of the Income Tax Act No. 58 of 1962, including the "gross income definition", allowable trade deductions, and certain special deductions; general and specific anti-avoidance provisions; use of trusts in estate planning; introductory fundamental principles of capital gains tax; introductory fundamental provisions of the Value-Added Tax Act No. 89 of 1991; donations tax.

### **Legal Accounting**

(NQF Level 5, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper, (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The general principles of accounting with special emphasis on Trust Accounts.

### **Legal Interpretation**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Nature and classification of enacted law in South Africa; the Constitution and legislation as sources of legal authority, traditional common-law and modern theories of statutory interpretation; interpretive methods, rules and principles; judicial precedent and introduction to theories adjudication; analysis of legal reasoning and court judgments.

### **Legal Pluralism**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), classwork (30%), November examination)

Meaning and challenges of legal pluralism; origins and evolution of legal pluralism in South Africa; history and application of customary law in the legal system; the bill of rights and customary/religious normative systems; marriage laws in comparative perspective (African customary, Hindu, Muslim and Jewish normative systems); settlement of disputes in plural legal settings; and selected topics on legal pluralism.

### **Legal Practice**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: assessment of practical work (100%), first or second semester)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations).

File and case management, consultation, interviewing, communication, and drafting skills. The emphasis is on the practical application of the law through prescribed work at the Law Clinic, practical exercises and assignments, the aim of which is to draw together and apply the legal knowledge acquired in academic studies.

### **Legal Skills**

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: assessment of practical work (100%), first semester, carrying over into beginning of second semester)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations).

Research skills, including electronic resources; regulation of the legal environment; writing skills; numeracy skills; applied logic and critical reasoning; and structure and delivery of legal argument, including heads of argument and mooting.

### **Public International Law**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Sources; international and municipal law; international personality; territory; jurisdiction; law of the sea; state responsibility; human rights; treaties; use of force; international institutions.

### **The Law of Obligations in a Global Context**

(NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Introduction to comparative private law; contract law in a global and comparative context; the rise of consumer protection; the law of unjustified enrichment; and alternative perspectives on the law of obligations.

### **Research Paper**

(NQF Level 8, 20 credits)

(two semester courses: assessed at the end of the year)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations).

LLB candidates are permitted to complete a research essay in a topic of their choice, subject to the availability of a suitable supervisor and the approval of the Dean. The paper will count for two elective credits. Students will be asked to indicate their intention to undertake this elective in the fourth term of their penultimate year of study. The detailed essay on the approved topic must be submitted by the end of the third week of the fourth term of the final year.

### **International Moot Competition**

(one semester course; assessed at the end of the year) (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations)

Students who have participated in the African Human Rights Moot Court Competition, or any other international mooting competition, are permitted with the approval of the Dean to present the work done for this competition, as well as an analysis of their experiences of being involved in such a competition, in coherent written form for examination in accordance with the requirements laid down by the Faculty. A candidate may obtain only one elective credit for participation in a moot competition, irrespective of the number of times a candidate participates.

# LINGUISTICS AND APPLIED LANGUAGE STUDIES

## Head of Department and Associate Professor

MA de Vos, BJourn (Rhodes), MPhil (Tromsø), PhD (Leiden)

## Associate Professor

W Bennett, BA (Carleton College), PhD (Rutgers)

## Senior Lecturer

I Siebörger, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

## Lecturers

TN Bowles, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PGDipHE (Rhodes)

M Jiyane, BA, BA (Hons), MA (UKZN)

K Kilian, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), MA (Calgary)

I Adetomokun, BA (Hons) (OAU - IFE), MA, PhD (UWC)

Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is a three-year major subject. Entrance to the course is open to students in all faculties. The object of courses in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is to develop students' understanding of language systems in the context of human communication and society. The main focus is on language within the South African context. Linguistics is an important component in the study of people and their cultures, and is of potential interest to students planning Humanities, Social Science or Law degrees, as well as being of practical value to those specifically intending to qualify as teachers, journalists, media and language practitioners. Students are also encouraged to combine Linguistics and Applied Language Studies with a major in another language.

## Module Themes

**Module 1:** Sound systems: Sounds of the World (NQF level 5), Phonetics and Phonology (NQF level 6), Phonetics and Phonology (NQF level 7)

**Module 2:** Sociolinguistics: Language in South Africa and Society (NQF level 5), Sociolinguistics (NQF level 6), Sociolinguistics (NQF level 7)

**Module 3:** Semantics: Language and Meaning (NQF level 5), Semantics (NQF level 6), Semantics (NQF level 7)

**Module 4:** African Linguistics (NQF level 5), African Linguistics (NQF level 6), African Linguistics (NQF level 7)

**Module 5:** Psycholinguistics: Language in Childhood (NQF level 5) Second Language Learning (NQF level 6), Linguistics of Literacy (NQF level 7)

**Module 6:** Syntax: Language structures (NQF level 5), Syntax (NQF level 6), Syntax (NQF level 7)

**Module 7:** Discourse: Language in Context (NQF level 5);, Discourse Analysis (NQF level 6), Critical Discourse Analysis (NQF level 7)

**Module 8:** Introduction to African languages (NQF level 5), African Linguistics (NQF level 5), African Linguistics (NQF level 6), Introduction to Sign Language Linguistics (NQF level 7)

**Module 9:** Systemic Functional Linguistics: Language in the Media (NQF level 5), Systemic Functional Linguistics (NQF level 6), Systemic Functional Linguistics (NQF level 7)

**Module 10:** Linguistics and Community (NQF level 6)

**Module 11:** Service Learning (NQF level 7)

**Module 12:** Special Topics in Linguistics (NQF level 5), Special Topics in Linguistics (NQF level 6), Special Topics in Linguistics (NQF level 7)

The modules to be offered in any given year are chosen to provide a coherent linguistic programme, maintaining a balance between formal and applied linguistics, and according to staff availability.

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1 (ELN 1)

First-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** This course provides an introduction to eight of the modules listed above at NQF level 5, maintaining a balance between the study of language systems and language in use. Students registered for ELN 1 must take eight modules assessed at NQF level 5. Two 1½-hour

examination papers are written in June, and two in November.

**DP requirements:** students must attend 80% of all class meetings and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two 1½-hour examinations in June and two in November count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** 35%

### **Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 2 (ELN 2)**

Second-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** ELN 1

**Course description:** The focus of the course is divided between linguistic systems and studies on language in use.

**DP requirements:** students must attend 80% of all class meetings and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two 3-hour examinations in June and two in November count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** 35%

### **Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 3 (ELN 3)**

Third-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** ELN 2

**Course description:** The focus of the course is divided between the linguistic systems and studies on language in use. Students registered for ELN 3 take eight modules at NQF level 7. In addition, students produce a research report on a linguistic topic assessed at NQF Level 7.

**DP requirements:** students must attend 80% of all class meetings, including 100% of all Research Group meetings, and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

**Assessment:** June Exam 21.25%; November Exam 21.25%; Class record: 42.50%; Research Report: 15.00%

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** 35%

### **Professional Communication**

Second-year, one-semester course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** The course is intended for Commerce students who are in at least their second academic year, apart from those registered for BCom (Accounting). Students from other Faculties are only admitted to the course if they are majoring in a subject from the Commerce Faculty.

**Course description:** The Professional Communication course aims to improve the spoken, written and small-group communication skills of students, and focuses on communication in the commercial and professional world. Some theoretical background is given, but the bulk of the course is experiential and practical, and students are expected to participate in all activities. It is a compulsory course required for the completion of a Commerce undergraduate degree in all curricula apart from a BCom (Accounting). Students attend three classes every week (two tutorials and one lecture). Additional online resources and compulsory exercises are also offered every week.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit all written tests and assignments by the due date, and must complete all spoken presentation assessments. Students must attend 80% of tutorials.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination counts 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

### **Professional Communication for Accountants**

Second-year, one-term course  
(NQF level 6, 7.5 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** The course is intended for Commerce students in their second academic year, registered for BCom (Accounting).

**Course description:** Professional Communication for Accountants aims to improve the spoken, written and small-group communication skills of students, and focuses on communication in the commercial and professional world with a special emphasis on the communicative needs of accountants. Some theoretical background is given, but the bulk of the course is experiential and practical, and students are expected to participate

in all activities. It is a compulsory course required for the completion of a BCom (Accounting). Students attend three classes every week (two tutorials and one lecture). Additional online resources and compulsory exercises are also offered every week. The course content is partly assessed through an assignment in the Principles of Professional Accountancy course, which is jointly assessed by both the Linguistics and Applied Language Studies and Accounting departments.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit all written tests and assignments by the due date and must complete all spoken presentation assessments. Students must attend 80% of tutorials.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 100%; there is no examination for the course.

## POSTGRADUATE COURSES

There are a number of options for postgraduate studies in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies, including Honours, Master's and PhD degrees. Some of these options can be taken on either a full-time or part-time basis, and at Master's level the options include degrees by thesis only or by coursework and half thesis.

The following coursework modules may be offered at Honours and Master's degree levels:

- Module 1: Research Project
- Module 2: Phonology
- Module 3: Topics in Minimalist Syntax
- Module 4: Ethnographic Investigation of Literacy Practices
- Module 5: Language Contact: Bilingualism and Related Phenomena
- Module 6: Topics in Psycholinguistics: Literacy and Reading
- Module 7: The Investigation of Interpersonal Meaning
- Module 8: Corpus Linguistics with Python
- Module 9: Sign Language Linguistics

- Module 10: Psycho- and Neurolinguistics
- Module 11: Language and Knowledge
- Module 12: Critical Discourse Analysis
- Module 13: Special Topics in Linguistics
- Module 14: External language credit

Please consult the Department's Postgraduate Handbook (available on the Department website) for more information on the structuring and content of these modules. Modules passed at the Honours degree level may not be repeated at Master's degree level (see below). In terms of assessment, all modules carry equal weight, and are assessed by assignments and examinations. Examinations are written at the end of the semester in which modules are taught. The department may offer take-home, open-book, pre-allocated questions or standard exams.

## Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** This course is offered subject to student numbers and is intended for students without a major in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies. The entry requirement for the course is any Bachelor's degree, subject to the approval of the Head of Department (BA, BCom, BFA, BJourn, BMus, BSocSc or BSc). Students who have credits in Linguistics will be admitted at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course description:** The Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching is a one-year full-time course, or (in special circumstances) it may be taken part-time over two years. The course aims to provide graduates with the theoretical knowledge and awareness of the skills, methods and techniques necessary to be effective English teachers in English Second Language and multilingual classrooms in South Africa. The curriculum combines components from the undergraduate programme in Linguistics and

Applied Language Studies with postgraduate modules.

### **Honours Degree**

Full-year course  
(NQF level 8, 120)

The aim of the Honours course is to provide students with a balance between the social and formal aspects of the central disciplines of Linguistics. All modules include a strong commitment to methodological and analytical aspects, drawing on relevant theory and consolidated by a supervised research report. The Honours degree can be completed full-time in one year (minimum) or over two years on a part-time basis.

**Entrance requirements:** Entry to the Honours programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies requires a first degree in Linguistics or a cognate discipline.

**Course description:** Students must complete four coursework modules (see above). In addition, students will complete a research report on a topic to be mutually negotiated, taking into account the research and/or teaching interests of the department, e.g. further developing Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 3 research reports, Honours modules or departmental research projects. At the discretion of the Head of Department, students may take a non-mother-tongue language credit from the Rhodes University School of Languages and Literatures in place of one of the four modules. Additional coursework will be required.

### **Honours in English Language Teaching**

Full-year course  
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Entry to the course requires a first degree in Linguistics or a cognate discipline or a Postgraduate Certificate in Education or its equivalent.

**Course description:** This course is offered subject to student numbers and current staff expertise and aims to give teachers with professional qualifications, or graduates planning a career in

language teaching, a specialised and professional training in English Language Teaching (ELT) as an applied discipline. Students will be required to take modules with an ELT focus which may not be available in any particular year.

### **Master's Degree**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Two structures are possible in the Master's degree:

#### **Master of Arts by full thesis**

**Entrance requirements:** Entry into the Master's programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is open to students with any of the following qualifications: (a) an Honours degree in Linguistics, or (b) an Honours degree in a cognate discipline, subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

**Course description:** This is a research degree, which is governed by the general regulations for Master's degrees in the University. Full-time candidates can complete the requirements for the award of the degree in a minimum of one year but usually take at least two years to complete the degree. Part-time candidates can complete the requirements in a minimum of two years.

#### **Master of Arts by coursework and half thesis**

**Entrance requirements:** Entry into the Master's programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is open to students with any of the following qualifications: (a) an Honours degree in Linguistics, or (b) an Honours degree in a cognate discipline, subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

**Course description:** This degree can be completed on a full-time basis over one year, or part-time over two years, and consists of both coursework and a half thesis. Coursework includes four modules. The half thesis is guided research, supervised by a member of the department. Part-time candidates can complete the coursework in the first year of study and the half thesis in the second year. Full-time candidates can complete both coursework and the half thesis in one year.

### **Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Students with a Master's degree in Linguistics can register for the Doctoral degree.

**Course description:** The Doctoral degree in Linguistics can only be done by thesis, and only under the supervision of a member of staff. Students who have not studied Linguistics at Rhodes University previously will be required to take four modules as part of their preparation for the thesis.

# LITERARY STUDIES IN ENGLISH

## Head of Department and Associate Professor

LG Spencer, BA Law (WSU), BA (Hons) (UP), MA (Wits), PhD (Stell)

## Professors

MJ Marais, BA, BA (Hons), MA (NMU), D Litt et Phil (UJ)

S Naidu BJourn, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (SOAS & Rhodes), PGDHE (Rhodes)

## Associate Professor

AMM Phiri, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (Edinburgh)

## Senior Lecturers

T Njovane, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

DA Seddon, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab)

## Lecturers

JA McGregor, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

NT Ntsepo, BA (Wits), BA (Hons) (Wits), MA (Sussex)

KS Pillay, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (UKZN)

## Professors Emeriti

DGN Cornwell, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

DC Klopper, BA (UKZN), HED (UKZN), Hons (UNISA), MA, DLitt et Phil (UNISA)

PS Walters, BA (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

DA Wylie, BA, BA (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Literary Studies in English is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Courses in English are also allowed as credits for degree curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### English 101 (ENG 101)

First-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** Students take the following two papers:

- Paper 1 Introduction to Genre
- Paper 2 Introduction to Drama and Poetry

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 term essays and 2 writing journals; writing June examinations

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%; June examinations count 40%

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### English 102 (ENG 102)

First-year, second-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% or more for ENG 101

**Course description:** Students take the following two papers:

- Paper 3 South African Literature
- Paper 4 The Sense of an Ending

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 term essays and 2 writing journals; writing November examinations

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%; June examinations count 40%

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### English 201 (ENG 201)

Second-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** English 101 and English 102

**Course description:** Students take the following two papers:

- Paper 1 Postcolonial Literature
- Paper 2 Transnational Literature

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 essays; writing two June examinations

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; June examinations count 60%

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%



**English 202 (ENG 202)**

Second-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% or more for ENG 201

**Course description:** Students take the following two papers:

- Paper 3 Romanticism and The Gothic
- Paper 4 The Modernist Revolt

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 essays; writing two November examinations

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; November examinations count 60%

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**English 301 (ENG 301)**

Third-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** English 2

**Course description:** Students take two papers in all, one of which is termed a core paper and is taught by means of lectures, and the other of which is termed an elective paper and is taught by means of seminars. Students choose one of the following two core papers:

- Paper 1 Early Modern Literature
- Paper 2 African Literary Representations

In addition, they select one elective paper. The range of elective papers on offer varies from year to year.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all essays, including elective assignments; 80% attendance of elective seminars; writing the June examination for the core paper.

**Assessment:** Core paper counts 60% (essays 24% and exam 36%) and the elective paper 40%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**English 302 (ENG 302)**

Third-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% or more for ENG 301.

**Course description:** Students take two papers in all, one of which is termed a core paper and is taught by means of lectures, and the other of which is termed an elective paper and is taught by means of seminars. Students choose one of the following two core papers:

- Paper 3 Realism to Postmodernism
- Paper 4 South African Post-Apartheid Writing

In addition, they select one elective paper. The range of elective papers on offer varies from year to year.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all essays, including elective assignments; 80% attendance of elective seminars; writing the November examination for the core paper.

**Assessment:** Core paper counts 60% (essays 24% and exam 36%) and the elective paper 40%

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**POSTGRADUATE COURSES****Honours Degree**

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 65% for English 3. Subject to the approval of both Heads of Department and the Dean, Honours courses may be offered in (a) English or (b) English in combination with Honours courses offered by other departments (see Rule H.26). The latter option will be termed "joint Honours" if the candidate takes two or more papers from another department. Full English Honours candidates may nevertheless include in their curriculum one paper chosen from another Honours course in the Humanities Faculty. The attention of prospective candidates is also drawn to the separate entry on Interdisciplinary Honours degrees (see Interdepartmental Studies) for information on other options involving input from the Department of Literary Studies in English.

**Course description:** Candidates for Honours in English choose five papers from the following:

- Paper 1 Literary Theory
- Paper 3 American Literature
- Paper 4 Global Modernisms
- Paper 5 Africa in the World

- Paper 6 Imaginings of Place in SA Literature

Subject to the approval of the Head of the Department, a candidate may choose to submit a research essay of not more than 10 000 words in place of one of the above papers.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all essays; 100% attendance of seminars; writing the June and November examinations

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60% and June and November examinations 40%.

### **Master's Degree**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Candidates for this degree are required to complete a research thesis.

### **Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Candidates for this degree are required to complete a research thesis.

# MANAGEMENT

## Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

TL Amos, BSocSc (Hons)(Economics), BSocSc (Hons)(Psychology), MSocSc (Rhodes)

## Raymond Ackerman Chair of Business Administration, and Professor

L Louw, BCom (Hons), MCom, DCom (UPE) (presently Deputy Dean of Commerce)

## Associate Professors

MB Bunting, MCom (Financial Markets), PhD (Rhodes)

N Oosthuizen, MCom (UPE), PhD (NMU)

## Senior Lecturers

XL Antoni, BCom (Hons), PGDip (Financial Panning), MCom, PhD (NMU), CFP

## Lecturers

M Maritz, BCom (Hons), PGDHE (Rhodes), IIBA

L Maholo, BCom(Hons), MCom (Rhodes)

S Sha, BCom (Hons), MCom (Rhodes)

AS Williams, BSocSc(Hons), BCom(Hons), MCom (Rhodes)

## Visiting Professor

T Jackson, BSc Econ (Wales), MA (Keele), PhD (Henley Management College, Brunel), PGCert (Keele)

## Senior Research Associate

C-H Mayer, MA, Doctorate (Göttingen), PhD (Rhodes)

Management is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. It is also possible to take Management as a major subject in the BSc, BSocSc and BJourn degrees. In addition, one, or in some cases, two, courses in Management are allowed as courses for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Science. The BBusSc degree in the Department of Management is designed to equip students to pursue a career in Management. Normally a candidate will only be admitted to Management 2 if credit has been obtained in Accounting 1. A candidate will normally be admitted to Management 3 only if credit has been obtained in Accounting 1, Economics 1, and either one of Mathematics 1, or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2.

Students will normally be refused admission to any course offered by the Department after the second week of the start of the course.

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN MANAGEMENT

Management 1 consists of two semester courses: MAN 101 and MAN 102. Credit may be obtained in any of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course MAN 1, provided that the courses constituting Management 1 are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12). A candidate who fails MAN 101 shall be permitted to proceed to MAN 102 provided the required sub-minimum in MAN 101 has been obtained. A pass in MAN 102 in such circumstances shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass MAN 101 in order to gain credit for the full course unless an aggregated pass is awarded.

Management 1 is seen as an undergraduate introductory course in business management. The purpose of the course is to equip students with knowledge of management in the South African business environment.

### Management 101 (MAN 101)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** none

**Course description:** This semester course focuses on the world of business management, the role of an entrepreneur and manager in the South African business environment, and managerial competencies. Further the module focuses on the general management tasks of planning, organising, leading and controlling.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all term tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**Management 102 (MAN 102)**

First-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** sub-minimum of 35% in MAN 101

**Course description:** This semester course continues to focus on the business organisation and management, and explores managing in various contexts which includes marketing management, financial management, operations management, human resource management and purchasing and supply chain management.

**DP requirements:** Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all term tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES  
IN MANAGEMENT**

Management 2 consists of four half-semester modules: MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214. Credit may be obtained in any of the modules separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course MAN 2, provided that the modules constituting Management 2 are read in the same year and that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained for at least two modules, with credit being obtained in the remaining two modules; or that a sub-minimum of 40% is obtained for one module, with credit being obtained for the remaining three modules (see Rule C.12).

**Management 211 (MAN 211) - Human  
Resource Management A**

Second-year, first quarter module (NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** MAN 101 and MAN 102 or MAN 1 with MAN 101 and MAN 102 aggregated, and ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112, or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112 aggregated

**Course description:** The human resource management function with emphasis on human

resource planning, staffing, compensation, labour relations, training and development, performance management, human resource information technology and international human resource management maintenance.

**DP requirements:** Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests  
**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**Management 212 (MAN 212) - Supply Chain  
Management**

Second-year, second quarter module (NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** MAN 101 and MAN 102 or MAN 1 with MAN 101 and MAN 102 aggregated, and ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112, or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112 aggregated

**Course description:** An overview of operations and supply chain management with an emphasis on the concepts of supply chain strategy, integrated logistics, inventory, quality and quality tools, forecasting and supply chain management challenges and future trends.

**DP requirements:** Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**Management 213 (MAN 213) - Principles of  
Marketing A**

Second-year, third quarter module (NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** MAN 101 and MAN 102 or MAN 1 with MAN 101 and MAN 102 aggregated, and ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112, or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112 aggregated

**Course description:** The principles of Marketing which includes – the marketing concept, the marketing mix with specific emphasis on product, price, place and promotion decisions; an introduction to marketing research; an introduction to consumer behaviour; and segmentation, targeting and positioning.

**DP requirements:** Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; obtain a sub-minimum mark of at least 40% for the group assignment; and write all tests and obtain a sub-minimum of at least 40% for the class test

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Management 214 (MAN 214) - Financial Management A**

Second-year, fourth quarter module (NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** MAN 101 and MAN 102 or MAN 2 with MAN 101 and MAN 102 aggregated, and ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112, or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112 aggregated

**Course description:** This course builds on the foundation of the financial management topics introduced in the first year programme. The specific focus is on capital budgeting, cost of capital, working capital management, and financial statement analysis.

**DP requirements:** Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests  
**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

The Department reserves the right to teach MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214, which constitute MAN 2, in any combination in each of the two semesters.

## **THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN MANAGEMENT**

Management 3 consists of four half-semester modules: MAN 311, MAN 312, MAN 313 and MAN 314. Credit may be obtained in any of the modules separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course MAN 3, provided that the modules constituting Management 3 are read in the same year and that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained for at least two modules, with credit being obtained in the remaining two modules; or that a sub-minimum of 40% is obtained for one module,

with credit being obtained for the remaining three modules (see Rule C.12).

### **Management 311 (MAN 311) - Human Resource Management B**

Third-year, first quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 or MAN 2 with MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 aggregated, ECO 101 and ECO 102 or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated, MAM 1 or TOF 1C1 and STA 1C2

**Course description:** Building on MAN 311 – Human Resource Management A, this module focuses on organisational behaviour, with the emphasis on understanding the behaviour and leadership of people in the organisation; labour relations, with the emphasis on South African labour relations systems and management.

**DP requirements:** Submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

### **Management 312 (MAN 312) - Strategic Management**

Third-year, second quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 or MAN 2 with MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 aggregated, ECO 101 and ECO 102 or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated, MAM 1 or TOF 1C2 and STA 1C2

**Course description:** A study of the principles of strategic management, in accordance with the constraints and opportunities imposed by both internal and external environmental factors.

**DP requirements:** Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**Management 313 (MAN 313) - Principles of Marketing B**

Third-year, third quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 or MAN 2 with MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 aggregated, ECO 101 and ECO 102 or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated, MAM 1 or TOF 1C1 and STA 1C2

**Course description:** Building on MAN 213 - Principles of Marketing A, this module focuses on a selection of the following topics – designing a customer-driven marketing strategy, marketing research, consumer behaviour, brand management, international marketing, marketing communications, services marketing, social and digital marketing.

**DP requirements:** Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

**Management 314 (MAN 314) - Financial Management B**

Third-year, fourth quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Admission pre-requisites:** MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 or MAN 2 with MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 aggregated, ECO 101 and ECO 102 or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated, MAM 1 or TOF 1C1 and STA 1C2

**Course description:** This course continues the development of a coherent knowledge structure in financial management, building on topics introduced in the first and second year programmes. There are four main subject areas: capital structure; dividends and other payouts; environmental, social and governance (ESG) issues; and mergers and acquisitions.

**DP requirements:** Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one examination counts 60%

**Supplementary examination:** 40-49%

The Department reserves the right to teach MAN 311, MAN 312, MAN 313 and MAN 314, which constitute MAN 3, in any combination in each of the two semesters.

**HONOURS LEVEL COURSES****Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) in the Department of Management**

Students can register for one of two options:

1. B.Com (Hons) Management/Management 4 (BBS4)
2. B.Com (Hons) Management: Financial Management

**B.Com (Hons) Management/Management 4 (BBS4)**

This honours degree option consists of the following 3 compulsory papers:

Paper 1: Strategic Management

Paper 2: Personal Financial Management

Paper 8: Research

And any 2 papers out of the following:

Paper 3: Human Resource Management

Paper 4: Strategic Marketing

Paper 7: Project Management

**Admission requirements:** A degree with a major in Management or equivalent. Credit should be obtained for all relevant Management courses with an aggregate of 60%. Admission however remains at the discretion of the Department of Management.

**BCom (Hons) Management: Financial Management**

This option consists of the following 5 compulsory papers:

Paper 1: Strategic Management

Paper 2: Personal Financial Management

Paper 5: Investments

Paper 6: Derivatives and Risk Management

Paper 8: Research

**Admission requirements:** A degree with a major in Financial Management (equivalent to Management 314). Credit should be obtained for all relevant Management courses with an aggregate of 60% as well as a minimum of 65% for Financial Management at third year level. Admission,

however, remains at the discretion of the Department of Management.

### **Paper Content**

#### **Paper 1: Strategic Management**

The aim of this course is to enable students to think strategically and be aware of the importance of ethical principles, values and responsible corporate citizenship. Topics include:

- Strategy, stakeholders and strategic direction
- Strategic analysis
- Strategy development and formulation
- Strategy implementation and strategic risk management

#### **Paper 2: Personal Financial Management**

The course aims to increase the financial literacy levels of students. The course will ensure that students acquire the necessary knowledge of personal finance content, execute financial calculations (improving financial numeracy), and transfer class-based financial knowledge into real-world experience. This course will also allow students to gain practical experience with personal financial content through Service-learning. Topics include:

- Personal finance theory and financial education
- Cash management
- Risk management and insurance
- Savings products and investment
- Retirement planning
- Estate planning

#### **Paper 3: Human Resource Management**

The aim of this course is to enable students to initiate and manage organisational change and development.

Topics include:

- The skills, task and role of an organisational consultant
- Organisational development (OD)
- Organisational diagnosis
- Organisational development interventions
- Learning Organisations
- Knowledge and intellectual capital

#### **Paper 4: Strategic Marketing**

The aim of this course is to enable students to solve contemporary topical marketing problems.

Topics include:

- International Marketing
- Consumer Behaviour
- Brand Management
- Marketing Research
- Customer Relationship Management (CRM)
- B2B Marketing
- Services Marketing
- E-Marketing
- Integrated Marketing Communications (IMC)

#### **Paper 5: Investments & Paper 6: Derivatives and Risk Management**

The aim of this course is to extend the corporate finance focus of the undergraduate programme, by introducing students to key concepts underpinning investment and risk management.

Topics include:

- Investment returns
- Equity valuation using dividend discount, free cash flow, and residual income models
- Equity valuation using price and enterprise value multiples
- Equity risk and return
- Fixed income and money market valuation
- Fixed income duration (risk) and return
- Pricing and valuation of forward commitment and contingent claim derivatives
- Introduction to financial risks
- Hedging financial risks using derivative and non-derivative strategies

#### **Paper 7: Project Management**

Project management is the discipline of leading, planning, organising, and managing resources to bring about the successful completion of specific project goals and objectives.

The aim of this course is to familiarise and empower students to lead project teams, and to manage projects in the workplace, using a clearly defined and powerful set of knowledge resources, tools and techniques, while adding value to the overall organisational objectives.

Topics include:

- Introduction to Project Management, Knowledge Areas and Process Groups
- Project, Program and Portfolio Selection
- Project Leadership, Management and Team Selection
- Project Scope, Time, Cost and Quality Management
- Project Stakeholder, Procurement, Communication, Human Resource and Risk Management
- Project Management Tools and Techniques

#### Paper 8: Research

The aim of the course is to enable students to conduct research independently within a team.

Topics include:

- Identify a research project
- Write a research proposal
- Conduct a literature review
- Analyse and explain research results in a meaningful manner
- Write up the research in the form of a research paper

**Note 1: The Department of Management reserves the right to offer the papers in no particular order from academic year to year.**

**Note 2: The Department also permits students to register for either 40% or 60% Management Honours. 60% Honours candidates are required to read any two of the listed papers in addition to Paper 7 (Research), the Research Paper. 40% Honours candidates are required to read any two of the listed papers, excluding Paper 7 (Research). The 60% or 40% option is only available to those registering for the BCom (Hons) Management, and BCom (Hons) Management: Financial stream.**

#### Course admission pre-requisites

**Management 102:** Sub-minimum of 35% for Management 101

**Management 2:** Management 1; Accounting 1

**Management 3:** Economics 1, Management 2, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2

**Management 3 (Marketing):** Management 213 (Marketing)

**Management 3 (Finance):** Management 214 (Financial Management) and Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2

**Management 3 (Human Resource Management):** Management 211 (Human Resource Management)

**Honours/ Management 4 (BBS4):** Management 3, with a minimum aggregate of 60% for all courses and a credit for each course

**Honours (Financial Stream):** Major in Financial Management (equivalent to MAN 314), with a credit for all relevant majors, a minimum aggregate of 60% for all courses and minimum of 65% for Financial Management at the third year level. Admission, however, remains at the discretion of the Department of Management.

#### Aggregation

In cases where credit is obtained for a course on the basis of aggregation of marks awarded for courses/modules, candidates are permitted to proceed to any course at the next level of Management, including fourth-year (Honours and Management 4) level. Aggregation is permitted at the Honours and Management 4 level, subject to all papers being passed except one (excluding Paper 8: Research which must be passed), in which case the subminimum for the failed paper is 45%.

#### MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES IN MANAGEMENT

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the full thesis research degrees of MCom and PhD under the supervision of staff of the Department. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on a good academic record, the acceptance of a topic statement and the availability of expertise in the Department to supervise the project. Further details for these degrees are given in the General Regulations.



# MATHEMATICS

## Associate Professor and Head of Department

EOD Andriantiana, MSc, PhD (Stell)

## Emeritus Professors

NT Bishop, MA (Cantab), PhD (Southampton), FRAS

M H Burton BSc Hons (Natal), MSc (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

V Murali MSc (Madras), MSc (Wales), PhD (Rhodes)

CC Remsing, MSc (Timisoara), PhD (Rhodes)

## Associate Professor

D Pollney, BMath (Waterloo), MSc (Queens), PhD (Southampton)

## Senior Lecturers

M Atemkeng, BSc (Dschang), PhD (Rhodes)

AL Pinchuck, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Wits)

## Lecturers

K Koch MSc (UKZN)

O Gobingca MSc (Rhodes)

C McLean MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

M Nxumalo MSc (UWC)

S Olonijju MSc, PhD (UKZN)

Mathematics (MAT) and Applied Mathematics (MAP) may be taken as major subjects for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn, BCom, BBusSci, BEcon and BSocSci, and for the diploma HDE(SEC).

To major in Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAM1; MAM2; MAT3.

To major in Applied Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAM1, MAM2; MAP3. See Rule S.23.

The attention of students who hope to pursue careers in the field of Bioinformatics is drawn to the recommended curriculum that leads to postgraduate study in this area, in which Mathematics is a recommended co-major with Biochemistry, and for which two years of Computer Science and either Mathematics or Mathematical Statistics are prerequisites. Details of this curriculum can be found in the entry for the Department of Biochemistry and Microbiology.

See the departmental web page for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

## FOUNDATION YEAR COURSES

The Mathematics Department offers two courses as part of the extended studies programme, providing an opportunity for students without the required school- level mathematics credits to gain the background required to enter the mainstream program.

### MAT 1F (Foundation Mathematics)

First-year, year-course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Level 4 Mathematics or the NSC or equivalent

**Course description:** A full year course for students who do not qualify for entry into MAM 1 or MAT 1S1. This is particularly suitable for students in the Social Sciences and Biological Sciences who need to become numerate or achieve a basic level in mathematics. A 60% pass gives admission to MAM 1. The goal of this course is to help students develop appropriate mathematical tools necessary to represent and interpret information quantitatively. It also develops skills and meaningful ways of thinking, reasoning and arguing with quantitative ideas in order to solve problems in any given context.

**Syllabus: Arithmetic:** Units of scientific measurement, scales, dimensions; Error and uncertainty in measure values. Fractions and percentages - usages in basic science and commerce; use of calculators and spreadsheets.

**Algebra:** Polynomial, exponential, logarithmic and trigonometric functions and their graphs; modelling with functions; fitting curves to data; setting up and solving equations. Sequences and series, presentation of statistical data. **Differential Calculus:** Limits and continuity; Rules of differentiation; Applications of Calculus in curve sketching and optimisation.

This course is equivalent to MAT 1S1.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at tutorials and tests. 40% for the class record.

**Assessment:** June class record 20%, June Examination 30%, November class record 20%, November Examination 30%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49% average of the June and November final marks

**Subminimum for June:** 40% to continue into the second semester

### **Theory of Finance 1F (TOF 1F):**

First-year, year-course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Level 4 Mathematics or the NSC or equivalent

**Course description:** A full year course for students planning to enter the degree program in the Faculty of Commerce. The course material is identical to that of the TOF course (listed below), but covered at a slower pace over the course of two semesters. **Syllabus:** See description of TOF1, below.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, June Examination 35%, November Examination 35%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49% average of the June and November final marks.

**Subminimum for June:** None

## **FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES**

**Mathematics 1 (MAM 1):** This is a year-long semesterised two-credit course. Credit in MAM 1 must be obtained by students who wish to major in certain subjects (such as Mathematics, Applied Mathematics, Physics and Mathematical Statistics) and by students registered for the BBusSci degree.

**Introductory Mathematics (MAT 1S1):** A semester-long course recommended for Pharmacy students and for Science students who do not need credits in MAM 1.

**Theory of Finance (TOF 1C1):** A single semester course taken for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce emphasising mathematical techniques required in finance and financial applications.

### **Course descriptions**

#### **Mathematics 1 (MAM 1)**

There are two first-year courses in Mathematics for candidates planning to major in Mathematics or Applied Mathematics. MAT 101 is held in the first semester and MAM 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the two-credit course MAM 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the department. Candidates must obtain at least 40% for MAM 101 in order to be permitted to continue with MAM 102.

#### **MAM 101**

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Level 5 Mathematics on the NSC or equivalent

**Course description:** Basic concepts (number systems, functions), calculus (limits, continuity, differentiation, curve sketching, introduction to integration), propositional calculus, proof techniques, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem, vectors, lines and planes, matrices and systems of linear equations.

**DP requirements:** Class record of at least 40% including two test results

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with MAM 102

#### **MAM 102**

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% MAM 101

**Course description:** Calculus (integration, applications of integration, improper integrals, ordinary differential equations), complex numbers, sequences and series including Taylor series.

**DP requirements:** Class record of at least 40% including two test results

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with MAM 101

### Introductory Mathematics (MAT 1S1)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Level 4 Mathematics or the NSC or equivalent

**Course description:** Functions: Review of coordinate geometry, absolute values (including graphs); Inequalities; Power functions, trig functions, exponential functions, the number  $e$  (including graphs); Inverse functions: roots, logs,  $\ln$  (including graphs); Graphs and working with graphs; Interpretation of graphs, modeling; Introduction to differentiation and basic derivatives; Differentiation techniques (product, quotient and chain rules); Introduction to integration and basic integrals; modeling, translation of real-world problems into mathematics.

**DP requirements:** Class record of 40% including two test results.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

### Theory of Finance (TOF 1C1)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** Level 4 Mathematics or the NSC equivalent

**Course description:** A single semester course for students planning to enter the degree program in the Faculty of Commerce. Syllabus: Simple Interest and Simple Discount, compound Interest, simple and complex annuities, loans, linear equations, linear programming, depreciation, differentiation, application of differentiation, integration

**DP requirement:** Class record of 40%

**Assessment:** Class record 20%, Examination 80%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

The Department offers a common second-year program for students intending to major in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics.

Mathematics and Applied Mathematics 2 (MAM 2) comprises two semesterised courses, MAM 201 and MAM 202. Each course may be obtained separately, alternatively, an aggregate mark of 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course MAM 2, provided a sub-minimum of 40% is achieved in both semesters.

### MAM 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** MAM 1

**Course description:** This course is comprised of three modules which run concurrently throughout the semester:

- **Multivariable Calculus:** Partial differentiation: directional derivatives and the gradient vector; maxima and minima of surfaces; Lagrange multipliers. Multiple integrals: surface and volume integrals in general coordinate systems. Vector calculus: vector fields, line integrals, fundamental theorem of line integrals, Green's theorem, curl and divergence, parametric curves and surfaces.
- **Ordinary Differential Equations:** First order ordinary differential equations, linear differential equations of second order, Laplace transforms, systems of equations, series solutions.
- **Mathematical Modeling and Programming 1:** Introduction to the python programming language, basic syntax, tools, programming principles. Applications taken from MAM 2 modules. This course continues over both semesters.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with MAM 202

### MAM 202

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% MAM 201

**Course description:** This course is comprised of four modules which run concurrently throughout the semester:

- **Linear Algebra:** Linear spaces, inner products, norms. Vector spaces, spans, linear independence, basis and dimension. Linear transformations, change of basis, eigenvalues, diagonalization and its applications.
- **Introduction to Algebra and Analysis:** Set theory; mappings; binary operations; equivalence relations and order; groups.
- **Introduction to Analysis:** Real numbers; open and closed intervals; sequences and series (convergence); functions of a real

variable (continuity, limit); series of functions; Taylor series.

- **Mathematical Modelling and Programming 2:** Introduction to the python programming language, basic syntax, tools, programming principles. Applications taken from MAM 2 modules. This course continues over both semesters.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with MAM 201

### THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

**Entrance requirement:** MAM 2

The two majors, Mathematics (MAT) and Applied Mathematics (MAP), are organised into the semester-modules listed below:

	Major	NQF credits and level
MAM 311: Complex Analysis	MAP and MAT	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAP 311: Numerical Analysis	MAP	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAP 312: Dynamical Systems	MAP	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAP 314: Partial Differential Equations	MAP	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAT 311: Algebra	MAT	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAT 313: Real Analysis	MAT	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAT 315: Topics in Mathematics	MAT	NQF level 7, 18 credits

A major in MAP requires an average mark of at least 50% over the four modules MAP 311, MAP 312, MAP 314 and MAM 311, with at least 50% in two of the modules and a subminimum of 40% in each course.

A major in MAT requires an average mark of at least 50% over the four modules MAT 311, MAT 313, MAT 315 and MAM 311, with at least 50% in

two of the modules and a subminimum of 40% in each course.

Students who obtain an average of at least 50% over all seven courses will be granted credit for both MAP 3 and MAT 3, provided that the average of the MAP modules is at least 50% and the average of the MAT modules is at least 50%, two of the MAT and two of the MAP modules are passed with at least 50%, and a minimum of 40% is achieved in each module.

Individual modules may be carried forward from year to year.

Changes to the topics offered may be made from time-to-time depending on the interests of the academic staff.

### Course descriptions

#### MAM 311 - Complex Analysis

(This is a common course required by both MAP and MAT majors.) Revision of complex numbers, Cauchy- Riemann equations, analytic and harmonic functions, elementary functions and their properties, branches of logarithmic functions, complex differentiation, integration in the complex plane, Cauchy's Theorem and integral formula, Taylor and Laurent series, Residue theory and applications. Fourier Integrals.

#### MAP 311 - Numerical Analysis

Systems of non-linear equations, polynomial interpolation, cubic splines, numerical linear algebra, numerical computation of eigenvalues, numerical differentiation and integration, numerical solution of ordinary and partial differential equations, finite differences, approximation theory, discrete Fourier transform.

#### MAP 312: Dynamical Systems

Differential equations and iterated maps as dynamical systems. Geometric representation of trajectories.

Limiting behaviour of trajectories in linear and nonlinear systems. Equilibria of linear systems and linearisation of hyperbolic equilibria of nonlinear systems. Invariant sets and attractors. Bifurcation and chaos in nonlinear maps. Notions of stability. Some applications of dynamical systems in modeling.

#### MAP 314: Partial Differential Equations

First- order partial differential equations, classification of second-order equations, construction and behaviour of solutions, the method of characteristics, shocks and nonlinear phenomena, maximum principles, energy integrals, Fourier transform methods.

#### MAT 311: Algebra

Sets, equivalence relations, groups, rings, fields, integral domains, homomorphisms, isomorphisms, and their elementary properties.

#### MAT 313: Real Analysis

Topology of the real line, continuity and uniform continuity, Heine- Borel, Bolzano-Weierstrass, uniform convergence, introduction to metric spaces.

**MAT315 - Topics in Mathematics:** This course consists of two modules:

- Module A - Topology: Topological Spaces (Fundamental concepts, Interior, closure, density, Subspaces, Bases), Continuity, Separation axioms (including T0, T1, T2).
- Module B -Discrete Mathematics: Permutations, combinations, generating functions, recursions, inclusion- exclusion, graph theory.

**DP requirements:** Per course – consult lecturer

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60% (each course)

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% per course

### HONORS LEVEL COURSES

#### Mathematics and Applied Mathematics Honours

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** Each of the two courses (Mathematics and Applied Mathematics) consists of six topics and one project. A Mathematics Honours degree usually requires the candidate to have majored in Mathematics (MAT 3). An Applied Mathematics Honours degree usually requires the candidate to have majored in Applied Mathematics (MAP 3).

The topics are selected from the following general areas covering a wide spectrum of contemporary mathematics: Algebra; Algebraic Graph Theory; Combinatorics; Functional Analysis; General Relativity; Geometry; Information Theory; Manifolds, Measure Theory; Number Theory; Numerical Modelling; Statistical mechanics;

Continuum Mechanics; Topology; Category Theory; Spectral Collocation Method

### **Joint Honours in Mathematics or Applied Mathematics**

For joint Honours programmes, an approved selection of topics may be taken from the options listed above. These modules must contribute to between 40% and 60% of the final grade.

It is also possible to substitute individual modules from other departments into a Mathematics or Applied Mathematics honours programme, with the approval of the Heads of the departments concerned. Alternatively, honours modules from the Department of Mathematics may be considered by other departments as components of their postgraduate courses, again with the approval of the departments concerned.

### **MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES IN MATHEMATICS OR APPLIED MATHEMATICS**

#### **Masters degrees**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

#### **PhD degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to these degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

A Master's degree in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics may be taken by thesis only, or by a combination of course work and a thesis. If course work is offered, normally four examination papers and/or essays are required in addition to the thesis. The course of study must be approved by the Head of Department.

# MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY

## Head of Department and Senior Lecturer

B McConnachie, BMus, MMus, PhD, PGCE, RULS (Rhodes)

## Associate Professors

J Brukman, BMus, BMus (Hons), MMus, DMus, ATCL, LTCL, UTLM, UPLM, UALM (UNISA)  
C Foxcroft, BMus (UCT), UPLM (UNISA), MMus (HMTMH, Germany), Diplomsolistin (HMTMH, Germany), DMus (UP)

## Senior Lecturer and Director: ILAM

L Watkins, BA (Hons), MA (UKZN), PhD (Hong Kong, China), HDE (UWC)

## Lecturers

W Fourie, BMus (US), MSt (Oxon), PhD (RHUL)  
D Daula, BMus, BMus (Hons) (UCT), MMus (RNCM)

## Junior Lecturer

C Cooper, BMus, MMus, RULS, BSocSci (Hons) (Rhodes)

## Research Associates

N Ramanna, BMus (UN), PhD (UKZN)  
JF Viljoen PhD (Rhodes)

## Librarian

I Chiroombo BMus, MMus (Rhodes)

## Sound Engineer: ILAM

E Madiba, BMusEd (UPE), MMus (Rhodes)

## THE BACHELOR OF MUSIC DEGREE

### (BMus)

The four-year BMus degree is intended for students who wish to pursue music as a profession. To be recognised as a teaching qualification it must be combined with the Postgraduate Certificate in Education (PGCE) offered by the Faculty of Education. Students who wish to take more than the minimum number of BMus courses in any one year may do so, subject to the approval of the Dean of Humanities.

## Music as a subject in other degree courses

### (Humanities and Science Faculties)

Music, Culture and History (MCH), Music Theory and Analysis (MTA), Instrumental Music Studies (IMS) or Sound Technology (STC) may be taken as a three-year major subject for the BA and BSc degrees.

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### INSTRUMENTAL MUSIC STUDIES

Instrumental Music Studies (IMS) is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science. It comprises two musical genres: Western Art and African Music.

### Instrumental Music Studies 1 (IMS 1)

First-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

#### Entrance requirements:

**Western Art:** Matric music or equivalent (ABRSM/UNISA/ TRINITY Gr 5) plus an audition at Rhodes University. Students who lack the literacy skills and knowledge necessary for IMS 1 are required to register for MTA 101 and 102.

**African Ensemble:** no prior musical experience required.

#### Course description:

**Western Art:** This includes the study of a major instrument, ensemble training, aural training, and a literature paper. Syllabi for the various instruments are available from the Department of Music and Musicology. The "instrument" includes voice and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department. **African Ensemble:** The year will focus on skills which include learning songs and dances from Southern Africa, the marimba, various drumming styles, the mbira, other African instruments and a written module on the fundamentals of African music.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Year mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

### Instrumental Music Studies 2 (IMS 2)

Second-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

#### Entrance requirements:

**Western Art:** IMS 1 or equivalent (ABRSM/UNISA/TRINITY Gr 7) plus an audition at RU.

**African Ensemble:** IMS 1 *Co-requisite (for major): MTA 101 and 102*

#### Course description:

**Western Art:** This includes the study of a major instrument, ensemble training, aural training and a

literature and pedagogy paper. Syllabi for the various instruments are available from the Department of Music and Musicology. The “instrument” includes voice and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

**African Ensemble:** The year refines and builds upon skills learnt in IMS 1 and includes a module on instrument making. Students are encouraged to take MTA 101 and 102 to progress to IMS 3.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Year mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

### **Instrumental Music Studies 3 (IMS 3)**

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:**

**Western Art:** IMS 2.

**African Ensemble:** IMS 2 and MTA 101 and 102

**Course description:**

**Western Art:** This includes the study of a major instrument, ensemble training, aural training and a literature and pedagogy paper. Syllabi for the various instruments are available from the Department of Music and Musicology. The “instrument” includes voice and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

**African Ensemble:** The year refines and builds upon skills learnt in IMS 1 and 2.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Year mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

**NB** All IMS students are required to take part in at least one ensemble approved by the HoD. Possible ensembles include but are not limited to: RU Chamber Choir, Opera / Vocal Ensemble, RU Orchestra Makana Orchestra, and African Ensemble for the duration of their course of study. Please note that tuition in and examination of the ensemble component (or second instrument) of Instrumental Music Studies is in addition to these requirements. Attendance of a minimum of 80% of the rehearsal schedule is obligatory.

### **MUSIC, THEORY AND ANALYSIS**

Music, Theory and Analysis is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula

in the Faculties of Humanities and Science.

### **Music, Theory and Analysis 101 (MTA 101)**

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** MTA 101 is a one-semester course introducing students to the core elements of music literacy.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Semester mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### **Music, Theory and Analysis 102 (MTA 102)**

First-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** MTA 101

**Course description:** MTA 102 focuses on more advanced aspects of music literacy. Students who pass the Music Theory entrance test with a mark of 65% or more may register for IMS 1 without registering for MTA 101/102. For those registering for IMS 2 and/or 3 successful completion of MTA 101 and 102 is required.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Semester mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### **Music, Theory and Analysis 2 (MTA 2)**

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** MTA 1. Students who can demonstrate significant proficiency in theory as determined by an entrance examination may be permitted to register for MTA 2 at the discretion of the HOD

**Course description:** Music Theory and Analysis 2 introduces students to compositional practices and analytical skills.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Year mark counts 50%; June and November examinations count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

### **Music, Theory and Analysis 3 (MTA 3)**

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** MTA 2



**Course description:** Music Theory and Analysis 3 introduces students to compositional practices in Western Romantic music through a study of chromatic harmony and four-part harmony, twentieth & twenty-first century musics, and African art music studied through analysis of representative works.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Year mark counts 50%; June and November examinations count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

## MUSIC, CULTURE AND HISTORY

Music, Culture and History (MCH) is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science. There are two semester modules per year offered in Music Culture and History: Musicology and Ethnomusicology.

### Ethnomusicology 101 (MCH 101)

First-year, semesterised course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** An introduction to the study of music's function in various societies.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Semester mark counts 30%; November examinations count 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Musicology 102 (MCH 102)

First-year, semesterised course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** An introduction to the historical study of Western music.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Semester mark counts 50%; November examinations count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Musicology 201 (MCH 201)

Second-year, semesterised course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** MCH 102

**Course description:** Covers topics in music history.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance.

**Assessment:** Semester mark counts 50%; November examinations count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Ethnomusicology 202 (MCH 202)

Second -year, semesterised course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** MCH 101

**Course description:** Covers field work and ethnography.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Semester mark counts 30%; November examinations count 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Music, Culture and History 3

Third-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** MCH 101, 102, 201, and 202 or at the discretion of the course coordinator.

**Course description:** Music Culture and History 3 includes specialist topics in the contemporary debates around music studies and is presented in an interdisciplinary way which integrates musicology and ethnomusicology.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance

**Assessment:** Year mark counts 50%; November examinations counts 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

### Sound Technology

Sound Technology is a major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science.

### Sound Technology 1 (STC 1S1)

First-year, semesterised course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Course description:** Introduction to audio/ visual production with the aim of producing podcasts and documentaries.

**DP requirements:** 80% lecture attendance  
**Assessment:** Year mark counts 50%; June examination counts 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

**Sound Technology 2 (STC 2)**

Second-year, year course  
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** STC 1S1

**Course description:** Fundamentals of studio recording techniques, utilising both the analogue and digital protocols.

**DP requirements:** 80% lecture attendance

**Assessment:** Year mark counts 50%; June and November examinations count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

**Sound Technology 3 (STC 3)**

Third-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Sound Technology 2

**Course description:** The course builds on the theory introduced in Sound Technology 2 and provides exposure to additional and more in-depth practical applications. The course also includes additional modules on room acoustics, synthesis and the MIDI protocol.

**DP requirements:** 80% lecture attendance

**Assessment:** Year mark counts 50%; June and November examinations count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** N/A

*Note: STC 3 may not be offered every year.*

**Music Health and the Brain (MHB 1S2)**

First-year, semesterised course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** Music, Health and the Brain is an interdisciplinary study of some elements of human engagement with music, focusing on musical cognition, emotion, identity and music's therapeutic potential.

**DP requirements:** 80% lecture attendance

**Assessment:** Semester mark counts 50%; November examinations count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** N/A

**MUSIC 4 (MUS 4)**

Fourth-year course  
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** BMus 3

**Course description:** This course is completed in the fourth year of study. Students must complete five papers or the equivalent of 120 credits. Subject

to student preferences and the availability of staff, the topics for the papers are selected from the list below.

**DP requirement:** 80% attendance

**Supplementary exam:** None. BMus 4 is assessed by continuous assessment. Students are given the chance to resubmit assessments for modules during the course of the year.

**Assessment:** A proposal for the Compulsory 1 paper must be passed by the Music Research Committee to gain entry to examination. Examination marks of papers are aggregated into 100% of the candidate's mark.

**Compulsory 1:** At least one of the following:

- Paper 1: Extended Research Project (48 credits) or
- Paper 2: Full Recital (48 credits) or
- Paper 3: Full Creative Portfolio (48 credits)
- Paper 4: Sound Technology Portfolio (48 credits)

**Compulsory 2:**

- Paper 5: Research Methodologies (24 credits)
- Options: Remaining credit points are acquired from the following courses. All options are not necessarily offered every year.
- Paper 6: Analysis 4 (24 credits)
- Paper 7: Short Research Project (24 credits)\*
- Paper 8: Short Creative Portfolio (24 credits)\*
- Paper 9: Short Sound Technology Portfolio (24 credits)\*
- Paper 10: Short Public Performance (24 credits)\*
- Paper 11: Arts Management (24 credits)

*\*Paper 7 may not be taken in conjunction with Papers 1. Paper 8 may not be taken in conjunction with Paper 3. Paper 9 may not be taken in conjunction with Paper 4. Paper 10 may not be taken in conjunction with Paper 2.*

**POSTGRADUATE COURSES****Joint Honours**

Full-year course  
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed degree with one music major.

**Course description:** Must complete BMus 4 Compulsory 1 and a Compulsory 2 paper. Elective

papers equivalent in credits to those in the BMus 4 curriculum can be selected from the joining department.

### **Interdisciplinary Honours Degree**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed degree with one music major.

**Course description:** Must complete BMus 4 Compulsory 1 and a Compulsory 2 paper. Elective papers equivalent in credits to those in the BMus 4 curriculum can be selected from the joining department.

### **Master's Degree (MMUS)**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** BMus or a completed BA Honours or BSc Honours in Music degree.

**Course description:** A Master's degree may be awarded by submission of a thesis, a portfolio of compositions\*, two public recitals\* (60%) and mini-thesis (40%), two public recitals (60%) and short composition portfolio (40%).

*\*Any culture or style may be included.*

#### ● **Thesis**

The research proposal and title of the thesis must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within four months of registration for the degree.

#### ● **Composition**

The nature and scope of the compositions must receive the prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, before submission. Candidates must also submit an explanatory commentary on important structural, textural and stylistic aspects of the work submitted, including its contextualisation within contemporary South Africa. A candidate who submits a set of compositions shall be required to submit three copies of the compositions together with suitable recordings.

#### ● **Performance and Mini-Thesis and/or Short Composition Portfolio**

The nature and scope of public recitals (60%) and mini-thesis (40%) and/or Short Composition Portfolio (40%) must receive prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, and a departmental subcommittee. The research proposal and title of the mini-thesis must also be approved by the Departmental Postgraduate Research Committee within four months of registration for the degree.

Options available for the recitals are as follows:

- 1) performance in two separate public solo recitals  
or
- 2) one public solo recital and one full chamber recital or
- 3) one public solo recital, one short chamber recital and one concerto, where the genres are applicable to the culture or style of the chosen instrument.

*\*Any culture or style may be included.*

### **Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed Master's degree in Music or equivalent.

**Course description:** A PhD may be awarded by the submission of:

- 1) a thesis (90 000 words)
- 2) a set of compositions consisting of at least three substantial original compositions (not less than 70 minutes in duration). The candidate must also submit an explanatory statement (not less than 25 000 words) referring to important aspects of the scores, including in particular a description of the form or forms employed and of any contrapuntal, harmonic and orchestration devices used. This document should detail the portfolio's theme or contextualising thread. Recordings of compositions are required.
- 3)
- 4) three performances (60 – 70 min duration) and a mini-thesis (50 000 words) (examined as an integrated project)

### **Degree of Doctor of Music (Senior Doctorate)**

(360 credits at NQF level 10)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed Master's degree in Music or equivalent.

**Course description:** A candidate for the degree of DMus is required to submit for the approval of Senate a published work or a set of compositions. The published work must be of historical or theoretical or analytical research in music and must open new aspects of the subject discussed.

A set of compositions must consist of three original compositions, the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and the Departmental Postgraduate Research

Committee.

## CURRICULUM FOR BMUS DEGREE

### FIRST YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 1  
 Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102  
 Electives:  
 Music Culture and History 101 and 102  
 OR  
 Sound Technology 1S1 and Music, Health and the Brain 1S2  
 AND  
 one Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science course.

### SECOND YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 2  
 Music Theory and Analysis 2  
 Electives:  
 Music Culture and History 201 and 202  
 OR  
 Sound Technology 2  
 AND  
 one Bachelor of Arts or Science course

### THIRD YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 3  
*Electives:*  
 Students choose one of the following courses:

- MCH 3
- MTA 3
- STC 3

### FOURTH YEAR

Students must do FIVE papers or the equivalent of 120 credits. All choices are subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

#### Paper 1: Extended Research Project (48 credits)

The candidate is required to submit an appropriately researched extended essay of not more than 10 000 words on a subject approved by the Music Research Committee. An electronic copy of the extended essay must be presented for examination.

#### Paper 2: Full Recital (48 credits)

A public recital of not less than 70 minutes. Repertoire subject to the approval of the Music Research Committee.

#### Paper 3: Full Creative Portfolio (48 credits)

The portfolio must consist of a minimum of 20 minutes of music, representing at least two of the following categories:

Solo Instrument.  
 Ensemble including Choir (up to 10 instruments or Double Choir of 8 voices).  
 Voice or solo instrument with accompaniment.  
 Orchestra (Chamber or Symphony)/Large Ensemble.

#### Paper 4: Sound Technology Portfolio (48 credits)

Studio recording and mixing down using both analogue and digital protocols. A portfolio of 8 mixed down works must be submitted as 50 % of the course requirement.

#### Paper 5: Research Methodologies (24 credits)

Introduces students to a broad range of research methodologies. Students are required to submit a portfolio of six assignments and a proposal for their Compulsory 1 paper. The final mark is an aggregation of the individual marks for the portfolio assignments.

#### Paper 6: Analysis 4 (24 credits)

Advanced analytical projects in Western art music and/or jazz and/or African music.

#### Paper 7: Short Research Project (24 credits)

The candidate is required to submit an appropriately researched extended essay of not more than 5000 words on a subject approved by the appointed supervisor. An electronic copy of the extended essay must be presented for examination.

#### Paper 8: Short Creative Portfolio (24 credits)

Individual project(s) in composition leading to the submission of a short, varied portfolio of completed work. Minimum composition time of 10 minutes.

#### Paper 9: Short Sound Technology Portfolio (24 credits)

Studio recording and mixing down using both analogue and digital protocols. A portfolio of 4 mixed down works must be submitted as 50 % of the course requirement.

#### Paper 10: Short public performance (24 credits)

A recital of not less than 35 minutes with works approved by the Head of Department after

consultation with the full-time staff.

**Paper 11: Arts Management (24 credits)**

This course provides an overview of arts management using dialogue, research and practical illustration through informal and interactive sessions. The objectives are to equip the student with vital skills required in the arts environment, both nationally and internationally.

*NB. Not all fourth year/honours papers are necessarily available every year.*

**BA, BSocSci, BSc, Honours Degrees with Music as a Major**

Normally not more than FIVE music subjects may be taken in the BA or FOUR in a BSc degree (see the relevant Faculty Rules).

**FIRST YEAR COURSES**

Students may choose from the following courses:

Instrumental Music Studies 1

Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102

Music Culture and History 101 and 102

Sound Technology 1S1

**SECOND YEAR COURSES**

Students may choose from the following courses:

Instrumental Music Studies 2

Music Culture and History 201 and 202

Music Theory and Analysis 2

Sound Technology 2

**THIRD YEAR COURSES**

Students may choose one of the following:

Instrumental Music Studies 3

Music Culture and History 3

Music Theory and Analysis 3

Sound Technology 3

**MUSIC HONOURS (BA or BSc)**

Curriculum and syllabi are identical to BMus fourth year.

**INTERNATIONAL LIBRARY OF AFRICAN MUSIC**

The International Library of African Music (ILAM) an independent research institute and archive. Internationally recognised as a leading centre for the study of African music, it offers opportunities for undergraduate studies and postgraduate research in Ethnomusicology. ILAM occupies a purpose-built building with an archive, library, sound digitizing lab, recording studio, outdoor performance area, and is a prominent resource centre for research in various sub-Saharan African musical traditions.

# FACULTY OF PHARMACY

## Dean of the Faculty and Head of Pharmacy

Associate Professor SMM Khamanga, BSc (Swaziland), BPharm, MSc (Pharm), PhD (Rhodes)

## Deputy Dean of the Faculty and Deputy Head of Pharmacy

C Oltmann, BSc (Med)(Hons)(Wits), MSc, BPharm (Rhodes), PGDHET, PhD (Rhodes), MPS (SA)

## PHARMACEUTICS

### Professor of Pharmaceutics

RB Walker, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes), FPS (SA)

### Associate Professor

SMM Khamanga, BSc (Swaziland), BPharm, MSc (Pharm), PhD (Rhodes)

### Lecturer and Head of Division

N Paterson, BPharm, MSc (Pharm)(Rhodes), MHealth Econ and Pharmaecon (UPF)

### Lecturer

GM Purcell, BPharm, MPharm (NMMU)  
UM Sibanda, BPharm, MPharm (SMU)

## PHARMACEUTICAL CHEMISTRY

### Associate Professor

SD Khanye, BSc (Hons) (Wits), MSc (Wits), PhD (UCT)

### Associate Professor

R Tandlich, MS (SUT), PhD (NDSU)

### Head of Division

N Paterson, BPharm, MSc (Pharm)(Rhodes), MHealth Econ and Pharmaecon (UPF)

### Senior Lecturers

ED Goosen, BSc (Hons) (UOFS), MSc (Weizmann Institute), PhD (UFS), HDE (UPE), PGDHE (Rhodes)  
NP Ngqwala, BSc (Hons) (UFH), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

## PHARMACY PRACTICE

### Associate Professor and Head of Division

SF Burton, Dip (Pharm) (NT), MSc (Pharmacol) (Rhodes), PhD (Pharm) (NMMU), MPS (SA)

### Senior Lecturer

C Oltmann, BSc (Med) (Hons) (Wits), MSc, BPharm (Rhodes), PGDHET, PhD (Rhodes), MPS (SA)

### Lecturers

C Magadza, BPharm (Rhodes), MSc (Pharm) (Rhodes), MPS (SA)  
F Chiwanza, BPharm, MPharm (Rhodes)  
GZ Ngodwane, BPharm (Rhodes)

### Lecturer-Clinical Training

DL van Dyk, B.Soc.Sc (Nursing), H.B.Soc.Sci (Nursing), PGDip (Nursing Education) (UOFS), MA (Higher Education Studies) (UFS)

## PHARMACOLOGY

### Associate Professor and Head of Division

ME Mothibe, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Med Pharmacology)(Medunsa), PhD (SMU)

### Senior Lecturer-Pharmacotherapy

L Allan, BPharm, MPharm (Rhodes), MPS (SA)  
P Makoni, BPharm, MSc (Pharm) PhD (Rhodes)

### Lecturer

H Walsh, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

### Senior Lecturer, Anatomy & Physiology

N Sibiya, BMed Sci (Hons) (UKZN), PhD (UKZN)

### Lecturer, Anatomy & Physiology

T Dukhan, BHSc, BHSc Hons, MSc (Med) (Wits)

### Instrument Scientist

Vacant

### Visiting Professors

MP Ducharme, BA, BPharm, RPEBC, DPH (Montreal), PharmD (Wayne State), FCCP, FCP BD Glass, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes), BSc (Chem) (Hons), BTech (Hons) (UPE), MPS (Aus)  
SC Srinivas, BPharm, MPharm (Bangalore), PGDHE (Rhodes), PhD (RGUHS)

### Visiting Fellows

PW Hill, DipPharm (Wits), PhD (Rhodes), CMW  
A Gray, BPharm, MSc (Pharm) (Rhodes), FPS, FFIP  
S Patnala, PhD (Rhodes)  
C Veale, BPharm (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)  
Y van Deventer, BPharm, MSc (Pharm) (NWU), MPS (SA)

**Research Associates**

BD Patterson, BS (Pharmacy) (NDSU), MS  
(Hospital Pharmacy), PhD (Iowa)

**Emeritus Professors**

H Parolis, PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, MPS(SA),  
FRSSAF

I Kanfer, BSc (Pharm), BSc (Hons), PhD  
(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS (SA)

JM Haigh, BSc (Pharm), BSc (Hons) (Rhodes),  
PhD (UCT), MRPharmS, MPS (SA)

S Daya, BSc(UDW), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(MED)  
(MEDUNSA)

**Emeritus Associate Professors**

BJ Wilson, MSc (Sask), PhD (Purdue)

WT Futter, BCom, MCom (Rhodes), ACIS

R Dowse, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes), MPS (SA)

**Clinical Fellows**

GPG Boon, MBChB (UCT), FCP (SA) (Paed)

AG Parrish, MBChB, MMed (UCT), MMedSc  
(Newcastle), FCP (SA)

S Singh, BPharm, PharmD (Rhodes)

M Bodenstein, BPharm (NMU), MPharm (NWU)

G S Kalyatanda, MBBS (JSS Medical College)

L Graham, BSc (Psychology), BVM BVS  
(University of Sussex)

V Henge-Daweti, BPharm, PharmD (Rhodes),  
MSc (Med Pharmacy) (UL), MA Welfare Public  
Health Management (NMU)

The Faculty of Pharmacy aims to accomplish its specific objectives as outlined in its Mission and Vision of the Faculty (see Faculty of Pharmacy entry section of this calendar) in the following manner:

- Provision of formal training in both undergraduate and postgraduate degrees, and
- Undertaking research and involvement in Community and Professional service.

The BPharm degree has been registered as an NQF Level 8 qualification. The following information is a summary of the documentation submitted to the NQF to register the qualification. The BPharm curriculum is accredited by the South African Pharmacy Council.

**Purpose of the BPharm degree (Competence)**

Learners who have completed the BPharm have the education and training to enter the pharmacy profession as interns and gain the necessary experience and confidence to render a professional service as pharmacists to the community. As a pharmacist registered with the South African Pharmacy Council, the learner will be able to practise the profession of Pharmacy and serve as a:

- Custodian of medicines;
- Formulator, manufacturer, distributor and controller of safe, effective and quality medicine;
- Advisor on the safe, rational and appropriate use of medicines;
- Provider of essential clinical services including screening and referral services;
- Provider of health care education and information;

**Exit Level Outcomes (Capabilities)**

The exit level outcomes for the BPharm curriculum indicate that on completion of the degree, the candidate will be able to:

- Participate in the manufacturing, compounding and packaging of pharmaceutical products
- Participate in the procurement, storage and distribution of pharmaceutical materials and products
- Dispense and ensure the optimal use of medicines prescribed to the patient
- Provide pharmacist-initiated-care to the patient and ensure the optimal use of medicine
- Provide education and information on health care and medicine
- Promote community health and provide related information and advice
- Participate in research to ensure the optimal use of medicine.

**Critical cross field outcomes (for undergraduate degrees)**

- Identify and solve problems
- Work in a team
- Organise and manage themselves
- Collect, analyse and evaluate information

- Communicate effectively
- Use science and technology
- Recognise problem solving contexts
- Reflect on and explore effective learning strategies
- Participate as a responsible citizen
- Be culturally and aesthetically sensitive
- Explore education and career opportunities
- Develop entrepreneurial opportunities

**Critical cross-field outcomes of the BPharm curriculum indicate that on completion of the degree, the candidate will be able to:**

- Identify, analyse and solve problems related to the provision of pharmaceutical care using creative approaches
- Work effectively with others as a member of a team of health care professionals in applying pharmaceutical care management principles.
- Organise and manage activities responsibly and effectively in contributing to the institution and broader community
- Collect, analyse, organise and critically evaluate information in using evidence-based approaches in provision of services and information to develop a pharmaceutical product or enhance pharmaceutical care programmes and services
- Communicate effectively using visual, mathematical and/or language skills in the modes of oral, written and/or practical presentation in a sustained discourse.
- Use science and technology, including informatics, in pharmacy effectively and critically, showing responsibility towards the environment and health of others by promoting ethical conduct in all contexts
- Demonstrate an understanding of the world as a set of related systems by recognising that problem-solving contexts do not exist in isolation

**Specific exit level outcomes (Abilities)**

The primary aim of pharmacy education is to develop life-long learners who can provide a professional service to the community using their knowledge, skills, professional thinking, behaviour and attitudes in all avenues of pharmacy practice,

as caring health care providers and managers of health care resources. On completion of the undergraduate programme, the learner must demonstrate the following knowledge, skills, professional thinking, behaviour and attitudes.

**Knowledge outcomes**

On completion of the degree, the candidate will be able to:

- Use science and technology to formulate, manufacture, distribute and use drugs and medicines
- Identify and manage diseases, their processes, as well as environmental and social determinants
- Apply the principles of disease prevention and health promotion, with emphasis on primary health care as an integral part of the health care team
- Apply the principles of pharmacotherapy, the effect of drugs and medicines in the body, the appropriateness of different drug delivery systems and the ability to assess the effect of medicines in the body
- Use appropriate and cost-effective screening and monitoring procedures
- Be able to solve problems that arise with the use of medicines and predict, identify, prevent and/ or treat such problems
- Understand human behaviour, relationships and communication, individually and in the context of the community so as to work effectively with people
- Identify and resolve ethical and legal issues relevant to the practice of pharmacy
- Manage the provision of health care at national, community and individual practice level
- Promote and deliver cost effective health care
- Apply the principles and procedures governing research, with particular emphasis on evidence- based medicine

**Skills**

On completion of the degree learners must be able to demonstrate proficiency in the skills required for pharmacy practice, including the following:

- Laboratory skills



- Clinical skills and procedures, including patient history taking, assessing patient data, formulating treatment plans and follow-up plans
- Management skills
- Computer skills
- Communication skills and language proficiency
- The ability to work in a multi-disciplinary team

### **Attitudinal and behavioural outcomes**

On completion of the degree learners should be able to demonstrate behaviour essential to the practice of pharmacy, with particular reference to:

- Respect for patients and colleagues, without judgement or prejudice with regard to race, culture, and/or gender amongst others
- Recognition of human and patients' rights
- A positive approach to self-directed life-long learning
- A positive approach towards primary health care
- An awareness of moral and ethical responsibilities
- A desire and ability to practice legally and ethically
- A desire and ability to ensure patient care of the highest possible quality
- An awareness of personal limitations and a willingness to seek help when necessary
- A positive attitude towards change and functioning within the uncertainties of our times
- A positive attitude towards the advancement of medical and health related knowledge

### **Assessment**

Assessment will take place using tests, assignments, practicals, presentations, written and/or oral examinations and any other relevant forms of assessment. Continuous assessment is emphasised, especially during the first two years of study.

### **Quality Assurance**

The Quality Assurance system for this qualification relies on:

- External examiners
- Internal moderation
- Monitoring and accreditation by the South African Pharmacy Council
- South African Qualifications Authority
- Internal reviews by the University in terms of its quality assurance criteria
- Higher Education Quality Committee

### **Articulation**

The possession of a BPharm degree permits both vertical and horizontal articulation. Graduates may gain access to postgraduate studies at the Master, PhD and/or PharmD levels.

Candidates may receive exemption for some first-year courses obtained at other tertiary level learning institutions.

## **COURSES FOR THE BACHELOR OF PHARMACY DEGREE**

**Chemistry 1:** Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) is offered in the first semester and Chemistry 102 (CHE 102) in the second semester. Both courses are taught by the Chemistry Department. CHE 101 includes learning about chemical symbols and numeracy, nuclear chemistry, atomic structure and bonding, chemical and physical equilibrium, introduction to organic chemistry. CHE 102 includes learning about properties of inorganic systems, chemistry and the environment, organic functional group chemistry, biological building blocks, reaction rates, chemical thermodynamics and electrochemistry.

**Cell Biology (CEL101):** is offered in the first semester. The course is taught by the Botany and Zoology Departments. This course compares cell structure in prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells and examines cellular processes including cell to cell communication, photosynthesis and cell respiration. Cell division and fundamental genetics, including the structure of genetic material and how it controls cellular processes are also included.

**Mathematics for Life Sciences (MAT 1S):** A study of mathematical concepts and applications

relevant for the study and practice of Pharmacy. The course is taught by the Mathematics Department.

**Introduction to ICT (Information and Communication Technology) (CSC 1L1):**

Fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, spreadsheets, databases, other software packages, networks, the Internet, social issues, and the logic of problem solving. The course is taught by the Computer Science Department.

**Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1:** A study of the functional anatomy and physiology of humans.

**Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1:** A study of the important molecules found in living organisms.

**Foundations of Pharmacy:** An introductory course in Pharmacy, where learners will be introduced to the fundamentals of Pharmacy Practice, Pharmaceutics, Law and Ethics.

**Anatomy, Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathology:**

A study of the functional anatomy and physiology of humans and of diseases and pathological conditions in different body systems, how diseases develop, their characteristics, features of common diseases and conditions as they occur in humans and the effects of diseases on human functioning.

**Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology:**

A study of the important molecules found in living organisms and of the role of Pharmaceutical Microbiologists and the application of microbiology in the practice of pharmacy, the health and economic implications of microbial contamination of pharmaceutical and hospital environments, the basic characteristics, pathogenesis, diagnosis, disease, epidemiology, prevention and treatment of microorganisms found in pharmaceutical and hospital environments, water and sewage systems.

**Pharmaceutics:** A two-and-a-half -year course covering basic pharmaceutical principles and their application to the formulation, production and assessment of medicinal products, microbiology and sterility.

**Pharmaceutical Chemistry:** A two-year course covering the study of the purity and chemical properties of various materials and formulations used in the practice of pharmacy.

**Pharmacy Practice:** A two-and-a-half-year course, which examines Pharmaceutical Care and the role of the pharmacist; various aspects of management including performance management, organisational management, managing pharmaceutical supply; understanding and influencing behaviour; Primary Health Care; Ethics; legal and psychosocial principles and their application in providing safe and effective medicine use by pharmacists and patients.

**Pharmacology:** A one-and-a-half-year course of the interaction between medicaments and the human body, disease states and medicinal therapy used to relieve these conditions, the toxic effects of household agents, medicines and street drugs.

**Statistics for Pharmacy:** A one semester course offered by the Statistics Department, in the third year. A study of statistics that is used in pharmaceutical and biomedical research, so as to use and understand different statistical methods used in research.

**Pharmacotherapy:** An integrated study of the relevant pathophysiology of diseases and conditions, how mechanisms of action of medicines are used to treat these diseases and/or disorders to counteract their pathophysiological origins, synthesising and integrating information to make informed and rational pharmacotherapeutic decisions justifying the selection of appropriate dosage forms.

**Research Methodologies:** A year-long course offered in the final year covering fundamental aspects relating to the conduct of research. Students are expected to complete a research project.

**Electives:** These include electives offered in the Faculty of Pharmacy, or candidates may select elective courses offered in other Faculties provided they are relevant to Pharmacy and can be accommodated in the time- table for that academic year.

## ELECTIVES

All candidates must take either two elective courses offered within the Faculty of Pharmacy or in other Faculties that are relevant to Pharmacy and can be accommodated in the BPharm 4 timetable.

The elective courses offered by the Faculty of Pharmacy entail study at an advanced level of aspects of the BPharm curriculum and will depend on staff availability and interest.

Individuals could also do a year-long research project on an approved topic in any pharmaceutical field in lieu of two electives.

## SAPC REGISTRATION

Pharmacy students are required to register with the SAPC in their first year of study. Registration requires the payment of a registration fee and annual fees in order to remain registered whilst completing the BPharm degree. In addition, students are reminded that as professionals, registered with the SAPC, that professional indemnity insurance is required.

## WORK BASED LEARNING (WBL)

As part of the BPharm curriculum students must participate in work-based learning (WBL). This allows pharmacy students practical experience and work integrated learning opportunities within the work environment.

The outcomes of the WBL programme include:

- Exposure to the workplace in order to create awareness of the realities of the workplace,

- To reinforce and integrate theoretical concepts,
- To consolidate knowledge,
- To develop desired attitudes, and
- To develop the ability to apply knowledge and skills appropriately.

## MASTER'S DEGREES

Students who have completed the BPharm degree at a sufficiently high academic standard may be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Science (Pharmacy) or Master of Pharmacy.

Students who have completed a bachelor's degree and at least an Honours (or equivalent) degree in another Faculty and have attained in their degree a standard suitable for continuation to a Master's degree in that Faculty, and who have an interest in the application of elements of other subjects to pharmaceutical disciplines, may be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Science.

The Master of Science degree is taken by thesis. The Master of Pharmacy degree is taken either by examination, or by thesis, or a combination of the two. Registration for the Master of Science or Master of Pharmacy degree will depend upon the field of study of the candidate.

Registration with the South African Pharmacy Council may be a pre-requisite for registration for the Master of Pharmacy programme.

## DOCTOR OF PHARMACY (PHARM D)

A new PharmD is currently being developed.

## DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

See General Regulations.

# PHILOSOPHY

## Head of Department and Associate Professor

T Martin, BSc, BSc (Hons), BA, BA (Hons) (Adelaide), PhD (UNSW), PGDHE (Rhodes)

## Professor and Director of the Allan Gray Centre for Leadership Ethics

P Tabensky, Lic.(PUCC), BA (ANU), PhD (Murdoch)

## Associate Professor

WE Jones, BA (Berkeley), BPhil, DPhil (Oxon)

## Senior Lecturers

L Kelland, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

LJ Bloom, BA, PhD (UGA)

## Lecturers

T Dewhurst BA, MA (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

M Maponya, BSocSci, BSocSci (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

L Gama, BA, BA (Hons), MA (UP)

N Lembethe BA (UJ), BA Hons, MA (UKZN)

S Ndwandwe, BA, BA (Hons) (Unizulu), MA (Fort Hare), MA (Goldsmiths)

**Philosophy** is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Philosophy 1 and Philosophy 2 but not Philosophy 3 are semesterised. One, or in some cases two, courses in Philosophy are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Law and Science.

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### Philosophy 101 (PHI 101)

First-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance Requirements:** None

**Course description:** The course introduces students to philosophical ideas, issues and methods drawing on topics in metaphysics, epistemology and ethics from a range of philosophical traditions. PHI 101 typically focuses on issues in Epistemology and Metaphysics.

**DP requirements:** At least 40% for coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60%; June summative assessment 40%.

**Supplementary summative assessment:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Philosophy 102 (PHI 102)

First-year, second semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance Requirements:** None

**Course description:** The course introduces students to philosophical ideas, issues and methods not dealt with in PHI 101, with the focus typically being on issues in Ethics.

**DP requirements:** At least 40% for coursework. **Assessment:** Coursework 60%; November summative assessment 40%.

**Supplementary summative assessment:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Philosophy 201 (PHI 201)

Second-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance Requirements:** any of the following configurations — PHI 101 AND PHI 102; PHI 101 (OR PHI 102) AND IiNtetho zoBomi 101 (OR IiNtetho zoBomi 102); a 70% pass in IiNtetho zoBomi 101 OR IiNtetho zoBomi 102.

**Course description:** The course deepens the examination of historical and contemporary debates in Moral Philosophy, metaphysics, epistemology and might include specialised topics in Philosophy of Mind, or Religion, or Ancient Philosophy.

**DP requirements:** At least 40% for coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60%; June summative assessment 40%.

**Supplementary summative assessment:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Philosophy 202 (PHI 202)

Second-year, second-semester course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance Requirements:** any of the following configurations — PHI 201; PHI 101 AND PHI 102; PHI 101 (OR PHI 102) AND IiNtetho zoBomi 101 (OR IiNtetho zoBomi 102); a 70% pass in IiNtetho zoBomi 101 OR IiNtetho zoBomi 102.

**Course description:** The course continues the examination of historical and contemporary debates in metaphysics, epistemology and ethics of PHI 201.

**DP requirements:** At least 40% for coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60%; November summative assessment 40%.

**Supplementary summative assessment:** Final mark 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Philosophy 3 (PHI 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** PHI 201 and PHI 202

**Course description:** The course covers an advanced examination of some particular historical and contemporary debates. PHI 3 consists of four Papers, one of which is an Options Paper which is taught in small groups and focuses on developing philosophical writing skills.

**DP requirements:** At least 40% for coursework.

**Assessment:** Continuous 50%; Summative 50%

**Supplementary summative assessment:** Final mark 40 – 49%

### **IiNtetho zoBomi**

**IiNtetho zoBomi: Conversations About Ethics, Meaning and Community** IiNtetho zoBomi consists of IiNtetho zoBomi 101 and IiNtetho zoBomi 102. It can be taken either as a one-year course, starting in the first or second semester of any given year, or as a semester course (either in the first or the second semester of any given year). It is an offering of the Allan Gray Centre for Leadership Ethics (AGCLE), which is part of the Department of Philosophy, and complements but is not a replacement for courses offered as part of the philosophy major. A 70% pass in IiNtetho zoBomi101 and IiNtetho zoBomi 102 may be used for entrance to PHI 2.

### **IiNtetho zoBomi 101**

First-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance Requirements:** None

**Course description:** IiNtetho zoBomi 101 explores the relationship between personal freedom, ethics, and education. It introduces students to some pressing philosophical questions and obstacles to personal freedom.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%

**DP requirement:** 80% attendance at conversations and lectures (absence beyond 80% for either conversations or lectures must be justified with an LOA), 100% attendance at service-learning (a valid LOA must be provided for missing any service-learning activities), and submission of both draft and final journals. We are very strict about service-learning participation, for inconsistency on the part of students can negatively affect learners in underprivileged schools.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

Students with a final result between 40% and 49% are allowed to rework and resubmit their final reflective journal—the culmination of a continuous assessment process—to improve their final result. Should a student receive a DNW *and* is able to provide mitigating evidence for failing to submit either their draft or final journal, they will be afforded the opportunity to write an alternative assignment to replace the missing grade.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### **IiNtetho zoBomi 102**

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance Requirements:** None

**Course description:** IiNtetho zoBomi 102 focuses on social, phenomenological, and epistemological questions relating to ethics and personal freedom as well as how structural forces present obstacles to effective, ethical agency.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%

**DP requirement:** 80% attendance at conversations and lectures (absence beyond 80% for either conversations or lectures must be justified with an LOA), 100% attendance at service learning (a valid LOA must be provided for missing any service-learning activities), and submission of both draft and final journals.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 – 49%

Students with a final result between 40% and 49% are allowed to rework and resubmit their final reflective journal—the culmination of a continuous assessment process—to improve their final result. Should a student receive a DNW *and* is able to provide mitigating evidence for failing to submit either their draft or final journal, they will be afforded the opportunity to write an alternative assignment to replace the missing grade.

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### **Accounting Ethics**

Accounting Ethics is a compulsory module in Accounting. The aim of this course is to alert students to the ways in which our standard decision-making practices can lead us astray when we reason morally and to help them develop some of the skills that will help them avoid similar pitfalls in their professional capacity.

**POSTGRADUATE COURSES****Philosophy Honours**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance Requirements:** 60% in PHI 3

**Course Description:** Honours students normally take four Papers, chosen from a range of topics, and in addition submit an independent research essay. With the permission of the Head of the Department, an Honours student may substitute a research essay written during the year for one of the Papers. The length of the research essay and the date on which it is to be submitted are laid down in the Faculty of Humanities rules.

**DP requirements:** At least 40% for coursework.

**Assessment:** continuous and/or summative assessment as per requirements of individual lecturers.

**Supplementary summative assessment:** Paper result 40 – 49%

**Master's Degree**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Candidates may take the Master's degree in Philosophy either by examination or by thesis, as recommended by the Head of the Department. Candidates for the degree by examination are normally required to write a number of examinations on topics within their main field of interest, to submit an independent research essay in their first year, and to submit a short dissertation by the end of their second year.

**Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Candidates for this degree are required to complete a research dissertation.

# PHYSICS AND ELECTRONICS

## Professor and Head of Department

ML Chithambo, BSc (Malawi), MPhil (Sussex),  
PhD (Edinburgh)

## Associate Professors

DG Roux, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)  
AJM Medved, BSc, MSc, PhD (Manitoba)  
S Nsengiyumva, BSc (Rwanda), MSc (Stell), PhD (UCT)

## Senior Lecturer

JA Williams, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), HDE  
(Rhodes), PhD (Cantab)

## Lecturers

AJ Sullivan, MSc (Rhodes)  
SO Kuja, BEd (Moi), MSc (Eldoret), MEng PhD  
(Stell)

## Professor of Physics and Electronics & Director: Centre for Radio Astronomy Techniques and Technologies

JL Jonas, PhD (Rhodes)

## Professor & SARChI SKA Chair in Radio Astronomy Techniques and Technologies

O M Smirnov, PhD (Russian. Acad. Sci.)

## Visiting Professors

RS Booth, PhD (Manchester)  
L-A McKinnell, PhD (Rhodes)  
FB Abdalla, DPhil, MPhys (Oxon)  
G Bernardi, PhD (Bologna)  
A Karastergiou, PhD (Max-Planck)  
A Kembal, PhD (Rhodes)

## Honorary Professor

I Liritzis, PhD (Edinburgh)

## Research Associates

JB Habarulema, PhD (Rhodes)  
ZT Katamzi, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Bath)  
I Theron, PhD (Stell)  
C Tasse, PhD (Paris)  
SK Sirothia, PhD (Tata Inst.)  
GIG Jozsa, PhD (Bonn)

## Senior Research Associate

I Heywood, PhD (Manchester)  
J Noordam, D-Ing (TUD)

**Physics with Electronics** (PHY) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Physics with Electronics a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: PHY 1; PHY 2; PHY 3; MAM 1 (or its equivalent), and MAM 2 (or its equivalent).

Up to two, or in some cases four, Physics with Electronics semester-courses may be allowed for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Education and Pharmacy.

Besides the major course, the department offers two terminal semester courses in Physics and Electronics, namely PHY 1S1 (*Physics for Science*) and PHY 1E2 (*Electronics Literacy*).

Physics 1S1 is a service course designed to meet the needs of students in the Department of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics but is also well suited to students majoring in the biological sciences. Any student accepted into the university may register for PHY 1E2, which affords students in a wide range of disciplines an opportunity to gain an understanding of basic electronics and modern electronic devices such as computers. Aggregating Physics 1E1 and Physics 1E2 is not permitted.

PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1S1 and PHY 1E2 are highly recommended choices of prerequisites for students who wish to major in Chemistry. (Refer to the Department of Chemistry Calendar entry.)

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/physics/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN PHYSICS WITH ELECTRONICS

There are two first-year courses in Physics with Electronics for candidates planning to major in physical, computational, mathematical or earth science subjects. PHY 101 is held in the first semester and PHY 102 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course PHY 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component.

Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Class tests and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course. Candidates wishing to register for PHY 101 must have obtained a level 5 pass in Mathematics and a level 5 pass in Physical Science in the National Senior Certificate examination, or the equivalent thereof.

Adequate performance in PHY 101 is required before a student may register for PHY 102. Alternatively, candidates who attain a sufficiently high standard in PHY 1E1 may be allowed to register for PHY 102, obtain PHY 1 and then proceed to PHY 2.

### PHY 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Level 4 in NSC Mathematics or equivalent

**Course description:** Theory component: Introduction to Mechanics, Rotations. Experimental component: Measurement and data analysis.

**DP requirements:** Class record of 40%

**Assessment:** Class record 45%, Examinations 55%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with PHY 102

### PHY 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% PHY 101 or 70% PHY 1E1

**Course description:** Theory component: Waves, Fields, Modern Physics and Kinetic Theory. Experimental component: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics.

**DP requirements:**

**Assessment:** Class record 45%, Examinations 55%, Supplementary exam: 45%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% to aggregate with PHY 101

The Department offers two other first-level courses in Physics and Electronics. PHY 1E1 is held in the first semester and PHY 1E2 in the second semester. Aggregating PHY 1E1 and PHY 1E2 is not permitted. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course. Entry into PHY 1E2 does not require that a student have attended or passed PHY 1E1. The course is open to all university students. All three of the courses PHY 101, PHY 102 and PHY 1E2 may be obtained.

### PHY 1S1: Physics for Science for non-Physics Majors

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Level 4 pass in NSC Mathematics or equivalent

**Course description:** Theory component: Mechanics; thermal physics; vibrations and waves; Applications to the life sciences are emphasised. Experimental component: Measurement practice and data analysis.

**DP requirements:** Class record of 40%

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** None

### PHY 1E2: Electronics Literacy

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Level 4 rating for Mathematics on the NSC

**Course description:** Theory component: Basic electricity and electronics necessary to connect up and commission modern, popular commercial instrumentation, in particular microprocessor-based devices. Experimental component: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics; elementary interfacing and communication between computers and peripheral devices.



**DP requirements:** Class record of 40%

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** None

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN PHYSICS WITH ELECTRONICS

There are two second-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 201 is held in the first semester and PHY 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course PHY 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class tests, assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Physics with Electronics 1 (PHY 1) and Mathematics 1 (MAM 1) are normally required before a student may register for PHY 201 or PHY 202. Students are strongly encouraged to register for MAM2 and PHY 2 concurrently

### PHY 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: PHY 1, MAM 1

**Course description:** Theory component: AC Theory, Vibrations, Waves and Optics, Properties of Matter. Experimental component: AC circuits; analogue and digital electronics.

DP requirements: None

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with PHY 202

### PHY 202

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% PHY 201 **Course description:** Theory component: Electrostatics, Classical Mechanics, Special Relativity, and

Quantum Mechanics I. Experimental component: Physics laboratory techniques.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% to aggregate with PHY 201

## THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN PHYSICS WITH ELECTRONICS

There are two third-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 301 is held in the first semester and PHY 302 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course PHY 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class tests, assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Physics with Electronics 2 (PHY 2) and Mathematics 2 (MAM 2 with the modules in Advanced Calculus and Linear Algebra) are normally required before a student may register for PHY 301 or PHY 302. Adequate performance in PHY 301 is required before a candidate may register for PHY 302.

### PHY 301

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: PHY 2, MAM 2

**Course description:** Theory component: Electromagnetism, Quantum Mechanics II, Thermodynamics, Signals and Systems. Experimental component: Analogue electronics; Advanced digital electronics.

DP requirements: None

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Theory examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with PHY 302

**PHY 302**

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** 40% PHY 301, MAM 2

**Course description:** Theory component: Solid State Physics, Nuclear Physics, Statistical Physics. Experimental component: Physics laboratory techniques.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum for November:** 40% to aggregate with PHY 301

**HONOURS COURSES**

Candidates may choose to read for Honours degrees in Physics, Electronics, Telecommunications, Joint Physics and Electronics or in approved combinations with subjects offered by other departments. A BSc with a major in Physics with Electronics, and second year mathematics (MAT 2 or MAM 2) or MAP 2 is the normal entrance requirement for these courses.

Practical work, essays, tests and a project done during the year form part of the final mark, and a full course typically includes an approved selection of seven topics from those listed below, depending on the availability of lecturing staff.

**Honours in Physics**

Year-long courses (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** Classical Mechanics; Computer Interfacing I; Computational Physics; Electrodynamics; General Relativity; Nuclear Physics; Optics; Quantum Physics; Radio Astronomy; Particle Physics; Space Science; Solid State Physics; Statistical Mechanics, Signal Processing. Appropriate topics from the list of the Electronics Honours course may be chosen.

**Honours in Electronics**

Year-long courses (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** Computer Interfacing 1; Computer Interfacing 2; Computational Physics; Control Theory; Electronic Design; FPGA, Optics;

Signal Processing. Appropriate topics from the list of the Physics Honours course may be chosen.

**Joint Honours in Physics and Electronics, and other combinations**

Year-long courses (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Course description:** For Joint Honours programmes, an approved selection of topics may be taken from the lists given for the Physics and Electronics Honours courses, so that the final proportion in each is between 40% and 60%. Similarly, Physics or Electronics may be combined with another approved Honours course (e.g. in Computer Science, Geology, Chemistry, Mathematics) to form a joint Honours course. A candidate may substitute approved topics from other Honours courses in the Faculty of Science for topics in any of the Honours courses in this Department.

**MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

The Master's degree may be taken in Physics, or Electronics, and will be examined by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects. Current areas of specialisation include experimental solid-state physics, nuclear physics, radio astronomy, upper atmosphere physics, physics education and theoretical physics. The current areas of specialisation in Electronics are transducers, instrumentation and digital signal processing.

A PhD degree may be taken by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects, and is at the discretion of the Head of Department. Current areas of specialisation are as for the MSc degree.

## POLITICAL AND INTERNATIONAL STUDIES

### Head of Department and Associate Professor

S Magadla, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (Ohio), PhD (Rhodes)

### Emeritus Professor

P-H Bischoff, BA (Wits), MA (Lancaster), PhD (Manchester)

### Professor

L Vincent, BA, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), M. Phil, DPhil (Oxon)

### Associate Professors

E Jordaan, BA, MA, PhD (Stell)

S Matthews, BA, MA (UP), PhD (Birmingham)

### Senior Lecturers

B Nyoka, BA, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (UWC), PhD (UNISA)

C Nedziwe, BA, BA (Hons) (Don-State Technical University), MA (Queensland), PhD (Rhodes)

M Majavu, BA, BA (Hons), MA (UCT), PhD (Auckland)

### Lecturer

T Tselapedi, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (UP)

### Nelson Mandela Visiting Professor

N Nzegwu, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Ife), PhD (Ottawa)

### Honorary Professors

A Acharya, BA (Ravenshaw), MA (Jawaharlal Nehru), PhD (Murdoch)

A Ashforth, BA (Western Australia), MA, PhD (Oxon)

S Grovogui, BA (Law) (Conakry), MA, PhD (Wisconsin-Madison)

### Senior Research Associates

I Souaré, BA (Hons) (Medina), MA (London Metropolitan), PhD (Québec)

A Salem, BS (Cairo), MA, PhD (Illinois at Urbana-Champaign)

### Research Associates

F Diaz, BSc, MSc (Los Andes), MA (ISS)

R Chipaika, BA, BSc, MSc (Zimbabwe), PhD (Rhodes)

Political and International Studies is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. Courses offered in the

Department are studied from a global, regional and local perspective with particular attention paid to the South African and African contexts.

### UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

#### Political and International Studies 101 (POL 101)

First-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** This course introduces students to the basic components of the discipline of Political and International Studies.

**DP requirements:** Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work. Students may not miss more than two tutorials per year without a valid Leave of Absence (LOA).

**Assessment:** The course assessment consists of course work and a final assessment during the exam period.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

#### Political and International Studies 102 (POL 102)

First-year, second-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None. Students who receive a DPR for POL101 may not enter POL102 in the same year they receive the DPR for POL101.

**Course description:** This course builds on Political and International Studies 101 in order to introduce students to the basic components of the discipline of Political and International Studies.

**DP requirements:** Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work. Students may not miss more than two tutorials per year without a Leave of Absence (LOA).

**Assessment:** The course assessment consists both of course work and a final assessment during the exam period.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**Political and International Studies 2 (POL 2)**

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Political and International Studies 101 and Political and International Studies 102.

**Course description:** This course consists of a selection of courses in Political Theory, Comparative Politics, Political Studies, Political Philosophy and/ or International Relations.

**DP requirements:** Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work. Students may not miss more than two tutorials per year without a Leave of Absence (LOA).

**Assessment:** The course assessment consists both of course work and a final assessment during the exam period.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**Political and International Studies 3 (POL 3)**

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Political and International Studies 2

**Course description:** This course consists of a selection of courses in Political Theory, Comparative Politics, Political Studies, Political Philosophy and/ or International Relations.

**DP requirements:** Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work. Students may not miss more than two tutorials without a Leave of Absence (LOA) per year.

**Assessment:** The course assessment consists both of course work and a final assessment during the exam period.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark 40 - 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**POSTGRADUATE COURSES****Diploma in International Studies (PDIS)**

*(Not currently offered)*

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** An undergraduate degree in any field with a good pass.

**Course description:** The Diploma consists of five courses in the field of International Studies with a

focus on Africa. To be awarded the diploma students must pass at least four out of the five courses taken and achieve an overall aggregated pass of at least 50%.

**Honours Degree**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** An undergraduate degree in Political and International Studies with a good second-class pass. Students with a good second-class pass degree in a cognate discipline may also be considered for admission.

**Course description:** The Honours degree consists of either five courses or four courses and a research essay of 10 000 words. The latter option may be exercised only on recommendation of the Head of Department. Students may choose from a range of postgraduate courses offered in the Department and, with the permission of the Head of Department, may also take one course from another discipline. The courses on offer vary from year to year. Prospective students should inquire as to which courses are on offer in the year that they will be registered. To be awarded the degree students must pass at least four out of the five courses taken and achieve an overall aggregated pass of at least 50%.

**Master's Degree**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** An Honours degree with at least a good second class pass in Political and International Studies or, with the approval of the Head of Department, in a cognate discipline. Students with a mark of 70% or above for the Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies may also be considered for admission.

**Course description:** Students may register for either a combined coursework and thesis Master's degree or a Master's degree by thesis only, as recommended by the Head of Department. The Master's by coursework and thesis consists of three approved postgraduate courses and a thesis of 15 000 to 25 000 words. The required thesis length for the Master's by thesis only is 30 000 to 50 000 words. Master's students are required to have a thesis proposal passed by the Humanities Higher

Degrees Committee by the 30th of November in the year in which the degree is begun. Those who do not succeed in doing so may not be permitted to continue with the Master's degree. Thesis proposals must conform to the requirements set out in the Rhodes University Higher Degrees Guide and must be submitted to the Higher Degrees Committee with the approval of the supervisor and Head of Department. To be awarded the degree, coursework Master's students need to pass all three courses as well as the thesis. They may not repeat courses already passed at Honours level.

### **Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A Master's degree with at least a good second class pass in Political and International Studies or, with the approval of the Head of Department, in a cognate discipline. Admission is also subject to the availability of suitable supervision expertise in the chosen field of study of any prospective student.

**Course description:** The PhD consists of a dissertation which must conform to the requirements set out in the Rhodes University Higher Degrees Guide. Doctoral students are required to have a thesis proposal passed by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee by the 30th of November of the year in which the degree is begun. Those who do not succeed in doing so may not be permitted to continue with the Doctorate.

# PSYCHOLOGY

## Head of Department and Associate Professor

L Jacobs, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Research Psychology) (UWC), PhD (Stell)

## Distinguished Professor and SARCHI Chair

CI Macleod, BSc (Natal), HDE, BSocSci (Hons), MEd (Psychology) (UCT), PhD (Natal)

## Professor

LA Wilbraham, BA, BSocSci (Hons), MA (Research Psychology), PhD (UCT)

## Associate Professors

M Campbell, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Counselling Psychology), PhD (Rhodes)

T Feltham-King, BA (UNISA), BA (Hons), MA, PGDHE (Fort Hare), PhD (Rhodes)

## Senior Lecturers

DD Booyesen, BPsych, MA (Psych) (NMMU), MA (Clinical Psychology), PhD (Stell)

A Fourie, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Clinical Psychology) (UPE), PgDip (Applied Ethics) (Stell), IAAP(SAAJA)

J Knoetze, BA, HDE (Stell), BA (Hons), (UPE), MEd (Psychology) (Stell)

G Steele, BA (UPE), BA (Hons), PGDHE, MA (Research Psychology) (Rhodes), PhD (UNISA)

## Lecturers

S Bazana, BAdmin (HRM), BCom (Hons), MCom (Industrial Psychology) (UFH)

W Bohmke, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Research Psychology) (Rhodes)

D Diale, BCom, BCom (Hons) (UNISA), MCom (Industrial Psychology) (UP)

ES Fouten, BA (Hons), MA (Research Psychology) (UWC)

T Kabangaidze, BSocSci (HRM), BSocSci (Hons) (HRM), MCom (Industrial Psychology), DCom (Fort Hare)

K Ramosala BA, BSocSci (Hons), MA (Counselling Psychology) (UP)H van Zyl, BA (Hons), MA (Psychology) (Rhodes)

S Zondo, BA (Wits), BSocSci (Hons), MA (Neuropsychology) (UCT)

N Zwane, BAdmin, BA (Hons), BCom (Hons), MCom (Industrial Psychology) (UNISA)

## Emeritus Professors

J Akhurst, NTSD (Natal), BA, BA (Hons) (UNISA), MA (Counselling Psychology) (Natal),

PhD (Psychotherapy)(Rhodes), CPsychol, AFBPsS, SFHEA

AB Edwards, BA (Rhodes), MSc (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

DJA Edwards, MA (Oxon), PhD (Rhodes), CPsychol

## Research Associates

J Blaine, BSc (Hons) (Open), PGDE (Hong Kong), MSc (Liverpool), PhD (Rhodes)

D Botha, BCom (Rhodes), BProc (Unisa), MSocSc (Counselling Psychology) (South Australia), DCom (UPE)

MT Chiweshe, MA (ClinPsych), PhD (Rhodes)

AJ Collins, MA (Rhodes), PhD (California, Santa Cruz)

N Donaldson, MSocSci, PGDHE (Rhodes)

C Groenewald, PhD (UKZN)

I Lynch, PhD (UP)

J Marx, PhD (Rhodes)

T Meehan, PhD (Psychology), DClinPsych (Trinity College, Dublin)

D Moodley, PhD (Rhodes)

T Morison, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Research Psychology), PhD (Rhodes)

M Toerien, PhD (York)

C Towriss, BA (Hons) (Nottingham), MSc, PhD (LSHTM)

S Truter, PhD (RAU)

N Wannenbourg, BA, BA (Hons) (Drama), BA (Hons) (Psych), Ma, PhD (Rhodes)

V Whitefield-Alexander, PhD (Rhodes)

## Clinical Associates

S M Hawkrigde, FCPsych(SA)

PC Sakasa, BA, BA (Hons) (UWC), MA (Clinical Psychology) (Rhodes)

L Qangule BA (UFH), BA (Hons) (UPE), MA (Counselling) (NMU), EEAC, PhD (Rhodes)

A three-year major in Psychology or a two-year major in Organisational Psychology may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science.

All undergraduate courses in Psychology and Organisational Psychology are semester courses; for all three undergraduate levels, the first semester

should normally be taken before the second semester course. Psychology 101 and 102 are common first-year credit for students majoring in Psychology or Organisational Psychology. In the second-year students elect to continue either to Psychology 201 and 202 or Organisational Psychology 201 and 202. A major in Psychology (Psychology 301 and 302) is recommended for students planning to enter a career in psychological and/or social research, or in the helping professions with an emphasis on counselling or clinical work. It is also recommended for students wanting to work in a range of settings that require interactions with individuals and groups. A major in Organisational Psychology (Organisational Psychology 301 and 302) is a good preparation for work in human resources, management or organisational development. Students who wish to switch from Psychology to Organisational Psychology or vice versa require permission from the Head of Department. This will not be automatic and in cases where permission is given assignments may be set to enable students to cover the work they have missed. Currently, it is not permitted to major in Psychology *and* Organisational Psychology.

The Critical Studies in Sexualities and Reproductions Research Programme (CSSR) is a unit within the Psychology Department that conducts multidisciplinary research. Masters and doctoral supervision is open to postgraduate students located in psychology or other humanities departments who have a background in any of the relevant social sciences.

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### Psychology 101 (PSY 101)

First-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course description:** This is first semester course, in which the following three modules are usually taught: Developmental Psychology, Biological Psychology, and Mental Health and Wellbeing.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 2-hour examination in June counts 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Overall mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Psychology 102 (PSY 102)

First-year, second-semester course  
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** This is the second semester course, in which the following three modules are usually taught: Personality Psychology, Cognitive Psychology, and Organisational Psychology.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 2-hour examination in November counts 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Psychology 201 (PSY 201)

Second-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** PSY 101 and 102

**Course description:** This is a first semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Performance Psychology and Social Psychology.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

### Psychology 202 (PSY 202)

Second-year, second-semester course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** PSY 101 and 102

**Course description:** This is a second semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Developmental Psychology, and Mental Health and Distress.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**Organisational Psychology 201 (ORG 201)**

Second-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** PSY 101 and 102

**Course description:** This is a first semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Organisational Behaviour, and Health and Wellbeing.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**Organisational Psychology 202 (ORG 202)**

Second-year, second-semester course  
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** PSY 101 and 102

**Course description:** This is a second semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Workplace Relations and HR Psychology.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**Psychology 301 (PSY 301)**

Third-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** PSY 201 and PSY 202

**Course description:** This is a first semester course, in which the following modules are usually taught: Psychological Assessment and Psychological Interventions.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in June count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**Psychology 302 (PSY 302)**

Third-year, second-semester course  
(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** PSY 201 and 202

**Course description:** This is a second semester course, in which the following modules are usually

taught: Quantitative and Qualitative Research Methods and Critical Health Psychology.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in November count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**Organisational Psychology 301 (ORG 301)**

Third-year, first-semester course  
(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** ORG 201 and 202

**Course description:** This is a first semester course, in which the following modules are usually taught: Career Psychology and Psychological Assessment.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in June count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**Organisational Psychology 302 (ORG 302)**

Third-year, second-semester course  
(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** ORG 201 and 202

**Course description:** This is a second semester course, in which the following modules are usually taught: Research in Organisations and Organisational Effectiveness.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in November count 50%.

**Supplementary exam:** Final mark of 40 – 49%

**Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

**POSTGRADUATE COURSES****Psychology Honours Degree**

Full-year course  
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed degree with Psychology as a major subject. Normally 50% of places are reserved for applicants who completed their third year in Psychology at Rhodes University. See the Psychology Honours selection policy for more details.

**Course description:** The full-year course provides in-depth study for students interested in careers in



Clinical, Counselling and Research Psychology. Entrance into the Honours programme will normally be restricted to students who have a good result in their final year of undergraduate study. Students write one compulsory paper (Research methodology – quantitative and qualitative) of 30 credits and three elective papers (3 x 20 credits), and complete a research project (30 credits). Electives usually cover a variety of topics in Psychology that may change from year to year, depending on staff availability.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** One written examination for each paper. Examinations are written in June and November.

### **Organisational Psychology Honours Degree**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed degree with Organisational Psychology as a major subject. Normally 70% of places are reserved for applicants who completed their third year in Organisational Psychology at Rhodes University. See the Organisational Psychology Honours selection policy for more details.

**Course description:** The full-year course provides in-depth study for students interested in careers in Organisational Psychology or research. Entrance into the Honours programme will normally be restricted to students who have a good result in their final year of undergraduate study. Students write one compulsory paper (Research methodology – quantitative and qualitative) of 30 credits and four electives (4 x 15 credits), and complete a research project (30 credits). Electives usually cover a variety of topics in Organisational Psychology that may change from year to year, depending on staff availability.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** One written examination for each paper. Examinations are written in June and November.

### **Master's Degree in Clinical Psychology**

Two-year course

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

The first year is a coursework year and the second year is the internship)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed degree with Psychology as a major subject and an Honours degree in Psychology. Further details of the selection criteria and the process are available online.

**Course description:** The Master of Arts in Clinical Psychology is a professional training course that provides the foundations leading to graduates being able to apply for registration as a Clinical Psychologist with the Professional Board for Psychology of the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA). The Masters course consists of academic and practical training, and may only be taken on a full-time basis following careful selection processes. Modules in psychopathology, assessment and psychotherapy for adults and children/young people are offered with an emphasis on evidence-based practice, as well as modules that cover contextual, professional and ethical issues relevant to the practice and profession of Clinical Psychology (including public mental health interventions). Students work in a range of settings with adults, young people and children. Practical training includes supervised work with cases within individual, group and community contexts. Students must complete a research half-thesis on a topic relevant to the practice of Clinical Psychology. The internship is served at an accredited internship site and is a requirement for registration as a Clinical Psychologist. The coursework, thesis and internship together constitute the academic requirements for the award of the degree. All coursework must be completed before the commencement of the internship. An HPCSA requirement for registration as a Clinical Psychologist in Independent Practice is the completion of a national board examination.

Clinical psychologists are also required to complete a year of community service.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** See the course handbook.

**Supplementary exam:** A supplementary exam, usually for no more than one of the three written papers, may be awarded in special cases with the permission of the Head of Department. In such

cases, the overall mark for the paper will be capped at a maximum of 50%.

### **Master's Degree in Counselling Psychology**

Two-year course  
(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

The first year is a coursework year and the second year is the internship)

**Entrance requirements:** A completed degree with Psychology as a major subject and an Honours degree in Psychology. Further details of the selection criteria and the process are available online.

**Course description:** The Master of Arts in Counselling Psychology is a professional training course that provides the foundation leading to graduates being able to apply for registration as a Counselling Psychologist with the Professional Board for Psychology of the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA). The Master's course consists of academic and practical training, and may only be taken on a full-time basis following careful selection processes. Modules in i) psychological assessment, ii) psychological therapies and interventions (including community psychology) and iii) professional practice (including ethical issues and skills relevant to the practice and profession of Counselling Psychology) are offered. Students work in a range of settings with adults, young people and children. Practical training includes supervised work with cases within individual, group and community contexts. Students must complete a research half-thesis on a topic relevant to the practice of Counselling Psychology. The internship is served at an accredited internship site and is a requirement for registration as a Counselling Psychologist. The coursework, thesis and

internship together constitute the academic requirements for the award of the degree. All coursework must be completed before the commencement of the internship. An HPCSA requirement for registration as a Counselling Psychologist in Independent Practice is the completion of a national board examination. Counselling psychologists are not presently required to complete a year of community service.

**DP requirements:** See the course handbook.

**Assessment:** See the course handbook.

**Supplementary exam:** A supplementary exam, usually for no more than one of the three written papers, may be awarded in special cases with the permission of the Head of Department. In such cases, the overall mark for the paper will be capped at a maximum of 50%.

### **Master's Degree by Thesis**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** Usually an Honours degree in Psychology

**Course description:** A Master's degree by thesis may be undertaken on a full-time or part-time basis. Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. Under the supervision of a staff member, students produce a research thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor.

### **Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

A PhD must be taken by thesis (see the General Rules). Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. Under the supervision of a staff member, students produce a doctoral thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor.

# SOCIOLOGY

## Head of Department and Professor

GG Klerck, BA (Hons), LLB, MA (UKZN), PhD (Rhodes)

## Professor and Director: Neil Aggett Labour Studies Unit

LJW van der Walt, BA (Hons), PhD (Wits)

## Professors

MD Drewett, BA (Hons), MSocSc, PhD (Rhodes)

SC Mnwana, STD (Dr Rubusana College), ACE (Rhodes), BEd Hons, MEd, PhD (Fort Hare)

## Lecturers

T Alexander, BSocSc (Hons) (US), MSocSc (Rhodes)

JKC Chisaka, BSocSc (Hons), MSocSc (Rhodes)

C Martínez Mullen, LicSocSc (Buenos Aires), MSocSc (UKZN)

KL Ntinkinca, BSocSc (Hons), MSocSc (Rhodes)

TA Sipungu, BA, LLB, MA, PhD (Rhodes)

HB Sishuta, BA (Hons) (Fort Hare), MA, MSocSc (Rhodes)

## Research Associates

L Alferts, PhD (UKZN)

CT Allan, BA (Rhodes), MA (Warwick), MPhil (Ulster)

S Bhatasara, PhD (Rhodes)

A Bowman, PhD (Manchester)

T Chevo, PhD (Rhodes)

MK Chiweshe, PhD (Rhodes)

R Grinker B.Arch (Wits)

S Hadebe, PhD (UKZN)

L Makonese, PhD (Rhodes)

L Naidoo, PhD (Rhodes)

CA Nardi, PhD (Trento)

## Visiting Professors

AL Bialakowsky, PhD (Buenos Aires)

P Gunnigle, PhD (Cranfield School of Management)

JP Holloway, PhD (Edinburgh)

PK Jha, PhD (Jawaharlal Nehru)

## Professor Emeritus and Director: Unit of Zimbabwean Studies

KD Helliker, PhD (Rhodes)

## Associate Professor Emeritus

MJ Roodt, PhD (Rhodes)

- Sociology is a three-year major subject that may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce
- Industrial and Economic Sociology is a two-year major subject that may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce
- Sociology and Industrial and Economic Sociology may not be taken together
- A non-continuing pass in Sociology I will not meet the entrance requirements for Sociology II or Industrial and Economic Sociology II
- First-semester courses are examined in June, and second-semester courses are examined in November
- Any student, who fails an examination paper by no less than 40%, may be granted the option of writing a supplementary examination for that paper

## UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

### Sociology 1 (SOC 1)

First-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

#### Entrance requirements: None

This course introduces students to the concepts (i.e. language) used by sociologists as well as the theoretical perspectives they employ when analysing society. Social inequality, institutions (such as the state, the family, education, and the economy), and social change are discussed. Also included in Sociology I are topical themes such as deviance, social change, work and leisure, population, urbanisation, environment, sexuality, poverty, sub-cultures, the media in society, religion, and other relevant issues. The papers in this course have a strong South African focus.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 30% and examinations in June and November count 70%

**Supplementary exams:** Final mark 40 – 49%

### Sociology 2 (SOC 2)

Second-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

#### Entrance requirement: SOC 1

This course consists of the following core papers:

- *Theory and Society*: This course begins by introducing students to the theorising process in sociology. The central concerns and ideas of the major classical theorists are discussed. The focus is on ideas and theories developed to understand and explain significant social changes brought about by earlier economic, social and political transformations up to and including events of the early 20th century. The relevance of these theories for contemporary societies is addressed.
- *Introduction to Social Research*: This is an introductory course to research methods, which are indispensable to the work of sociologists as they construct scientific explanations of human society through empirical investigations. The basic dimensions of the research process, including research design and research techniques, are covered.

Two specialised areas of study that will be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Sociology of Development, Crime and Deviance, Political Sociology, Family Sociology, Sociology of Language, Race and Class, Mass Communication, Migrant Studies, Sociology of Education, and Gender and Sexualities..

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%

**Supplementary exams:** Final mark 40 – 49%

### Sociology 3 (SOC 3)

Third-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** SOC 2

This course consists of the following core papers:

- *Contemporary Social Theory*: This course includes contemporary theories and covers modern debates on the theorising process as well as the contours of the different systems of thought in the discipline.
- *Social Research*: This is an intermediate research methods course that builds on the second-year social research course. It provides a deeper and more nuanced understanding of the research process as well as the many complexities and challenges faced in undertaking social research.

Two specialised areas of study that will be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular

year, include Development Studies, Sociology of Education, Sociology of Higher Education, Sociology of Race and Ethnicity, Gender Studies, State and Society, Political Sociology, Sociology of Law, Environment and Society, and Popular Culture.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%

**Supplementary exams:** Final mark 40 – 49%

### Industrial and Economic Sociology 2 (INS 2)

Second-year, full-year course  
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** SOC 1

This course consists of the following papers:

- *Industry, Economy, and Society*: This course provides a conceptual and theoretical foundation for Industrial and Economic Sociology and lays a basis for the courses that follow. It examines the historical rise of capitalist societies and developments in the economy and industry during the 20th and 21st centuries. Both classical and contemporary thinkers are covered in the course.
- *Sociology of Work*: This course explores in detail the question of work in industrial society and considers the related areas of technological development and managerial strategies. It examines both classical and contemporary theoretical views on work. Included in the course is a discussion of the debates on the changing labour process. Contemporary forms of industrial restructuring and the future of work are also covered.
- *Introduction to Social Research*: This is an introductory course to research methods, which are indispensable to the work of sociologists as they construct scientific explanations of human society through empirical investigations. The basic dimensions of the research process, including research design and research techniques, are explored.
- *Sociology of Labour Markets*: This course offers a distinctively sociological understanding of labour markets in capitalist societies. It examines the power structures and inequalities that underpin labour markets. In addition, it traces the important changes in the standard employment

contract that have taken place under neoliberal restructuring.

Other specialised areas of study that may be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Gender and Work, Industrial and Occupational Health, Organisational Studies, Labour in the World Economy, and Conflict in the Workplace.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%

**Supplementary exams:** Final mark 40 – 49%

### **Industrial and Economic Sociology 3 (INS 3)**

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** INS 2

This course consists of the following papers:

- *Political Economy of Contemporary Capitalism:* This course explores contemporary capitalism, with specific reference to neo-liberal restructuring, locating South African developments within larger global and historical processes. It introduces economic sociology and political economy, an examination of the theory underlying, and the causes and effects, of neo-liberal models; it also considers the impact of competing state policies and state capacity – and class struggles – on those policies. The course also examines alternative models and considers the question of whether there are alternatives to neo-liberalism.
- *Introduction to Industrial Relations:* This course introduces the dynamics and institutions of industrial relations. The role in collective bargaining of trade unions, employers' organisations, and the government are explored in some detail. Aspects of labour law, such as discipline, retrenchment and dismissal, are also covered. The final part of the course deals with the nature of industrial conflict and the various models of and mechanisms for dispute resolution.
- *Social Research:* This is an intermediate research methods course that builds on the second-year social research course. It provides a deeper and more nuanced understanding of the research process as well as the many complexities and challenges faced in undertaking social research.

### • *Trade Unions and Comparative Labour History:*

In this course, classical and contemporary theories of trade unions are reviewed. This is followed by a comparative and historical study of trade union movements in selected countries. A primary focus is on the nature and functions of trade unions, their relationship to political parties and the state, their organisation and politics, and their structures and tactics. In addition, we consider issues such as the historical shifts in trade union tactics, the role of the trade union movement in democratic change, and the strategic challenges faced by the trade union movement.

Other specialised areas of study that may be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Development and Industrialisation, State and Labour, Contemporary Capitalism and Globalisation, Economic and Industrial Policy, Economic Sociology, and Labour and Workplace Restructuring.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%

**Supplementary exams:** Final mark 40 – 49%

## **POSTGRADUATE COURSES**

### **Honours Degree**

Full-year course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** at least 65% for SOC 3, IES 3, or cognate discipline

*An Honours degree may be taken in Sociology, Development Studies, or Industrial and Economic Sociology.*

*Candidates will be registered in the faculty in which their undergraduate degree was completed.*

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%

**Supplementary exams:** Final mark 40 – 49%

### **Honours in Sociology**

The degree consists of four papers and a research report on a topic approved by the Department. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include four of the following:

- Advanced Research Methodology
- Advanced Social Theory
- Environmental Sociology

- Gender Studies
- Land and Agrarian Studies
- Sociology of Health
- Sociology of Identities
- Sociology of Race
- State and Society
- Any other specialised area of study

### **Honours in Development Studies**

The degree consists of four papers and a research report on a topic approved by the Department. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include four of the following:

- Advanced Research Methodology
- Development Theory
- Gender and Development
- Land and Agrarian Studies
- Models of Industrial Development
- Social Policy and Development
- State and Social Accountability
- Value and Commodity Chains
- Any other specialised area of study

### **Honours in Industrial and Economic Sociology**

The degree consists of four papers and a research report on a topic approved by the Department. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include four of the following:

- Advanced Labour Market Studies
- Advanced Research Methodology
- Advanced Sociology of Work
- Comparative Labour Law
- Economic and Industrial Policy
- Human Resource Development and Management
- Industrial and Employment Relations
- Labour and Globalisation
- Trade Unions and Comparative Labour Studies
- Any other specialised area of study

In the case of all three honours programmes listed above, a candidate may, with the approval of the

Head of Department, register for no more than one paper in a cognate department.

### **Interdisciplinary Honours**

See Interdepartmental Studies.

The Department participates in the Interdisciplinary Honours degree offerings in Industrial Relations, Development Studies, Gender Studies, and South African Cultural Studies.

### **Master's Degree**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** at least 65% for honours in sociology, development studies, industrial and economic sociology, or cognate discipline

A Master's degree may be taken in Sociology, Development Studies, Industrial and Economic Sociology, and Industrial Relations by thesis or by coursework/dissertation. Students will only be accepted for a Master's degree by thesis if they have completed a dissertation in their honours programme or submitted a satisfactory long essay with their Master's application. Candidates may be registered in Humanities or Commerce, depending on the faculty in which their Honours degree was completed. See the General Rules.

### **Master's by Thesis**

This degree involves research only and the production, within two years of full-time study, of a thesis of 50,000 words. Proposals should be submitted to the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within nine months of registration.

### **Master's by Coursework and Dissertation**

This degree takes place over 12 months and consists of three papers and a dissertation of 25,000 words. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include three of the following:

- Advanced Social Research
- Advanced Social Theory
- Applied Literature Reviews
- Development Studies
- Industry, Economy, and Society
- Land and Agrarian Studies

- Any other specialised area of study

The coursework will commence one week before the first term of the academic year. Proposals for the dissertation must be reported to the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee at a date announced by the Department. The dissertation must be submitted for examination within 24 months of registration. Students must pass at least two papers and get at least a 50% aggregate for the three papers in order to pass the degree. Passing at least two papers with at least a 50% aggregate for the three papers is also a precondition for proceeding to the dissertation. Passing the dissertation is a precondition for passing the degree.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50% and the dissertation counts 50%

### **Doctoral Degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** at least 68% for a Master's degree in sociology, industrial and economic sociology, or cognate discipline, as well as a strong concept note

A Doctoral degree (PhD) in Sociology or Industrial Relations is taken by thesis. The faculties in which the degree may be registered are Humanities or Commerce. Proposals should be submitted to the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within nine months of registration. See the General Rules.

## **RESEARCH UNITS**

### **Neil Aggett Labour Studies Unit (NALSU)**

The NALSU is a labour studies hub at Rhodes University, built around a vibrant interdisciplinary team. It is named in honour of Dr Neil Hudson Aggett, a trade union organiser and medical doctor who died in 1982 in the jails of the apartheid state. NALSU is located in the Department of Sociology and Industrial Sociology, but includes members from History and Economics and Economic History. NALSU has developed active research partnerships with various national and international research and advocacy organisations and draws strength from its location in the Eastern Cape Province. Its work includes research on a wide range of

issues, public engagement and trade union education, and the related production of popular materials.

### **Unit of Zimbabwean Studies (UZS)**

The UZS has two main components. First, Master's and Doctoral students, who undertake research on a range of topics pertaining to Zimbabwean history and society, including land and land reform, livelihoods, civil society, social movements and political parties. Second, research is undertaken by the UZS in conjunction with colleagues at universities in Zimbabwe. In addition and when possible, Zimbabwean studies are covered at third-year and honours levels.

# STATISTICS

## Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

JS Baxter, BSc, BSc Hons, PGDip (HE), MSc (Rhodes)

## Emeritus Professor

SE Radloff, PhD (Rhodes)

## Associate Professor

L Raubenheimer, BCom, BCom Hons, MCom, PhD (UFS)

## Senior Lecturer

A Chinomona, BSc (UZ), BSc Hons, MSc, PhD (UKZN)

## Lecturers

S Izally, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc (Rhodes)

A Langston, BSc, BSc Hons (Rhodes), MRes (Glasgow)

S Hamlomo, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc (Rhodes)

R Bhurtun, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc (Rhodes), MSc (Wits)

**Mathematical Statistics** (MST) and **Applied Statistics** (AST) are five semester credits which may be taken as major subjects for the degrees of BSc, BSc (InfSys), BA, BSocSc, BCom, BBusSc and BEcon.

To major in Mathematical Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAM 1; MST 102; MST 2; MST 3. See Rule S.22.

To major in Applied Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAM 1; MST 102; MST 2; AST 3. See Rule S.22.

The availability of both MST 3 and AST 3 in any year is subject to adequate staffing.

*A rating of at least 4 in Mathematics in the NSC or equivalent is a prerequisite for admission to STA 1S1, STA 1P1 and STA 1C2. A rating of at least 5 in Mathematics in the NSC or equivalent is a prerequisite for admission to MST 102.*

If a candidate obtains a pass in a semester-course offered by the Department, but fails to gain an aggregate pass for the year-long course in the following ordinary or supplementary examination, then that candidate is required to pass the semester-

course failed in order to obtain credit for the year-long course. The Department recommends that candidates repeating a semester credit repeat the year-long course; see rules S.16.6 and S.24.5.

Besides the major courses, the department offers various other courses in Statistics:

**Statistics for Science** (STA 1S1) is a one-semester first-year level course which may be taken for degree/ diploma curricula in the Faculties of Science, Commerce and Humanities.

**Statistics for Pharmacy** (STA 1P1) is a one-semester first-year level course taken for degree curricula in the Faculty of Pharmacy.

**Statistics for Commerce** (STA 1C2) is a one-semester first-year level course taken for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce, Science and Humanities.

For further details, particularly on the content of courses, see the departmental web page <http://www.ru.ac.za/statistics/>

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN STATISTICS

There are four first-year level courses in Statistics. STA 1S1 and STA 1P1 are held in the first semester and MST 102 and STA 1C2 are held in the second semester. Credit for each course is obtained separately and aggregation is not permitted. Credit may not be obtained for STA 1S1 and STA 1C2; STA 1S1 and STA 1P1, STA 1P1 and STA 1C2. Supplementary examinations may be recommended, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. MST 102 is one of the prerequisites for MST 2.

### Statistics for Science (STA 1S1)

First-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** At least a level 4 rating in Mathematics in the NSC or equivalent.

**Course description:** Numerical descriptive statistics; simple classical probability theory; basic discrete and continuous distributions; expected



values and moments; correlation and linear regression; point and interval estimation; modern univariate statistical inference; ANOVA; design and analysis of questionnaires; categorical data analysis; survival analysis.

**DP requirements:** The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%.

### Statistics for Pharmacy (STA 1P1)

First-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** At least a level 4 rating in Mathematics in the NSC or equivalent.

**Course description:** Numerical descriptive statistics; simple classical probability theory; basic discrete and continuous distributions; expected values and moments; point and interval estimation; modern univariate statistical inference; correlation and linear regression; ANOVA; design and analysis of questionnaires; categorical data analysis; survival analysis.

**DP requirements:** The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

### Statistics for Commerce (STA 1C2)

First-year level, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** At least a level 4 rating in Mathematics in the NSC or equivalent.

**Course description:** Collection and tabulation of statistical data; graphs and diagrams; frequency distributions; measures of central tendency and dispersion; shapes and parameters of classical distributions (normal, binomial, Poisson); simple classical probability theory; conditional probability; sampling distributions; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing; analysis of time series; correlation and simple linear regression.

**DP requirements:** The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

### Mathematical Statistics 102 (MST 102)

First-year level, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** At least a level 5 rating in Mathematics in the NSC or equivalent and at least 40% for MAM 101.

**Course description:** Probability: introduction; sample spaces; probability measures; calculating probabilities; conditional probability; independence. Discrete random variables: Bernoulli; binomial; geometric; negative binomial; hypergeometric and Poisson distributions. Expected values, moments and moment-generating functions. Using R as a calculator, discrete distributions in R, simulation of discrete events in R.

**DP requirements:** The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and

term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester course.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examinations 60%.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS

There are two second-year level semester-long courses in Mathematical Statistics. MST 201 is held in the first semester and MST 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course MST 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 40% in each component.

Mathematics 1 (MAM 1) and Mathematical Statistics 102 (MST 102) are required before a student may register for MST 201 or MST 202. Adequate performance of at least 40% in MST 201 is required before a student may register for MST 202. Students intending to major in Mathematical Statistics should note that an average of at least 60% for MST 2 is strongly suggested to register for MST 3 or AST 3. Students intending to major in statistics are strongly encouraged to take Mathematics 2 (MAM 2).

### Mathematical Statistics 201 (MST 201)

Second-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** MAM 1, MST 102.

**Course description:** Continuous univariate distributions including the uniform, normal,

exponential, gamma, beta, student-t, chi-square and F distributions. Expected values: expectation; variance and standard deviation. Moment-generating functions. Jointly distributed random variables: discrete; continuous; independent; conditional distributions; Covariance and correlation. Functions of random variables; order statistics. Continuous distributions in R, simulation of continuous random variables in R.

**DP requirements:** The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester course.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Examination 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with MST 202.

### Mathematical Statistics 202 (MST 202)

Second-year level, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** At least 40% for MST 201.

**Course description:** Sampling: population parameters; simple and stratified random sampling. Limit theorems: law of large numbers; central limit theorem. Sampling distributions derived from normal populations. Estimation of parameters: Goodness-of-fit and Poisson distribution; method of moments; method of maximum likelihood; confidence intervals; efficiency; sufficiency. Hypothesis testing: types of errors; power; Neyman-Pearson lemma; generalised likelihood ratio tests; measures of location and dispersion; comparison of two independent samples; paired samples; categorical data analysis; simple linear

regression. Simulation of limiting theorems in R, Hypothesis testing (t-tests and associated non-parametric tests) and simple regression in R.

**DP requirements:** The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester course.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Examination 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Sub-minimum for November:** 40% to aggregate with MST 201.

### THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS

There are two third-year level semester-long courses in Mathematical Statistics. MST 301 is held in the first semester and MST 302 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course MST 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 40% in each component.

Mathematical Statistics 2 (MST 2), Mathematics Statistics 102 (MST 102) and Mathematics 1 (MAM 1) are required before a student may register for MST 301 or MST 302. Adequate performance of at least 40% in MST 301 is required before a student may register for MST 302.

### Mathematical Statistics 301/Applied Statistics 301 (MST 301/AST 301)

Third-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** MAM 1, MST 102, MST 201 and MST 202.

**Course description:** Distribution theory; normal sampling theory, multivariate normal distribution; the general linear model, analysis of variance; non-linear regression. A formal introduction to functions in R. Applied regression analysis in R.

**DP requirements:** The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester course.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Examination 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with MST 302.

### Mathematical Statistics 302 (MST 302)

Third-year level, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** At least 40% for MST 301.

**Course description:** A selection of topics from: stochastic processes and financial statistics; Bayesian inference and application in OpenBUGS.

**DP requirements:** The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be

deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester course.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Examination 70%.

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Sub-minimum for November:** 40% to aggregate with MST 302.

### THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN APPLIED STATISTICS

Applied Statistics 3 is comprised of the two third year courses MST 301 and AST 302.

MST 301 is held in the first semester and AST 302 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course AST 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 40% in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Mathematical Statistics 2 (MST 2), Mathematical Statistics 102 (MST 102) and Mathematics 1 (MAM 1) are required before a student may register for MST 301 or AST 302. Adequate performance of at least 40% in MST 301 is required before a student may register for AST 302.

#### AST 302

Due to staffing constraints AST 302 will not be offered this year.

### MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits).

**Entrance requirements:** Students are required to attain at least 65% on average, where no module or component is less than 60%, in their undergraduate third year Mathematical Statistics course(s).

Students are strongly encouraged to take at least Mathematics 2 in their undergraduate studies.

**Course description:** The course consists of six modules and a research project. Subject to staff availability the modules may be selected from the following topics: Bayesian statistics; econometrics; generalized linear models; multivariate analysis; probability theory and stochastic processes; time series analysis; survey methods and sampling techniques; stochastic calculus in finance; computation, applied statistics and consulting; classification and statistical learning.

**DP requirements:** The department maintains that attendance at lectures, seminars, tutorials, practicals and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each test will be deemed to not have duly performed.

Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their computation, applied statistics and consulting portfolio will be deemed to not have duly performed.

**Assessment:** For each module the class record counts 30% and the examination 70%. The six modules count 70%, that is 11.67% each, of the final Honours mark. A portfolio is assessed for the computation, applied statistics and consulting module. The research component counts 30% of the final Honours mark. The research project mark is the average of the supervisors and external examiners mark and counts 75% of the research component. The oral presentation of the project counts 20% and the research seminar series portfolio counts 5% of the research component. The oral presentation mark is the average of the mark awarded by the members of staff at the presentation.

**Supplementary exam:** None.

**Sub-minimum:** 40% for each module, 40% for the seminar series, 40% for the research project, 40% for the research presentation.

**MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES  
IN MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS****Masters degrees**

(NQF level 9, 180 credits).

**PhD degree**

(NQF level 10, 360 credits).

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to research degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules. The Master's degree is either by thesis or by coursework and thesis. The course of study for a Masters by coursework must be approved by the Head of Department and Dean, acting on behalf of Faculty. A candidate may also be required to take an oral examination.

# ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY

## Associate Professor & Head of Department

NB Richoux, BSc Hons (UBC), MSc (MUN), PhD (MUN)

## Distinguished Professor and NRF Research Chair

MP Hill, BSc, BSc Hons, PhD (Rhodes) U) FRSSAf

## Associate Professors

RJ Wasserman, BSc (UNISA), BSc Hons (NMMU), MSc (NMMU), PhD (Rhodes)

S Edwards, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc, PhD (US)

B Smit, BSc, BSc Hons (UKZN), MSc (Wits), PhD (UP)

## Lecturers

N Mgqatsa, BSc, BSc Hons (WSU), MSc, PhD (NMMU)

T Naidoo, BSc, BSc Hons, MSc, PhD (UKZN)

## Emeritus Professors

RTF Bernard, PhD (Natal)

AJFK Craig, PhD (Natal)

AN Hodgson, PhD, DSc (Manchester)

CD McQuaid, PhD (UCT)

MH Villet, PhD (Wits)

## Honorary Professors

RSK Barnes, PhD (London)

RM Brigham, PhD (Canada)

SGA Compton, PhD (UK)

M Hausberger, PhD (UR1)

C Nyamukondiwa (US)

F Porri, PhD (Rhodes)

LJJ Seuront, DSc (University of Sciences and Technologies of Lille)

## Senior Research Associates

A Bernard, PhD (Rhodes)

TW Perry, PhD (New Mexico)

## Research Associates

TA Bellingan, PhD (Rhodes)

B Bonnevie, MSc (Rhodes)

ML Cole, PhD (Rhodes)

J Comley, PhD (Rhodes)

FC De Moor, PhD (Wits)

JM Midgley, PhD (Rhodes)

MC Mlambo, MSc (Rhodes)

S Moore, PhD (Rhodes)

C Nicastro, PhD (Rhodes)

KA Williams, PhD (Rhodes)

**Zoology** (ZOO) is a six-semester, three-year subject that may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn. Two, or in some cases four, semester courses in Zoology are allowed for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

To major in Zoology, a candidate is required to obtain credit for the following courses: CHE 1; CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; ZOO 201; ZOO 202; ZOO 301, ZOO 302.

**Entomology** (ENT) is a four-semester, two-year subject that may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

To major in Entomology, a candidate is required to obtain credit for the following courses: CHE 1; CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; ENT 201; ENT 202; ENT 301; ENT 302.

Students must attend all official field trips that form part of a semester-course for which they are registered. Detailed information on course structures and curricula involving Zoology or Entomology is available from the Head of Department.

## FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

### IN ZOOLOGY

There are two first-year courses in Zoology. CEL 101 is held in the first semester and ZOO 102 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% is deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course ZOO 1, provided that the candidate attains the required sub-minimum (45%) in each component.

Students wishing to major in Zoology and/or Entomology must normally obtain credit for each semester course separately. Supplementary examinations may be awarded in either course, provided that a candidate achieves at least 40% in Semester 1 and at least 40% in Semester 2.

**CEL 101: Cell Biology**

First-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 5, 15-credit) jointly taught by the Departments of Botany and Zoology & Entomology.

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** This course covers the structures of prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells; cellular processes, including cell to cell communication, photosynthesis, cell respiration, and cell division; and fundamental genetics, including the structure of genetic material and how it controls cellular processes.

**DP requirements:** Attend at least 90% of practical classes; submit all assignments; write all tests and essays, and obtain at least 40% for the class record

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Sub-minimum for June:** 40% to aggregate with BOT 102 or ZOO 102

**ZOO 102: Animal Diversity, Structure and Function**

First-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 5, 15-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** none

**Course description:** This course introduces the evolution, systematics, morphology and anatomy, and functional biology of the animal kingdom, both vertebrate and invertebrate.

**DP requirements:** Attend at least 90% of practical classes and submit all assignments.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with CEL 101

**SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES****IN ZOOLOGY**

There are two independent second-year courses in Zoology, ZOO 201 and ZOO 202. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% is deemed to be equivalent to the year-course ZOO 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be offered for either course. Practical reports,

essays, seminars, and class tests collectively comprise the class mark.

Students wishing to major in Zoology normally require credit in Zoology 1 (CEL 101, ZOO 102), Botany 102 (BOT 102), and Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) before they may register for ZOO 201 or ZOO 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 or BOT 102 concurrently with ZOO 201 and ZOO 202.

**ZOO 201: Principles of Ecology and Evolution**

Second-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 6, 20-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** ZOO 1

**Co-requisites:** CHE 1, BOT 102

**Course description:** This course concerns the general principles of ecology and evolution. Ecological topics include the levels of organism, population, community, and ecosystem. Short field trips may be held. Evolution topics include evolutionary genetics, species diversification and micro- and macro-evolution.

**DP requirements:** Attend at least 90% of practical classes, submit all assignments, and attend all field trips.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with ZOO 202

**ZOO 202: Environmental and Behavioural Physiology**

Second-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 6, 20-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** ZOO 102

**Course description:** This course examines the effects of environmental variables such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, ions, water, temperature, and other external stimuli on how animals function and how groups of animals respond to environmental conditions and stimuli.

**DP requirements:** Attend at least 90% of practical classes, and submit all assignments.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with ZOO 201

## SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

### IN ENTOMOLOGY

There are two independent second-year courses in Entomology, ENT 201 and ENT 202. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% is deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course ENT 2, provided that a candidate attains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars, and class tests collectively comprise the class mark. Students wishing to major in Entomology normally require credit in Zoology 1 (CEL 101, ZOO 102), Botany 102 (BOT 102), and Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) before they may register for ENT 201 or ENT 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 or BOT 102 concurrently with ENT 201 and ENT 202.

#### ENT 202: General Insect Biology

Second-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 6, 20-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** ZOO 1

**Co-requisites:** CHE 1, BOT 102

**Course description:** This course introduces the anatomy, physiology, genetics, diversity and phylogeny of insects. Practical classes will be both field- and laboratory-based and students submit an insect collection and attend short weekend field trips.

**DP requirements:** Attend at least 90% of practical classes, submit all assignments, and attend all field trips.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with ENT 201

#### ENT 201: Professional Entomology: Insects and Man

Second-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 6, 20-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** ZOO 1

**Co-requisites:** CHE 1, BOT 102

**Course description:** This course provides an overview of the biology of the major insect orders and their impact on humans, particularly in the

context of major entomology career pathways such as agricultural entomology, medical and veterinary entomology, pest control, aquatic entomology, and biomonitoring. Practical classes will be both field- and laboratory-based, and students submit an insect collection.

**DP requirements:** Attend at least 90% of practical classes, submit all assignments, and attend all field trips.

**Assessment:** Class record 40%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with ENT 202

## THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

### IN ZOOLOGY

There are two independent third-year courses in Zoology. Students wishing to major in Zoology must obtain ZOO 301 and ZOO 302. Credit for each of these courses may be obtained separately. Aggregation will be deemed equivalent to a year-long course ZOO 3, provided that the candidate attains the required subminimum in each semester. Supplementary examinations may be offered in third year courses. Practical reports, essays, seminars, and class tests collectively comprise the class mark. A research project forms a component of each semester in Zoology. Students wishing to major in Zoology normally require credit in ZOO 201 and ZOO 202, or equivalently ZOO 2, before they may register for a third-year semester.

#### ZOO 301: African Zoology: Land Animals and Life Histories

Third-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 7, 30-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** ZOO 2

**Course description:** This course uses the African vertebrate fauna to teach behaviour, physiology, and conservation. A short field trip may be held.

**DP requirements:** Attend at least 90% of practical classes, and submit all assignments and a research project.

**Assessment:** Class record 20%, Project 20%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with ZOO 302



**ZOO 302: Marine Biology**

Third-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 7, 30-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** ZOO 2

**Course description:** The oceans have a profound effect on life on Earth, providing food for man and influencing both weather and climate. This course emphasizes the physical properties of the marine environment and how these shape species' interactions and food webs. Topics covered may include ocean circulation, primary production, zooplankton dynamics, the deep sea, rocky shores, sandy beaches, estuaries, planktonic food webs, pelagic/demersal fisheries, climate change, and the behavioural and physiological ecology of marine animals. Short field trips may also be held.

**DP requirements:** Attend at least 90% of practical classes, and submit all assignments and a research project.

**Assessment:** Class record 20%, Project 20%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with ZOO 301

**THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES****IN ENTOMOLOGY**

There are two independent third-year courses in Entomology. Students wishing to major in Entomology must obtain ENT 301 and ENT 302. Credit for each of these courses may be obtained separately. Aggregation will be deemed equivalent to the year-long course ENT 3 provided that the candidate attains the required subminimum in each semester. Supplementary examinations may be offered in third year courses. Practical reports, essays, seminars, and class tests collectively comprise the class mark. A research project forms a component of each semester in Entomology.

Students wishing to major in Entomology normally require credit in ENT 201 and ENT 202, or equivalently ENT 2, before they may register for a third-year semester.

**ENT 302: Applied Insect Ecology**

Third-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 7, 30-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** ENT 2

**Course description:** This course illustrates the application of ecology and ethology to applied problems in entomology.

**DP requirements:** Attend at least 90% of practical classes, and submit all assignments and a research project.

**Assessment:** Class record 20%, Project 20%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with ENT 301

**ENT 301: Environmental Entomology**

Third-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 7, 30-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** ENT 2

**Course description:** This course investigates the role of insects in various environmental and ecological roles related to professional entomology.

**DP requirements:** Submit all assignments and a research project.

**Assessment:** Class record 20%, Project 20%, Examination 60%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40% to aggregate with ENT 302

**HONOURS COURSES****Honours in Zoology and Entomology**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** normally at least 65% for ZOO 3 or ENT 3 or equivalent

**Course description:** The department offers separate Honours courses in Zoology, Entomology, Marine Biology, and African Vertebrate Biodiversity. The aims of these courses are to produce graduates who think critically, manage independent research, and communicate professionally. Students participate in core courses of statistics, scientific communication, various academic topics, and research projects. Whenever possible, students undertake a field trip and attend a local scientific conference. Joint honours with cognate disciplines may be permitted at the discretion of the Heads of Departments concerned.

**DP requirements:** Submit all assignments and research projects.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

**Supplementary exam:** None

### **Zoology Honours**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** normally at least 65% in ZOO 3 or equivalent

**Course description:** The course consists of advanced studies in Zoology that may include reproduction, life histories, behaviour, disturbance ecology, evolutionary biology, invasion biology, trophic ecology, and applied zoology. Candidates undertake research projects in any field of Zoology.

**DP requirements:** Submit all assignments and research projects and attend all field trips.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

**Supplementary exam:** None

### **Entomology Honours**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** normally at least 65% for ENT 3 or equivalent

**Course description:** The course consists of advanced studies in Entomology that may include insect ecology, economic entomology, biological control, and biological invasions. Candidates undertake entomological research projects.

**DP requirements:** Submit all assignments and research projects and attend all field trips.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

**Supplementary exam:** None

### **Marine Biology Honours**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** normally at least 65% for ZOO 3 or equivalent

**Course description:** The course consists of advanced studies in Marine Biology that may include physical and chemical oceanography, planktonic food webs, benthic food webs, fringing communities, and life history strategies. Candidates undertake marine biological research projects.

**DP requirements:** Submit all assignments and research projects and attend all field trips.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

**Supplementary exam:** None

### **African Vertebrate Biodiversity Honours**

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

**Entrance requirements:** normally at least 65% for ZOO 3 or equivalent.

**Course description:** The course consists of advanced studies in African Vertebrate Biology that may include biogeography, biodiversity, population processes, life history patterns, physiological adaptations, conservation, and wildlife management. Candidates undertake vertebrate research projects.

**DP requirements:** Submit all assignments and research projects and attend all field trips.

**Assessment:** Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

**Supplementary exam:** None

## **MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES**

MSc (NQF level 9, 180-credit)

PhD (NQF level 10, 360-credit)

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to read for the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

## RESEARCH INSTITUTES AND UNITS

### THE ALBANY MUSEUM

#### **Director**

P Cimi

#### **Assistant Director**

Vacant

#### **ADMINISTRATION**

##### **State Accountant**

T. Sias

##### **Finance Clerk**

A. Mheshe

##### **Admin Officer**

N. Sentile

##### **Human Resource Officer**

Z.R. Mjenxane

##### **Admin Clerk**

A. Gogodla

##### **Communications and Marketing Officer**

L. Dyani

#### **DEPARTMENT OF ENTOMOLOGY AND ARACHNOLOGY**

##### **Curator**

T. Bellingan, PhD (Rhodes)

##### **Curator Emeritus**

S. Gess, PhD (Rhodes)

##### **Curator Emeritus**

E. Pringle, LLB

#### **DEPARTMENT OF FRESHWATER INVERTEBRATES**

##### **Curator**

M.C. Mlambo

##### **Assistant Curator**

P. Ntloko, PhD (Rhodes)

##### **Curator Emeritus**

F.C. de Moor, PhD (Wits)

#### **DEPARTMENT OF EARTH SCIENCES**

##### **Curator**

R. Prevec, PhD (Natal), PhD (Wits)

##### **Research Scientist**

R. Gess, PhD (Wits)

#### **HERBARIUM**

*(staffed jointly by Rhodes University and the Albany Museum)*

##### **Curator**

P.V.Cimi

##### **Botanist**

T. Dold

#### **DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY**

##### **Curator**

C. Booth

##### **General Assistant**

B. Tana

#### **ANTHROPOLOGY**

##### **Curator**

P Mntonintshi

#### **HISTORY**

##### **Curator**

G. Zomelele

##### **Assistant Curator**

B. September

##### **Curator Emeritus**

W.F. Way-Jones

#### **OBSERVATORY MUSEUM**

##### **Curator**

Z. Gxotelwa

##### **Front of House, Observatory Museum**

L. Mains

S. Sandi

#### **EXHIBITIONS**

##### **Exhibitions Officer**

P. Janse

##### **Conservator**

A. Chiazzari

##### **General Assistant**

T.G. Maswana

##### **Taxidermist**

T. du Toit

**EDUCATION****Museum Education Officer**

K. Mhasele

**TECHNICAL SERVICES****Artisan Foreman**

H. Köhl

**Artisan**

V. Pina

**General Assistants**

E. Thomas

A. Ngeleza

L. Mto

V.M. Sandi

**Visitor Services**

Z. Klaas

P. Maselana

B. Mtuze

S. Citwa

The Albany Museum falls under the Department of Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture in the Eastern Cape government, although the building and collections are owned by a Board of Trustees. The Museum, as an Affiliated Institution, has enjoyed a long and productive relationship with Rhodes University. Several staff members are Science Faculty Board Members, continue to supervise numerous student projects, and run courses within the academic programmes of departments such as Entomology, Botany and Geology. Museum staff engage extensively with the public in the form of tours and talks, and an active outreach programme catering to local school groups (contact the Museum for a copy of our Education Booklet with a schedule of focus weeks run by each department). Staff also participate in SciFest, careers days and many other initiatives. The extensive collections of insects and other invertebrates, fossils, birds and plants, historical, anthropological and archaeological artefacts, are an important research and heritage resource.

**History of the Albany Museum**

The Albany Museum, the second oldest museum in southern Africa, was founded in September 1855.

The Museum acquired its own building in 1902 when was built.

When legendary botanist and administrator Dr Selmar Schonland was appointed as Curator of the Museum 1889 (a position changed to Director in 1895), the Museum was housed in the City Hall. It was through his tireless efforts that a separate and dedicated building was constructed, and in 1900 all collections were transferred to the new building. This formed the core block of the present Natural Sciences Museum, and it was officially opened in 1902.

Dr Schonland played a major role in the development of the herbarium and the library, as well as for the establishment of the Museum as a centre of scholarship in the natural sciences. In 1903, the first issue of the Records of the Albany Museum was published.

This extraordinary man also played a critical role in the establishment of Rhodes University College. He addressed the Cape Parliament speaking for the establishment of a university in Makhanda (then known as Grahamstown), and persuaded the trustees of Cecil Rhodes's estate to pledge funds for the establishment of the college. He has been described as the driving force and champion behind the establishment of Rhodes University College. When the College was eventually established in 1904, Dr Schonland, became its first professor of Botany.

The first three science professors to be appointed by Rhodes, were in the fields of botany, zoology and geology. Their posts were shared with the Museum, and in fact, the Museum paid over a third of their salaries. These joint appointments allowed Prof. Selmar Schonland and the geologist, Prof. E.H.L. Schwartz, to continue to invest time in building the Museum herbarium, and geological collections, respectively.

The palaeontological and geological collections have their origins with the collections of Andrew Geddes Bain and Dr W Guybon Atherstone; and with his joint appointment at Rhodes, Prof. E.H.L. Schwartz, became the Keeper of Mineralogy and

Geology at the Museum. Curation of the Earth Science collections was then undertaken by various volunteers, including Prof. E.D. Mountain, head of Geology at Rhodes. Dr William 'Billy' de Klerk was the first full-time staff member to be appointed as curator of the geological and palaeontological collections, a post he held from 1985 to 2016.

Prof Schonland was succeeded as director by Dr John Hewitt. His research interests lay in the fields of vertebrate zoology and archaeology. The earliest collections of archaeological material date back to 1895. During this period, Makhanda's longstanding affair with fishes started. In 1930 Dr JLB Smith, Senior Lecturer in Chemistry at Rhodes, identified and catalogued the Museum's marine fish collection. In 1952 the Museum's collection of fishes was loaned to the University's Department of Ichthyology, and in 1968, it was moved to the newly established JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology (now known as SAIAB, the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity), leaving the developing freshwater fish collection at the Albany Museum. Over the next decades, the freshwater fish collections of the Transvaal and Cape Nature Conservation authorities, the Natal Museum and the South African Museum were all transferred to the Albany Museum. Then, in 2015, the freshwater fish collection was amalgamated with the SAIAB fish collection on a 99-year loan agreement, putting all of the fish under one roof again.

On 6 September 1941 the Museum was burnt down. The library and most of the collections were saved but there was a great loss of exhibited material. The Museum was rebuilt and the displays were reconstructed.

In 1955, the Museum celebrated its centenary and, in 1957, its staff became Provincial employees. Dr John Hewitt retired the following year, and was succeeded by Dr T. H. Barry. During Dr Barry's tenure of five years the Hewitt and Rennie Wings were added to the Natural Sciences Museum and the 1820 Settlers Memorial Museum was built. The period between 1965 and 1977, under the directorship of Mr C. F. Jacot Guillarmod, was one of consolidation. Fort Selwyn was restored by the Province and handed over to the Museum in 1977. The National Collection of Freshwater Organisms was transferred from the CSIR to the Museum, founding what is now known as the Department of Freshwater Invertebrates, with Dr KMF Scott the first curator. In 1958 the Department of Entomology and Arachnology was created with Charles Jacot-Guillarmod, its first curator.

Under Mr Jacot Guillarmod's successor, Mr B.C. Wilmot, the Museum entered a new period of growth. De Beers Consolidated Mines Limited purchased and restored the Observatory and the Priest's House and donated them to the Museum. The Old Provost was restored by the Province. The Observatory Museum received considerable maintenance again in 2019 under the directorship of Mr Manzi Vabaza, facilitated by the Department of Public Works.

Museum staff started teaching short courses at the University and, in 1983, the Museum became an Associated Research Institute of Rhodes University. The Museum's close relationship with the University was expanded with the consolidation of the herbaria of the two institutions and the formation of the Selmar Schonland Herbarium, housed in the Museum.

## AMAZWI SOUTH AFRICAN MUSEUM OF LITERATURE (formerly THE NATIONAL ENGLISH LITERARY MUSEUM)

### Director

BA Thomas, BFA (Rhodes), BA  
(Hons)(UNISA), PG Prof Dip Mus (Stell)

**Manager: Curatorial Division**

CA Warren, HdipLIS (PE Technikon) BA  
(Hons)(UNISA)

**Manager: Education and Public  
Programmes Division**

ZT Matshoba, PTD (Senior)(Masibulele), ACE  
(Science Education)(Rhodes), PGdip  
JMS(Rhodes), Bed (Hons)(Fort Hare), MA  
(Creative Writing)(Rhodes)  
**Chief Financial Officer**  
I Daringo, BCom (Hons)(NUST Zim)

The National English Literary Museum was officially renamed Amazwi South African Museum of Literature in 2019. The museum now has a mandate to collect literary artefacts relating to the literatures of all South African languages.

NELM was founded with a small collection of South African English manuscripts by the late Professor Guy Butler of Rhodes University in the 1960s. Butler had a vision of a national repository for South African literary manuscripts, and this was the genesis of the museum. The museum became a Declared Cultural Institution in 1980 and is principally funded by the national Department of Sport, Arts and Culture. Although autonomous, Amazwi maintains close links with the ISEA and is an associated research institute of Rhodes University.

In 2016 the museum moved into its new custom-designed building. The building has a 5-star rating from the Green Building Council of South Africa, the first museum in the country to achieve this. The permanent exhibitions, “Voices of the Land”, depict the literary representation of the South African landscape from early colonial times to the present day. Through literary imaginings the landscape is presented as a physical place with its long history of ownership conflicts, and as an aesthetic symbol of cultural identity. The building also has temporary exhibition space, an auditorium, activity rooms and a reading room for visiting researchers.

Amazwi has two satellite museums: Schreiner House in Cradock and the Eastern Star in Makhanda.

The exhibitions at Schreiner House explore the life and work of Olive Schreiner – the renowned author of *The Story of an African Farm* – and recognise her contribution as a writer, women’s rights activist and human rights activist. Some of her belongings and part of her and her husband’s personal libraries are on display. Schreiner House – No. 9 Cross Street – was once her home, and she lived there with her siblings Theo, Ettie and Will from 1867 to 1870.

The Eastern Star gets its name from a newspaper that was established in Grahamstown in 1871. The newspaper and its proprietors followed the gold rush to Johannesburg in 1887 and the paper was renamed *The Star* – still a popular daily. The Eastern Star houses exhibits of 19<sup>th</sup> century printing equipment, including a 120-year old Wharfedale printing press, and an exhibition that examines the history of the press in South Africa.

Amazwi has more than 100 000 literary artefacts in its collection. These include authors’ manuscripts, printers’ proofs, diaries, correspondence, publishers’ archives, photographs, posters, play-scripts, theatre programmes, cultural artefacts and rare books that date back to the 17<sup>th</sup> century. The museum’s collection of published poems, short stories, novels, plays, autobiographies, travel writing and children’s literature exceeds 30 000.

Amazwi provides support for the teaching of literature as well as less formal guided tours of the museums and indigenous gardens, and storytelling sessions for learners in the lower grades and special schools. Our aim is to inspire future generations of writers and nurture avid readers.

See <https://amazwi.museum> or  
<https://www.facebook.com/NationalEnglishLiteraryMuseum> for further information, or e-mail:  
[info@amazwi.museum](mailto:info@amazwi.museum).

## BIOPHARMACEUTICS RESEARCH INSTITUTE (BRI)

**Director**

Vacant

**Emeritus Professor**

I.Kanfer, BSc (Pharm), BSc(Hons),  
PhD(Rhodes)

**Senior Clinical Co-Ordinator**

EAK Repinz, RN (Gen, Psych &Com)

**Research Officer**

Vacant

The Biopharmaceutics Research Institute (BRI) is a Specialty Contract Research Organisation, established in 1987 and dedicated to conducting bioavailability/bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies on topical corticosteroid drug products in accordance with international requirements and specifications. The Institute has been inspected, audited and approved by a number of international regulatory authorities such as the USA's Food & Drug Administration (FDA), the World Health Organization (WHO) and the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (formerly known as the Medicines Control Council – MCC) and is internationally acknowledged as a premier testing site using the Vasoconstrictor Assay (VCA) in accordance with the internationally accepted FDA's guidance for such products.

A full range of services for the clinical, statistical and report generation aspects of bioavailability/ bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies are undertaken according to Good Clinical Practice (GCP) and standard operating procedures (SOPs). The BRI provides safety and efficacy testing services to pharmaceutical manufacturing companies for topical corticosteroid drug products for national and international regulatory registration purposes as well as for formulation development purposes. Topical corticosteroid products which have been successfully tested at the BRI have received marketing authorisation

in South Africa, Europe, United States of America and Canada.

Studies are conducted in a clinic staffed by experienced investigators including study physicians, registered pharmacists and QA officers where the Executive Director has over forty years of experience with studies on topical corticosteroids. The Institute has a pool of well-trained professional nurses who assist in general clinical activities. Study protocols are submitted for review for ethical approval according to GCP principles and in accordance with the requirements of the Declaration of Helsinki.

Motivated and responsible volunteers are recruited from male and female members of the Rhodes University student body. The clinic is ideally situated on the Rhodes University campus and is within easy walking distance of volunteers residing in University residences or off-campus - over 50% of the student body reside on campus.

The Institute also provides facilities for postgraduate projects leading to MSc and PhD degrees.

## CENTRE FOR SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT (CSD)

### Director

F Gunzo, BSocSci(Hons)(Fort Hare), MEd,  
PhD(Rhodes)

### Coordinator: Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Literacy Teaching

Vacant

### Coordinator: BEd (Foundation Phase Teaching)

H Khuhlane, BCom, PGCE, BEd Hons,  
MEd(Rhodes)

### Coordinator: Community Centred Projects

N Green, MSc(OT)(UWC)

### Assistant Coordinator

J Muroa, BA(Soc)(Limpopo)

### Facilitators

B Msimango, Diploma in Development Practice

N Shelle, National Diploma in ECD

V Joni, National Diploma in ECD

### Financial Administrator

V Maroyi

### Administrative staff

I Harrison

T Nombewu

### Professional Associate

M Irvine, BA, UED(Rhodes), UED(Pre-  
Primary Education)(UNISA), BEd(Hons),  
MEd(Rhodes)

### Visiting Professor:

L Pretorius, BA(Stell), BA(Hons)(Italian),

Higher Education Diploma,

BA(Hons)(Linguistics), MA(Linguistics), D

Litt.et Phil(UNISA)

The focus of the Centre for Social Development is Early Childhood Development (ECD). Its work proceeds in three broad directions:

- community development through institutions and activities including, for example, toy libraries and skills training for ECD practitioners in the form of capacity developing workshops, and emergent literacy and numeracy interventions.
- CHE accredited formal teacher education qualifications, namely a part-time Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) and Advanced Certificate in Foundation

Phase Literacy Teaching, which are offered under the auspices of the Education Faculty.

- Engaged research linking the community and academic projects.

The CSD's work provides a pathway for ECD practitioners with little formal education training into a formal teacher education programme, the BEd (Foundation Phase Teaching) degree. This pathway is contributing to the professionalisation of both the ECD sector and the Foundation Phase (Grades R to 3) of formal schooling.

The CSD undertakes research into literacy, early childhood development and education. The institute is uniquely positioned in the University to contribute to a growing field of engaged research given its dual mandate of academic advancement and community engagement.

## ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN FOUNDATION PHASE LITERACY TEACHING

(NQF Level 6, 120 credits) 2 years part time study

This qualification focuses on literacy teaching and learning in the Foundation Phase of schooling (Grades R to 3) with a particular focus on the development of literacy in African Languages. The qualification consists of 12 modules plus an additional course in computer literacy.

### Computer Literacy

**9120001** (NQF Level 5, 12 credits)

**Course description:** This is a fundamental course. If students can demonstrate competence, this will be recognised as prior learning. If not, they will be required to attend an introductory course in computer literacy. The course is done in Year 2.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

**Pass mark:** 50%



## YEAR 1

### CAPS Reading Activities

9120002 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This module provides an overview of how children learn to read and demonstrates how the various reading activities specified in CAPS (Read Aloud, Shared Reading and Writing, Group Guided Reading, Paired Reading and Independent Reading) enable the learner to move along a continuum of shifting support for reading.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### Emergent Literacy

9120003 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This module looks at the early stages of learning to read and write. It focuses on the importance of Grade R as a context for developing emergent literacy, especially where children are not getting extensive exposure to books at home, and on how Grade R teachers can support children's language and literacy development.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### Teaching Decoding

9120004 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This module explains the role of decoding in learning to read for meaning. It deals with four components of decoding that predict early reading success, namely, (1) phonological and phonemic awareness, (2) alphabetic knowledge and phonics, (3) word recognition, and (4) oral reading fluency.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### Teaching Vocabulary

9120005 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This module focuses on the importance of vocabulary in reading, the nature of vocabulary knowledge and how it develops,

what factors can facilitate – or impede – word learning, and what strategies can be explicitly taught to help children become more efficient word learners.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### Teaching Comprehension

9120006 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This module focuses on comprehension processes and how to develop them. It emphasises the need to explicitly teach strategies that support and develop reading comprehension. It demonstrates how to use questions that help children think about the meaning of what they read, how to teach about text structure, and how to assess comprehension.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### Teaching Writing and Handwriting

9120007 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This module develops understanding of the reciprocal role of reading and writing and provides the teacher with knowledge and tools for teaching writing across the Foundation Phase. It covers stages of writing development; teaching writing using a process and genre approach; CAPS writing activities; teaching creative writing and ways to extend writing; teaching language, spelling and grammar; and assessing writing.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

## YEAR 2

### Teaching EFAL in the Foundation Phase (1)

9120008 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This module outlines principles for teaching an additional language in the Foundation Phase and demonstrates how to apply these in the classroom. It contextualises this within the South African Language-in-

Education Policy and the current curriculum. The module focuses on setting up the classroom and doing baseline assessment at the start of the year, and how to teach oral language, phonological awareness, phonics and reading in EFAL.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### **Teaching EFAL in Foundation Phase (2)**

9120009 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** Following on from Teaching EFAL in Foundation Phase (1), this module covers teaching writing in EFAL, teaching vocabulary and grammar in EFAL, preparing children for the transition to English LoLT in Grade 4, assessing learner's English and planning for EFAL teaching.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### **Creating a Culture of Reading**

9120010 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** The purpose of this module is to develop schools and teachers who can create a culture of reading so that children can see on a daily basis that reading is important, that books are valued, that being a good reader is desirable, and that learning about the world through books is a normal part of learning.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### **Inclusive Education**

9120011 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This module assists the teacher to work in an inclusive classroom in which children may experience a variety of barriers to learning. It focuses on the teacher's role in identifying barriers, on policies and available support services, as well as on practical strategies the teacher can use in the ordinary classroom.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### **Reading Assessment and Remediation**

9120012 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This module focuses on assessment of learning in relation to educational principles and curriculum and policy requirements. The purpose of the module is to help teachers understand why assessment of reading and writing is important, how to go about doing it in different contexts and how to plan teaching in light of the results of assessment.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

### **Planning and Progression**

9120013 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course description:** The purpose of this module is to help teachers understand why planning for teaching literacy is important and how to go about doing this in relation to educational principles and curriculum and policy requirements. It emphasizes the need to time, sequence and coordinate reading activities in order to make them coherent and meaningful.

**Assessment:** Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

**Pass mark for all assessments:** 50%

## **BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (FOUNDATION PHASE TEACHING)**

**[Part-time] (BDFN1 for 4 year BDFN2 for 5 year)**

The curriculum for the five-year programme for candidates holding an Early Childhood Development qualification of 240 credits at NQF Level 5 starts with the following courses. These courses are not included in the four year programme which is for candidates who are professionally qualified teachers, holding an initial teaching qualification of 360 credits at NQF Level 6 or the three year programme for students entering the course as professionally

qualified teachers, holding an initial teaching qualification of 180 credits at NQF Level 6 or above.

### **Year 1 of BDFN2**

#### **Education and Professional Studies 3**

Code 9130035 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Course Description:** The purpose of this course is to introduce students to contemporary and comparative perspectives of early childhood and their implications for understanding teaching and learning in the early years.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

### **English for Teaching 3**

Code 9130036 (NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is to strengthen students' knowledge and proficiency in English.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### **African Indigenous Language for Teaching 3**

Code 9130037 (NQF Level 6, 7 credits)

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is to strengthen students' knowledge and proficiency in an official African language.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

Note: Students who are not competent in an official African language (non-Mother Tongue speakers) must demonstrate conversational competence in such a language.

### **Performance and Multimodalities 1A (Art)**

Code 9130038 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is two-fold: firstly, to develop the epistemological, experiential and content knowledge necessary for confident, flexible and active teaching and learning of Life Skills. Secondly, to develop students' modalities that can be used in teaching generally to mediate learning.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### **Performance and Multimodalities 1B (Physical Education)**

Code 9130039 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is two-fold: firstly, to develop the epistemological, experiential and content knowledge necessary for confident, flexible and active teaching and learning of Life Skills. Secondly, it is to develop students' modalities that can be used in teaching generally to mediate learning.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### **Introduction to Mathematics for Teaching**

Code 9130040 (NQF Level 5, 5 credits)

Course descriptor: The purpose of this module is to strengthen and develop students' personal knowledge and understanding of foundational Mathematical concepts enabling them to work with 'problems' and Mathematical concepts flexibly and with confidence. Through this confidence, teachers will empower children with confidence in their own mathematical abilities.

Assessment: Class record 100%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 1: First Additional Language (English)**

Code 9130041 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

**Course descriptors:** The purpose of this course is firstly, to enable students to understand the developmental processes involved in acquiring English as an additional Language. Secondly it is to introduce students to the teaching of English as a First Additional Language in a diversity of classroom contexts.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language**

Code 9130042 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

**Course descriptors:** The purpose of this course is firstly, to enable students to understand the developmental processes involved in acquiring home language (language and literacy) and the theory that informs this. Secondly it is to introduce students to the teaching of home language in a diversity of classroom contexts.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%,  
Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 1: Life Skills**

Code 9130043 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

**Course descriptors:** The purpose of this course is to equip students with content, pedagogical and curriculum knowledge to understand and support children's holistic development in relation to Life Skills.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary Examination:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%,  
Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 1: Mathematics**

Code 9130044 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

**Course descriptors:** The purpose of this course is to develop an understanding of the nature of mathematics; the role of language in learning mathematics; and advance knowledge of concepts and skills relating to the teaching of shape and space, measurement and data handling in the Foundation

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%,  
Examination 40%

**YEAR 1 of BDFN1, YEAR 2 of BDFN2****Education and Professional Studies 4**

Code BDFN1 9130001/BDFN2 9130045 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance Requirement: EPS3 for BDFN2

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is to introduce students to contemporary and comparative perspectives of early childhood and their implications for understanding teaching and learning in the early years.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50% **Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

**English for Teaching 4**

Code BDFN1 9130002/BDFN2 9130046 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance Requirement: English for Teaching 3 for BDFN2

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is to strengthen students' knowledge and proficiency in English. In addition, it introduces students to prose fiction, poetry, child language acquisition and children's literature in English and English linguistics (phonology, morphology, grammar, lexis).

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

**African Indigenous Language for Teaching 4**

Code BDFN1 9130003/BDFN2 9130047 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance Requirement: African Indigenous Language for Teaching 3

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is to strengthen students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa (Mother Tongue). In addition, it introduces students to prose fiction, poetry, child language acquisition and children's literature in isiXhosa and isiXhosa linguistics (phonology, morphology, grammar, lexis).

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

Note: Students who are not competent in an official African language (non-Mother Tongue speakers) must demonstrate conversational competence in such a language.

**Understanding the Social and Physical World 2**

Code BDFN1 9130004/ BDFN2 9130048 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** None

**Course description:** This course gives students the opportunity to engage with technology, geography and history content knowledge. It develops students' skills in the mentioned components. The course also supplements the teaching of the beginning knowledge towards the Life Skills Subject.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

**Mathematics for Teaching**

Code BDFN1 9130010/BDFN2 9130049 (NQF Level 5, 10 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** Introduction to Maths for teaching for BDFN2

**Course description:** The Mathematics for Teaching course focuses on the development of content knowledge, mathematical thinking skills and the habits of mind necessary to teach mathematics in the Foundation Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

**Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language (English)**

Code BDFN1 9130006/BDFN2 9130050 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits) (Core)

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1: FAL English for BDFN2

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. It seeks to develop the First Additional Language (FAL) in English, of in-service teachers supporting them to become knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa; and proficient, competent and capable of promoting FAL teaching that is accessible, authentic, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language**

Code BDFN1 9130007/BDFN2 9130051 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1: HL for BDFN2

**Course descriptors:** The purpose of this course is firstly, to enable students to understand the developmental processes involved in acquiring home language (language and literacy) and the theory that informs this. Secondly it is to introduce students to the teaching of home language in a diversity of classroom contexts.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills**

Code BDFN1 9130008/BDFN2 9130052 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 1: Life Skills for BDFN2

**Course description:** Life Skills is central to the holistic development of the child. This course is aligned to the national school curriculum and aims to provide a framework for understanding how Life Skills fits into the children's education in the Foundation Phase, as well as how the integration of Beginning Knowledge and Personal and Social Well-being, Creative Arts, and Physical Education should support and strengthen the other core Foundation Phase subjects namely Languages (Home and First Additional) and Mathematics.

**Assessment:** Class record 50%, Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics**

Code BDFN1 9130009/BDFN2 9130053 (NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 1: Mathematics for BDFN2

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the national school curriculum and seeks to develop an understanding of the different approaches to teaching Mathematics in the Foundation Phase classroom. In addition, it aims to increase teachers' content knowledge of concepts and skills relating to the teaching of number operations and relationships, patterns, measurement, shape and space, and data handling in Foundation Phase Mathematics.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

**YEAR 2 of BDFN1, YEAR 3 of BDFN2****Education and Professional Studies 5  
(Holistic development of the teacher):**

Code BDFN1 9130011/BDFN2 9130054 (NQF Level 7, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** EPS 4

**Course description:** This course deals with theories and research related to child development and their implications for teaching young children. In addition, it aims to induct students into the study of education and professional issues such as the philosophy and psychology of education. It also includes pedagogy and managing and organising learning.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

**Performance & Multimodalities 2A**

Code BDFN1 9130012/BDFN2 9130055 (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** PMM1

**Course description:** This course equips students with content and skills of Art in education (Physical education, drama, dance and music) with regards to Foundation Phase teaching. Students are equipped and introduced to the above art components to enable them to have content knowledge and subject matter knowledge that supplement the teaching of Life Skills in Foundation Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 100 %

**Foundation Phase Studies 3: First  
Additional Language (English)**

Code BDFN1 9130013/BDFN2 9130056 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 2 FAL English

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. It draws from FPS 2 FAL English course and seeks to develop (English) in-service teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South

Africa, and proficient, competent, and capable of promoting FAL (English) teaching that is accessible, authentic, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in FAL (English) to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home  
Language**

Code BDFN1 9130014/BDFN2 9130057 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 2 HL

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. It draws from the FPS 2 HL course and seeks to develop First or Home language (HL) in-service teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting HL teaching that is accessible, authentic, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

**Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills**

Code BDFN1 9130015/BDFN2 9130058 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** None

**Course description:** Life Skills is central to the holistic development of the child. This course is aligned to the national school curriculum and aims to provide a framework for understanding how Life Skills fits into the children's education in the Foundation Phase, as well as how the integration of Beginning Knowledge and Personal and Social Well-being, Creative Arts, and Physical Education should support and

strengthen the other core Foundation Phase subjects namely Languages (Home and First Additional) and Mathematics. This year focuses particularly on Creative Arts (dance, drama, music and the visual arts) and physical Education. It provides theoretical underpinnings, as well as methodologies and ideas for teaching Creative Arts and Physical Education in the Foundation Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics**

Code BDFN1 9130016/BDFN2 9130059 (NQF Level 6, 9 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 2 Mathematics

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. It draws from the FPS 2 Mathematics course and provides a sound framework for understanding Mathematics education in the Foundation Phase. In addition, it aims to advance teachers' knowledge of theory, concepts and skills relating to the teaching of number operations and relationships, patterns, shape and space, measurement and data handling in Foundation Phase Mathematics.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

## **YEAR 3 of BDFN1, YEAR 4 of BDFN2**

### **Education and Professional Studies 6**

Code BDFN1 9130017/BDFN2 9130060 (NQF Level 7, 20 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** EPS 5

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is to deepen students' knowledge and understanding of the study of education and professional issues related to ethics, pedagogy and policy.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 4: First Additional Language (English)**

Code BDFN1 9130018/BDFN2 9130061 (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 3 FAL English

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. The purpose of this course is to deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge for teaching English as an additional language in a diversity of contexts.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language**

Code BDFN1 9130019/BDFN2 9130062 (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 3 HL

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. The purpose of this course is to deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge for teaching home language and literacy in a diversity of contexts.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

### **Foundation Phase Studies 4: Life Skills**

Code BDFN1 9130020/BDFN2 9130063 (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 3: Life Skills

**Course description:** This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. The purpose is to deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge to understand and support children's holistic development in relation to Life Skills.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

#### **Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics**

Code BDFN1 9130021/BDFN2 9130064 (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 3 Mathematics

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is three-fold. Firstly, to synthesise knowledge of curriculum and knowledge packages to develop learning trajectories for the teaching of the content areas in Foundation Phase Mathematics. Secondly, to manage and organise learning and learning trajectories. Thirdly, to advance knowledge of concepts and skills relating to the teaching of measurement and data handling in the Foundation Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

#### **Understanding the Social and Physical World 3**

Code BDFN1 9130022/BDFN2 9130065 (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** Understanding the Social and Physical World 2

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is to develop the epistemological, experiential and content knowledge necessary for confident, flexible and active teaching of Life Skills.

**Assessment:** Class record 100 %

#### **YEAR 4 of BDFN1, YEAR 5 of BDFN2**

##### **Education and Professional Studies 7**

##### **Entrance requirements: EPS 6**

Code BDFN1 9130023/BDFN2 9130066 (NQF Level 7, 20 credits)

**Course description:** The purpose of this course is to deepen students' knowledge and understanding of the study of education and professional issues related to ethics, pedagogy and policy.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

#### **Foundation Phase Studies 5: First Additional Language (English)**

Code BDFN1 9130024/BDFN2 9130067 (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirement:** FPS 4 FAL English

**Course description:** To deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge for teaching English as an additional language in a diversity of contexts.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

#### **Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language**

Code BDFN1 9130025/BDFN2 9130068 (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 4 HL

**Course description:** To deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge for teaching English or isiXhosa Home Language/literacy in a diversity of contexts.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

#### **Foundation Phase Studies 5: Life Skills**

Code BDFN1 9130026/BDFN2 9130069 (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** LS 4

**Course description:** To deepen students' content, pedagogical and curriculum knowledge to understand and support children's holistic development in relation to Life Skills

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

#### **Foundation Phase Studies 5: Mathematics**



Code BDFN1 9130027/BDFN2 9130070 (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** FPS 4 Mathematics

**Course description:** To critically engage with the nature of mathematics, the development of learners' mathematical proficiency and the promotion of access to quality mathematics experiences and knowledge for all children

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

## MASTER OF EDUCATION

The CSD offers supervision for full research studies focused on the education of young children from conception to nine years of age.

Please refer to the Education Faculty section for further details.

## DICTIONARY UNIT FOR SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH (DSAE)

### Director

T van Niekerk, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

### Senior Editor

B Le Du, BA (UNISA), BA (Hons)(NMMU), MA (Rhodes)

### Associate Editor: Systems Development

R Slater, BA (Hons)(Rhodes)

The Dictionary Unit for South African English (DSAE) is the National Lexicography Unit (NLU) dedicated to the South African variety of English. Now funded by the Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB), it is one of eleven NLUs (one for each official language). The project of documenting South African English vocabulary and usage was formally initiated in 1969 by the late Professor Bill Branford, Rhodes University's first professor of English Language and Linguistics. Following decades of research by subsequent teams of linguists and lexicographers, including intermediate publishing milestones, the Unit's flagship project was published in print by Oxford University Press as *A Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles (DSAEHist, 1996)*. The lexical archives supporting this unparalleled diachronic linguistic and cultural research project constitute a unique resource for students of the English language as it is used in South Africa, particularly in the context of multilingualism. In addition to computerised holdings and a library of lexicographical materials, the Unit's resources include over 300,000 card indexes collected between 1969 and the 1990s showing contexts for words and phrases in South African English. Sources range from early explorers' and settlers' journals to printed books, contemporary newspapers and oral transcriptions. Subsequently the DSAE became a Digital Humanities project. In 2014 the DSAE's transition to electronic platforms and research methods was

signalled by the publication of a pilot online version of the historical *Dictionary of South African English (DSAE)*. Following early collaborations with the University of Hildesheim, Germany and the University of Stellenbosch, South Africa – and associated journal publications – the Unit produced a comprehensive electronic adaptation of this dictionary as an enhanced Desktop Edition (2019) followed by the Mobile Edition (2020). Both are freely accessible at <http://dsae.co.za>. Locally and internationally, the Unit – now an online dictionary publisher in its own right – plays a leading role in electronic dictionary design, as evidenced by its most recent, cutting-edge project, the *DSAE Visual Edition* (<http://visual.dsae.co.za>, 2021). Its current project is the dramatic expansion of the Unit's electronic database holdings by applying computational linguistic methods to a newly-created South African English corpus of about 3 billion words.

In addition to its dictionary projects, the DSAE assists both national and international researchers as well as the general public with enquiries about South African English. It contributes to the promotion of multilingualism in South Africa by maintaining regular contact with the National Lexicography Units for all other official languages and participating in the wider language community. The DSAE is an Associated Institute of Rhodes University, operating as a registered Non-Profit Company. In addition to core funding from PanSALB, the DSAE receives royalties from the sales of its commercial publications, the *FrancoLin Illustrated School Dictionary for Southern Africa* (FrancoLin 1997/Longman 2001), the *Oxford South African Concise Dictionary* (OUP Southern Africa 2010) and the *Oxford South African Pocket Dictionary* (2015).

For more information, see [www.ru.ac.za/dsae/](http://www.ru.ac.za/dsae/).

## ELECTRON MICROSCOPE UNIT

### Senior Instrument Scientist (HOD)

D van Niekerk BSc, BSc Hons (RAU), MSc, PhD  
(Hawaii)

### Technical Officer

MA Randall

The Electron Microscopy Unit was established as an autonomous service department in the Faculty of Science in 1972. It is a central facility open to all Departments & Faculties. The laboratory pursues a modern academic & research agenda; it gives access and basic training to students and scientists to collect their own data, using electron beam techniques for the purpose of high-resolution

microscopy & micro-analysis. More in-depth collaboration between unit staff and Users is available via co-authorship of published output. The Unit has operated several generations of SEM & TEM instruments. Current instrumentation include: i) a 2006 TESCAN Vega scanning electron microscope (RU is currently planning to replace this with a modern instrument), ii) a Zeiss Libra 120 Plus EFTEM transmission electron microscope (retired in 2023; efforts will be made in future to replace it but for now Users must travel elsewhere for TEM work), iii) a JEOL 8230 Electron Probe Micro-Analyser (aka electron microprobe). Supporting equipment include various sample preparation instruments and other microscopes.

## INSTITUTE FOR ENVIRONMENTAL BIOTECHNOLOGY (EBRU)

### **Professor and Director**

AK Cowan, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

### **Researcher**

To be appointed

### **Administrative Officer:**

To be appointed

### **Fellows:**

L Sekhohola-Dlamini, PhD (Rhodes)

Y Titilawo, PhD (Fort Hare)

H Tsikos, PhD (Rhodes)

The Institute for Environmental Biotechnology, Rhodes University (EBRU) targets research in environmental biotechnology at the interface between the fundamental and applied sciences. In doing so it undertakes the innovation and development of bioprocess solutions to environmental problems, and focuses on the diffusion and transfer of environmental technology from laboratory to full-scale industrial application. This activity targets excellence in capacity building and the development of associated academic and applied disciplines. Historically, innovation and development of environmental bioprocesses related to water treatment was the main focus area. More recently, the scope of research and bioprocess development has been widened to include contemporary fields such as alternative energy and bio-fuels. As part of our human resource development programme the institute offers intensive Masters' and Doctoral research opportunities. The various research programmes are focused on the development of human resource capacity and link the application of biotechnology to industrial and municipal related environmental degradation, and clean technology.

Environmental biotechnology may be defined as the development, use and regulation of biological systems and their derivatives and processes for sustainable socio-economic benefit in environmental protection, remediation and energy generation. It is a knowledge-intensive, research-driven field which addresses a broad spectrum of

environmental sector needs in the major areas of soil, air, and water, and in co-product (waste) valorization. In brief, use of natural products / microbes to perform industrially important tasks in an environmentally sustainable way is the focus of attention.

EBRU welcomes applications to undertake independent postgraduate research in the field of environmental biotechnology. Candidates who are employed and fulfil the admission criteria may after consultation with the Institute register as 'not in attendance' and undertake their research remotely. Opportunities are available for MSc (180 credits and NQF level 9) and PhD (360 credits and NQF level 10) study by research in agricultural biotechnology, industrial and municipal wastewater bioremediation and beneficiation, land rehabilitation, microalgal biotechnology, and renewable energy. The entrance requirements for research MSc and PhD degrees are outlined in the General Rules section of the Rhodes University calendar. Candidates with an Honour's degree in the chemical, natural and/or life sciences are welcome to apply for the MSc degree, while PhD candidates are required to already be in possession of a relevant postgraduate qualification at time of application. Applications are also welcome from candidates interested in postdoctoral fellowship at the Institute. For further information, please visit the Institute's website (<http://www.ru.ac.za/eburu/>).

## THE INSTITUTE FOR THE STUDY OF THE ENGLISHES OF AFRICA (ISEA)

### Associate Professor and Director

M.Mbelani, BA(ED)(UNITRA),  
BEd(Hons)(UNISA), ACE(ELT), MED(ELT),  
PhD(Rhodes)

### Alan Macintosh Research Fellow

R Mawela, BA(Andrews), HDE, MEd(Solusi),  
HDE(UNITRA), PhD(Rhodes)

### Research Officer

NC Fulani, SPDT(Cape College), BEd(Hons),  
MED(Rhodes)

### School Support Facilitator

S Sibanda, Education Diploma(UZ), ACE,  
BEd(Hons)(UJ), MEd(Rhodes)

### Research Associates

RS Berold, BSc(Eng)(Wits), MA(Cantab)  
B Willan, BA(Hons), MA, PhD(London)

### Publications Manager

C Leff, BA(Wits), BA(Hons), MA,  
PhD(Rhodes)

### Editor: English in Africa

Vacant

### Editor: New Coin Poetry

K Allan, MA (UKZN)

### Editor: Shakespeare in Southern Africa

CJ Thurman, BA(Hons)(Rhodes),  
MA(London), PhD(UCT)

### Administrative Officer

#### Vacant Secretary

N Kelemi

### Professor Emeritus

Prof MG Hendricks, BA, HDE(UCT),  
BA(Hons), MEd(Rhodes), PhD(Wits)

The Institute was established in July 1964 during the University's Diamond Jubilee celebrations, at the suggestion of Professor Guy Butler. The mission of the ISEA is to "sponsor research, collect information, provide liaison with South African and overseas scholarship and organize conferences and courses of training for teachers and others interested in language".

Whilst celebrating its 50<sup>th</sup> anniversary in 2014, the ISEA was motivated to consider the language dynamics in Africa and hence there was a change of name from the Institute for the Study of

English in Africa to the Institute for the Study of the Englishes of Africa.

The ISEA is a research institute within the University subsidised largely by private donations and endowments, and it retains complete independence in its research.

Since its inception, the Institute has given rise to three independent organisations:

- The National English Literary Museum (Currently Amazwi Literary Museum)
- The Dictionary Unit for South African English
- The Molteno Language and Literacy Institute.

The first two are separate, nationally funded institutions, while the Molteno Institute for Language and Literacies, the largest and most successful language-learning programme in primary education in Southern Africa, is now an independent institute.

Today the ISEA fulfils the aims of its founders in teacher education, research and development projects in English education, in the publication of journals devoted to the English language in South Africa, and by providing a research base for scholars working in the field covered by the Institute.

The ISEA mounts an extra-curricular Creative Writing Programme each year during the first semester, which is open to staff, students and members of the public. Contact [isea@ru.ac.za](mailto:isea@ru.ac.za)

### Publications

Periodicals published by the ISEA include *English in Africa* (from 1974), a scholarly journal devoted to African writing in English, *New Coin Poetry* (from 1964), and *Shakespeare in Southern Africa* (from 1987). In addition, the ISEA publishes research reports, scholarly

monographs, anthologies and collections of poetry.

The ISEA offers the following qualifications in the Faculty of Education:

- Bachelor of Education (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching) (part time, in-service)
- Bachelor of Education Honours in Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access
- Master of Education (full thesis)
- Doctor of Philosophy

### **BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (SENIOR PHASE AND FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING TEACHING) IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING**

Part-Time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education

The BEd(Senior/FET Teaching) in ELT qualification is offered as a three year part time Continuing Professional Development qualification for in-service teachers admitted under E.19.2. In each year there are common core modules, a major specialisation in English First Additional Language (FAL) Senior Phase and FET Phase, and a minor specialisation in School Librarianship.

### **CORE MODULES**

#### **Education Studies 6:**

(NQF level 7, 15 credits)

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge in the study of education (history of education, theories of pedagogy), with particular emphasis on grounding this knowledge in a socio-culturally situated South African educational practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

#### **Teaching Tools and Technologies 6:**

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This course develops a sound, reflective, practice-based engagement

with educational technology and the cognitive tools of the teaching community of practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

**Subminimum:** None

#### **Professional Studies 6:**

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge of professional issues in teaching and grounds this knowledge in educational and classroom practice: classroom management, planning, sequencing, pace and progression, integration.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

### **Major specialisation in English FAL Senior and FET Phases**

#### **English FAL (SP) 2:**

(NQF level 7, 17 credits)

**Course description:** This course develops a deeper understanding of English, an understanding of methodologies appropriate to additional language learning in the Senior Phase, and a level of spoken and written proficiency in English to promote a sound teaching base for the Senior Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

#### **English FAL (FET) 2:**

(NQF level 7, 17 credits)

**Course description:** This course deepens teachers' understanding of critical language awareness in English, an understanding of methodologies appropriate to additional language learning in the FET Phase, core language skills and develops a level of spoken and written proficiency in English to promote a

sound teaching base for English FAL in the FET Phase.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Supplementary exam:** 40-49%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

### Minor Specialisation

#### School Librarianship 2:

(NQF level 7, 11 credits)

**Course description:** This course deepens teachers' understanding of the language learning benefits of reading for pleasure/extensive reading. It provides practical knowledge of the steps involved in setting up a classroom library and extensive reading programme.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

**Supplementary exam:** None

**Subminimum:** None

### BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (HONOURS)

The BEd Honours qualification consists of two foundation courses in Year One and a specialism made up of two electives in Year Two. This 120-credit, NQF level 8 degree is normally offered on a part-time basis. It is intended to prepare candidates for research-based postgraduate studies in a particular field of education. It serves to consolidate and deepen candidates' expertise and theoretical engagement in educational practice, and develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of educational research.

#### Foundation Programme

The foundation programme comprises a 30-credit course called "Educational Ideas and Issues" and a 30-credit course called "Research in Education".

#### Educational Ideas and Issues:

9045000 (NQF Level 8, 30 credits)

This compulsory course provides opportunities to analyse and evaluate educational ideas and

issues relevant to a South and Southern African context using philosophical, psychological and sociological lenses. It will examine, inter alia, issues of equity (in relation to, for example, language, gender, culture and socio-economic status), the role of language in mediating learning, and issues relating to knowledge and knowing. Students' critical engagement with these issues and ideas will be underpinned by theories of teaching and learning (including, but not limited to, Piaget, Vygotsky, Bruner), debates around issues of quality in education, and in-depth consideration of the above in terms of curricular design and implementation. The course will also include philosophical, psychological and sociological perspectives on the role of values, creativity and democracy in education. Wherever possible, candidates will be required to consider these perspectives in relation to their own educational experience and context.

#### Research in Education:

9045001 (NQF Level 8, 30 credits)

In this compulsory course, students will "develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of that discipline [Education]" (HEQSF, 2013), by "conducting and reporting research under supervision, worth at least 30 credits, in the form of a discrete research component" (MRTEQ, 2015). This course forms the discrete research component required according to the policy. The 'Research in Education' course is to be conducted as a supported educational research course, that is, through supervision, the student is closely guided through an independent research process, by means of selected readings and developmental on-course activities.

#### Specialism Programme

The ISEA offers one specialism (BEd Honours in Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access) from a suite of specialism Honours programmes offered by the Departments of Primary & Early Childhood Education, and Secondary & Post-School Education (for further details on these refer to the entries for these departments)

**Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access**

9045002. (NQF Level 8, 30 credits)

This module examines key debates in bi/multilingual education, drawing on Janks's theoretical framework of power, diversity, access and design to explore relationships between language(s) learning and teaching, on the one hand, and societal language policy and practices, on the other. Through seminars and structured reading, the module engages with issues of language(s), identity and power, language policy and planning in South Africa, and the challenges of literacy, diversity and epistemic access in South African education.

**Classroom based Research in Bilingual Education**

9045003 (NQF Level 8, 30 credits)

In this compulsory module, students will deepen their “research capacity in the methodology and techniques of that discipline [Education]” (HEQSF, 2013), by “conducting and reporting research under supervision, worth at least 30 credits, in the form of a discrete research component” (MRTEQ, 2015). This module is the discrete research component required according to the policy. The ‘Research Project in Language Education’ module is to be conducted as a supported educational research course; that is, by supervision and collaborative peer self-study, the student is guided through an independent, practice-based research process, by means of selected readings and developmental on-course activities.

Current Secondary Schools Language Project research comprises investigations into the impact of the ISEA's BEd programme, and into the quality of writing and reading pedagogy in South Africa. Other research under way in the ISEA includes translanguaging for disciplinary access; tracking teachers' professional development in aspects of the teaching of visual literacy, literature and reading.



## INSTITUTE OF SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC RESEARCH

### **Director**

Cyril Nhlanhla Mbatha, BA (Hons) Rhodes,  
MA (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

### **Researcher**

Reesha Kara, PhD (Rhodes)

### **Academic and Research Administrator**

Jamie Alexander, MA (Rhodes)

### **Financial Administrator**

Gail Bint

### **Administrative Assistant**

Bulelani Mothlabane

### **Professor Emeritus**

Valerie Möller, Lic. Phil, PhD (Zurich)

### **Visiting Professors**

Ben Fine, BA, BPhil (Oxon), PhD (London)

Edward Webster, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA  
(Oxon), BPhil (York), PhD (Wits)

Pantaleo Daniel Rwelamila, PhD, FCIQB,  
PrCMP, MAACE, MIAC, MIAPP

### **Visiting Fellow**

Steffan Otterbach, PhD (Honeheim)

Martin Gustafsson, BA (UCT), BA Hons  
(Unisa), MA (Stellenbosch), PhD  
(Stellenbosch)

### **Research Fellow**

Samuel Sadian, MA (Rhodes), PhD (Barcelona)

### **Research Associate**

Wandile Sihlobo, BSc Agric. Econ. (UFH), Msc  
(Stellenbosch)

The Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER) was established in Rhodes University in 1954. Strongly grounded in the Eastern Cape since its inception, the ISER soon developed a diverse portfolio of research initiatives involving its own staff and staff members of other Rhodes academic departments. Throughout its existence, engagement by academics from a range of departments within the university in the work of the ISER contributed not only to the content and quality of ISER's research work, but also enriched teaching within those academics' home departments.

Scholars associated with the ISER in the early period of its establishment produced a series of scholarly volumes comprising the Keiskammahoek Rural Survey (1947–1952) and the Border Regional Survey (1956–1964) amongst others. Although the former documented changes in Keiskammahoek since the establishment of the apartheid regime in 1948, the ISER, in its early years, generally did not engage with the consequences of apartheid for the well-being of the black majority, and did not challenge the status quo of repressive, white minority rule. This approach gradually changed in later years, when the ISER came to engage more actively with the social conditions and development problems of the Eastern Cape through empirical research and public policy engagement.

Currently the ISER focuses on multidisciplinary research across varied socio-economic challenges in rural and urban spaces, locally, nationally and on the African continent. These include socio-economic research activities on the interface of the use and consumption of agricultural land and environmental water resources, cross border trade, rural to urban livelihoods, informal to formal economic sector activities, digital skills development and education issues for youth employment and productive activities, and other such related areas under the leadership of Prof. Cyril Nhlanhla Mbatha who joined the ISER in 2020.

### **A brief history**

Under Prof Peter Vale's Directorship from 1984, the ISER's research agenda directly and indirectly exposed the consequences of the apartheid political economy on the black inhabitants of the Eastern Cape. The ISER developed a research specialisation on well-being studies under Professor Valerie Möller, a leading internationally recognised scholar in the field and Director of the ISER between 1998 and

2006. From 2006 to 2010, the ISER was led by Professor Greg Ruiters, who introduced a vibrant, large-scale programme of research rooted in concerns of political economy and municipal service provision in the Eastern Cape. Prof Ruiters also introduced an annual ISER Winter School, which drew together community-based organisations and leading academics into in-depth discussions on topical social, developmental and political concerns for the province and the country.

In 2009, the ISER started developing Social Policy as a core research and teaching focus area, joined, in late 2012, by labour studies. Led by Prof Robert van Niekerk, the Social Policy focus area developed into a number of collaborative research programmes including programmes on health, social policy and the developmental role of the state and social citizenship. The Social Policy focus area was strengthened by the appointment of Prof Rebecca Surender in 2014 until her departure in 2015. Work on Social Policy as a distinct focus area was discontinued in mid-2018.

The Neil Aggett Labour Studies Unit (NALSU) was established in 2012 under the leadership of Dr John Reynolds and formally launched in 2014. NALSU, a hub for labour studies at Rhodes University, was relocated out of the ISER in 2019.

The ISER has had an abiding influence on a number of institutions within Rhodes University and the wider Eastern Cape. In 1979, the International Library of African Music was moved to Rhodes University under the auspices of the ISER, where it was hosted until its incorporation into the Rhodes Department of Music and Musicology in the mid-nineties. Also in 1979, a Development Studies Unit, headed by a Chair in Development Studies, was started; that unit was discontinued in 1994, when Prof Bill Davies joined the new Eastern Cape Provincial Government, where he built an economic planning and research unit in the Department of Economic Affairs, Environment and Tourism. An International Studies Unit was established in

the ISER in 1988 and, in 1992, was migrated to the Rhodes Department of Political Studies, into which it was fully incorporated in the early 2000s, changing the name of the department to the Department of Political and International Studies. In 2003, the East London branch of the ISER was incorporated into the University of Fort Hare as the Fort Hare Institute of Social and Economic Research (FHI SER).

## **POSTGRADUATE DEGREES**

The following is the general information and requirements for postgraduate study in ISER.

### **Interdisciplinary Honours Degree in Development Studies**

The ISER is participating in the offering of the Interdisciplinary Honours Degree in Development Studies in the Faculty of Humanities. It participates by coordinating a specialised programme, with modules selected annually from other participating departments that are listed under the programme (see Interdepartmental Studies in this Calendar). The ISER's coordinated programme is aimed at developing theoretical and technical skills for social and economic policy analyses. From the contributing departments the programme will present the following core and elective topics on, a) Discussions and analyses of selected social and economic policies in South Africa and in an African context; b) Political thinking and challenges on the African continent; c) Topics on the South African economic history; d) Policy and political language analyses OR Organised labour movement issues in Africa OR Development Economics and Trade & Industrial Policy (Economics and Economic History) OR Development Economics and Environmental Resources Economics.

An interdisciplinary honours degree in Development Studies may be undertaken on a fulltime basis. To be accepted as an honours

student for interdisciplinary degree under the ISER, applicants would usually require a bachelor's degree with at least a good second class pass in a social science discipline, as well as satisfy *any honours module pre-requisite requirements*. Applicants for honours study would usually be submitted by 15 November of the year preceding the year of study, and would require approval by the Director: ISER.

The Honours degree programme requires students to register for at least four semester modules which will be presented by the following departments as well as a research project undertaken in the participating departments:

- a) The Institute of Social and Economic Research
- b) Political and International Studies
- c) History
- d) Linguistics and Applied Language Studies
- e) Sociology
- f) Economics and Economic History

The list of available modules and presenters from each participating department will be presented to prospective students by the ISER at the beginning of each academic year.

### **Master's Degree**

A Master's degree by thesis may be undertaken on a full-time or part-time basis. To be accepted

as a Master's student in the ISER, applicants would usually require an Honours degree with at least a good second class pass in a social science discipline. Applications for Master's study would usually need to be submitted by 15 November of the year preceding the first year of study, and would require approval of the ISER Research Committee, which would also consider supervisory capacity.

Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the ISER Research Committee and the Higher Degrees Committee of either the Humanities or Commerce Faculties. Under the supervision of an academic staff member, students produce a full-length research thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor and approved by the Faculty in which they are registered.

### **Doctoral Degree (PhD)**

A PhD may be taken by thesis (see the General Rules and Higher Degrees Guide). Prospective students must usually be in possession of a good Master's degree in a social science discipline. Applications for PhD study would require approval of the ISER Research Committee, which would also consider supervisory capacity.

Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the ISER Research Committee and the Higher Degrees Committee of either the Humanities or Commerce Faculties. Under the supervision of an academic staff member, students produce a full-length research thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor and approved by the Faculty in which they are registered.

## THE INSTITUTE FOR WATER RESEARCH (IWR)

Incorporating the Centre for Environmental Water Quality (CEWQ) and ARUA Centre of Excellence in Water (Water CoE)

### Associate Professor and Director

ON Odume, PhD (Rhodes), Pr.Sci. Nat.

### Senior Researchers

SK Mantel, PhD (Hong Kong); Academic Manager  
ARUA Water CoE: Pr. Sci. Nat.

J Tanner, PhD (Rhodes); Director ARUA Water CoE

### Researchers

N Griffin, PhD (Cape Town)

CF Nnadozie, PhD (UKZN); Programme Lead: CEWQ

### Emeritus Professors

C de Wet, PhD (Rhodes)

DA Hughes, PhD (Wales), Pr.Sci.Nat.

CG Palmer, PhD (Rhodes)

AR Palmer, PhD (Rhodes)

### Visiting Professor

JH Slinger, PhD (Stellenbosch) from TU Delft, Netherlands

### Senior Research Associates

PK Mensah PhD (Rhodes)

E Igbinigie PhD (Rhodes)

O Gwate PhD (Rhodes)

AR Henriksson PhD (Stockholm University, Sweden)

### Research Associate

JK Clifford-Holmes PhD (Rhodes)

The Institute for Water Research (IWR) is home to a multi-disciplinary group of researchers and postgraduate students, that contribute to the understanding and sustainable management of water resources in southern Africa. These objectives are achieved through fundamental and applied research into the structure, function and components of natural water systems and their associated social systems, in the landscape. There is an emphasis on the co-development of knowledge, and knowledge sharing, directly and through academic and more accessible publications. Consulting services are offered to solve specific problems through the application of research developments. The IWR contributes to teaching at both undergraduate and postgraduate levels, as well as offering professional training

courses and other capacity building and professional training initiatives. Specifically, postgraduate students can register in the Institute for MSc and PhD degrees (by thesis) in both Hydrology and Water Resource Science. Candidates interested in the Hydrology degree must be in possession of an appropriate qualification – MSc in the case of a PhD in Hydrology, or Honours in the case of MSc in Hydrology, normally in the physical sciences such as Hydrology, Geography, Geology, Environmental Science, or a related discipline. Candidates interested in the Water Resource Science degree must be in possession of an appropriate qualification – MSc in the case of a PhD in Water Resource Science, or Honours in the case of MSc in Water Resource Science, normally in the Biological/Chemical Sciences such as Zoology/Ecology, Microbiology, Chemistry, Environmental Science or a related discipline. The IWR contributes modules to the Honours Degree in Environmental Water Management, in the Department of Geography:

Candidates interested in the Environmental Water Management Honours degree must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelor's degree, normally majoring in at least one of Geography, Environmental Science/Ecology, Biological/Chemical Sciences or Hydrology. Other candidates with appropriate professional experience in water resource management may be considered. This degree aims to equip students with the conceptual understanding and practical knowledge that are needed to make an effective contribution to the sustainable management of catchment systems and their associated water resources. Students are required to take a core, integrative, module: Adaptive Integrated Water Resource Management and Water Governance; and must also select three other courses. Recommended courses include: Catchment Systems; Climate Change, Extreme Events and Disasters; Environmental Water Quality; Hydrology; Freshwater Ecology; Extended GIS (Geographical

Information Systems); Remote Sensing for a Changing World; or other appropriate courses approved by the Course Coordinator. Please note that entry into the Extended GIS and Remote Sensing modules requires a pass at 3rd year level in the respective disciplines. The research project must be related to Environmental Water Management and approved by the Course Coordinator.

The Institute has extensive continental network. It is the hub of the African Research University Alliance (ARUA) Centre of Excellence in Water (Water CoE). The ARUA Water CoE partner universities are University of Cape Town, University of Kwazulu-Natal, University of Lagos, University of Dar es Salaam, University of Rwanda, Makerere University, Cheikh Ant Diop University, University of Sheffield, and Lancaster University. The IWR is also the host of the African Water Resource Mobility Network (AWaRMN), comprising of six partner universities: Rhodes University, Makerere University, University of Kinshasa, Federal University of Technology, Minna, Higher School of Hydraulics, Blida, and TU Delft. As a result, research projects at the IWR are continental in outlook, addressing pressing water-related challenges on the continent and facilitating the training and mobility of students and staff across Africa.

Staff members of the IWR serve on various research, management and policy making committees both within South Africa and internationally. The staff of the Institute actively collaborate with other departments and institutes at Rhodes University including the departments of Geography, Zoology and Entomology, Environmental Science, Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, the Environmental Learning Research Centre, The South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity and the Albany Museum. The Institute also cooperates with other universities, state departments and private consulting companies, both in South Africa and internationally.

The Institute has expertise in several areas within the broad field of water resource science, including hydrology, integrated and transdisciplinary

Adaptive Integrated Water Resource Management, freshwater ecology, water chemistry data and analysis, ecotoxicology, biomonitoring, the management of water services, water governance, and community- based engaged education. The combination of research and practical problem solving within the IWR allows recently developed research methods to be rapidly deployed for water resource planning and management. Within the field of ecology, the Institute has focused on understanding the processes and requirements of aquatic ecosystems and the effects of flow variability and anthropogenic stressors. Much of the work has been directed at assessing the environmental water quantity and quality requirements of rivers, an important component of the 'Reserve' determination process designed to ensure the sustainable use of water resources under the National Water Act (No 36 of 1998). This research has been supported by the IWR's long history (over 30 years) of research into the development and application of methods for analysing and modelling hydrological information for various water resource planning and management purposes. The focus has been on combining a sound understanding of hydrological processes with the development of practical simulation tools. This has included the development of computer software designed to facilitate access to hydrological information and the integration of modelling and data visualisation tools with databases. Recent work has focused on issues of uncertainty (including climate change effects) associated with hydrological estimation and how imperfect information impacts on decision making.

Within the IWR, the Centre for Environmental Water Quality (CEWQ) focuses on ecology, which includes aquatic microbial ecology, ecotoxicology, biomonitoring and water chemistry. Aquatic Microbial Ecology focuses on determining the diversity and function of freshwater microorganisms (mainly prokaryotes), effect of ecological and environmental influences on aquatic microbial communities and their functions and vice-versa. Our interest is on functional microbial that carry out key processes in freshwater environments. Additional interest of the Aquatic

Microbial Ecology research is on the role of freshwater systems and urban water cycle in the spread of antibiotic resistant bacteria and other waterborne bacterial pathogens.

Ecotoxicology at the IWR concentrates on determining the tolerances of indigenous riverine macroinvertebrates and algae, under controlled laboratory conditions, to selected water quality variables and complex effluents. Ecotoxicology is included in an integrated approach to assessing the water quality of a water resource and is being practically applied to evaluate the effects of industrial effluents on rivers. CEWQ is actively involved in the development of policies and strategies for improving the quality of the nation's freshwater resources. In recent years, CCEWQ has initiated research into complex social-ecological systems and the need to account for multiple perspectives and adopt transdisciplinary

approaches to solving water resources management problems. CEWQ research has extended to explicitly include connections between people and their landscapes, viewing surface and groundwater catchments as complex social-ecological systems.

The IWR is largely self-funded, and managed through a Board, made up of representatives of Rhodes University, private, government and other university groups who have an interest in water resources, locally and internationally. It derives part of its income from research contracts with local and international funding agencies, such as the Water Research Commission, the European Union, UKRI, GIZ, NRF, etc.). The majority of the remaining income base is from shorter term consultancy projects through partnerships with consulting companies.

## RHODES UNIVERSITY MATHEMATICS EDUCATION PROJECT (RUMEP)

### Director

F Mkhwane, STD, BA(UNITRA),  
BED(UNISA), BTech(Bus Adm.)(PE Tech),  
MBA(NMMU), MEd(Rhodes)

### Projects Coordinator

T Haywood, DESP (Dower College),  
ACE(Mathematics), BED(Hons), MEd(Rhodes)

### Facilitator (IP & SP) Northern Cape

RM Griqua, BA, HDE, BED(UWC),  
MEd(Rhodes)

### Facilitator

S Wood, BSc(UCT), BA(UCT), HED(UNISA)

### Collegial Cluster Facilitator

S Balele, BED(Rhodes), DE(Zimbabwe),  
PGDHE(Rhodes)

### Administrative Assistant

L Sparrow

The Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project is an outreach programme of the University. RUMEP offers Mathematics Education teacher professional development, and develops curriculum resources for use in schools. It conducts short courses for the

Department of Education and other NGOs. RUMEP publishes reports, articles and newsletters in the field of mathematics education, and provides a centre for research in mathematics education. For many years, RUMEP has offered a part-time Bachelor of Education degree for in-service mathematics teachers in all phases. Two of these degree programmes are in a 'teach-out' phase (refer to the Education Faculty entry E.12). In 2021, a new Bachelor of Education (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching) degree will be offered for the first time. This degree is offered part-time for continuing teacher professional development purposes. The admission requirements rules are contained in the Education Faculty section

## BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (SENIOR PHASE AND FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING TEACHING) IN MATHEMATICS TEACHING

[Part-time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education]

**CORE MODULES****Education Studies 6:**

(NQF level 7, 15 credits)

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge in the study of education (history of education, theories of pedagogy), with particular emphasis on grounding this knowledge in a socio-culturally situated South African educational practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Teaching Tools and Technologies 6:**

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This course develops a sound, reflective, practice-based engagement with educational technology and the cognitive tools of the teaching community of practice.

**Assessment:** Class record 100%

**Professional Studies 6:**

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

**Course description:** This course consolidates knowledge of professional issues in teaching and grounds this knowledge in educational and classroom practice: classroom management, planning, sequencing, pace and progression, integration.

**Assessment:** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**MATHEMATICS TEACHING  
SPECIALISM COURSES (SENIOR  
PHASE AND FURTHER EDUCATION  
AND TRAINING)****Mathematics Senior Phase Major 2**

(NQF level 7, 16 credits)

*(for those specialising in Senior Phase Mathematics)*

**Course description:** This course focuses on the current teaching and learning context for Senior Phase Mathematics in schools. The emphasis is on all mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Senior Phase. Students engage

with numbers, operations and relationships, patterns, functions and algebra, measurement, geometry and data handling. In addition, the course seeks to provide students with the necessary competencies to develop detailed lesson plans together with the use of appropriate teaching strategies and media to inform the teaching and learning in the Mathematics classroom.

**Credits:** 16

**Assessment** Class record 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Mathematics Further Education and  
Training Minor 2**

(NQF level 7, 9 credits)

**Entrance requirements:** (same as above)

**Course description:** This course aims to allow students to interact with mathematics at a higher cognitive level and to promote a level of confidence and to develop their understanding of more detailed mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Further Education and Training Band. In addition the emphasis on more complex content knowledge such as algebra, inequalities, functions, trigonometry, geometry, statistics and probability are studied.

**Credits:** 9

**Assessment:** Class record: 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Mathematics Literacy 2**

(NQF level 7, 20 credits)

**Course description:** This course focuses on integrating the mathematical skills and knowledge used to develop competence in solving practical problems.

Work focuses on skills and knowledge acquired by the end of senior phase in the school curriculum, and specialises in application situations we find in finance, measurement and maps, and plans applications. Students will be expected to apply knowledge in problem-solving situations, and be able to refer to underlying principles which govern actions and concepts in problem-solving work.

**Credits: 14**

**Assessment:** Class record: 50% Examination 50%  
Subminimum 45% exam

**Mathematics FET Major 2**

(NQF level 7, 16 credits)

*(for those specializing in FET Mathematics)*

**Course description:** This course focuses on the current teaching and learning context for FET Mathematics in schools. Key content areas covered include functions, trigonometric identities, limits and continuity, euclidean geometry, statistics and probability at a higher cognitive level. In addition, the course seeks to provide students with the necessary competencies to develop detailed lesson plans together with the use of appropriate teaching strategies and media to inform teaching and learning in the Mathematics classroom.

**Credits: 16**

**Assessment:** Class record: 50% Examination 50%  
**Subminimum:** 45% exam

**Mathematics SP Minor 2**

(NQF level 7, 9 credits)

**Course description:** This course aims to allow students to interact with mathematics at a fundamental level and to promote a level of confidence to develop students understanding of the basic mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Senior Phase.

**Credits: 9**

**Assessment** Class record: 50% Examination 50%

**Subminimum:** 45% exam

## **SOUTH AFRICAN INSTITUTE FOR AQUATIC BIODIVERSITY (SAIAB)**

**Managing Director**

A Paterson, PhD (Rhodes)

**Director's Personal Assistant**

N Nyoka

**RESEARCH DIVISION**

A Chakona, PhD (Rhodes)

N James, PhD (Rhodes)

F Porri, PhD (Rhodes)

M Magoro, PhD (NMU)

**Research Support Administrator**

V Rouhani, MSc (Rhodes)

**SCIENCE PLATFORMS**

**Marine Research Platforms**

**African Coelacanth Ecosystem Programme (ACEP):**

**Marine Platform Manager**

R Palmer, MSc (Rhodes)

**Marine Technician - Port Elizabeth**

J Smith

**Marine Field Assistant – Port Elizabeth**

F Jacobs

**Instrument Technician - Durban**

T Eriksen, BSc (UNISA)

**Deckhand - Durban**

T Mbuyazi

**Transformation Manager**

G van Heerden, MBA (Rhodes)

**Administration Officer**

Z Canda Nat Dipl. Business Administration  
(East Cape Midlands College)

**Acoustic Tracking Array Platform (ATAP):**

**Instrument Scientist**

T Murray, PhD (Rhodes)

**Instrument Technician**

M Parkinson, MSc (Rhodes)

**Geophysics & Mapping Platform (GeMaP)**

**Instrument Technician (Multi-beam)**

T Wanda, MSc (UKZN)



**Marine Remote Imagery Platform (MARIP)**

**Instrument Scientist**

A Bernard, PhD (Rhodes)

**Aquatic Genomics Research Platform**

**(AGRP)**

**Instrument Scientist**

G Matcher, PhD (Rhodes)

**Aquatic Ecophysiology Research Platform**

**Instrument Scientist**

L Mofu, PhD (Rhodes)

**Biodiversity Information Platform:**

**Biodiversity Information Manager**

W Coetzer, PhD (KwaZulu-Natal)

**Margaret Smith Library:**

**Senior Librarian**

M Meltaf, Nat Dipl. Info Studies (PE Tech)

**Collections and Specialised Laboratories Platform:**

**Collections Manager**

N Mazungula, MSc (Rhodes)

**Senior Curator**

R Bills, MSc (Rhodes)

**Biobank Coordinator**

S Reddy, BSc (Rhodes)

**Biomaterials Officer**

A Gura, BSc (Fort Hare)

**Collections Officer**

N Mgibantaka, MSc (NMU)

**Collections and Safety Officer**

M Dwani

**Collections Assistant**

V Hanisi

**SUPPORT SERVICES**

**Finance and Operations Manager**

G Ngobeni Management Advancement Programme (Wits)

**Finance Manager**

E Wolhuter

**Communications & Stakeholder Relations Manager**

L Dlamini, MA (Wits)

**IT Systems Administrator**

W Phillip

**SCM Manager**

A Buthelezi, MCom Supply Chain Management (MANCOSA)

**Procurement Specialist**

N Khuzwayo, Nat Dipl. Public Procurement & Supply Management (UNISA)

**Human Resources Manager**

B Smith, BCom (UNISA)

**Occupational Health and Safety Manager**

T Siziba, B.Tech (CPUT)

**Finance Officers**

R Botha

B Phongolo

**Administration Officer/ Receptionist**

L Makana

**Senior Technical Officer**

F Lamont

**Driver Trainer**

L Mbangata

**General Assistants**

N Jodwana

N Zabo

N Zuzani

P Mpiyane

L Kokose

**HONORARY RESEARCH**

**ASSOCIATES**

Dr E Anderson

Dr M Lipinski

Dr H Barber-James

Dr N Mandrak

Dr R Bennett

Dr S Marr

Prof M Bruton

Dr T Miya

Dr R Chalmers

Dr TF Næsje

Prof A Channing

Dr S Parker-Nance

Dr W Conradie

Dr R Peel

Dr T Dalu

Dr J Pegg

Dr R Daly

Prof W Potts

Dr T Dlaza

Dr P Psomadakis

Prof R Dorrington

Dr A Rajkaran

Prof L du Preez

Dr U Schliewen

Dr D Ebert

Prof P Skelton

Dr B Ellender

Dr M Smale

Dr JD Filmalter

Dr J South

Dr E Gennari

Prof J Stauffer

Dr J Glass

Dr M Tagliarolo

Mr O Gon	Dr G Taylor
Dr G Gouws	Dr J Taylor
Mrs E Heemstra	Mr D Tweddle
Dr E Heynes-Veale	Dr F Uiblein
Dr J Hill	Dr S Viana
Mr W Holleman	Dr N Vine
Dr J Jackson	Dr E Vreven
Dr M Jackson	Dr R Wasserman
Dr F Jacobs	Dr D Woodford
Dr M Jordaan	
Dr W Kadye	
Mr D King	
Dr A Kock	

Jean Harris	WILDOCEANS	NGO and ACEP Platform user
Judy Mann	Two Oceans Aquarium Foundation	NGO and Public Engagement; Science Communication; Change Methodology
Kaluke Mawila	Nelson Mandela University (NMU)	Research, Innovation and Internationalisation (RII)
Cliff Jones	Department of Ichthyology & Fisheries Sciences, Rhodes University	Academic - Ichthyology and Fisheries Sciences

### SAIAB SCIENTIFIC ADVISORY COMMITTEE

Name	Affiliation	Representation and Specialisation
Michelle Hamer (Chairperson)	South African National Biodiversity Institute	SANBI; Zoological Systematics, Collections and Biodiversity
Harrison Pienaar	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, CSIR	Science Councils
Mmbofheni Stanley Liphadzi	Water Research Commission	Science Councils
Lawrence Oellermann	Oceanographic Research Institute (ORI), South African Association for Marine Biological Research (SAAMBR)	NGO and marine science management and consultancy
Ramashwar Bharuthram	Independent	Transformation
Ashley Naidoo	Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE)	Departmental representative and stakeholder
Luvuyo Mini	Bayworld	Collections and Eastern Cape Provincial Government

The South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (NRF-SAIAB) is a National Facility of the National Research Foundation and an internationally recognised centre for the study of aquatic biodiversity. NRF-SAIAB serves as a major scientific resource for knowledge and understanding of the biodiversity and functioning of Africa's aquatic ecosystems. With a focus on the full spectrum of aquatic environments: from marine offshore to continental freshwater catchments, NRF-SAIAB is ideally placed to develop the Biodiversity Economy and the Blue Economy within southern Africa. As a National Facility of the National Research Foundation, NRF-SAIAB is required to provide research platforms within the National System of Innovation, which are not generally available in other institutions. NRF-SAIAB offers a variety of research platforms which make unique sets of skills and infrastructure available to the broader research community. All of NRF-SAIAB's activities – research, student supervision and platform provision – support the Higher Education sector in the education, training and development of the aquatic managers and researchers of the future.

### MARINE RESEARCH PLATFORMS

**The African Coelacanth Ecosystem Programme (ACEP)** offers technical expertise, vessel time on coastal craft, specialised equipment for underwater visual surveys and

seabed mapping, monitoring networks and a dive unit. ACEP is the largest inter-institutional, multi-disciplinary, marine programme in South Africa. ACEP is a flagship programme of the Department of Science and Innovation and is managed by NRF-SAIAB as a Marine Science Platform. ACEP promotes competitive, multidisciplinary, multi-institutional east coast marine research with an emphasis on building capacity and transforming marine science, providing competitive access to funding, research platforms and marine research infrastructure within the National System of Innovation. ACEP's highly successful coastal craft and instrumentation platform comprises the 13m *RV uKwabelana* and 15m *RV Phakisa*, which are based in the Port of Durban, and the 15m *RV Observer* which is based in the Port of Port Elizabeth, and a Remotely Operated Vehicle (ROV) capable of diving to 300m depth, for use by the South African marine research community.

Through ACEP, NRF-SAIAB plays a key interface role between researchers and other South African research platforms. ACEP's partner platforms include NRF-SAIAB's **Acoustic Tracking Array Platform (ATAP)** and **Marine Remote Imagery Platform (MARIP)**, as well as the **Geophysics and Mapping Platform (GeMaP)**.

ACEP has developed an excellent track record of training the next generation of marine scientists, technicians and innovators. NRF-SAIAB initiated a profound paradigm shift in 2012 by establishing the *Phuhlisa* (Development) Programme through ACEP to ensure that black South African postgraduates are trained in the marine sector and that marine science is more deeply entrenched at historically black universities. A significant highlight of recent years has been cementing its relationship with the universities of Fort Hare and Walter Sisulu in the Eastern Cape through the *Phuhlisa* Programme and extending its reach beyond the Eastern Cape to include the University of the Western Cape and the University of Zululand.

One-third of ACEP's funding is dedicated to the *Phuhlisa* Programme. The focus is on capacity building and generating interest in and enthusiasm for marine sciences at the four universities. Currently, ACEP supports a minimum of 80 postgraduate students. This is in addition to over 100 students supported in previous phases. The *Phuhlisa* programme provides a winning model to develop high quality graduates in marine science by inspiring talent at historically black universities in South Africa.

The **Acoustic Tracking Array Platform (ATAP)** is a collaborative nationwide network of acoustic equipment, and currently comprises more than 200 receivers deployed in the inshore coastal environment and at least 20 estuaries between False Bay on the cool temperate Atlantic coastline, to the South Africa/Mozambique border on the sub-tropical east coast. These receivers detect unique signals sent by acoustic transmitters that have been attached to, or surgically inserted into marine animals. The ATAP team at NRF-SAIAB manages this expanded network of automated data-logging acoustic receivers together with dedicated deployment collaborators, and all data uploaded from these receivers is stored on a national database housed at SAIAB. Collected data belong to the tag owners, and data are available by request.

The **Marine Remote Imagery Platform (MARIP)** provides sophisticated and standardised remote benthic sampling tools and protocols to the marine research community in South Africa. These tools include 10 baited, remote underwater stereo-video systems (stereo-BRUVs) for sampling fish assemblages, and a benthic jump camera for photographing benthic macro-fauna assemblages. NRF-SAIAB partners with the Coastal (Elwandle) Node of the NRF-South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON) on MARIP projects in the Sundays River catchment area, NRF-SAEON's Algoa Bay Sentinel Site and a number of marine protected areas along the South African coast. The synergies with the Elwandle Node are highly

significant and position the NRF-SAIAB as an international and regional centre for South Western Indian Ocean marine research. Researchers at NRF-SAIAB and NRF-SAEON Elwandle Node have been developing innovative technology to survey reef fishes of South Africa. Novel sampling techniques aim to provide standardised data to further our understanding of the ecology of South Africa's reef fish and support effective management.

**The Aquatic Genomics Research Platform (AGRP)** provides the necessary research infrastructure and workspace for researchers conducting molecular biological studies in the field of aquatic research. The platform is equipped with laboratory equipment for capabilities that extend from DNA extraction through to Sanger Sequencing, as well as Next-Generation Sequencing. In addition, staff provide technical support to users of the platform. The training provided by the platform manager enables those with little or no practical experience to gain the skills needed to obtain their qualifications or to pursue a career in molecular work. The platform offers dedicated workstations for 18 users.

**The Aquatic Ecophysiology Research Platform (AERP)**, established in 2014 after formal collaboration between SAIAB and Rhodes, provides researchers with the tools and equipment needed to study the effects of a changing climate on aquatic organisms. Available equipment includes large holding and experimental tanks, and respirometers of varying sizes capable of running metabolic experiments on animals of different sizes, ranging from fish and invertebrate larvae to adult reef fish species. This research is invaluable, determining the effects a changing climate will have on the relationship between living organisms and their surrounding environment, and how organisms may either cope or adapt.

## **COLLECTIONS AND SPECIALISED LABORATORIES PLATFORM**

**The Collections and Specialised Laboratories Platform** includes a molecular preparation laboratory, an X-ray laboratory with a digital X-ray inspection system and, in association with the Rhodes University's Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, an ecophysiology research laboratory (AERP).

NRF-SAIAB is the recognised leader in natural history wet collection management and curation in South Africa. The JLB Smith Collection Management Centre provides a collection-sorting laboratory, accommodation for collection staff and for visiting scientists and students. The Wet Collections Storage Facility provides storage for the National Fish Collection, African Amphibian Collection, a new and developing Cephalopod Collection and Aquatic Biodiversity Biobank. Back-up support includes a separate, ultra-cold-storage tissue biobank and preparation room; a bulk inflammable liquid storage chamber with automated preservative mixing and delivery; specialised specimen preservation laboratories and glass storage; and an isolated dermestarium for the preparation of vertebrate skeletal specimens. NRF-SAIAB also manages the National Diatom Collection which is housed at the North-West University. These are dynamic research platforms for molecular, systematic and conservation orientated studies.

The Collection and associated laboratories aim is to facilitate research by providing access to these materials through hosting visits, posting samples on loans, by doing measures and taking photos and x-rays of specimens, and providing associated data to scientists all over the world. Typically, each year this platform loan out several hundreds of specimens.

## **THE BIODIVERSITY INFORMATION PLATFORM**

**The Biodiversity Information Platform** includes the **Margaret Smith Library** and the **Biodiversity Informatics Unit**.

As an academic library, the **Margaret Smith Library** shares resources and library services

with Rhodes University Library to support research and teaching: main users are staff and students of the Rhodes University's Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science. The Margaret Smith Library houses one of the largest document collections and resource centres for African aquatic biodiversity research in Africa. The Library contributes to the Rhodes University online catalogue and Open Access institutional repositories at Rhodes and the NRF. The Library is also partnered with the Biodiversity Heritage Library - Africa.

The Library was established in the 1940s with a small collection of books and scientific papers belonging to Professor JLB Smith. The early indexing system and card catalogue were developed by Professor Margaret Smith. The collection was first stored in a small room in Artillery Road, which was then part of the Rhodes University Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science. The library moved to the present premises in Somerset Street in 1975. After being fully refurbished in 2010, the Library was named for Margaret Smith to commemorate her contribution to preserving the legacy of early Ichthyological research at Rhodes University.

The Library offers users a dedicated computer lab; up-to-date library processes and procedures; social media and Open Access initiatives; additional partners and new collections. The Library holdings include some 5000 books and 2000 serial titles, a large reprint collection dating back to the 1800s and 206 titles in the rare book collection. The Institute has published a number of books on the freshwater fishes of southern Africa, fishes of the Southern Ocean, the biology and ecology of southern African estuarine fishes and coastal fishes of southern Africa, as well as the *Smithiana* monograph and Special Publications series. Popular guides to estuaries and coastal fisheries resources have also been published and are available in the digital commons.

The **Biodiversity Informatics Unit** supports collections management and is available to anyone with a need for management and analysis

of aquatic biodiversity and ecological information. NRF-SAIAB offers a hosting platform to various museums and is pioneering new techniques in biodiversity data-mining.

## RESEARCH

NRF-SAIAB has an internationally recognised profile in aquatic research and a dynamic and active research staff and postgraduate school are involved in numerous collaborative research programmes concerned with aquatic biodiversity and serve on several national advisory committees. They are also involved in teaching undergraduate and postgraduate courses, supervising Honours, MSc and PhD projects particularly through Rhodes University and other universities, both nationally and internationally.

The geographical focus of projects extends from the primary focus area, South Africa, through southern Africa to the African continent. NRF-SAIAB's research strategy is strongly influenced by societal imperatives with an emphasis on demand-driven, collaborative research that is aligned with national and international initiatives (e.g. National Development Plan, Marine and Antarctic Research Strategy (MARS), Phakisa Programme and the Sustainable Development Goals) through three core research areas:

- Taxonomy and BioDiscovery which contributes directly to the description and quantification of global biodiversity assets. Core competencies include taxonomy and systematics, biogeography, molecular biology and biodiversity genomics on a variety of taxa including diatoms, zooplankton, crustaceans, amphibians and fishes.
- Biology and ecology, which are the foundation for understanding ecosystems and the services that they provide. This research area directly informs the management of ecological infrastructure to enhance resilience and ensure benefits to society. Key research areas include life-history assessments, biodiversity assessments, predator-prey interactions, plankton ecology,

movement biology, food webs, ecophysiology and population modelling.

- Drivers of global change and their impacts on aquatic ecosystems is a research area that intends to inform the development of proactive response strategies to mitigate against adverse impacts on ecosystem service provision. Although NRF-SAIAB engages in research at all levels of global change, there

is a strong focus on understanding the impacts of climate change, invasions and fisheries.

- NRF-SAIAB also offers a range of customised equipment such as specialised trailers, electro-fishers, inflatable and fixed hull boats, nets and environmental monitoring instruments for working in different aquatic environments in and around South Africa.

## SOUTHERN OCEAN GROUP

### **Director**

PW Froneman, PhD (Rhodes)

### **Senior Research Officer**

CD McQuaid, PhD (UCT)

The Southern Ocean Group was established in the Department of Zoology and Entomology in 1981 under the directorship of Professor Brian Allanson. The group was the first unit in South Africa involved in the study of biological oceanography in the Southern Ocean, Antarctica and in the vicinity of the Prince Edward Islands. This programme forms part of the oceanographic component of the South African National Antarctic Research Programme (SANAP) and is concerned with the spatial variability in Southern Ocean ecosystems and its response to global climate change. Present projects concern the spatial and temporal patterns in the plankton community structure and food web dynamics in the Southern Ocean. This research provides opportunities for research towards Honours, Master's and Doctoral degrees, and postgraduates form a very active part of the group.

# THE RHODES UNIVERSITY LIBRARY & INFORMATION SERVICES (RULIS)

## EXECUTIVE MANAGEMENT

### Director, Library Services

GN Danster, BBibl (UFH), BBibl (Hons) (UFH),  
M Applied Science-Information Management  
(Curtin University – Western Australia)

### Head: User Services and Research Support

#### Head: Technical Services

WD van der Walt; BTech LIS (UNISA), Dip Bus  
Man (UJ), BInf (Hons) (UNISA), M.IT (UP)

#### Head: Cory Library

Dr. CC Thomas, PhD (Notre Dame)

### ICT & Facilities Officer

G. Dampies; Information Systems Management  
certificate; Digital Transformation Strategy  
certificate (UCT)

### Assistant to the Library Director

A. Leslie

### Principal Librarian: Digital Scholarship

(Vacant)

## USER SERVICES & RESEARCH SUPPORT

### *Head, User Services and Research Support*

#### *Humanities and Education*

#### Principal Librarian

L Cartwright, BA, HDipLib (Rhodes)

#### Librarian (Humanities)

MW Chikafa; B.LIS (UWC)

#### Librarian (Social Sciences)

Vacant

#### Librarian (Education)

A Qomfo; NDLIS, BTech: LIS (NMMU)

#### Assistant Librarian

V Ntamo; BSc (Rhodes), PGDipLIS (UCT)

#### Assistant Librarian (Sound Library)

I. Chirombo; BMus (Rhodes), PGDipLIS  
(UNISA)

#### *Science & Pharmacy*

#### Principal Librarian

VT Menze; BInf; BInf. (Hons) (UNISA)

#### Librarian (Science & Pharmacy)

NS Dyantyi; B. Bibl. (UWC)

#### Librarian (Pharmacy & Science)

Vacant

#### *Commerce & Law*

#### Principal Librarian

JA Otto, BA, HDipLib, PGCE (Rhodes)

#### Librarian (Commerce)

M Mpokela, BInf (UNISA); BHLIS (Hons,  
UKZN)

#### Librarian (Commerce)

SJ Rionda, BA (Rhodes), HDipLIS, BBibl (Hons)  
(Natal)

#### Librarian (Law)

SP Gule, BTech LIS (UNISA); BHLIS (Hons,  
UKZN)

#### *Information Literacy & Marketing*

#### Librarian

FE Charlton, BA, HDE (Rhodes)

#### *User Access Services*

#### Librarian

JLE Nene, BBA, PG Dip LIS (UKZN)

#### Assistant Librarian

N Fumbatha, BComm, Hons, MComm (Rhodes)

#### Assistant Librarian

A Mncwabe, Dip LIS (DUT)

#### *Inter-library Loans*

#### Assistant Librarian

ACE Goosen

#### *Shelving*

A Bavuma

N. Nqebeya

## DIGITAL SCHOLARSHIP & SCHOLARLY COMMUNICATION:

### Principal Librarian: Digital Scholarship

(Vacant)

### Librarian: Scholarly Communication:

DL Martindale, BA, HDE (Rhodes), BBibl  
(UNISA); M.IT (UP)

## TECHNICAL SERVICES

### *Head, Technical Services*

#### *Acquisitions*

##### **Principal Librarian**

MD Booysen, BA (Natal), BInf (UNISA)

##### **Assistant Librarian:**

E Hart

##### **Senior Administrative Assistant:**

H Berriman

#### *Cataloguing, Metadata & Repository*

##### **Principal Librarian**

Vacant

##### **Librarian**

C Clack, BTech LIS (NMU) PG Certificate in

Archival Studies (UNISA)

##### **Librarian: Metadata & Repository**

(Vacant)

##### **Library Assistant: Digitisation**

T Mamani

#### *Electronic Resources Management*

##### **Librarian:**

BC Stoltz, BA, HDE (Rhodes), BInf Hons (UNISA),

##### **Library Assistant:**

K Yona, NDip IT (WSU), BInf (UNISA)

#### *Systems and Web Management*

##### **Principal Librarian:**

(Vacant)

## CORY LIBRARY FOR HUMANITIES RESEARCH

### *Head: Cory Library*

##### **Librarian**

VF Nhanha, LDLIS, BBibI (UFH)

##### **Assistant Librarian**

LM Verwey, NDLIS (UNISA)

##### **Senior Administrative Assistant**

S Fourie

## ICT & FACILITIES MANAGEMENT

### *ICT & Facilities Officer*

##### **Technical Assistant (ICT):**

A Sampson, NDip IT (NMMU); Web Design certificate (UCT)

## Purpose Statement

Rhodes University Library and Information Services is committed to supporting the mission of Rhodes University in the pursuit of knowledge by students, researchers, scholars and surrounding communities, by providing quality learning resources, client centered services, the skills required to effectively participate in the information society and knowledge economy and, a conducive physical and virtual learning environment, that enhances intellectual creativity as well as the free and open exchange of knowledge and ideas.

## Library Profile and Policies

The Rhodes University Library profile, strategy and policies are available on the Library webpage at: <https://www.ru.ac.za/library/about/>

## RHODES UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES (RUL)

RUL consists of four libraries and three affiliated libraries. These are; the Main Library, the Cory Library for Humanities Research, the Alistair Kerr Law Library and the Sound Library. The affiliated libraries are the Margaret Smith Library at SAIAB, the Teacher Resources Centre, and the International Library of African Music (ILAM). For more information on each of these libraries: <https://www.ru.ac.za/library/about/branchlibraries/affiliatedinstitutes/>

## Library membership

A valid Rhodes University ID card validates a user as a library member and grants you access rights to and use of the Main Library and branch libraries facilities. All registered students and Rhodes University staff are automatically members of the Library. Staff and community members are required to register annually to have access to the library service and facilities.

## Access to Library resources and facilities

Students use their student identity cards as Access and Borrowers' cards. Staff use their staff identity cards as Access and Borrower's cards. Visiting members will be issued with cards after registration



at the Library. Loss of a card must be reported to the library immediately to prevent unauthorized use. Users may not use someone else's card to gain access to the libraries, to borrow library material or to use library facilities. New students and new staff members have to activate/set up their library account in order to access online databases and eBooks remotely/off-campus. To create your library account, go to: <https://rb.gy/kc9hwx>

### Library collections

The Library has approximately 300 000 volumes of print books onsite, approximately 700 000 e-books and 66 online scholarly databases. The short loan collection is the most heavily used print collection by both staff and students. Access to the Library's collections is through the Library's web page: <https://www.ru.ac.za/library/>

The loan schedule of the Main Library is as follows:

- Undergraduates: six (6) items for two weeks.
- Postgraduate: twelve (12) items for four weeks
- Senior postgraduates: twenty (20) items for eight weeks
- Academic staff, Research staff, Support staff and post-doctoral scholars: thirty (30) items for twelve weeks
- Community members: up to three months six (6) items for two weeks
- Visiting scholars: more than three months twenty (20) items for eight weeks

### Lending rules

- A borrower is responsible for returning any loaned item/s by the due date. Items which are retained for longer than the stipulated loan period are subject to fines. The University requires all categories of users to pay such fines.
- No item may be transferred to any other person.
- Items which are lost or damaged must be paid for or replaced.
- The Director: Library Services may at his/her discretion restrict the loan period of any item or refuse its loan altogether.
- An item on loan may be recalled at any time.

### Opening hours

<b>Term hours</b>	
Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 22:30
Friday	08:30 to 18:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	13:30 to 17:30
<b>Swot week</b>	
Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 01:00
Friday	08:30 to 21:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	09:00 to 21:00
<b>Exam hours</b>	
Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 00:00
Friday	08:30 to 21:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	09:00 to 21:00
<b>Vacation hours:</b>	
Monday - Friday	08:30 to 17:00
Saturday	09:00 to 12:30

Variations in Library hours, due to specific regulations, Public Holidays and extended times during the examinations, are posted at the main entrance and on the Library's webpage, social media and e-mail.

### Use of Electronic resources

We encourage users to make use of our e-Resources which are accessibly remotely. Access to the Library's electronic collections is available from the Library's web page for current Rhodes University staff and registered students. As a significant portion of these e-resources is subject to terms and conditions stipulated in license agreements, community members are limited to on-site access only. Community members who need access to subscription-based resources must contact the Circulation Desk at: [libloansupport@ru.ac.za](mailto:libloansupport@ru.ac.za)

### Library Facilities and Venues

#### *Research Commons*

Located on Level 2 in the Main Library, the Research Commons is a dedicated space for academic staff, researchers and senior post-graduate (Master's and Doctoral) students. A valid

Rhodes University ID card is required to gain access to this area.

#### *Postgraduate Commons (PGCs)*

Located on the Ground Level, the PGC is a dedicated space for academic staff, researchers and postgraduate (Honours, Master's and Doctoral) students. A valid Rhodes University ID card is required to gain access to this area. For further information on research support:

<https://www.ru.ac.za/library/researchsupport/>

#### *Information Commons (IC)*

Located on Level 2 in the Main Library, the IC is a dedicated space for undergraduate students, accessible during Library operating hours, with differentiated learning spaces, fifty-six PCs and a dedicated Information Literacy Coordinator available during Library hours. To access the libguide for new students:

<https://ru.za.libguides.com/newstudents>

or for more information about IC:

<https://ru.za.libguides.com/InfoCommons>

#### *24/7 study area*

This facility is available to all registered students. A valid Rhodes University ID card is required to access the facility from 22:30 to 08:30.

### **CORY LIBRARY FOR HUMANITIES RESEARCH**

Cory Library collects archival and published material to support research in the humanities and

social sciences. Its book, journal and archival holdings are particularly strong in the fields of Eastern Cape history, heritage and culture, mission and church history, family history, and various southern African topics, including politics, literature, education, mining, commerce and agriculture. Since the initial deposit of Sir George Cory's collections, there has been a focus on the history of the Eastern Cape and on Makhanda itself. Cory Library's collections include manuscripts and other documents, Cape and other government publications, rare and modern books, pamphlets, periodicals and newspapers, maps, photographs, audio-visual recordings, and electronic media. Through its book publishing programme (the Graham's Town Series, Eastern Cape Themes, and Eastern Cape Reprints), Cory Library contributes to the intellectual and academic culture of the University.

<https://www.ru.ac.za/corylibrary/>

#### **Access**

Cory Library is a non-circulating library. It is open to students and staff of Rhodes University in the first instance. Members of the wider research community and the public are welcome to buy readers' tickets to do research in this library. To contact Cory Library, use the following email address: [cory@ru.ac.za](mailto:cory@ru.ac.za)

#### **Hours of opening:**

Mondays – Fridays, 08.30 - 16.30

## ADMINISTRATIVE SENIOR STAFF

### REGISTRAR'S DIVISION

#### Registrar

AL Moody, BA (Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes), BEd (UNISA), MEd (UNISA), MBA (Business School Netherlands), DEd(UNISA)

**Manager: Academic Administration**  
S Flanagan

**Manager: Student Bureau**  
D Wicks (Admissions - Student Bureau)

**Manager: Student Recruitment**  
L Frazenburg BSS Hons (UFS)

**Manager: Governance and Secretariat**  
P De Bruin BCom Hons HR (MANCOSA)

### VICE-CHANCELLOR'S OFFICE

#### Vice-Chancellor

S Mabizela, BSc, BSc (Hon), MSc (UFH), PhD (Pennsylvania State)

**Personal Assistant and Manager: Administration**

M Burger

**Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Academic & Student Affairs**

MLE Monnapula-Mapesela, BSc Ed(NUL), BEd (UOFS), M.Ed(UOFS), PGDip. HE(Rhodes), PhD (UFS)

**Project Coordinator and Assistant to the DVC: Academic and Student Affairs**

T Qeqe BCom (Rhodes), BCom (Hons) (Rhodes)

**Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Research, Innovation & Strategic Partnerships**

N Mzilikazi BSc (Zoology, Chemistry), BSc Hons (Zoology) (University of Transkei), MSc (Zoology) (University of Natal), PhD (Zoology) (University of KwaZulu Natal)

**Project Officer and Personal Assistant to the DVC: RISP**

S Gangiah

**Director: Equity and Institutional Culture**  
Dr C Kelly PhD Psychology, Mphil Diversity Studies (UCT)

**Director: IRPQP**  
RC Nnadozie, BSc Hons(IMSU), PGCE (UKZN), PGDip-Info Systems Man (SUN), MSc, PhD (UKZN)

**Director: Office of the Vice Chancellor**  
S Smiles, BSocSci, LLB (Rhodes), LLM (Wits), Higher Diploma in Labour Law (Wits), Attorney at Law

### CENTRE FOR HIGHER EDUCATION

#### RESEARCH, TEACHING AND LEARNING

J-A Vorster, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

### COMMUNICATIONS & ADVANCEMENT DIVISION

#### Director

LG Jacobs MA (Rhodes)

### DIVISION OF STUDENT SERVICES & DEVELOPMENT

#### Director of Division of Student Services & Development

P Tondi, B. Th (UKZN), M.A (Moral and Cultural Studies) (UFS), PhD (Religion and Culture Studies) (UKZN), M.A Higher Education Studies (UFS)

**Manager: Residence Life, Support and Development**

**Manager: Student Wellness**

M Ndabula, BA (UFH), MA Couns Psych (Pretoria)

### FINANCE DIVISION

#### Chief Financial Officer

K Riga BCom (Rhodes) MCom (Domestic and International Tax) (NWU)

#### Director

G Erasmus BCom (UWC)

### DIVISION OF PEOPLE AND CULTURE

#### Director of People and Culture

SJ Robertson, BA (Hons)(Rhodes)

#### Senior Manager: Specialist HR Services

H Saayman, B Tech (UNISA); Nat Dip (UNISA); Management Programme (TUKS)

#### Senior Manager: Recruitment and Staffing

N Gongqa, BA (UFH)

#### Manager: Training and Development

S van der Merwe, MCom (Rhodes), BCom (UNW), NHD Management (TUT)

#### Manager: HR Equity & Employee Relations

**Manager: Recruitment and Staffing (Academic)**

**Manager: Recruitment and Staffing (Support)**

#### Senior HR Practitioners

L Titus, Nat Dip (NMMU)

L Bradfield, BSocSc (Rhodes)

M Maccario, BCom Hons (NMMU)

B Nelana, Post Grad Diploma in Enterprise Management (Rhodes)

#### **RESIDENTIAL OPERATIONS DIVISION**

##### **Director: Residential Operations**

J Pillay, NDP MBA (Rhodes) PG Certificate  
HEM (Bath University)

#### **FOOD SERVICES**

C Avery

##### **Manager: Housekeeping Services**

N Magodla

##### **Ass. Manager: Housekeeping & Central Cleaning**

C Langson,

##### **Ass. Manager: Housekeeping**

Esona Mtinkulu

#### **MANAGER: CONFERENCING & EVENTS**

C Avery

#### **FACILITIES DIVISION**

##### **Director: Facilities Services**

D van Dyk BSc (QS)(UFS)

##### **Manager: Campus Protection Unit**

J Mabotja

##### **Manager: Grounds and Gardens**

N Langeni

##### **Manager: Building Maintenance**

##### **Manager: Electrical Section**

M Koopman

##### **Manager: Engineering and Mechanical Works**

#### **FINANCE, ADMIN AND PROCUREMENT**

##### **Deputy Director: Operations Administration,**

##### **Finance & Procurement**

W Lombard, BCom (RAU), BCom  
(Hons)(UNISA)

##### **Manager: Administration**

S Gumede

#### **INFORMATION AND TECHNOLOGY SERVICES**

##### **Director: Information and Technology Services**

N Ripley, BSc (Natal)

##### **Manager: Operations**

DR Sieborger, MA (Rhodes)

##### **Manager: Service Delivery**

T Chambers, MBA (Rhodes)

##### **Manager: Management Information Systems**

L Angus, MSc (Rhodes)

#### **Division of Global Engagement**

##### **Director: Division of Global Engagement**

OM Quinlan, MSc (Econ)(London)

#### **DIVISION OF RESEARCH & INNOVATION**

##### **Director: Centre for Postgraduate Studies**

SM McKenna, BA (Natal), HDE (Natal), MA  
(Stellenbosch), PhD (Rhodes)

##### **Director: Division of Research & Innovation**

J Roberts, MSocSci (UND)

##### **Personal Assistant to the Director & Research Officer**

A Nzwanga, BComm (Rhodes)

##### **Manager: Research Administration**

T Mantolo, National Diploma (WSU), B-Tech  
(DUT)

##### **Manager Postgraduate Funding**

T Tantsi, BEco (Rhodes), PGDip Business  
Management (MANCOSA), MBA (Rhodes  
Business School)

##### **Manager: Technology Transfer Office**

P Ntshakaza, MSc (Rhodes)

##### **NRF Grants Specialist**

S Peter, Bsc Honours (UFH) (UFH), PGDip:  
Research Management (Stellenbosch)

##### **Senior Administrator: Research Office**

N de Vos, BA, PDEM (Rhodes)

##### **Administrator: Postgraduate Funding**

N Mkosana, MSc (UFH)

##### **Assistant Administrator**

S Makeba, Diploma: HR (NMU)

##### **Administrative Assistant**

X Cele, PGDip: Archives and Records  
Management (Fort Hare)

#### **STUDENT WELLNESS SECTION**

##### **HEALTH CARE CENTRE**

##### **Head Nurse**

H Ferreira, BCur Education and Administration  
(NWU), 4-year Nursing Diploma (Charlotte Searle  
NC)

##### **Nurses**

T Fanisi, BTech OCC Health (DUT), Nursing  
Management (NWU), 4-year Nursing Diploma  
(Frere NC)

CM Cannon, Diploma Nursing Science, Diploma  
Occupational Health & Safety (Oxbridge  
Academy)

L Visagie, Adv Diploma in Nursing Management  
(NWU), 4-year Nursing Diploma (Sharley Cribb  
NC)

N Mtintsilana, Bcur Nursing Science (WSU)

**HIV OFFICE**

**Institutional Wellness Specialist**

S Mphandana, BA (Health Sciences) UNISA,  
HIV Counselling (UNISA)

**CAREER CENTRE**

**Counselling Psychologist, Career Office**

N Faki  
S Nabo-Bozana

**Graduate Recruitment Programme**

**Coordinator**

T Mesani

**COUNSELLING CENTRE**

**Manager: Counselling Centre**

C Lewis, BSocSci (UFS), BSocSci (Hons)(UFS),  
PGCE (UFS), MSocSci (UFH) , PhD (Rhodes)

**Counselling Psychologists**

T Ncane

**SPORTS OFFICE**

**Manager: Sports Administration**

**Assistant Manager: Sports Administration**

E Gallant, BTech Management (UNISA)

**HALLS OF RESIDENCE MEN'S HALLS**

**THE FOUNDER'S HALL**

**Hall Warden**

P Mashazi, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD  
(Rhodes), Certificate IP Law (WIPO-UNISA)

**Botha House**

P Mashazi, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD  
(Rhodes), Certificate IP Law (WIPO-UNISA)

**College House**

S Zondo, BA (Wits), BSS Hons (UCT), MA  
Neuropsych (UCT) BSc (Premedical) AUIS  
(Barbados)

**Cory House**

Vacant

**Matthews House**

T Sipungu, BA, LLB, MA (Rhodes)

**WOMEN'S HALLS COURTENAY-**

**LATIMER HALL**

**Hall Warden**

N Fumbatha, MCom (Financial Markets)  
(Rhodes)

**Oriel House**

Q Andangnui, Mcom Financial Management  
(Rhodes)

**Beit House**

Vacant

**Jameson House**

A Qomfo, ND: Library and Information Science  
(NMU), BTech: Library and Information Science  
(NMU), PGDip in Knowledge and Information  
Systems (Stellembosch)

**Charlotte Maxeke House**

N Fumbatha, MCom (Financial Markets)  
(Rhodes)

**ST MARY HALL**

**Hall Warden**

T Tantsi, BEcon (Rhodes), PGDip (Business  
Management) (MANCOSA)

**John Kotzé House**

T Tantsi, BEcon (Rhodes), PGDip (Business  
Management) (MANCOSA)

**Lilian Britten House**

NQE Babeli, BSS, BSS (Hons), MSocSci (Rhodes  
University)

**Olive Schreiner House**

A Mxalisa, (BA, BAHons, MA (Political Science)  
Research (NMU)

**Phelps House**

A Adams, MA (Linguistics) UWC, HDHET  
(CPUT), National Diploma (Education) Bellville  
College of Education

**HOBSON HALL**

**Hall Warden**

TL Chambers, MBA, PDHE (Rhodes)

**Dingemans House**

TL Chambers, MBA, PDHE (Rhodes)

**Hobson House**

F Gunzo, MEd ICT (Rhodes) BSocSci (Hons)  
(UFH), PhD (Rhodes)

**Livingstone House**

Z Kota, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes)

**Milner House**

M Isaacs, MSc (Rhodes)

**Starling House**

N Silo, PGCE (Rhodes), BSS (Hons) (Rhodes)

**HALLS FOR MEN AND WOMEN ALLAN**

**WEBB HALL**

**Hall Warden**

L Maholo, BCom, BCom (Hons)(Rhodes)

**Winchester House**

Y Motara, BScS (Hons), MSc, PhD

**Canterbury House**

S Kunju, BMus (Hons), PGCE

**Canterbury Annexe**

L Xaba, BSS, PGDIS, MIS

**Salisbury House**

A Ntlatsana B.Sc (Rhodes), B.Sc (Hons)

(Rhodes), M.Sc (Rhodes)

**Truro House**

L Maholo, BCom, BCom (Hons)(Rhodes)

**DROSTDY HALL**

**Hall Warden**

C Parkinson, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), M.A. (Rhodes)

**Allan Gray House**

S Carolus, BJourn (Hons) (Rhodes)

**Graham House**

NS Nkosi, (NS) Nkosi, BEd (Hons), MEd (Wits)

**Prince Alfred House**

C Parkinson, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), M.A. (Rhodes)

**Celeste**

Vacant

**SOLOMON MAHLANGU HALL**

**Hall Warden**

A Chinomona, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UKZN)

**Adamson House**

S Khamanga, BSc (Swaziland), BPharm,

MSc(Pharm)(Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

**Atherstone House**

U Bontsi, National Diploma in Food Service

Management (WSU)

**Robert Sobukwe House**

A Chinomona, BSc (UZ), BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UKZN)

**New House**

L Griffioen, BA (Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes)

**KIMBERLEY HALL**

**Hall Warden**

J Gambiza, PhD (Zimbabwe)

**Gold Fields House**

J Gambiza, PhD (Zimbabwe)

**De Beers House**

G Thondhlana, PhD (Rhodes)

**Rosa Parks**

B Chitambo

**Hilltop 9**

J Nene J Nene, BBA, PGDIPLIS (UKZN)

**MIRIAM MAKEBA HALL**

**Hall Warden**

D Khanye, DFil (UCT)

**Chris Hani House**

D Khanye, DFil (UCT)

**Enoch Sontonga**

F Chindeka

**Thomas Pringle House**

C Lewis, MSocSci (UFH)

**Walker House**

S Roodt, BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

**GAVIN RELLY POSTGRADUATE**

**VILLAGE**

**Warden**

L Juma, LLD (Rhodes)

**NELSON MANDELA HALL**

**Hall Warden**

E Ofei

**Stanley Kidd House**

T Moleko

**Helen Joseph House**

M Maponya, BSocSc, BSocSc (Hons), (UCT) ,  
MA (Rhodes)

**Guy Butler House**

E Ofei

**Adelaide Tambo House**

O Lehasa

**LILIAN NGOYI HALL**

**Hall Warden**

M Ntlabati BSocSc (UCT), BSocSc (Hon)(UCT)

**Centenary House**

M Chirombo, BFA (Hons)(Rhodes)

**Ruth First House**

K Solomon BA, BA (Hons), Ma (Rhodes)

**Victoria Mxenge House**

S Klaas, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

**Joe Slovo House**

M Ntlabati BSocSc (UCT), BSocSc (Hon)(UCT)

**OPPIDAN HALL**

**Hall Warden**

TS Lepelesana BSocSci, LLB (Rhodes)

**DESMOND TUTU HALL**

**Hall Warden**

C Magadza, MSc (Pharm)(Rhodes)

**Margaret Smith House**

L Baloyi-Mokwena M Tech Water Science (TUT)

**Ellen Kuzwayo House**

C Magadza, MSc (Pharm)(Rhodes)

**Amina Cachalia House**

M Buso MA (Psych)

**Cullen Bowles House**

K Ntinkinca, MSc (Social Science) (Rhodes)

**HUGH MASEKELA HALL**

**Hall Warden (Acting)**

V Baneti, BAdmin (HRM) – (UFH) Bachelor of Administration – Public Sector Human Resources Management, Law Master’s Candidate LLB and LLM Candidate (Wits) – Bachelor of Laws (UFH)

**Calata**

NC Mzimane, Bachelor of Commerce (BCom, Postgraduate Certificate in Education (PGCE) (Rhodes)

**Hilltop 7**

Vacant

**Hilltop 8**

V Baneti, BAdmin (HRM) – (UFH) Bachelor of Administration – Public Sector Human Resources Management, Law Master’s Candidate LLB and LLM Candidate (Wits) – Bachelor of Laws (UFH)

**Sisulu House**

B Mankantshu, Master of Social Science (Rhodes)

## DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

Full details of rules and regulations for the various degrees, diplomas and certificates may be found in the relevant Faculty sections.

### FACULTY OF COMMERCE

Degrees		Minimum duration
BBusSc	Bachelor of Business Science	four years
BCom	Bachelor of Commerce	three years
BCom(Hons)	Bachelor of Commerce with Honours	one year
BEcon	Bachelor of Economics	three years
BEcon(Hons)	Bachelor of Economics with Honours	one year
MBA	Master of Business Administration	two years
MCom	Master of Commerce	one year
MCom	Master of Commerce in Financial Markets	two years
MCom	Master of Commerce in Taxation	two years
MEcon	Master of Economics	one year
PhD DEcon	Doctor of Philosophy Doctor of Economics	two years
Diplomas		
DipAcc(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy	one year
DipEntMan(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management	one year
DipTax (PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation	one year
DipBA(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Business Analysis	one year

### FACULTY OF EDUCATION

Degrees		Minimum duration
BEd	Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching)	preservice four years full-time
BEd	Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching)	four years part-time
BEd	Bachelor of Education (Intermediate Phase)	three years part-time
BEd	Bachelor of Education (Senior/FET Phase)	three years part-time
BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education (Honours)	two years part-time
MEd	Master of Education	one year full-time, two years part-time
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years full-time
Diplomas and certificates		
ACEFL	Advanced Certificate in Education Foundation Phase Literacy	two-year part-time

Please note that Rhodes University may change its offerings from time to time



PGCE	Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Senior/FET Phase)	one year full-time
PGDip(HE)	Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education	two years part-time

## FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

Degrees		Minimum duration
BA	Bachelor of Arts	three years
BA (Hons)	Bachelor of Arts with Honours	one year
BFA	Bachelor of Fine Art	four years
BJourn	Bachelor of Journalism	four years
BMus	Bachelor of Music	four years
MA	Master of Arts	two years
MFA	Master of Fine Art	one year
MMus	Master of Music	one year
DMus	Doctor of Music	four years
DLitt	Doctor of Literature	four years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
BSocSc	Bachelor of Social Science	three years
BSocSc(Hons)	Bachelor of Social Science with Honours	one year
MSocSc	Master of Social Science	two years
DSocSc	Doctor of Social Science	four years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years

### Diplomas and Certificates

HDipPsychotherapy	Higher Diploma in Psychotherapy	one year (min)
HDipTheaStud	Higher Diploma in Theatre Studies	one year (min)
DipFineArt	Diploma in Fine Art	four years
DipELT(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: English Language Teaching	one year
DipIS(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: International Studies	one year
* DipLGA(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: Local Government Administration	one year
DipESL(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language	one year
HDipJourn(PG)	Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate)	one year
* DipMedMgmt(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management	one year
DipPsychol(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology	one year

\* *not currently offered*

Please note that Rhodes University may change its offerings from time to time

**FACULTY OF LAW**

<b>Degrees</b>		<b>Minimum duration</b>
LLB	Bachelor of Laws	four years
LLM	Master of Laws	two years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
LLD	Doctor of Laws	

**FACULTY OF PHARMACY**

<b>Degrees</b>		<b>Minimum duration</b>
BPharm	Bachelor of Pharmacy	four years
MPharm	Master of Pharmacy	two years
MSc	Master of Science	two years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	three years
DSc	Doctor of Science	

**FACULTY OF SCIENCE**

<b>Degrees</b>		<b>Minimum duration</b>
BSc	Bachelor of Science	three years
BSc(Inf Sys)	Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)	three years
BSc(Hons)	Bachelor of Science with Honours	one year
MSc	Master of Science	one year
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
DSc	Doctor of Science	

Please note that Rhodes University may change its offerings from time to time

## THE RESIDENCES

Residence accommodation is comfortable and attractive. Most of the older houses, some designed by Baker and Kendall, the original architects of Rhodes, have been restored externally and the interiors modernised. Generally, students have their own rooms. We have 3829 single residence rooms on campus due to Covid-19 regulations. First year students are allocated to these rooms using a lottery system. Early application for residence accommodation is essential, and ensures a wider choice of residence. For details of residence fees see the Fees and Charges section.

The fifty-five residences or 'houses' are grouped in fourteen halls, all with their own dining-halls, and all within easy walking distance of lectures and town. There are three women's halls, one men's hall and 10 halls accommodating men and women in separate houses, as well as a separate Postgraduate Village, which offers a choice between self-catering, and full board.

Each hall governs its own internal affairs to a large extent. However, certain rules apply to all students in residence (see the Student Disciplinary Code). It is important to note that a student living in a University residence may at any time be required to leave that residence if the Director of Student Affairs, in consultation with the Hall Warden concerned, is satisfied that this is in the best interest of the residence or of the student concerned. Subject to conditions laid down from time to time by the Director of Student Affairs, Hall Wardens have the right to decide which returning or Oppidan students (who have previously lived in a Rhodes residence) they will admit to their respective halls, and may refuse to admit or readmit a student if they consider this advisable. Should a Hall Warden decide not to admit a student into residence he/she would need to substantiate his/her decision in writing to the Director of Student Affairs. The final decision, with regard to admitting a student into residence shall always be vested with the Vice Chancellor.

A hall warden is in charge of each hall, and House Wardens, assisted by sub-wardens and house committees, are in charge of individual houses. Senior members of the academic and administrative staff are elected as Fellows of the various halls, and play an active part in the life of their Hall.

### Warden's powers of search

A hall or house warden has the right to search a student's room if they have reasonable grounds for believing that evidence of the commission or attempted commission of a disciplinary offence may be found in the room concerned. In such instances, the Student Protocol for Search and Seizure is closely adhered to.

### Housekeeping

It is important to be aware that there are certain times when housekeepers are required to enter student rooms. They are trained, as per hotel standards, to knock three times before entering a room. They are also required to say "housekeeping" between each knock. If there is no response from the room, they are then permitted to enter using the master key, which has been entrusted to them.

Reasons why housekeeping may be required to enter a student room include: window cleaning; fumigation; requisition work; checking Rhodes University furnishings etc.

### Responsibility for University property

Each student allocated a room in residence must sign a Room Statement Form as and when required to do so by the hall warden listing all university furniture and other property in the room and certifying that it is in good order. At the end of each term when students are required to clear their rooms, the house warden will check the rooms, and the students will be held responsible for leaving all the furniture, other property and the room itself, in the same good order in which it was found (fair wear and tear excepted).

In the case of damage to, or loss of, university property, the student or students responsible, if known, are required to bear the cost. If not known, the cost of loss or damage will be charged either to a particular group of students or to the general funds of students in the house.

A student should report any damage or loss of university property in a room while he/she is in occupation, and for which he/she is not responsible, immediately, in writing, to the house warden. If this is not done, it will be presumed that the loss or damage is the responsibility of the occupant of the room, who will have to bear the cost.

### **Insurance (accident)**

Students are not covered by university insurance while at Rhodes unless they are injured while engaged in activities for which they are remunerated by the university. All other insurance is the responsibility of each student.

### **Loss of or damage to students' property**

Students are strongly advised to ensure that they carry the necessary insurance against theft, housebreaking, fire and other similar risks.

The University will in no way hold itself responsible for any loss or damage by theft, fire or any other means to students' property kept in the residences either during term time or during vacations.

All students' room doors are fitted with locks. Student rooms should be locked at all times.

### **Property left in residence box rooms**

Any property belonging to persons who no longer live in residence, which has been stored or left in residence box rooms, will be sold if it has not been removed from such box rooms by the end of the first vacation of each year. The proceeds will be paid into an official account of the relevant Hall Committee for the benefit of the students of the House concerned.

Property left in residence box rooms is left entirely at the student's own risk.

### **Residence during vacations**

#### **Undergraduate residences (undergraduate and postgraduate students)**

- a) Accommodation in residence is available during the April and September recesses, when normally at least one women's residence and one men's residence are open. No accommodation is offered during the mid-year recess or during December and January each year.
- b) Students wishing to stay in the vacation residences during the April and September vacations must submit the appropriate online application on ROSS (Application for Vacation Accommodation Form) two weeks prior to the start of the vacation in question.
- c) Students remaining in residence during the April vacation pay an extra fee for room and board (see Fees and Charges section).

*NB University residences are used during most vacations for conferences etc. Students must clear their residence rooms during all vacations. The University has the right to close all, or any, houses and Halls during a vacation, and determines when, for how long and on what conditions residential facilities are available during vacations and at other times.*

Residence fees do not cover accommodation during vacations, except in the following case:

- a) Students may move into residence at the beginning of the academic year up to two days before the day on which they register academically, and one day before the beginning of the second, third and fourth terms.
- b) A student may remain in residence 24 hours after the end of the first and third terms, and 48 hours after completing the June and November examinations.

No reduction in fees is made if students finish their examinations before the official end of term.

*NB Students not writing examinations (including students who have not obtained DP certificates) must leave residence before the examination period*

*begins. No reduction in residence fees will be granted.*

Accommodation in residence is normally available during the supplementary/acgotat examinations in November and February, and students wishing to return to residence early for the purpose of writing such examinations must submit the appropriate form (Application for Vacation Accommodation) available from the Residential Operations Division, Student Bureau or hall wardens, at least two weeks prior to the start of the day accommodation is required. A fee will be charged for such accommodation.

### **Postgraduate students (Celeste House, Oakdene House, Gilbert Street postgraduate units)**

- Full-time students will be accommodated in Celeste House, Oakdene House and three smaller houses on campus.
- Students may remain in residence throughout the year, if they have registered administratively.
- Students will be charged a fee as set out in the Fees Booklet. This will also allow them to have meals in a dining hall. In the event of all dining halls being closed, the students will have to make their own arrangements for meals.
- A pro-rata rebate will only be paid out in the final year of study upon provision of proof of submission of thesis.
- Cooking is permitted in designated self-catering units only. Subletting of rooms, or permitting squatting, shall result in exclusion from the residence.
- Students who wish to make use of the self-catering facilities provided in Oakdene, Celeste and Gavin Relly Post Grad Village residences, must indicate their choice when registering administratively. Should a student need to change during the year, under exceptional circumstances this will be considered. An application should be sent via email to [meals@ru.ac.za](mailto:meals@ru.ac.za).

### **Postgraduate students (Gavin Reilly Postgraduate Village)**

- Students will be charged a fee as set out in the Fees Booklet. The different rates for self-catering and full board, are indicated in the fees booklet.
- If a student opts for full board, their meals will be provided in the Courtenay Latimer dining hall. Meal bookings are managed online on ROSS. Email [meals@ru.ac.za](mailto:meals@ru.ac.za) with any queries relating to meal bookings.
- Cooking is permitted in the units. A fridge and hotplate are provided.
- Subletting of rooms or permitting squatting shall result in exclusion from the village.

### **RU Health Care Centre**

The Health Care Centre is staffed by four qualified nursing sisters and two Health Care Centre assistants. The Sisters attend to minor ailments, dispense medicines, dress wounds, carry out first aid, run a contraception clinic and conduct health education during regular clinic hours. There is a 24-hour emergency service. The Health Care Centre has eight beds for in-patients, such as those with infectious diseases in need of nursing care or isolation, depression or other psychological disorders. Students may choose any medical practitioner they wish to attend them. They or their parents are responsible for the medical practitioner's charges, the cost of any prescriptions made up by local chemists, and the fees for any additional special nursing required by an individual student. Students requiring operations or specialised attention not given in the Health Care Centre are moved to hospital for treatment, and are responsible for any resultant charges. A student who is admitted to the Health Care Centre must comply with the Health Care Centre rules and shall obey all lawful instructions by the Health Care Centre sisters.

### **Mail to residences**

Students should notify their correspondents that letters must be addressed to the particular house they live in, and not merely to Rhodes University.

---

THE RESIDENCES

---

The following is a list of the appropriate postal addresses and Wardens' telephone numbers:

**Allan Webb Hall** Private Bag 1027  
Hall Warden 6038010  
Hall Administrator 6038474  
Canterbury House 6038577  
Canterbury Annexe 6037238  
Salisbury House 6038010  
Winchester House 6038011  
Truro House 6038519

**Courtenay-Latimer Hall** Private Bag 1031  
Hall Warden 6038044  
Hall Administrator 6038575  
Beit House 6038044  
Charlotte Maxeke House 6038045  
Oriel House & Annex 6038886

**Desmond Tutu Hall** Private Bag x1042  
Hall Warden 6038336  
Hall Administrator 6037452  
Ellen Kuzwayo House 6037467  
Amina Cachalia House 6037468  
Cullen Bowles House 6038038  
Margaret Smith House 6038336

**Drostdy Hall** Private Bag 1025  
Hall Warden 6038016  
Hall Administrator 6038586  
Allan Gray House 6038014  
Celeste 6037602  
Graham House 6038015  
Prince Alfred House 6038016

**Founders Hall** Private Bag 1028  
Hall Warden 6038019  
Hall Administrator 6038588  
College House 6038020  
Cory House 6038021  
Matthews House 6038022

**Hilltop Hall** Private Bag 1038  
Hall Warden 6037716  
Hall Administrator 6037718  
Calata House 6037469  
Hilltop 7 6037715  
Hilltop 8 6037716

Sisulu House 6037517

**Hobson Hall** Private Bag 1030  
Hall Warden 6038025  
Hall Administrator 6038578  
Hobson House 6037467  
Dingemans House 6038025  
Livingstone House 6038583  
Milner House 6038855  
Hobson New Res. 6038916

**Jan Smuts Hall**  
Hall Warden 6038030  
Hall Administrator 6038589  
**Atherstone House** P Bag 1036  
6038030

Adamson House P Bag 1034  
6038029

Robert Sobukwe House P Bag 1029  
6038031

New House P Bag 1037  
6038032

**Kimberley Hall** Private Bag 1026  
Hall Warden 6038582  
Hall Administrator 6038590  
De Beers House 6037543  
Gold Fields House 6038582  
Hilltop 9 6037717  
Rosa Parks 6037067

**Lilian Ngoyi Hall** Private Bag X1040  
Hall Warden 6037065  
Hall Administrator 6038692  
Centenary House 6038833  
Ruth First House 6038720  
Victoria Mxenge House 6038697  
Joe Slovo House 6037065

**Miriam Makeba Hall** Private Bag 1041  
Hall Warden 6038035  
Hall Administrator 6038861  
Enoch Sontonga House 6038035  
Thomas Pringle House 6038036  
Walker House 6038039  
Chris Hani 6038069

**Nelson Mandela Hall** Private Bag X1673

Hall Warden	6038042
Hall Administrator	6037198
Stanley Kidd House	6038037
Helen Joseph House	6038916
Adelaide Tambo House	6038042
Guy Butler	6038693

### **Oppidan Hall**

Warden	6038229
--------	---------

### **Postgraduate Hall**

Hall Warden	6038581
-------------	---------

### **GRPGV**

Oakdene	6038581
	6038349

### **St Mary Hall**

### **Private Bag 1032**

Hall Warden	6037510
Hall Administrator	6038576
John Kotze House	6037510
Lilian Britten House	6038387
Olive Schreiner House	6038049
Phelps House	6038048

### **Discipline in the residences**

The relevant rules and procedures are to be found in the Student Disciplinary Code and the Hall and House rules applicable in each house. Students should ensure that they are aware of these.

### **Special diets**

Meat, Vegetarian, Halaal, Hindu, African, Fast Food and Health Diets are offered. Regrettably specialised medical diets cannot be offered.

### **Fees for residence accommodation**

(a) Fees payable for residence accommodation are set out in the "Fees" section of the Calendar.

NB A student who has moved into residence but who leaves before registering for a course of study, will be charged such residence fees as the University determines. The fee normally payable is a daily rate fixed by the Council.

(b) Residence fees are currently set according to a facility-grading system.

(c) Students' accommodation for 2022 is based on single rooms. Adjustments are made where

students change residences. The total amount is debited to the students' account.

### **Cancellation of provisional or final residence booking**

In the case of an early withdrawal from residence, for any reason, other than immediate family bereavement, medical illness or academic exclusion, a cancellation fee of two months residence fee will be levied over and above the fee calculation for the period of residence accommodation. A penalty will not be charged if a provisional residence booking is cancelled prior to the Initial Fee (IF) deadline as set out in the Fees Booklet each year.

### **Sharing of double rooms**

Where, for University convenience, students are required to share accommodation, a 25% discount of the lodging fee for a single room is payable to the student for the period that the room was shared. For discount and adjustments, the residence year is taken as 249 days.

### **Accommodation in University transit housing units**

In order to meet the demand for residence accommodation a number of students are allocated to suitable transit houses. This accommodation is temporary, and students housed in such accommodation will be required to move into residences as and when vacancies occur in residences. Placement in any particular Hall or residence cannot therefore be guaranteed.

### **Linen and laundry**

Bed linen is supplied and laundered free of charge. Washing machines and tumble driers are installed in each residence for students' personal laundry.

### **Rebate on residence fees**

No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason.

### **Cancellation of provisional/final residence booking**

In the case of an early withdrawal from residence, for any reason, other than immediate family bereavement, medical illness or academic exclusion, a cancellation fee of two months (60 days) residence fee will be levied over and above the fee calculation for the period of residence accommodation. A penalty will not be charged if a provisional residence booking is cancelled prior to the Initial Fee (IF) deadline of 18 January 2021.

### **Residence merit scholarships**

A number of residence merit scholarships are available each year on application. Specific criteria are laid down for these scholarships. Applications should be made to the House Warden concerned, who will pass them on to the Hall Warden for consideration by a committee consisting of Wardens and students.

### **Students leaving residence during the academic year**

- (a) Students who wish to withdraw from residence before the end of the academic year, must give notice of such intention, in writing, to the Student Bureau.
- (b) Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves the residence during the course of the year, is liable for fees according to the scale set out in the section on "Fees and Charges".
- (c) Students who have withdrawn from residence during the course of the year must vacate their rooms within 24 hours of having submitted such notification to the University.

### **Electrical appliances**

No fridges, hot plates, snackwich makers, immersion heaters or other cooking appliances are permitted in residence rooms. Kettles are allowed.

### **Residence booking**

Students must apply for residence accommodation for subsequent years by a date made known in a circular published by the Registrar each year. Please note that in view of the demand for residence accommodation, the application must be submitted to the Student Bureau on or before the due date.

### **Meal management system**

A computerised meal management system operates in all dining halls. Students who have been awarded bursaries, NSFAS loans or full financial aid packages may not withdraw any credit balance from their account. Students will be refunded twice yearly (at the end of each semester) with the credit owing to them (up to the maximum refundable amount, as stipulated in the Fees & Charges booklet) as a result of unbooking meals. Meal credits will not be paid out at other times. Meal refunds are limited to a maximum amount per semester. See Fees & Charges for details.



## **RHODES UNIVERSITY STUDENT DISCIPLINARY CODE**

### **Policy Particulars**

#### **DATE OF APPROVAL BY RELEVANT COMMITTEE STRUCTURES**

**DATE OF APPROVAL BY SENATE EXECUTIVE: 21 AUGUST 2012,**  
**DATE OF APPROVAL BY DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE: 22 AUGUST 2012**  
**DATE OF APPROVAL BY SENATE : 7 September 2012**  
**DATE OF APPROVAL BY COUNCIL: 20 September 2012**

**Revised: Senate Executive: 4 June 2013 / Senate 21 June 2013**  
**Revised: Council Chairperson's Circular: 29 July 2013**  
**Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 26 September 2013**  
**Approval by Senate: 25 October 2013 / Approval by Council: 5 December 2013**  
**Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 1 April 2014**  
**Approval by Senate: 30 May 2014 / Approval by Council: 19 June 2014**  
**Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 25 September 2014**  
**Approval by Senate 5 September 2014/Approval by Council 18 September 2014 Revised:**  
**Disciplinary Committee: 22 April 2015**  
**Approval by Senate: 5 June 2015 / Approval by Council: 18 June 2015**  
**Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 22 September 2017**  
**Approval by Senex: 10 October 2017/Approval by Senate: 20 October 2017 Approval by Council:**  
**30 November 2017**  
**Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 27 March 2018**  
**Approval by Senate: 1 June 2018**  
**Approval by Council: 14 June 2018**  
**Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 31 March 2020**  
**Approval by Senate: 3 July 2020**  
**Approval by Council: 16 July 2020**  
**Approval by Disciplinary Committee: 18 May 2023**  
**Approval by Senex: 8 August 2023**  
**Approval by Senate: 18 August 2023**  
**Approval by Council: 14 September 2023**  
**COMMENCEMENT DATE: 1 January 2015 (following revision)**

#### **REVISION HISTORY:**

**REVIEW DATE: 2026**

**POLICY LEVEL: COUNCIL**

**RESPONSIBILITY: REGISTRAR'S DIVISION**

**IMPLEMENTATION & MONITORING: OFFICE OF THE VICE-CHANCELLOR;**  
**COUNCIL and REGISTRARS DIVISION**

**REPORTING STRUCTURE: DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE > SENATE > COUNCIL**

## 1. APPLICATION OF RULES

**1.1** In common with other communities of like size and complexity, the University has rules which contribute to the smooth and harmonious running of the institution.

**1.2** If the University identifies a risk and it is in the best interest of the University community to do so, the University may act in terms of these interests in order to avert the risk.

**1.3** The rules and procedures in this Student Disciplinary Code apply to every student of the University regardless of whether the alleged conduct in question takes place on or off campus. Where the alleged conduct has taken place off campus, there must be a sufficient link between the alleged conduct in question and the University and/or it must be reasonably likely to bring the University into disrepute. All policies and procedures governing students must be consistent with this Code. In the case of any inconsistency with this Code, the Code prevails. The headings in this Code are for ease of reference only and do not have any relevance to the **interpretation** of the clauses contained herein.

**1.3.1** All disciplinary proceedings are confidential except as provided by this code.

**1.4** A student shall not contravene:

- (a) Any of the rules set out in Rule 4 of this Code.
  - (b) Any rule of the Halls of residence of the University.
  - (c) Any rule of the Oppidan Union; or
  - (d) Any rule of the SRC or the Sports Council.
  - (e) Any rule set out in the Examinations Policy.
- A contravention of any of these rules shall be deemed a disciplinary offence.

**1.5** The Higher Disciplinary Authority has jurisdiction over all offences which contravene the rules as set out in this Code.

**1.6** The Lower Disciplinary Authorities have jurisdiction over all offences which contravene the rules as set out in this Code unless there is a possibility of a sanction greater than 75 hours compulsory service, or the equivalent fine, in which event the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

**1.7** An Oppidan Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all Oppidan students.

**1.8** A Hall/House Warden shall have jurisdiction over:

- (a) All students resident in the Hall/House concerned; and
- (b) All other students who commit any disciplinary offence referred to in Rule 4 in any of the constituent houses of the Hall, the dining halls or the precincts which form part of the Hall. If there is concurrent jurisdiction, the Hall Warden of the Hall where the alleged offence occurred shall exercise jurisdiction unless there is agreement to the contrary.

**1.9** A Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all students in another Hall where:

- (a) the student's Hall Warden cannot hear a matter because s/he has an interest in the matter and
- (b) in order to ensure a separation of power
- (c) the student's Hall Warden appoints another Hall Warden to hear the case. This will only apply where the Hall Warden does not exercise his/her discretion to convene a Hall Disciplinary Panel.

**1.10** A House Warden shall have jurisdiction over all students in another House (from within the Hall or another Hall) where:

- (a) the student's Hall Warden cannot hear a matter because s/he has an interest in the matter and
- (b) in order to ensure a separation of powers
- (c) the student's Hall Warden appoints another House Warden to hear the case. This will only apply where the Hall Warden does not exercise his/her discretion to convene a Hall Disciplinary Panel.

**1.11** The Library, Information & Technology Services Division, the Registrar's Division and Sports Council have jurisdiction over all offences contained in the Library Use and Conduct Code, the IT Facilities Use and Conduct Code, Examination rules and the Sports Council rules respectively unless there is a possibility of a sanction greater than 75 hours compulsory service, or an equivalent fine, in which event the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

**1.12** The Campus Protection Unit has jurisdiction over all offences contained in Rule 4.7 as set out in

this Code unless there is a possibility of a sanction greater than 75 hours compulsory service, or an equivalent fine, in which event the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

**1.13** The SRC has jurisdiction over all offences contained in its rules provided that as soon as it determines to take action, it shall immediately report the matter to the Prosecutor/s who may decide to refer the matter to any other disciplinary authority, in which case s/he shall immediately inform the SRC of the decision. The SRC Disciplinary Committee shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

**1.14** The burden of proof in all disciplinary matters is on a balance of probabilities.

**1.15** The University is an English medium University, and all disciplinary proceedings will accordingly be conducted in English, unless alternative arrangements are made at the request of the accused student, which request must be conveyed to the Prosecutor at least 3 (three) days before the hearing.

**1.16** A student who is convicted of any crime in a court of law shall be rebuttably presumed to have committed the crime(s) of which they have been found guilty.

## 2. DEFINITIONS

In this Disciplinary Code, unless the context otherwise clearly indicates:

**Affirmation** means a solemn declaration in lieu of an oath.

**Advisor** means a person representing an accused student at a disciplinary hearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. An advisor must be a registered student of the University. No accused student may be represented at a Lower Disciplinary Hearing by a person who is qualified to practise as an attorney or advocate whether or not that person is admitted to practise as such or practises as such in the ordinary course. Should the Advisor be a law student, an Assistant Prosecutor may be appointed to represent the University as a presenter at the Lower Disciplinary Hearing.

**Appeal** means an appeal as contemplated in Section 8.

**Assistant Prosecutor** means a suitably qualified person appointed by the Vice-Chancellor – for such a period as the Vice Chancellor may periodically determine – to assist the Prosecutor/s in investigating and assessing contraventions of this Code and represent the University before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Appeal Committee. The Assistant Prosecutor is usually appointed from within the ranks of law students.

**Competent verdict** means any verdict that is provided for in Chapter 26 of the Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977 (as amended).

**Compulsory service** means any appropriate service as determined by the Registrar or a Hall/House Warden as the case may be. **Common cause** means any fact or issue that is not in dispute.

**Days** means days within official university terms as set out in the Rhodes University Calendar to the exclusion of Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays unless the Vice-Chancellor, in consultation with the Prosecutor/s, directs that a hearing be commenced or continued outside official University dates, or the accused student agrees thereto

**Digs** means accommodation in Grahamstown which is not a residence, occupied by a student, with or without his/her parents or guardians.

**Disciplinary authority** means any Board, Committee or person authorised to hold a disciplinary hearing, or any person required to carry out an investigation to determine whether or not a student should appear at a disciplinary hearing to answer a charge of committing a disciplinary offence.

**Disciplinary Board** means a panel of three suitably qualified people appointed in the discretion of the Vice-Chancellor, (or his/her delegate), one of whom shall be designated Chairperson, to hear matters deemed by the Vice-Chancellor (or his/her delegate) to be of a serious nature, including but not limited to sexual offences.

**Disciplinary Appeal Committee** means a panel of three people appointed by the Vice-Chancellor (or his/her delegate), one of whom shall be the designated chairperson, to hear matters on appeal from a Proctor or from a lower disciplinary authority.

**Disciplinary Committee** means the sub-committee

of Senate charged with overseeing disciplinary matters.

**Fine** means a sum of money payable by a student as a sanction by a student in exceptional circumstances.

**Hall Disciplinary Panel** means a panel convened in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Hall Warden. The Panel shall consist of at least one Hall Warden, one Senior / Head Student, one House Warden, one Fellow, and one Hall SRC representative. The panel is to be chaired by either a Hall Warden, a Warden or a Hall Fellow.

**Hate Speech** means any utterance – verbal, written, published, advocated or communicated in person – directed towards any person that could reasonably be construed to be demonstrate a clear intention to:

- (a) Be hurtful
- (b) Be harmful or incite harm
- (c) Promote or propagate hatred

The grounds of discrimination are as follows: race, gender, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language and birth; or any other discrimination-based grounds which

- (i) Causes or perpetuates systematic disadvantage
- (ii) Undermines human dignity
- (iii) Adversely affects equal enjoyment of a person's rights and freedoms in a serious manner.

**Visiting** means no visitors are permitted in a university residence between midnight and 7.30 daily, without the express permission of the warden.

**Jurisdiction period** means any period during which a student can be held accountable for his/her conduct and includes but is not limited to the following:

- (a) Attendance at a Summer School or an Orientation Week Programme or any similar period of attendance at the University, however described.
- (b) The time when a registered student is in Grahamstown for a supplementary examination or for any other reason linked to the University and its functions.
- (c) The time when any previously registered student has returned to or remained in Grahamstown, and who thereafter registers again

and, specifically, a person in this category who is present in Grahamstown during the Orientation Week.

(d) The time when any registered student, whilst out of Grahamstown, is representing the University at any academic, club, cultural, sporting, society or other official University function or activity.

(e) Any other time by agreement with the accused student.

(f) The University retains jurisdiction to prosecute a person for a disciplinary offence, to finality, and in accordance with the Code if that person is still a 'student' in terms of the Code when disciplinary proceedings are instituted (this will include when notice of a hearing has been served on the student) The aforementioned jurisdiction period will include the exercise of the right of appeal in terms of the Code.

**No-Contact Order** means an absolute prohibition from making contact directly or indirectly, with the named person(s) in any way including but not limited to contact in person, by mail, by telephone, by electronic media or by or through any other medium or person, unless the Vice-Chancellor, Proctor presiding over a disciplinary hearing, or Disciplinary Board determines otherwise. **Oppidan** means a student living in 'digs'.

**Person with legal qualifications** means a person who is a legal practitioner or a person who has an LLB degree or a postgraduate qualification in law.

**Presenter** means a person in the Lower Disciplinary Authority who investigates and presents a case on behalf of the Hall/House. The status of the presenter may vary from case to case and will normally follow line authority. For example, a Sub-Warden would present to a Warden and a Warden would present to a Hall Warden. In circumstances where there would be a conflict of interest for a Hall Warden to adjudicate a matter, a Hall Warden may then present the case to another Hall Warden.

**Proctor** means a suitably qualified person appointed by the Vice-Chancellor, for such a period as the Vice-Chancellor may from time to time determine, to preside at a disciplinary hearing.

**Prosecutor** means a suitably qualified person, appointed by the Vice-Chancellor for such a period as the Vice-Chancellor may from time to time determine, to investigate and assess contraventions

of this Code and represent the University before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Appeal Board and to make written representations to a Disciplinary Appeal Committee.

**Public nuisance** means any act, omission or condition on any premises, including any building, structure or growth thereon, which is offensive or dangerous, or which materially interferes with the ordinary comfort, convenience, peace or quiet of other people or which adversely affects the safety of the public.

**Representative** means a person representing a student at a disciplinary hearing before a Proctor, or a Disciplinary Board. A representative may be a SRC Defence Counsellor, a member of the University staff, a registered student of the University, an attorney or advocate.

**Residence** means a building belonging to or leased by the University housing students either on or off the campus, but excluding digs.

**Search and seizure** A Hall/House warden (excluding the Oppidan Warden) who is lawfully in charge of a University premises, or a Prosecutor/s, or the Campus Protection Unit, or the Vice-Chancellor or his/her nominee, who reasonably suspects the breach of any law or any breach of this Code may enter such University premises for the purpose of searching the premises and any student thereon. Such search and seizure must be carried out in terms of the **Protocol for search and seizure on Rhodes University campus**.

**Settled by Mediation** means that the parties to the mediation have reached an agreement that is reduced to writing and signed by both parties.

**Student** means the following persons:

- (a) Any person who is registered as a student at the University.
- (b) Any person who has been accepted by the University with a view to his/her becoming a registered student.
- (c) Any person who has left the University where the question of the propriety of a degree improperly obtained, or of conduct during an examination, is in issue.
- (d) Any person contemplated in (a) to (c) above when disciplinary proceedings are instituted (this will include when notice of a hearing has been served on that person) until disciplinary

proceedings (including any appeal proceedings) are finalised. **Suspension** in the context of a sanction means a temporary or permanent postponement of the implementation of the sanction subject to a condition. Suspension in the context of the Vice-Chancellor's powers means in terms of Rule 5.1 (a) that a student may be ordered not to attend classes, and/or participate in any other University activities, and/or remain in residence (if applicable), and / or set foot on campus, pending a final decision in a disciplinary matter or criminal prosecution.

### 3. MEDIATION

**3.1** Any student who has been the victim of any form of harassment (sexual, racial, gender-based, religious etc.), defamation, or other offensive verbal behaviour, may elect to have the complaint settled by mediation rather than at a disciplinary hearing. At the discretion of the Prosecutor/s any other suitable matter may be referred, in writing, to mediation.

**3.2** Mediation shall not be an option in matters which are (in the discretion of the Vice-Chancellor/or his/her delegate) of a serious nature.

**3.3** Any student complaining of the type of behaviour set out in 3.1 above (hereafter called the complainant) may approach the Director: Student Services and Development. The Director: Student Services and Development or his/her designate, may, if the complainant so requests, assist the student in making contact with an appropriate counsellor to assist such student.

**3.4** If no counselling is undertaken or if, after counselling, the complainant desires mediation, then the Director: Student Services and Development shall contact the person/s who allegedly harassed, defamed or behaved offensively (hereafter called the respondent/s) and enquire of him/her/whether they wish to settle the issue by mediation.

**3.5** Where mediation is desired and agreed to by all parties, a suitably trained and qualified person will be appointed to mediate the dispute.

**3.6** As mediation is a voluntary process, if at any time either the complainant/s or the respondent/s wish to withdraw from the mediation process, the

process shall cease.

**3.7** Where the parties do not agree to mediation, or the mediation is unsuccessful, the complainant/s may request to proceed by means of a disciplinary hearing in which case s/he/they must refer the matter to a Prosecutor/s.

**3.8** Where the dispute is settled by mediation, the complainant/s will waive his/her/their right to request to proceed with disciplinary action.

**3.9** The mediation process shall be privileged, confidential, and no information disclosed during such process shall be disclosed or be admissible at any subsequent disciplinary hearing.

#### **4. DISCIPLINARY OFFENCES**

**4.1.** A disciplinary offence is behaviour which, without justification

(a) Unlawfully infringes another person's human rights as contained in the Bill of Rights, Chapter 2 of the Constitution, 1996.

(b) Is an offence in terms of South African Law (common law or statutory law), including any regulations, instructions or protocols promulgated in terms thereof, and such act is prejudicial, or potentially prejudicial, to any member of the University Community.

(c) Materially interferes with the safety, security or well-being of any member of the University community.

(d) Materially interferes with the governance and proper administration of the University.

(e) Materially interferes with the conditions necessary for teaching, learning, research or community service.

(f) Materially interferes with the maintenance of order and discipline at the University.

Without restricting the generality of Rule 4.1 the following are examples of disciplinary offences if committed during the jurisdictional period:

**4.2** A student must comply with any lawful notice, instruction, request, order, direction or sanction issued in terms of this Code. A written mediated agreement has the same status as a lawful notice. Breach of a written mediated agreement is a disciplinary offence. The breach of a no-contact order is a disciplinary offence.

**4.3** A student may not commit any common law

crime. As far as common law crimes are concerned, the provisions of Section 2 of the Criminal Law Amendment Act 1 of 1988 shall apply.

**4.4** A student is bound by the Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002, and its regulations. The offences sections shall be applicable as disciplinary offences.

**4.5** A student may not contravene the offence sections of the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act 32 of 2007.

**4.6** A student may not commit *furtum usus* (unlawful use or removal of the property of another person without their permission but without any intention to steal e.g. borrowing of another person's clothing without permission) of another's property.

#### **4.7**

(a) A student possessing a motor vehicle or motor cycle in Grahamstown must register it with the Student Bureau when registering as a student each year, and supply the make, registration number, and the student's address. In the event of a student acquiring possession of a vehicle in Grahamstown after registration, s/he must register it with the Student Bureau within 72 hours of acquiring it.

(b) A student may not park a vehicle in any area in the precincts of the University reserved for other purposes.

(c) A student is bound by the provisions of the National Road Traffic Act 93 of 1996, and its regulations, as amended, with the necessary changes, to all roads on the campus of the University.

(d) A student charged with certain offences under Rule 4.7 may elect to admit their guilt in accordance with an admission of guilt penalties as laid down from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee.

#### **4.8**

(a) A student may not contravene the offences sections of the Liquor Act 27 of 1989.

(b) A student may not contravene the offences sections of the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act 140 of 1992, as read with the Protocol for Students on the Use of Illicit Drugs.

(c) A student may not consume alcohol on any part of the University property without the written permission of the Vice- Chancellor, or such other

person to whom the Vice-Chancellor has in writing delegated the authority to control the possession of or use of alcohol.

(d) A student may not be under the influence of alcohol or drugs where this interferes with the rights of other persons or their property.

(e) A student may not be in possession of any glass bottles and glasses containing liquor and soft drinks whilst on any part of the campus that has been designated by the Registrar to be a glass free area.

#### **4.9**

(a) A student may not contravene section 2 of the Makana Local Municipality Prevention of Public Nuisances By-Law as published in the Provincial Gazette no.1991 dated 10 October 2008.

(b) A student may not at any time make an unreasonably loud noise. Sound systems shall be turned off at 22h00 on Mondays, Tuesdays, Wednesdays, Thursdays and Sundays and at 24h00 on Fridays and Saturdays. This rule applies equally to students in residence and in 'digs'.

(c) A student may not use abusive or threatening language that is audible beyond the precincts of a digs or a residence.

(d) A student may not remove motor vehicle registration number plates, street signs, street numbers, hotel names, doctor's name plates or any other similar property without the authority of the lawful owner or occupant.

#### **4.10**

(a) A student may not contravene the offence sections of the Firearms Control Act 60 of 2000, the Dangerous Weapons Act 71 of 1968 and the Explosives Act 26 of 1956.

(b) A student may not bring a firearm (including an air-rifle and air-gun) or use a firearm on any part of the University property without the permission of the Vice-Chancellor.

#### **4.11**

A student may not be violent or disorderly.

(a) A student may not contravene the Acceptable Use Policy or IT Facilities Use and Conduct Code as published by the Information & Technology Services Division as read with the relevant legislation.

(b) A student may not contravene the Policy for Advertising on Campus by Students and Student

Organisations.

#### **4.12**

(a) A student shall notify the Student Bureau of their contact details i.e. home address, address in Grahamstown, e-mail address and cell phone number. In the event of a student moving residences or digs, s/he must notify the Student Bureau of his/her new address within seven days.

(b) A student must identify him/herself by producing a student card or any other satisfactory form of identification upon request by any member of the University staff. Such power shall only be exercised where the staff member seeking the information has reasonable cause to believe that the student has committed a disciplinary offence, or that the student in question is in a position to give information about the commission of a disciplinary offence. Failure by a student in these circumstances to answer promptly and truthfully and provide satisfactory identification will be regarded as a serious breach of discipline.

(c) A student may not damage or deface any property of the University or any property whatsoever within the precincts of the University.

(d) A student may not intentionally interfere with any Rhodes University emergency equipment (emergency assistance buttons, fire-extinguishers, cameras and telephones, etc.).

(e) A student may not put up a poster on any surface not specifically designated or reserved for putting up of posters.

(f) A student may not occupy or use any portion of the University premises otherwise than in accordance with the Rules and Regulations of the University or in any manner contrary to the purposes for which such premises have been intended to be used by the University or for which they are, in fact, normally used.

#### **4.13**

(a) A student shall obey all lawful instructions given by any member of the University staff concerning his/her conduct, including an order to proceed immediately to, and remain at, his/her place of residence or the Campus Protection Unit office.

(b) A student shall obey a lawful instruction by the Prosecutor/s to furnish information to him/her or to appear before any disciplinary

authority provided:

(i) that any student appearing before the Prosecutor shall be cautioned that she/he need not answer any question the answer to which is likely to expose him/her to a disciplinary hearing.

(ii) that an accused student appearing before the Prosecutor shall not be compelled to furnish him/her with a written statement. An accused student may, however, furnish the Prosecutor with a written statement if s/he freely chooses to do so.

#### **4.14**

(a) A student may not take into an examination/test venue, or have in their possession whilst in such a venue, any cell phone, book, memoranda, notes, papers or other materials whatsoever, except answer books or such other books, or other materials as shall have been supplied by the Examinations Officer or authorised by the examiners.

(b) A student may neither aid/attempt to aid another candidate during an examination/test, nor obtain/attempt to obtain aid from another candidate. A student may not communicate or attempt to communicate in any way with any other candidate during an examination/test.

(c) Absence without authority: The incident of a student being absent without authority will be dealt with as an academic matter.

(d) Instances of plagiarism will be dealt with in terms of the University Plagiarism Policy. All students are required to familiarise themselves with and comply with this policy.

(e) Every member of the academic staff shall have the right to exclude from class any student guilty of misconduct or insubordination in such class. If the exclusion is for more than one lecture or other class meeting it shall be reported in writing to the Head of the Department concerned. The HOD may, after an enquiry where the student/s concerned have been given the right to explain his/her/their alleged misconduct, confirm or vary the order of exclusion. If the order of exclusion is for more than two weeks, it must be reported, in writing, by the Head of the Department to the Dean of that Faculty. After considering the Head of Department's report, the Dean of the Faculty may confirm or vary the order, or refer the matter to the Prosecutor/s.

#### **4.16**

(a) While a student may receive visitors in a University student residence (this includes balconies, verandas and common rooms) no visitors are permitted in a University student residence between 24h00 (midnight) and 07h30 daily, without the express permission of the warden. All visitors to any residence must be escorted at all times and hosts are responsible for their guests' conduct during this time.

(b) In application of the above rules, there are residence rules applicable to each hall of residence. Students are required to familiarize themselves with their own residence rules and to ensure that the friends/partners who visit them in the residence are aware of the relevant Hall or House rules.

#### **4.17**

(a) A student may not initiate, raid, or coerce another student, with or without the consent of the participants.

(b) A student may not be present in a residence of which he/she is not a member, without being in compliance of the rules of the University.

(c) A student may not engage in conduct which interferes or is likely to interfere with teaching, studying, research, lectures, meetings, or other events at the University, any constituent part of the University, an associated research institute, the administration of the University, or of any other of the normal processes and activities of the University.

(d) A student may not interfere, even by omission, with the governance and proper administration of the University.

(e) A student may not engage in conduct which obstructs or interferes with an officer, member, employee, and any other student in the performance of his/her lawful duties.

#### **4.18**

(a) A student may not engage in any conduct which is offensive to and/or defamatory of any staff member, student, or member of the public.

(b) A student may not be insubordinate towards any member of the University staff.

(c) A student may not utter, distribute, display, show, screen or project disparaging, discriminatory, and derogatory material based on a person's race, cultural identity, gender or sexual orientation – this



includes hate speech.

(d) A student may not engage in conduct likely to bring the University, or any part of it, into contempt or disrepute

(e) A student may not engage in any form of harassment or discrimination.

#### **4.19**

(a) A student may not intimidate, interfere with, or harass potential University witnesses.

(b) A student may not deliberately mislead a Prosecutor or University official in an attempt to affect the outcome of disciplinary action during an investigation.

(c) A student may neither deliberately nor negligently respond untruthfully to any relevant and lawful question put to him/her in the course of a disciplinary hearing or by a Prosecutor during an investigation into an alleged disciplinary offence.

(d) A student may neither hinder nor obstruct the hearing of any disciplinary proceedings or fail to obey an instruction given by the person chairing or conducting the proceedings.

(e) A student may not fail to attend a disciplinary hearing. During a hearing, a student must remain in attendance until excused.

(f) If a student fails to attend a disciplinary hearing and the person chairing/conducting the proceedings is satisfied that service of the notice had been effected – in terms of rule 7.3 and that all reasonable attempts to contact the student have been made, then the disciplinary hearing shall proceed in his/her absence.

(g) A student may not intentionally:

i) Insult any person lawfully present at a disciplinary hearing during its sitting.

ii) Interrupt the proceedings or otherwise misbehave during a hearing.

A student who contravenes this rule is liable to exclusion from the hearing and to immediate punishment on condition that s/he is first given an opportunity to either explain or to apologise.

**4.20** A student may not conspire with or aid and abet anybody in committing an offence.

**4.21** A student may not contravene the Library Use and Conduct Code.

**4.22** A student may not contravene Rule 1.3.1 subject to the recognition of his/her rights in terms of South African law.

**4.23** Voluntary intoxication caused by any substance to the extent that a person lacks intention or capacity is not a defence to any offence in this Code.

## **5. DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES**

### **5.1 The Vice-Chancellor**

The Vice-Chancellor is the Chief Disciplinary Authority of the University and has the following powers:

(a) S/he may take interim action against any student as s/he in his/her discretion may consider desirable in the case of any apparent disciplinary offence by the student. In exercising this power, the Vice-Chancellor may suspend the student concerned from attendance at classes and/or from participation in any other activities of the University pending a final decision in the matter. In suspending the student, the Vice-Chancellor or his/her designate shall allow the student to make an oral representation against suspension.

(b) S/he may delegate all or any of his/her powers in connection with student discipline to a Deputy Vice-Chancellor or any other person.

(c) Any additional powers, functions and/or privileges as assigned to the Vice-Chancellor by council, as contemplated in section 7(6) of the Rhodes University Statute.

(d) Notwithstanding the terms of the appointment of the University Prosecutor/s and Proctor/s, the Vice-Chancellor shall be entitled, at any time, to relieve any of them of the powers entrusted to them herein, and may thereafter appoint another person/s in their stead, subject in all cases to the provisions of the Labour Relations Act 66 of 1995, as amended.

(e) The Vice-Chancellor shall, when exercising disciplinary powers, have jurisdiction over all students, shall be entitled to preside at any disciplinary hearings (alone or, in his/her discretion, with two suitably qualified assessors) and shall have the power to impose the same sanction as any disciplinary authority may impose.

(f) The Vice-Chancellor or the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor may determine to withhold examination results of any student, in respect of whom an investigation by a Prosecutor is pending, until any proceedings resulting from the

investigation have been completed or withdrawn.

(g) The Vice-Chancellor has the power to exercise clemency. This power shall only be invoked once all internal remedies have been exhausted. Clemency should only be granted in exceptional circumstances after a thorough investigation.

(h) The Vice-Chancellor (or person designated to perform this function by the Vice-Chancellor) may issue a no-contact order. Such an order may be on such terms and on such conditions and for such period of time as the Vice-Chancellor (or person designated by the Vice-Chancellor) may in his/her discretion consider desirable. A no-contact order may be issued whether or not a student has lodged a formal complaint against a student in respect of an alleged breach of this Code. Before making such an order the Vice-Chancellor (or the person designated by the Vice-Chancellor) shall allow oral representations in person from the student against whom the order is sought and the university prosecutor as to whether or not a no-contact order is to be issued. The maximum period of a no contact order is six months unless exceptional circumstances exist. Unless the Vice-Chancellor determines otherwise when issuing a no contact order, the order shall constitute an absolute prohibition from making contact, directly or indirectly, with the named person(s) in any way including but not limited to contact in person, by mail, by telephone, by electronic media or by or through any other medium or person. Any student against whom a no-contact order has been issued, may, before the expiration date of the order, approach the Vice-Chancellor (or the person designated by the Vice-Chancellor) with a request to rescind the order on the basis that exceptional circumstances exist that warrant rescission. A hearing, similar to that which preceded the issuing of the order will be held to allow both representations, in person, by both the student and the prosecution, before the decision as to rescission of the order is made.

## 5.2 The Acting Vice-Chancellor

When the Vice-Chancellor is absent from the University, the Acting Vice-Chancellor (or if no acting appointment has been made, the Deputy

Vice-Chancellor: Academic and Student Affairs) shall take over the disciplinary powers vested in the Vice-Chancellor.

## 5.3 The Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor

The Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor shall oversee student discipline at the University and may request updates on all matters involving student discipline at all levels and communicate such updates to the Vice-Chancellor.

## 5.4 The Registrar

The Registrar shall be responsible for the overall administration of the student disciplinary system and shall be responsible for, but not limited to, the following:

- (a) Maintaining a central hard copy repository of all documents relating to the Higher Disciplinary Authorities.
- (b) Making available case precedents to both the Prosecutor/s and the accused and his/her representative. Such precedents must remain in the Registrar's office given their confidential nature.
- (c) Endorsing academic transcripts where directed by a Proctor.
- (d) Exclusion of a student where directed by a Proctor.
- (e) Recording the outcomes of cases on the University Student Discipline Database (Protea).
- (f) Posting outcomes of each Higher Disciplinary case on the designated official University notice board outside the Student Bureau, unless otherwise advised by the Proctor or Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor.
- (g) Posting the June and November case summaries as produced by the Prosecutor/s on the designated official University notice board outside the Student Bureau.
- (h) Enforcing and monitoring only the sanctions of compulsory service ordered by the Higher Disciplinary Authorities and that of examination venue offences.
- (i) Withholding examination results where a student has not completed compulsory service in the stipulated time.
- (j) Refusing re-admission to residence at the beginning of a new academic year where a student

has not completed compulsory service in the stipulated time.

(k) Overseeing the progress made by each convicted student as regards their compulsory service and/or payment of compensation orders and/or fines ordered by the higher disciplinary authorities.

(l) Convening a Disciplinary Appeal Committee and a Disciplinary Board.

(m) Collating and distributing documents to be placed before a Disciplinary Appeal Committee and a Disciplinary Board.

(n) Providing administrative assistance if and when requested by the Prosecutor/s.

(o) Recording the acquisition of vehicles by students after registration in terms of Rule 4.7.

(p) Ensuring that the latest version of this Code appears in the Calendar and on all electronic platforms of the University.

## 5.5 Director: Student Services and Development

The Director: Student Services and Development has no disciplinary jurisdiction, but is responsible for the following:

(a) Posting the June and November case summaries (as produced by the Prosecutor/s) on designated official University notice boards.

(b) Providing a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Lower Disciplinary Authorities. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Affairs on designated official University notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

(c) Drafting an annual trends analysis of Lower Disciplinary cases in order to identify areas of concern and to ensure consistency of sanctions.

(d) Communicating any incident report that may involve discipline at the higher level, to the Prosecutor/s within 48 hours. These incident reports should **not** include statements as these will be gathered by the Prosecutor/s. Such incident reports should contain the following:

(i) A description of the incident, including the date, time and place.

(ii) The names, student numbers, and contact cell-phone numbers of the affected persons and potential witnesses.

(e) Liaising with Hall Wardens to ensure that the Hall Administrators are enforcing and monitoring all sanctions of compulsory service and fines ordered by a Lower Disciplinary Authority.

## 5.6 Campus Protection Unit

The Head: Campus Protection Unit shall be responsible for the following:

(a) Receiving incident reports and ensuring that they are hand-delivered to the Prosecutor/s **within 48 hours** (it is vitally important that this time frame is adhered to). These incident reports should **not** include statements as these will be gathered by the Prosecutor/s. Such incident reports should contain the following:

(i) A description of the incident, including the date, time and place;

(ii) The names, student numbers and contact cell-phone numbers of the affected persons and potential witnesses;

(b) Serving charge sheets where requested to do so by the Prosecutor/s. The charge sheets must be served **within 48 hours** and a return of service must be delivered to the Prosecutor/s immediately following the service.

## 6. HIGHER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

### 6.1 The Proctor

(a) A Proctor shall have jurisdiction over all students and in respect to all disciplinary offences set out in this Code.

(b) If, during a hearing before a Proctor, s/he becomes unable to continue to serve and it appears that s/he will be unable to resume participation within a reasonable time, the proceedings may be terminated and new proceedings commenced *de novo* before another Proctor.

(c) A Proctor may, at any time after the accused student has pleaded in terms of Rule 7.9 and before the proceedings are finalised (either by a finding of not-guilty or by the imposition of sanction in the case of a guilty finding), if there is reason to believe that there are grounds for a no-contact order, or if a no-contact order is requested by any of the parties involved, authorise that a hearing as contemplated

in Rule 5.1(h) take place.

### **6.2. Disciplinary Board**

(a) A Disciplinary Board means a panel of three people appointed by the Vice-Chancellor, one of whom shall be the designated Chairperson.

(b) A Disciplinary Board shall have jurisdiction over all students and over all offences of a serious nature, including but not limited to sexual offences as set out in this Code.

(c) If, during a hearing before a Disciplinary Board, any member of the Board becomes unable to continue to serve, and it appears that the Board member will be unable to resume participation within a reasonable time, the proceedings may continue with the remaining Board members, or be terminated and new proceedings commenced *de novo* before another Board. This decision will be made by the Chairperson of the Board.

(d) The decision to prosecute a matter as a sexual offence shall be determined by the Prosecutor/s.

### **6.3 The Prosecutor**

(a) The Vice-Chancellor, in consultation with the Prosecutor/s, may appoint Assistant Prosecutors to assist the Prosecutor/s. The Vice-Chancellor may, at his/her discretion, appoint any suitably qualified person to act as an Assistant Prosecutor.

(b) The Prosecutor/s and Assistant Prosecutors shall have the power to investigate any alleged disciplinary offence which is reported, that they are referred to, or of which they become aware. In conducting an investigation, the Prosecutors have the authority to request assistance from any University Official, if so required. If it appears that a student has committed a disciplinary offence they may, at their discretion, convene a hearing.

(c) The Prosecutor/s may, in assessing a case, put the allegation to the student prior to the student being charged with a disciplinary offence. The student must be warned and cautioned that s/he is under no obligation to make any statement whatsoever, but if s/he does, then it should be a voluntary statement in writing which may then be handed in as evidence.

(d) The Prosecutor/s shall have the power to terminate or suspend proceedings already

commenced before any of the lower disciplinary authorities referred to in this Code on condition that there are reasonable grounds for doing so and that the rights of the accused are not unduly compromised.

(e) The Prosecutor/s shall provide a written update in June and November of each year to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor and the Registrar of the progress made in each case they have dealt with. The Registrar will post these updates on the official University notice board outside the Student Bureau.

(f) The Assistant Prosecutors shall draft a case summary for each case with the names of the parties deleted for the Registrar to post on the designated official University notice board.

(g) The Prosecutor/s may direct that a case be heard by a Lower Disciplinary Authority.

(h) At the Prosecutor/s discretion a plea bargain discussion may occur prior to the commencement of a hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board.

## **7. PROCEDURE IN HEARINGS BEFORE A PROCTOR OR DISCIPLINARY BOARD**

**7.1** A student appearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board may be assisted by any member of the University staff, any registered student of the University, other than a student summoned to answer charges in the same proceedings, or an attorney or advocate, provided that such representation shall be at his/her own cost. A person assisting a student by virtue of this provision will be referred to as their representative.

**7.2** Where the Prosecutor/s is/are satisfied that there is a *prima facie* case against a student, and in the case of an offence that has occurred off campus that it is a matter that should be dealt with by this Code, s/he should draw up a notice setting out:

(i) The disciplinary offence/s allegedly committed, or any alternative disciplinary offence/s.

(ii) The date, time, and place of the offence/s.

(iii) The person/s against whom the offence/s was/were allegedly committed, if any, and any other relevant details sufficient to inform the accused student of the charge/s s/he will be responding to.

(iv) The date, time, and place of the hearing.

**7.3** The notice must be served on the student in person in the first instance by the Prosecutor/s, their nominee, or a member of the Campus Protection Unit. In the case of an Oppidan student, the notice must be served on the student in person in the first instance by the Prosecutor/s, their nominee, a member of the Campus Protection Unit, or an Oppidan Warden. The notice must be served on the accused at least five days before the date of the hearing. Should the student not be located in person in the first instance, the notice may be served by the Prosecutor/s or their nominee via email to the student's official Rhodes University email address. The student shall then be deemed to be served.

(a) In the event that a student is not in attendance in Grahamstown, the notice may be served by the Prosecutor/s or their nominee by email to the student's official Rhodes email address.

**7.4** An accused student will be entitled to receive a bundle of the documents, witness statements and/or affidavits, photographs and/or details of any electronic evidence the Prosecutor intends to use at least five days prior to the hearing. In the case of electronic evidence, arrangements will be made for the accused to access such evidence at least three days prior to the hearing. A bundle shall also be provided to the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. Witness statements relating to evidence in aggravation of sanction need not be provided.

**7.5** The person serving the notice must inform the Prosecutor/s in writing as to when, how, where, and to whom the notice was served.

**7.6** The Prosecutor/s shall have the right to direct that any student attends and gives evidence and remains in attendance until excused from a disciplinary hearing.

**7.7** The Proctor may, for any good reason, postpone a hearing.

**7.8** At a hearing, before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, the reading of the charge, the plea, the evidence of all witnesses, any oral arguments and the reasons for both the judgment and sanction shall be digitally recorded.

**7.9** The Prosecutor shall read the charge/s to the accused student only when all the parties are assembled before the Proctor or Disciplinary Board.

The accused student will be required to answer the

charge/s (i.e. plead to the charge/s). S/he may:

(a) Deny that s/he committed the offence (Not Guilty).

(b) Admit that s/he committed the offence (Guilty).

(c) Admit to a lesser offence (e.g. charged with assault with intent to commit grievous bodily harm but only admits common assault).

(d) Allege that s/he has already been found guilty or not guilty of the disciplinary offence (i.e. the same set of facts).

(e) Allege lack of mental capacity (should this be alleged the evidence to be led must include oral evidence of a psychiatric assessment to support this allegation).

**7.10** Where a student admits a charge (pleads guilty), the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall question the student to ensure that the student's admission of the charge (plea of guilty) is a genuine and complete admission on the question of both fact and law.

**7.11** Where the accused student is represented, his/her representative may hand in a written plea statement in lieu of the questioning mentioned above.

**7.12** If the Proctor or Disciplinary Board is satisfied that the student's answer to the charge is a genuine and complete admission of the charge (a plea of guilty) with no defence, the student may be found guilty of the charge or a competent verdict, as the case may be, without any evidence being heard.

**7.13** Where a student denies the charge (pleads not guilty), the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board may question the student to ascertain which of the allegations in the charge/s are in dispute. The student must, however, be informed that s/he is not obliged to answer any such questions. Where a student elects to answer questions and admits to any of the allegations in the charge/s, these charges will be regarded as proved.

**7.14** Where a student denies the charge (pleads not guilty), the Prosecutor shall lead *viva voce* (oral) evidence in support of the charge. The Prosecutor may submit written statements from witnesses. These written statements may be received into evidence if their content is common cause and if the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board allows this.

**7.15** Witnesses appearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board will be required to confirm that the evidence they are about to give is truthful.

**7.16** Each witness will be examined, cross-examined, or re-examined (as the case may be) by only one person at a time – though not necessarily the same person for different witnesses.

**7.17** An accused student shall have the right to remain silent or to give evidence on affirmation, provided that s/he is not compelled either way. Where the student is represented, his/her representative may lead the evidence on behalf of the defence. The student may then be cross-examined by the Prosecutor. After cross-examination, re-examination may follow.

**7.18** An accused student will have the right to call witnesses. Should the accused elect to give evidence, his/her evidence must be heard before that of his/her witnesses.

**7.19** A bundle of the documents, witness statements and/or affidavits, photographs and/or details of any electronic evidence which the defence intends to use at the hearing must be submitted to the Prosecutor/s at least three days prior to the hearing. A bundle shall also be provided to the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. Written statements may be received into evidence if their content is common cause and if the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board allows this.

**7.20** The Proctor or the Disciplinary Board may question any witness, including the accused student, at any time while they are giving evidence. The proceedings may be conducted in either the accusatorial or the inquisitorial method; alternatively, a combination of both may be used.

**7.21** The Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall decide on any question of law, procedure, or the admissibility of evidence. In deciding any question of procedure not provided for in this Code, or on the admissibility of evidence, s/he will not be bound by the formal rules of criminal procedure or evidence applicable in any court of law. Instead, s/he will follow the dictates of fairness, natural justice and relevance, even if this includes the application of the rules of procedure and evidence applicable in courts of law.

**7.22** The Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board may call any witness not already called, or

recall any witness who has already given evidence, if s/he believes that the evidence or further evidence of that witness is essential to the just decision of the case.

**7.23** After all the evidence has been presented, the Prosecutor and the accused student or his/her representative shall have the right to give a closing argument regarding guilt or innocence of the accused to the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. This argument may be delivered orally or in writing, or both.

**7.24** After the conclusion of the arguments, the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall there and then, or after time is taken to consider the verdict, give a judgment with reasons for the verdict, as to whether or not the accused is guilty of the charge/s, alternative charge/s, or a competent verdict. In a case before a Disciplinary Board a verdict shall be reached by way of a majority vote.

**7.25** Where a student is found guilty of a disciplinary offence the Prosecutor and the student or his/her representative may lead evidence in aggravation or mitigation of sanction. Thereafter the Prosecutor and the student or his/her representative may address the Proctor or Disciplinary Board on what the sanction should be.

**7.26** A Proctor or Disciplinary Board may, at any time after the accused student has pleaded in terms of Rule 7.9 and before the proceedings are finalised (either by a finding of not-guilty or by the imposition of sanction in the case of a guilty finding), if there is reason to believe that there are grounds for a no-contact order, or if a no-contact order is requested by any of the parties involved, refer the matter in terms of Rule 5.1 (h).

**7.27** The Proctor or Disciplinary Board will there and then, or after time is taken to consider the sanction, give a judgment setting out the reasons for sanction and the sanction imposed.

**7.28** A Proctor or Disciplinary Board shall have jurisdiction to impose any one or more of the following sanctions upon a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence:

- (a) Deprivation of a degree improperly obtained.
- (b) Permanent exclusion from the University.
- (c) Exclusion from the University, its premises, and from participation in all University activities (which shall include all student activities) for a

specified period.

(d) Exclusion from a specific University residence or all residences.

(e) Exclusion from attendance at certain classes and/or University examinations, either permanently or for a specified period.

(f) Exclusion from participation in University activities or from such post or office in the University as may be specified, either permanently or for a specified period.

(g) Imposition of a fine not exceeding 20 % of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(h) Payment of a sum of money required to compensate for any loss, damage, or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence.

(i) A period of compulsory service.

(j) Prohibition from driving or possessing a motor vehicle/motorcycle on campus. (Note: This sanction may only be imposed on a student who is found guilty of a disciplinary offence involving the use and/or driving of a motor vehicle/motorcycle).

(k) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to five years.

(l) Endorsing the academic record of the student to the effect that the student's conduct has been unsatisfactory.

(m) Any other appropriate sanction.

**7.29** Where a student has been acquitted due to lack of mental capacity, the student may not remain at the University or return to the University without undergoing a full psychiatric assessment, the findings of which must confirm that the student is of sound mind.

**7.30** In assessing the sanction to be imposed on a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence, the Proctor or Disciplinary Board hearing the matter, shall regard the fact that the student was under the influence of alcohol or drugs at the time the offence was committed as an aggravating factor.

**7.31** Where a student has been sanctioned in terms of this Code, the sanction shall come into effect immediately regardless of whether the student intends to take the matter on appeal, unless the Vice-Chancellor, on written application by the student, decides that there is good cause to suspend the implementation of the sanction pending the

outcome of an appeal. The written application by the student shall set out fully all relevant facts and submissions that he or she wishes the Vice-Chancellor to consider in arriving at a decision in this regard.

**7.32** If there is reason to believe that a condition upon which the whole or a portion of a suspended sanction rests has been breached, the student shall, on two days' notice, be required to attend an enquiry for the purpose of establishing whether or not an order should be made bringing the suspended sanction into operation.

**7.33** If a student who has been directed to appear before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board fails to appear at the place, date, and time specified in the notice, fails to remain in attendance or to attend any adjourned proceedings, the Prosecutor shall make all reasonable attempts to locate the student. If the Proctor or Disciplinary Board is satisfied that all reasonable attempts have been made to contact the accused the hearing shall proceed in his/her absence.

**7.34** If, during the course of a hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, it comes to the knowledge of a Prosecutor that a student appearing at such hearing may have committed any disciplinary offence/s other than, or in addition to, those with which s/he has been charged, the Prosecutor may charge the student concerned with such supplementary disciplinary offence/s and, provided that the provisions of this Code in relation to particulars and time to prepare are satisfied, the enquiry may then proceed. The evidence lead until that point will retain its full force and effect.

**7.35** At any disciplinary hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, no person/s other than the Proctor, members of the Disciplinary Board, Prosecutor/s, Assistant Prosecutors, the accused and his/her representative, parent/s, legal guardian/s, counsellor or any person requested by the complainant may attend. The status of a parent, legal guardian, counsellor, or person requested by the complainant, is strictly that of an observer who may support the student and not in any way engage in the process. The Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board retains the right to exclude any of these parties from a hearing on the grounds of inappropriate behaviour.

**7.36** If a student appearing at a hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board conducts him/herself in a manner which makes the continuance of the proceedings in his/her presence impossible or impractical, the Proctor or the Chair of the Disciplinary Board may, after warning the student of the consequences of such conduct, direct that s/he be removed. On such occasions, the proceedings will continue in his/her absence.

**7.37** Within seven days of the imposition of a sanction by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall record the charge/s, plea/s, material facts found proved, including aggravating and mitigating circumstances, if any, the reasons for the verdict, the verdict, the sanction imposed, and the reasons for the imposition of the sanction, and forward such record to the Registrar, the Prosecutor/s and the convicted student and his/her representative. This document constitutes the record of the proceedings.

**7.38** The record should be made available to the Prosecutor/s and any student summoned to appear before a Proctor, or his/her representative, so that it may be referred to as a precedent in future enquiries or be used by such student in the preparation of her/his defence.

**7.39** If either the Proctor or the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor is of the view that the sensitivity of a particular case renders publication of the details undesirable, s/he may withhold or restrict publication.

**7.40** If a student is not able to complete any compulsory service within the time specified by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, written application for an extension of time shall be made to the Registrar. The Registrar, after consultation with a Prosecutor, may authorise an extension provided that he/she is satisfied that valid grounds exist.

## **8. APPEAL FROM A PROCTOR OR DISCIPLINARY BOARD**

**8.1** A student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board shall, have the right to appeal such decision. Such an appeal will be a 'wide appeal', which may incorporate grounds of appeal and/or review. This Rule must be read in conjunction with Rule 8.7.

**8.2** The appeal will be decided by a Disciplinary Appeal Committee appointed by the Vice-Chancellor or his/her designate.

**8.3** A student (or his/her representative) wishing to exercise the right of appeal shall, within five days of being sanctioned, advise the Registrar in writing that s/he wishes to have the case appealed. The request for appeal shall be accompanied by a deposit of an amount to be determined on an annual basis and payable to the Registrar, which shall serve as part payment for costs related to the appeal, which shall immediately become due and payable. The deposit shall only be refundable to the student in the event that the conviction is quashed.

**8.4** At the request of the student (or his/her representative) the digital recording of the proceedings will be made available to a recognised transcription service. The full cost of the transcription of the entire digital recording shall be borne by the student. If the student wishes to rely on the recording in the appeal proceedings, s/he will be responsible for providing the members of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee and the Prosecutor/s with a transcription of the entire digital recording by an organisation or business that normally transcribes court records, at his/her own cost.

**8.5** Within 5 days of the record being transcribed the student (or his/her representative) may submit written submissions (in regard to the appeal) to the Disciplinary Appeal Committee (and a copy provided to the Prosecutor/s).

**8.6** Within 5 days of having received the written submissions of the student (or his/her representative), or within 5 days of the record being transcribed (should the student (or his/her representative) fail to submit written submissions) the Prosecutor/s may submit written submissions to the Disciplinary Appeal Committee (and a copy provided to the student or his/her representative).

**8.7** Should the Prosecutor/s be of the view that the sanction imposed by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board is so lenient as to be unjust, s/he shall have the right to have the sanction appealed before a Disciplinary Appeal Committee.

**8.8** The Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall decide the outcome of the appeal solely upon a consideration of the record and the written



submissions of both parties. **No further evidence and/or submissions unless specifically requested by the Disciplinary Appeal Committee, shall be permitted.**

**8.9** The Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall have the following powers:

- (a) To confirm, alter or reject the decision or find the student guilty on an alternative charge or competent verdict;
- (b) To confirm, reduce, increase, alter or set aside the sanction and replace it with an appropriate sanction; or
- (c) Generally to give such judgment or impose such sanction or make such order as the Disciplinary Appeal Committee deems fit.

**8.10** The decision of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall be determined by a majority vote.

**8.11** The Chairperson in consultation with the members of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall within seven days of having received written submissions by both parties (alternatively, should either party not make any written submissions, within 10 days of the record being transcribed) provide the student involved, the Prosecutor/s and the Registrar with a written report setting out the Disciplinary Appeal Committee's decision and the reasons for such decision.

## **9. LOWER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES**

Lower Disciplinary authorities include Assistant Wardens, Wardens, Hall Wardens, Oppidan Wardens, a Hall Disciplinary Panel, designated Library staff, designated Information Technology staff and designated Campus Protection Unit staff and designated Registrar's Division staff.

**9.1** A member of a Lower Disciplinary Authority shall be disqualified from exercising any of the functions or powers conferred upon him/her by this Code in a disciplinary hearing, if s/he witnessed all or any of the conduct alleged to constitute the disciplinary offence, or is the complainant, or has a personal interest in the matter except in the circumstances outlined in 9.5 below.

**9.2** There must be a separation of powers. The person chairing the hearing cannot be the person investigating and presenting the case in order to

comply with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, and the rules of natural justice and fairness.

**9.3** Hall/House Wardens shall not have jurisdiction over shoplifting.

**9.4** No legal representation or person with legal qualifications will be permitted to represent a student appearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. A student appearing before such authority may, however, be accompanied by a Sub-Warden, or a Hall or House Senior/Head Student. Such person shall be referred to as the accused student's advisor. Should the student's advisor (as per the definition) be a law student, an Assistant Prosecutor may be appointed to represent the University at the Lower Disciplinary Hearing.

**9.5** Any student in respect of whom a Hall/House Warden has jurisdiction shall have his/her hearing before the Hall/House Warden alone or in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Hall Warden, before a Hall Disciplinary Panel. A Hall Disciplinary Panel shall consist of at least one Hall Warden, one Senior / Head Student, one House Warden, one Fellow, and one Hall SRC representative. The panel is to be chaired by either a Hall Warden, a Warden or a Hall Fellow.

**9.6** Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may, rather than appearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority, be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee. It should be noted that there are six admissions of guilt sanction documents relating to offences falling within the jurisdiction of Oppidan Hall Wardens, Hall/House Wardens, the Library, Information & Technology Services Division, designated Registrar's Division staff and the Campus Protection Unit. In the case of an admission of guilt, separation of powers is not necessary. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a

particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Oppidan Warden, Hall/House Warden, Director: Library Services or Director: Information & Technology Services Division, the Registrar's Division or in the case of traffic offences the Head: Campus Protection Unit, in writing within three days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the student is deemed to have admitted guilt and the relevant authority may, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

**9.7** A Hall/House Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall have jurisdiction over the following **students**:

(a) All students resident in the Hall/House concerned;

(b) All students who commit a disciplinary offence in any of the constituent houses of the Hall/House, the dining halls or the precincts which form part of the Hall/House. If there is concurrent jurisdiction, the Hall Warden of the Hall where the alleged offence occurred shall exercise jurisdiction unless there is agreement to the contrary;

(c) In order to ensure a separation of powers as set out in Rule 9.2 above, a Hall Warden may hear a case emanating from any other Hall. This will only apply where the Hall Warden does not exercise his/her discretion to convene a Hall Disciplinary Panel.

**9.8** The Oppidan Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all students who are not in residence. Where the alleged conduct has taken place off campus, there must both be a sufficient link between the alleged conduct in question and Rhodes University, and

/ or it must be reasonably likely to bring Rhodes University into disrepute. The Oppidan Hall Warden shall not have jurisdiction over shoplifting, domestic violence and contraventions off campus of the National Road Traffic Act 93 of 1996, and its regulations, as amended.

**9.9** A Hall/House Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall have jurisdiction over the following **offences**:

(a) All offences set out in Rule 4 unless there is a possibility that a sanction greater than that of the

jurisdiction of a Hall/House Warden may be justified, in which case, the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

(b) A contravention of any Hall or House Rule.

**9.10** A Hall/House Warden shall have the power to search and seize as set out in the definition section. Such search and seizure must be carried out in terms of the **Protocol for search and seizure on Rhodes University campus**, as read with the **Protocol for Students on the Use of Illicit Drugs**.

**9.11** The Oppidan Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all offences set out in Rule 4 unless there is a possibility that a sanction greater than that of the jurisdiction of a Hall Warden may be justified, in which case, the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter;

**9.12** The Hall Wardens and Oppidan Warden shall provide a written update at the end of each term of the cases in their Hall to the Director: Student Services and Development of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Hall. The Director: Student Services and Development shall collate all such reports and provide a written update in June and November of each year of Lower Disciplinary cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Lower Authorities.

## **10. PROCEDURE IN HEARINGS BEFORE LOWER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES**

**10.1** Where a Warden is satisfied that a student has committed a disciplinary offence and the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel has jurisdiction, s/he should:

(a) Draw up a notice setting out the disciplinary offence/s allegedly committed, the date, time and place of the offence/s, the person against whom the offence/s was/were allegedly committed (if any), the property in respect of which the offence/s were committed (if any), and any other relevant details sufficient to inform the accused student of the charge/s she/he has to meet. The notice must also set out the date, time, and place of the hearing.

(b) The notice must be served on the student in person.

(c) The notice must be served on the accused at least three days before the date of the hearing.

(d) The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may postpone the hearing if a valid reason is given.

(e) When all the parties are assembled the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Chair of the Hall Disciplinary Panel shall read the charge/s to the accused student. The accused student will be required to answer the charge/s (i.e. plead to the charge/s). S/he may:

(i) Deny that s/he committed the offence – plead “not guilty”. Should the student plead “not guilty” it is at this point that a separation of power must be implemented.

(ii) Admit that s/he committed the offence – plead “guilty”.

(f) Where a student pleads guilty, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Chair of the Hall Disciplinary Panel shall question the student to ensure that the student’s plea includes all the relevant facts of the offence.

(g) If the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel is satisfied that the student’s answer to the charge is a genuine and complete admission of the charge with no defence – pleads guilty – the student may be found guilty of the charge without any evidence being heard.

(h) Where a student denies the charge or pleads not guilty the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Chair of the Hall Disciplinary Panel may question the student to ascertain which of the allegations in the charge/s are in dispute. The student must, however, be informed that s/he is not obliged to answer any of the questions posed to him/her. Where a student elects to answer questions and admits any of the allegations in the charge/s, they will be regarded as proved.

(i) Where a student denies the charge – pleads not guilty – the Presenter shall lead oral evidence in support of the charge.

(j) Witnesses appearing before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel will be required to affirm that the evidence they will give will be truthful.

(k) An accused student or his/her representative will have the right to cross-examine any witnesses called by the Presenter. Thereafter such witnesses

may be re-examined by the Presenter. Each witness will be examined, cross-examined, or re-examined (as the case may be) by only one person at a time – though not necessarily the same person for different witnesses.

(l) An accused student shall have the right to remain silent or to give evidence on affirmation, provided that the student shall not be compelled to give evidence. Where the student is assisted / represented his/her advisor may lead the evidence on behalf of the accused. She/he may then be cross-examined by the Presenter. After cross-examination, re-examination may follow.

(m) An accused student will have the right to call witnesses. Should the accused elect to give evidence his/her evidence must be heard before that of his/her witnesses.

(n) The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may ask questions of any witness, including the accused student, at any time whilst they are giving evidence.

(o) After all the evidence has been led or presented, the Presenter and the accused student or his/her advisor shall have the right to make a final statement should they so wish.

(p) Thereafter the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall deliver a decision as to whether the accused student is found either guilty or not guilty of the charge/s.

(q) Where a student is found guilty of a disciplinary offence/s, both the Presenter and the student or his/her advisor may present argument in aggravation or mitigation of sanction.

(r) Thereafter the Presenter and the student or his/her advisor may address the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel on what the sanction should be.

(s) The Hall/House Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel will give a decision setting out the reasons for sanction and the sanction imposed.

(t) A Hall Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may impose the following sanctions:

(i) Exclusion from the Hall.

(ii) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(iii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iv) Exclusion from participation in any Hall or

House activity for a maximum of 1 (one) term.

(v) Exclusion from any post or office in the Hall, except that of Sub-Warden.

(vi) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to 5 (five) years.

(vii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence; and

(viii) Suspension of visiting rights for a period of time.

(u) An Oppidan Warden may impose the following sanctions:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) Exclusion from any post or office in the Hall, except that of Sub-Warden.

(iv) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to 5 (five) years; and

(v) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

**10.2** In assessing the sanction to be imposed on a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel hearing the matter shall regard the fact that the student was under the influence of alcohol/liquor/drugs at the time the offence was committed as an aggravating factor. As far as common law crimes are concerned, the provisions of Section 2 of the Criminal Law Amendment Act 1 of 1988 shall apply.

**10.3** A House Warden or Assistant Warden may impose the following sanctions:

(a) A fine not exceeding 5% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(b) Compulsory service up to 50 (fifty) hours.

(c) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to 1 (one) year subject to a specified condition; and

(d) Suspension of visiting rights for a period of time.

**10.4** The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel must inform the student that they have the right to take the matter on appeal

as contemplated in Rule 8 (with the necessary changes as required by the context).

**10.5** If a student who has been directed to appear before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel fails to appear at the place and on the date and at the time specified in the notice, or fails to remain in attendance, or to attend any adjourned proceedings, the Presenter shall make all reasonable attempts to locate the student. If the Hall/House Warden is satisfied that all reasonable attempts have been made to contact the accused the hearing shall proceed in his/her absence.

**10.6** If, during the course of a hearing before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel, it comes to the knowledge of a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel that a student appearing at such hearing may have committed any disciplinary offence/s other than, or in addition to, those with which she/he has been charged, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may charge the student concerned with such supplementary disciplinary offence/s and, provided that the provisions of this Code in relation to particulars and time to prepare are satisfied, the enquiry may then proceed, the evidence led to that stage retaining its full force and effect.

**10.7** The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall have the right to direct that any student attends and gives evidence and remains in attendance until excused from a disciplinary hearing.

**10.8** If a student appearing at a hearing before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel conducts him/herself in a manner which makes the continuance of the proceedings in his/her presence impossible or impractical, the

Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may, after warning the student of the consequences of such conduct, direct that s/he be removed. On such occasions, the proceedings will continue in his/her absence.

**10.9** Where a student has been sanctioned in terms of this Code, the sanction shall come into effect immediately regardless of whether the student intends to take the matter on appeal, unless

the Vice-Chancellor, on written application by the student, decides that there is good cause to suspend the implementation of the sanction pending the outcome of an appeal. The written application by the student shall set out fully all relevant facts and submissions that he or she wishes the Vice-Chancellor to consider in arriving at a decision in this regard.

## **11. SUB-WARDENING STAFF**

Sub-Wardens may only administer admission of guilt sanctions as defined by the Registrar on an annual basis and for minor infringements of house rules, and in imposing such sanctions, shall not exceed 50% of the sanction that a House Warden or Assistant Warden may impose.

## **12. REGISTRAR'S DIVISION STAFF**

(a) Registrar's Division staff designated by the Registrar shall have jurisdiction over all students writing examinations in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in the Examination Rules and Regulations.

(b) There shall be a Registrar's Division Disciplinary Committee consisting of two members of the Registrar's Division staff appointed for this purpose by the Registrar.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Registrar in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven

days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Registrar's Division Disciplinary Committee shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) The Registrar shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Registrar's Division Disciplinary Committee. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Services and Development on designated official University notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted, and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

## **13. UNIVERSITY LIBRARY STAFF**

(a) Library staff designated by the Director: Library Services shall have jurisdiction over all student library users in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in the Library Use and Conduct Code.

(b) There shall be a Library Disciplinary Committee consisting of two members of the Library staff appointed for this purpose by the Director: Library Services.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any

student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Director: Library Services in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Library Disciplinary Committee shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

(f) The Director: Library Services shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Library Disciplinary Committee. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Services and Development on designated official University notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted, and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

#### **14. INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY SERVICES DIVISION STAFF**

(a) Information & Technology Services Division staff designated by the Director: Information & Technology Services Division shall have jurisdiction over all student computer users in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in the IT Facilities Use and Conduct Code.

(b) There shall be an Information & Technology Services Division Disciplinary Committee consisting of two members of the Information & Technology Services Division staff appointed for

this purpose by the Director: Information & Technology Services Division.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Director: Information & Technology Services Division in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Information & Technology Services Division consisting of the Manager: Student Services and Manager: IT Operations, shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

(f) The Director: Information & Technology Services Division or his/her nominee shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Information & Technology Services Division. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Services and Development on designated official

notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted, and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

(g) Copyright and Take Down Notices will be dealt with in the following way:

(i) First Offence – Students will be notified by the Information & Technology Services Division of a warning and can accept guilt or ask to appear before a disciplinary authority.

(ii) Second Offence – Students will be notified and sanctioned 40 hours of compulsory service administered by the Information & Technology Services Division. If a student declines to accept the admission of guilt, the student shall appear before a hearing.

(iii) Third or any following Offence – Students will be handed over to the University Prosecutor/s by the Information & Technology Services Division.

## 15. CAMPUS PROTECTION UNIT

(a) Campus Protection staff designated by the Head: Campus Protection Unit shall have jurisdiction over all student vehicle users in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in Rule 4.7 of this Code.

(b) There shall be a Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee consisting of the Head: Campus Protection Unit and two members of the Campus Protection Unit staff appointed for this purpose by the Head: Campus Protection Unit.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Head: Campus Protection

Unit in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

(f) The Head: Campus Protection Unit shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Services and Development on designated official notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted and be reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

## 16. APPEAL FROM A DECISION OF A HALL/HOUSE WARDEN, OPPIDAN WARDEN, LIBRARY DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE, INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY SERVICES DIVISION, CAMPUS PROTECTION UNIT DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE, REGISTRAR'S DIVISION, SRC DISCIPLINARY BOARD OR SPORTS COUNCIL DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE

**16.1** A student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden, Library Disciplinary Committee, Information & Technology Services Division Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee, Registrar's Division, SRC Disciplinary Board or Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall have

the right to have such verdict and sanction appealed as contemplated in Rule 10.4 above.

**16.2** A Prosecutor shall have the right to have a sanction imposed by a lower disciplinary authority appealed on the same grounds as set out in Rule 8 of this Code. The procedure that shall be followed, and the powers of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee, shall be as set out in Rule 8 of this Code.

## **17. THE SRC DISCIPLINARY BOARD**

**17.1** There shall be a Board of the above title consisting of as many members as the SRC shall by resolution from time to time determine.

**17.2** This Board shall have the power to enquire into a disciplinary offence allegedly committed by a student at any function organized or controlled by the SRC, both on or off the University premises, provided that as soon as it determines to take such action, it shall immediately report the matter to the Prosecutor/s who may decide to refer the matter to any other disciplinary authority, in which case s/he shall immediately inform the SRC of the decision. The SRC Disciplinary Board shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

**17.3** The Board shall have the following powers to penalize any student found by it to have committed a disciplinary offence:

- (a) imposition of a fine not exceeding 2.5% of the Bachelor of Arts fee or 35 hours of compulsory service.
- (b) exclusion from participation in SRC functions or facilities for a period not exceeding one term, or both.
- (c) payment of such sum of money as may be required to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence.

**17.4** The SRC Disciplinary Board must ensure that there is a separation of powers. The person chairing the hearing cannot be the person investigating and presenting the case, in order to ensure compliance with the rules of natural justice and constitutional rights and fairness. The procedure to be followed shall be the same as contained in Rule 10 as is relevant to the SRC

Disciplinary Board.

**17.5** A student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by the SRC Disciplinary Board shall have the same right of appeal as set out in Rule 16 and the procedure to be followed in Rule 16 shall apply.

## **18. THE SPORTS COUNCIL DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE**

**18.1** There shall be a Committee of the above title consisting of the Chairperson of the Sports Council or deputy and two further members nominated by the Chairperson or the deputy from the members of the Student Sports Council. This Committee shall have the power to enquire into any disciplinary offence allegedly committed by a student where the breach alleged has been either:

- (a) of a rule of the Sports Council or any of its constituent clubs.
- (b) committed by students on University property set aside by the Council for student activities under the control of the Sports Council; or
- (c) committed by students elsewhere than on University property but while members of a University team or touring party are under the control of the Sports Council.

As soon as it determines to take disciplinary action, the Committee shall immediately report the matter to the Prosecutor/s who may decide to refer it to another disciplinary authority, in which case s/he shall immediately inform the Sports Council of the decision. The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

**18.2** The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall have the following powers to penalize any student found by it to have breached a rule of the Sports Council or any of its constituent clubs:

- (a) suspension from participation in any sporting activity of the University either totally or in part for a period not exceeding one term.
- (b) imposition of a fine not exceeding 2.5% of the Bachelor of Arts fee or 35 hours of compulsory service.
- (c) order the payment of compensation to make



good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

**18.3** The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee must ensure that there is a separation of powers. The person chairing the hearing cannot be the person investigating and presenting the case, in order to ensure compliance with the rules of natural justice and constitutional rights and fairness. The procedure to be followed shall be the same as contained in Rule 10 as is relevant to the Sports Council Disciplinary Committee.

**18.4** In the case of a student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by the Sports Council Disciplinary Committee, the same right of appeal and the same procedure set out in Rule 16 shall apply.

## STUDENT AFFAIRS

### THE SPORTS ADMINISTRATION

Sport and recreation, due largely to the residential nature of the campus, play a very important role in the life of the student at Rhodes. 1987 saw the introduction of the new Sports Council (formerly Sports Union) constitution which seeks to provide the infrastructure and facilities to cater for all sporting groups on campus.

In order to accommodate these needs, the Sports Administration has some thirty (30) clubs which cater for a wide range of interest at high performance, competitive and social/recreational levels. Sport at Rhodes is unique in that all students are free to make use of certain of the facilities without being obliged to join a particular club. However, students wishing to play sport or take part in recreational pursuits at a higher level do need to join clubs in order to take advantage of the structured programmes presented by the Sports Administration.

The compact nature of the campus provides all sporting facilities within easy walking distance of the residences. The easy accessibility and availability of facilities are responsible for the very high participation rate (85%) in sport and recreation by the student population. The Sports Administration assisted by student committees of the sports clubs take care of the day to day organization of the club activities and in providing

the infrastructure which allows the clubs to operate effectively. The department also offer sports scholarships for student athletes.

The clubs generally provide for participation at two levels. Those students involved in competitive sport participate nationally in the University Sports South Africa (USSA) competitions, then locally participates in Nelson Mandela Bay and Sarah Baartman District sports federations leagues. The second important level of participation is the intra-mural programme which takes care of the needs of those sportsmen and women who wish to be involved on a more social basis.

It is the Sports Administration's philosophy that sport and recreation play a vital role in the overall educational experience of every student. In an attempt to involve as many students as possible Sports Administration offers a wide range of activities which include:

Aikido, Aquatics, Archery, Athletics, Basketball, Canoe, Chess, Cricket, Dance Sport, First Aid, Fly Fishing, Golf, Hockey, Mixed Martial Arts, Mountain, Netball, Pool, Rifle, Rowing, Rugby, Sailing, Soccer, Squash, Surfing, Table Tennis, Tae Kwon do, Tennis, Volleyball and Underwater. In addition to these activities the Rhodes University Health Suite offers Aerobics and Indoor Cycling Classes and a well-equipped Weights Training Facility.

# STUDENT AFFAIRS

## THE OPPIDAN UNION

### Oppidan Union Services

The Oppidan Union is responsible for initiating and maintaining a range of student benefits:

- The Oppidan Common Room is situated on the ground floor of the Bantu Stephen Biko Building. The room contains lounge suites, a TV & DSTV decoder, tables & chairs, a pool table and study cubicles. Tea and coffee are served free of charge to all Oppidans twice a day from Monday to Friday.
- The Union assists students in finding accommodation by advertising available houses, flats and rooms. Information pamphlets, lists of available accommodation (<http://www.ru.ac.za/oppidan/digslist/2017/>) and maps of Makhandla are available from the Secretary.
- The Oppidan Committee consists of various portfolio's and is responsible for looking after the interest of Oppidans, encouraging them to participate in the various activities of the Union  
e.g. social events, inter-res sports, community engagement etc. The Oppidan Union strives to give Oppidans a well-balanced and enriched University experience. It liaises with the SRC on a regular basis and participates in a mentoring

program for first years.

- The Oppidan Union assists with the running of a bus: Monday to Thursday 5pm to 11pm, Friday 5pm to 9pm, Saturday and Sunday 5pm, 8pm and 9pm at the collection point on the hour in front of Geology building on Artillery road, during exams and swot week the times are extended to 24h00.
- The Oppidan Union has a web and Facebook page, which contains information regarding accommodation availability, Oppidan events and relevant information pertaining to Oppidans. The web page can be found on the 'Student Zone' page, under 'Oppidan'.
- The Oppidan Hall Wardens, assisted by five sub-wardens are available for advice, support and assistance with regards to a student in crises, conflict, lease and Digs mate issues, emergencies etc. Students are encouraged to use the following emergency number, 078-8046328, when the need arises.

The Oppidan Secretary, tel. 046-6038229 is on duty in the Oppidan Office in the mornings from 08h30– 13h30. The Oppidan Office is situated on the first floor, Steve Biko Building. The Secretary is responsible for co-ordinating all areas of the Union's activity and is available to help and advise Oppidans wherever possible.

## STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

The Students' Representative Council is a legislated body whose members are elected annually. Its primary purpose is to represent the student body both within and outside the university. It also negotiates with the university authorities on their behalf. In addition, the University's numerous clubs and societies fall under the Student Representative Council's jurisdiction.

The SRC can be contacted at the SRC Offices on the top floor of the Bantu Stephen Biko Building. They can also be reached via e-mail at [srcrepresent@ru.ac.za](mailto:srcrepresent@ru.ac.za) or [srscsg@ru.ac.za](mailto:srscsg@ru.ac.za)

### MISSION STATEMENT

We, the Students' Representative Council of 2023 strive to not only for academic excellence but to empower the student body to be action-orientated and to be socially responsible. We stay committed in ensuring that students are holistically well to be better adaptive in our evolving environment. We aim to empower and positively impact the lives of not only the student body, but of the community amongst us. We also pledge to represent students from all walks of life regardless of race, gender, socioeconomic background and all other factors that make us unique."

### SRC REPRESENTATION ON UNIVERSITY COMMITTEES

SRC members serve on various University committees, including, but not limited to, the following:

Council, Senate, Executive Committee of Senate, Institutional Forum, Budget Committee, Disability Committee, Distinguished Teaching Award, Equity and Institutional Culture Committee, Senate Examinations Committee, Financial Aid Committee, Gender Action Forum, Honorary Degrees Committee, Institutional Planning Committee, Information Technology Steering Committee, Internationalization Committee, Library Committee, Orientation Committee, Board of Residences, Rhodes University Academic Freedom Committee, Safety/Events Committee, Senate Disciplinary Panel, Student Services

Council, Teaching and Learning Committee, Visual Representation, Arts and Culture Committee (VRACC), the Community Engagement Committee, the Language Committee and the Wardens Appointments Committee.

### SOCIETIES

Please direct any enquiries regarding societies to the SRC Societies Councillor:  
[srscsocieties@ru.ac.za](mailto:srscsocieties@ru.ac.za).

12<sup>th</sup> Trinity Society  
35mm

Abasa (Association for the Advancement of Black Accountants Student Chapter)

Ass. of Black Securities and Inv. (ABSIP)

Activate

Association of Catholic Tertiary Students (Acts)

African Drum (MARIMBA)

African Union Youth Club

African Women Chart Accountants

Anglican Society (Ansoc)

Anglican Society

Apostolic Faith Mission Student Campus Ministries (AFM-SCM)

Art Soc

Astronomy

Babilanto

Ballroom Dancing

Bapedi Ba Rhodes

Believers Loveworld (BLW)

Black Lawyers Society

Black Management Forum Book club

Chemistry Society (CHEMSOC)

Chi-Alpha

Common Ground

Democratic Alliance Student Organisation (DASO)

Debating

Developer's Society

DYN

East African Society (EASOC)

Economic Freedom Fighters Society (EFF)

Enable

Enactus (SIFE)

Fencing Forward in faith

Galela amanzi  
 Game Society (GAMESOC)  
 Gender Action Project  
 Geology  
 Golden Key  
 Guitar  
 Hellenic  
 Hindu Student Society (Hindu)  
 Hip Hop  
 His People Bible Society  
 HULT Society  
 Igwijo Society  
 INK Society (INK)  
 Inkwenkwezi (SHINE)  
 Isaiah 26:8 (Student Christian Fellowship)  
 Isintu Soc  
 Jehova Jirah Haven (JJH)  
 Law Society  
 Legal Activism  
 Lesotho  
 Live Music  
 Malawian  
 Masincedane  
 Marimba  
 Rhodes University Melodies (RUM)  
 Masibeyel'embo Society  
 Methodist Student Society (MethSSoc)  
 Mixed Martial Arts (MMA)  
 Mountain Club  
 Movie Soc  
 Muslim Student's Society (MSA)  
 Namibia Society (NAMSOC)  
 Nazareth Tertiary Stud. Association (NATESA)  
 Neko Anime Society  
 Nhlanhla Ya VaTsonga  
 Old Apostolic Stud Association (OASA)  
 Oppidan Press (Oppipress)  
 Pan African Youth Dialogue (PAYD)  
 Photography Society (Photosoc)  
 PASMA (Pan Africanist Student Movement of Azania)  
 Psychology Society  
 Presidents Awards  
 Rhodes Adventists  
 Rhodes Business  
 Rhodes Economics  
 Rhodes Entrepreneurs  
 Rhodes Music Radio

Rhodes Ultimate  
 Rhodes Politics Society  
 Roar (Rhodes Organization for Animal Rights)  
 Rotaract (Rotary Club Partner)  
 Rhodes University Computer Users Society (Rucus)  
 Rhodes University Melodies (RUM)  
 RU AllStars  
 RU Black Lawyers Ass. Stud. Chapter  
 RU Studios  
 RU Economics society  
 Rhodes University Pharmacy Students Association (RUPSA)  
 Student Action for the Environment (SAFTE)  
 South African student's Congress (SASCO)  
 Science for Society  
 Southeast Alaska Conservation Council (SEACC / RU GREEN)  
 Student HIV/AIDS Resistance Campaign (SHARC)  
 SCO (Students Christian Organization)  
 Skate  
 Ubuntu  
 Rhodes University Science and Information Systems Society (SUDO)  
 Swazi Alive  
 Swazi Society  
 Thapelo Kuze Foundation  
 Rhodes University Toastmasters  
 Tree of Life  
 Twelve Apostle Student Association (TASA)  
 Vha Venda Society  
 Voice of Glory  
 Wine tasting  
 West African Society  
 Youth Quake  
 Zambian Society (Zamsoc)  
 Zimsoc/Zim Unlimited (Zimbabwe Soc)  
 Zion Christian Church Stud. Fellowship  
 Zoology Society (ZOOSOC)  
 Zulu Society

## STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL PRESIDENTS

The years cited here represent the years in which these individuals were elected President of the SRC:

1910 CN Thompson

1913	HG Goldwater	1959	JA Benyon
1914	HT Gamble	1960	WG Pietersen
1915	HT Gamble	1961	IA Macdonald
1916	JC Hops	1962	B Moore
1917	EG Gamble	1963	M Chapman
1918	AK Dugmore	1964	M Bands
1919	PJ Erasmus	1965	E Webster
1920	HE Hockley	1966	J Sprack
1921	NP Sellick	1967	P Haxton
1922	EH Wilde	1968	P Harris
1923	W Thurlbeck	1969	KW Meaker
1924	AA Morris	1970	R Wanless
1926	BC Gordon	1971	J Whitehead
1927	H Bennett	1971	K Satchwell
1928	WH Elliot	1972	P Clarke
1928	H Bennett	1973	M King
1930	G Wynne	1976	A Lamprecht
1931	JT Davidson	1977	A le Grange
1932	GHD Camp	1978	I Smuts
1932	HJ Chapman	1979	N Willett-Clarke
1933	HJ Chapman	1980	C Butler
1934	REM Blakeway	1981	J Campbell
1935	GCD Hodgson	1982	M Kenyon
1936	GCD Hodgson	1983	S Rankin
1937	HHC Holderness	1984	A Williams
1938	AL McKenzie	1985	J Bowen
1938	TFW Harris	1986	J Masey
1939	JF Gaylard	1987	S Middleton
1940	GHA Simms	1988	P Tandy
1941	ECC Owen	1989	R Dixon
1942	JD Peter	1990	R Dixon
1942	DR Butler	1991	R Amner
1943	HH Hall	1992	D Lee
1944	RE Lipstrue	1993	C Tsampiras
1946	I Smith	1994	K Jurgensen
1947	H Self	1995	V Ndebele
1948	HF Kirby	1996	C Khoza
1949	LDS Glass	1997	W Mene
1950	MM Tatham	1998	P Mothibi
1951	TW Higgs	1999	T Moleko
1952	HS Perry	2000	M Charlesworth
1953	PJ Duminy	2001	M Webber
1954	LS Melunisky	2002	J Chipunza
1954	MJ Roberts	2003	T Moyo
1955	LS Melunisky	2004	T Halley
1956	B Goedhals	2005	B Green
1957	JJ Breitenbach	2006	F Morbi
1958	WS Yeowart	2007	R Pillay

2008	X Nyali
2009	K Loni
2010	E Ofei
2011	A Magubane
2012	M Maralack
2013	S Badi
2014	B Bense
2015	S Makhubo
2015	Z Maqubela
2016	MG Sandi
2017	R Mabaso
2018	N Mahlangu
2018	K.Chingono
2019	S Mngadi
2020	K Mphahlele
2021	L Nkambule
2022	B Modisaotsile
2023	A Tyala
2024	S Mnyande.

# CONSTITUTION FOR STUDENT GOVERNANCE

*The full text of this Constitution and its associated Schedules is available from the SRC Offices and from the University Library.*

## Preamble

*We, the students of Rhodes University (hereinafter called "the University") herein affirm the supreme and inalienable right of all students at the University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge. We determine that the Student Representatives' Council (hereinafter called "the SRC") shall be our primary governing body in matters falling within its jurisdiction, which will ensure the conveyance of the student voice to the Administration, the University Senate and Council in matters of institutional policies. We will promote the welfare and progress of the University community and enforce our rights and uphold our responsibilities; establish an effective, efficient, responsible, and responsive form of co-operative student government; encourage discussion, investigation and expedient resolution of student problems, concerns, and ideas; support and help implement the desires of the Student Body; provide leadership; recognize student accomplishments so that the role of the student is rewarding and meaningful; retain the authority to appoint and remove student representation of the University standing committees and advisory boards to which the SRC normally makes appointments. We task the SRC to report to us through our broadly elected leadership contained within the Student Parliament. We, the students of the University, in confidence of this Constitution, do hereby ratify and agree to follow and implement the Constitution.*

## Objectives

*This Constitution is founded by and for the students with a developmental consideration of the functional needs of the University student population. We, (the SRC) as the active voice of the student body, acknowledge our duty to maintain a key responsibility in the workings of the Institution.*

*This document is intentionally flexible, as well as representative of the unique dynamics of the University.*

## Definitions

TERM	DEFINITION
Alumni Board	Advisory board to the new SRC
Convener	The person who chairs the first meeting of Student Parliament, normally the Vice-President.
Deputy Speaker	Is a person who chairs Student Parliament in the absence of the Speaker.
General Meetings	Meetings which the student body are invited to attend by the SRC.
External Cluster Meetings	External cluster meetings are operational meetings chaired by the SRC Vice- President with additional support of Councillors. Their portfolios deal Councillors whose portfolios deal with matters that involve the broader community of Makhanda i.e. the Oppidan Councillor.
Internal Cluster Meetings	Internal cluster meetings are operational meetings chaired by the Vice-President of the SRC with Councillors whose portfolios deal with matters that involve the Rhodes University community, i.e. the Residence Councillor.



Independent Electoral Board (IEB)	Is an independent body set up in terms of the rules to oversee and govern the SRC and its substructure elections.
Quorate	The minimum number of members of the student body or a student governance structure must be present at any of its meetings to make the proceedings of that meeting valid.
Registered student	A student who is registered with the University regardless of faculty and department.
Speaker	A person who chairs Student Parliament.
Student Body	All persons registered as students of Rhodes University.
Student Parliament	Serve as the collective voice for all student governance substructures within Rhodes University.

## CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

### Article 1.1 Status

This Constitution is the supreme authority that provides principles that help address student matters within the competence of the Student Body. All other Constitutions and/or documents within the Student Body, which fall under the SRC, are subject to the provision of and derive their authority and jurisdiction from this Constitution.

### Article 1.2 Name

SRC refers to the “Students’ Representative Council, Rhodes University” as the existing body present in this Constitution.

### Article 1.3 Powers and Duties

Subject to the provisions of this Constitution the SRC shall be empowered to:

- 1.3.1 Represent on behalf of the students of the University to the Council, Senate and other bodies and officers of the University.
- 1.3.2 Administer the funds placed at its disposal by the University Council for the promotion of student activities as well as such other permitted and authorised funds raised by a subscription or levy.
- 1.3.3 Recognise and regulate established University approved societies and organisations.
- 1.3.4 Organise, control, be responsible for and manage social functions and schemes for the benefit of students.
- 1.3.5 Affiliate to bodies and organisations outside the University.
- 1.3.6 Constitute an SRC Disciplinary Board in order to exercise the powers enforced by the Student Disciplinary Code.
- 1.3.7 Summon and conduct general student body meetings of with students and any other meetings of the student body.
- 1.3.8 Represent the student body both on campus and externally.
- 1.3.9 To perform all such other duties as bodies of this nature may lawfully require to do.

### Article 1.4 Logo of the SRC

The logo of the SRC shall include Rhodes University’s Coat of Arms with the word “SRC” on the right-hand side alongside the Coat of Arms, and beneath that, the words “Representing Leaders”. The numerals of the substantive year for which the SRC is in office shall be superimposed above and between the two statements described above.

### **Article 1.5 SRC Term of Office**

The term of office for the SRC shall be the duration of an academic year, from January to December; with the elections being held as per Schedule 7.

## **CHAPTER 2 THE STUDENT BODY**

### **Article 2.1 Membership and Voting Rights**

- 2.1.1 All registered students, including full- time, part- time, occasional and continuing-education students, shall qualify as voting members of the Student Body.
- 2.1.2 All students registered with the University who are not full-time students they are not counted for quorum, but are allowed to vote, request and seek out the SRC for matters concerning the Constitution.
- 2.1.3 Members of the Student Body shall be entitled to attend and participate in SRC held discussions during general, student governance sub-structures, organisations and student political meetings. Each participant must commit to the rules and order outlined per specified meeting.
- 2.1.4 Voting in terms of student governance sub-structures shall be limited to those members who are entitled to vote.

### **Article 2.2 General Meetings**

The SRC shall call two compulsory meetings general meeting for the purposes of rendering a semester report to the student body. The report shall be presented to the Student body by SRC President.

In the third week of the first term of the year, the SRC shall call a meeting where they shall present their state of the University address. This shall be done by the SRC President.

- 2.2.1 A General Meeting of the student body members shall be held as and when is necessary and feasible and only if:
  - 2.1.1.1 The SRC President or 50% of the SRC call such a meeting or
  - 2.2.1.2 A written request is made by at least 100 members of the student body to the SRC, accompanied by a written motion for the purposes of the meeting.
- 2.2.2 The SRC shall give at least 5 five working days' notice of the date, time and venue when the meeting shall occur with disclosure of an agenda.
- 2.2.3 Student body members shall be granted a reasonable opportunity to put additional matters onto the meeting's agenda.
- 2.2.4 The SRC President or the Vice-President, and in their absence, the Secretary-General shall chair the meeting. Thereafter, if they are absent then any other member of SRC Council shall be voted to chair the meeting. The person elected by the SRC, shall act as the chairperson of the general meeting and shall have an ordinary and casting vote.
- 2.2.5 The generally accepted rules pertaining to meetings of the SRC, as contained in Schedule 8, shall apply at all general meetings.
- 2.2.6 Quorum
  - 2.2.6.1 Quorum for a general meeting shall be 5% of students qualified to vote.
  - 2.2.6.2 Quorum for a general meeting, summoned by the SRC or requisitioned by members shall be 5% of students qualified to vote.
  - 2.2.6.3 In the event no quorum is reached at any meeting, the meeting may elect to continue with those members present and the drafted minutes shall be circulated to all members of the student body, who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, where after they would be taken as confirmed.
  - 2.2.6.4 Once a meeting has been declared quorate, it remains quorate even if members leave during the course of business.

### **Article 2.3 Minutes of Meetings**

- 2.3.1 The SRC shall keep and circulate the minutes of the proceedings from each general meeting.

#### **Article 2.4 Resolutions**

- 2.4.1 Resolutions may only be adopted in respect of matters disclosed by the agenda, provided that other matters may be added to the agenda if there is no objection made by any present members.
- 2.4.2 A resolution shall be only adopted by a majority of members present in the meeting, in exception of no-confidence related to the provisions of section 3.5.3 shall apply.
- 2.4.3 A resolution adopted at a general meeting shall take immediate effect unless otherwise stipulated in the resolution.

#### **Article 2.5 Finance**

- 2.5.1 All funds made available by the University for Student Governance shall only be applied in accordance with an approved budget.
- 2.5.2 The different student governance sub-structures who rely on the SRC for funding shall submit annually a prescribed formatted budget to the SRC before the specified time.
- 2.5.3 SRC finances shall be administered according to Schedule 1 of the Constitution.

### **CHAPTER 3 THE SRC**

#### **Article 3.1. Composition of the SRC**

- 3.1.1 The SRC comprises of a President, Vice- President, Secretary-General, Treasurer-General, Academic Councillor, Activism and Transformation Councillor, Community Engagement Councillor, Environmental Councillor, International Affairs Councillor, Media Councillor, Oppidan Councillor, Projects Manager, Residence Councillor, Sports and Societies Councillor, Post Graduate Affairs Councillor and the Student Benefits and Sponsorship Councillor.
- 3.1.2 In a situation where a decision needs to be made, each member has only one vote. However, in case of a deadlock, the President or alternative Chairperson has a casting vote.
- 3.1.3 The SRC Executive comprises the President, Vice-President, Secretary-General, Treasurer-General and two further positions filled by the twelve non-executive council members.
  - 3.1.3.1 The two open Executive positions shall be filled through an internal SRC vote.
  - 3.1.3.2 The twelve non-executive council members shall comprise of the twelve openly contested positions.
- 3.1.4 The Oppidan Councillor and the Residence Councillor shall be elected from within their respective constituencies.
- 3.1.5 Each Hall shall elect one Hall representative to join the SRC Residence Representative Committee. Once complete, the Residence Councillor will oversee and manage the entire committee.
- 3.1.6 The sixteen openly contested Executive and non-Executive positions shall be campaigned based on each portfolio that commits to 3.1.7., 3.1.9 and Schedule 6.
- 3.1.7 An individual may run for more than one position in one election period.
- 3.1.8 If in terms of 3.1.7., if an individual receives the highest number of votes in two positions then they must select one of those positions and the runner-up in the other position will assume the other portfolio.
- 3.1.9 Candidates contesting the positions of President and Vice-President shall all run for the position of President and may run for an additional portfolio as stated in 3.1.7.
  - 3.1.9.1 The candidate with the highest number of votes shall assume Presidency, unless s/ he chooses to waive this privilege, in which then the position shall be offered to the second highest vote candidate.
  - 3.1.9.2 The candidate with the second highest number of votes shall assume the position of Vice-President. Should any candidate decline that position then the second highest vote candidate shall be offered the Vice-President title.
- 3.1.10 The SRC may establish committees, task groups (SRC members only) and working groups (SRC members and non- SRC members) as they see fit.

**Article 3.2 Gender Parity**

- 3.2.1 The SRC and any other student governance structures shall strive to not have more than 50% male or female-identifying bodies in leadership positions.

**Article 3.3 The SRC Executive Committee**

- 3.3.1 The SRC Executive consists of six members, namely the President, Vice-President, Secretary-General (Chairperson), the Treasurer-General. Two additional members will be selected from the remaining twelve SRC members.
- 3.3.2 In the event of a tied vote within the SRC, the Chairperson shall have the casting vote.
- 3.3.3 The duties of the SRC Executive Committee are:
- 3.3.3.1 To deal with urgent matters which affect the students' interests that arise from SRC and general meetings.
  - 3.3.3.2 To generally act for and represent the SRC in the period between SRC meetings or, in terms of the Constitution. To deal with such matters as the SRC deems fit.
  - 3.3.3.3 To develop proposals or define the parameters in which issues are addressed and brought up in debates. In addition, the conduction and structure enable a streamlining that provides SRC Executive a context of any arisen situation.
  - 3.3.3.4 To deal with matters that need to be dealt within the timeframe from the last outgoing SRC meeting to the new SRC elections for the following year.
  - 3.3.3.5 To assume overall responsibility for all SRC related executed resolutions and implemented decisions made by the Executive team.
  - 3.3.3.6 To ensure that the new SRC member is fully instructed their role and capabilities prior to handing over the position.
- 3.3.4 Executive meetings:
- 3.3.4.1 The SRC Executive members shall meet at least once per fortnight.
  - 3.3.4.2 The Secretary-General shall chair all meetings, and in their absence, then the SRC Executive members shall elect another chairperson who is not the President.
  - 3.3.4.3 Quorum shall be three members.
  - 3.3.4.4 The minutes of each SRC Executive meeting shall be considered, corrected if necessary, and then confirmed by the SRC at the next meeting.

**Article 3.4 Meetings of the SRC**

- 3.4.1 The SRC shall meet at least once a week while the University is in session during the undergraduate term time.
- 3.4.2 All meetings shall be convened by the President and in their absence by the Vice-President, thereafter in their absence, by the Secretary-General.
- 3.4.3 Special meetings shall be convened:
- 3.4.3.1 On request of the President, and during of their absence, by the Vice-President, thereafter their absence, the Secretary-General.
  - 3.4.3.2 When a resolution to this effect is passed by the SRC.
  - 3.4.3.3 When a written request, signed by no fewer than three members stating the business to be considered, is made to the Secretary-General.
  - 3.4.3.4 The President shall chair all meetings, and in their absence the position will be taken by the Vice-President or thereafter in their absence, by the Secretary-General. If all three members are not present, then any SRC mandated member will occupy the chairperson role.
  - 3.4.3.5 50% of SRC members constitute the quorum. In the event no quorum is reached at any meeting, the meeting may elect to continue with those members present and the drafted minutes shall be circulated to all members of the student body, who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, where after they would be taken as confirmed.

- 3.4.3.6 All questions shall be decided by a consensus or a majority of the members present and voting, except that in the following cases the majority shall be at least two thirds:
  - 3.4.6.1 Finance;
  - 3.4.6.2 Recognition of Societies;
  - 3.4.6.3 Special Permission for using the University by a recognised structure.
  - 3.4.6.4 Election rules;
  - 3.4.6.5 Amendments to any of the Constitution's schedules
  - 3.4.6.6 Instituting any disciplinary action against an SRC member.

### **Article 3.5 Forfeiture of Office on the SRC**

- 3.5.1 In keeping with emphasising the right of all student body to acquire and advance in knowledge, as well as recognise leadership, therefore, it is vital that each SRC member upholds the highest behaviour and standard. Each SRC member will be subject to the Student Disciplinary Code if they are:
  - 3.5.1.1 Placed subsequently on academic probation and/or academically excluded from the University.
  - 3.5.1.2 Found guilty of a University disciplinary offence before the University Proctor and sentenced to a fine. In excess of 25% being the maximum of the fine, the University Proctor can impose, exclude, issue community service of 75 hours.
  - 3.5.1.3 If a vote of no confidence against a member of the SRC as detailed in the procedure 3.5.3.6
- 3.5.2 In the event that an SRC member has forfeited their place on the SRC:
  - 3.5.2.1 If the SRC President portfolio is forfeited then the following procedure will take place:
    - 3.5.2.1.1 The SRC Vice-President shall assume the role as President
    - 3.5.2.1.2 The SRC Executive shall re-assign the executive portfolios through consensus from amongst themselves. If failing to reach consensus, then the rest of SRC members will vote.
    - 3.5.2.1.3 The SRC shall elect one of its non-executive members to the SRC Executive.
    - 3.5.2.1.4 If the runner-up in the vacated constituency is available and willing to take the forfeited place, the SRC shall co-opt the runner-up according to the results of the previous election.
    - 3.5.2.1.5 In the event of no runner-up is willing to be co-opted, the IEB shall convene another election for that constituency.
  - 3.5.2.2 In the case that the forfeited portfolio is an SRC Executive member:
    - 3.5.2.2.1 The procedure outlined in 3.5.2.1.1 - 3.5.2.1.5 shall apply.
    - 3.5.2.2.2 In the case that the forfeited portfolio is a non-SRC Executive member: the procedure outlined in 3.5.2.1.4. – 3.5.2.1.5 shall apply.
- 3.5.3. Motion and Vote of No confidence:
  - 3.5.3.1 A motion of no- confidence may be instituted against an SRC member in an SRC meeting.
  - 3.5.3.2 For the motion to be considered, it must have majority of the council members in agreement
  - 3.5.3.3 The person will be given five working days to prepare a defence against this claim.
  - 3.5.3.4 During the defence meeting, the Speaker of Student Parliament and IEB will be present, whereby the SRC member will be given an opportunity to present their defence.
  - 3.5.3.5 The SRC President will present the reasons as to why the council has set this motion of no confidence in the sitting.
    - 3.5.3.5.1 In a case where the motion of no confidence is against the President then the Vice-President will be the one that gives the members a reason for this motion.
  - 3.5.3.6 After this the members of the SRC will vote through a secret ballot. Two thirds of council votes need to be in favour for the motion to pass.

3.5.3.7 After an SRC member has been voted out of the council, the SRC President shall call a student body meeting to explain the reason behind the vote of no confidence.

3.5.4. In the event that an official charge is laid against a SRC member, they will immediately be placed on extended leave to allow for extensive investigations into the accusation.

### **Article 3.6 Privileges of the SRC**

3.6.1 SRC members receive certain privileges for their service to the student body and the University such as:

3.6.1.1 A financial incentive (honorarium) that will be determined by the Director of Student Affairs after consultation with the SRC President soon after the SRC elections;

3.6.1.2 SRC members who are living in residence are not required to pack up their rooms during vacation, except for the December vacation, which follows the same manner as Sub-Wardens;

3.6.1.3 SRC members are given second preference to pick a room in their residences after the Sub-Wardens have made their selection;

3.6.1.4 SRC members shall have free access to the gym during their terms of office.

### **Article 3.7 Continuity and handing-over**

3.7.1 Previous SRC members will be responsible for handing-over and familiarising the new SRC with their new portfolios and roles.

3.7.2 There will be two meetings per week between the current SRC and the upcoming SRC.

3.7.3 The session is done over at least eight sessions.

3.7.4 If any current or upcoming members do not attend the sessions, then they will be subject to the conditions stipulated in the Honorarium document.

3.7.5 The out-going SRC member should prepare documentation for their replacements before the sessions start, and failure to do so shall be subject to the conditions stipulated in the Honorarium document. This documentation should be sent to the SRC Student Development and Support Officer at least a fortnight before hand over occurs.

3.7.6 Where possible, the incoming SRC shall shadow the outgoing SRC in various committees until the end of the academic year.

3.7.7 The Alumni Board shall act as an advisor to the SRC.

## **CHAPTER 4 CLASS AND FACULTY STUDENT REPRESENTATION**

### **Article 4.1 Class Representatives Electoral Process**

4.1.1 Every class shall elect a minimum of one and a maximum of two Class Representative.

4.1.2 A Class Representative is to be elected within the first two weeks after the commencement of the course.

4.1.3 The electoral process is to be conducted by the Head of Department or their nominee.

4.1.4 A registered student of the course is eligible to run as a Class Representative.

4.1.5 The electoral process shall run as follows:

4.1.5.1 The floor shall be opened for nominations;

4.1.5.2 A nominee shall either accept or decline the nomination;

4.1.5.3 The nominees shall be afforded the opportunity to present a short motivational speech to the class.

4.1.6 The nominees are to leave the room while the class casts their votes by a show of hands.

4.1.7 A Class Representative's tenure is for the period of an academic year.

4.1.8 The SRC Academic Councillor shall allow students a period of a week after the elections in which to lodge any complaints with regards to any procedural irregularities pertaining to the elections.

4.1.9 In the event of a vacancy the SRC Academic Councillor or Head of Department shall facilitate a by-election until the vacancy is filled.

#### **Article 4.2 Faculty Representatives Electoral Process**

- 4.2.1 Two Faculty Representatives for each faculty shall be elected from among the Class Representatives.
- 4.2.2 The Faculty Representatives for each faculty shall be elected at the first meeting of the Class from among other Class Representatives at their first meeting.
- 4.2.3. The electoral process is to be conducted by the IEB.
- 4.2.4 Any Class Representative is eligible to run for the position of Faculty Representative for their respective faculty. The electoral process shall run as follows:
  - 4.2.4.1 The floor shall be opened for nominations;
  - 4.2.4.2 A nominee shall either accept or decline the nomination;
  - 4.2.4.3 The nominees shall be afforded the opportunity to present a short motivational speech to the class;
  - 4.2.4.4 The nominees are to leave the room while the Class Representatives cast their votes through a ballot or by a show of hands.
- 4.2.5 A Faculty Representative's tenure is to be for a period of one academic year.
- 4.2.6 The IEB Complaints Officer shall allow Class Representatives a period of a week after the elections in which to lodge any complaints with regards to any procedural irregularities pertaining to the elections.
- 4.2.7 In the event of a vacancy the IEB shall facilitate a by-election until the vacancy is filled.

#### **Article 4.3 General and Special Meetings**

- 4.3.1 The SRC Academic Councillor shall convene a general meeting of the Class Representatives at least once a semester.
- 4.3.2 The SRC Academic Councillor shall convene a general meeting of the Faculty Representatives at least once a term.
- 4.3.3 The SRC Academic Councillor may call a special meeting of the Faculty or Class Representatives, when necessary.
- 4.3.4 Any member of the SRC may attend any meeting of the Faculty or Class Representatives in observance.
- 4.3.5 The following records are to be kept:
  - 4.3.5.1 All general and special meetings shall have an agenda;
  - 4.3.5.2 Minutes of all general and special meetings are to be taken by an elected member of the meeting;
  - 4.3.5.3 Copies of these records are to be held by the SRC Academic Councillor and the SRC Vice-President.
- 4.3.6 Quorum for a general or special meeting of the Faculty or Class Representatives shall be 50%. In the event of quorum not being reached, the draft minutes of the meeting shall be circulated to all Faculty or Class Representatives, who shall be given an opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, where after the minutes and decisions shall be taken as confirmed.
- 4.3.7 Roles, Powers and Duties of a Class Representative:
  - 4.3.7.1 A class representative must be afforded the respect and value which comes from being a democratically elected representative.
  - 4.3.7.2. Class Representatives must:
    - 4.3.7.2.1 Facilitate the efficient communication of their respective classes concerns to the lecturer, and/or the Head of Department;
    - 4.3.7.2.2 Actively participate in dispute resolutions between their class and the Department;
    - 4.3.7.2.3 Effectively communicate, to their class, any information from the SRC as directed by the SRC Academic Councillor;
    - 4.3.7.2.4 4.3.7.2.4. Meet with their current lecturer regularly to maintain lines of communication and to convey any class related issues or concerns;

- 4.3.7.2.5 Patiently and equitably listen to any complaints or concerns relayed to them by their class;
- 4.3.7.2.6 Serve as a first-class role model for their fellow classmates and thus must uphold the highest level of studiousness and behaviour;
- 4.3.7.2.7 Follow all reasonable directives promulgated by the SRC Academic Councillor.
- 4.3.8 Class Representatives may:
  - 4.3.8.1 Put forward suggestions as to the conduct and structure of their lectures and courses;
  - 4.3.8.2 Submit class objections, complaints and suggestions regarding academic resource material;
  - 4.3.8.3 Call a meeting of their classmates to facilitate discussion regarding class, course and academic matters.

#### **Article 4.4 Roles, Powers and Duties of a Faculty Representative**

- 4.4.1 A faculty representative must be afforded the respect and value which comes from being a democratically elected representative.
- 4.4.2 Faculty Representatives must:
  - 4.4.2.1 Conduct themselves in accordance with schedule 3 of the is Constitution;
  - 4.4.2.2 Facilitate a meeting of the Class Representatives in their respective faculties once a term;
  - 4.4.2.3 Patiently and equitably listen to any complaints or concerns relayed to them by the Class Representatives;
  - 4.4.2.4 Effectively communicate the any concerns, complaints and suggestions, from the Class Representatives, to the faculty;
  - 4.4.2.5 Facilitate the efficient communication of their respective classes concerns to the Dean of Faculty.
- 4.4.3 A Faculty Representative is a full sitting member of the Faculty Board of their respective Faculty.

#### **Article 4.5 Removal from Office**

- 4.5.1 A Faculty or Class Representative may be removed from office in the event that they have failed to uphold their duties and responsibilities as defined in this policy or have acted in a manner which brings the SRC or the University's name into disrepute.
- 4.5.2 A Faculty or Class Representative shall be removed from office by a two-thirds majority vote by the Class Representatives.
- 4.5.3 In the event that a Faculty or Class Representative has been removed from office, the HOD shall facilitate a by-election process.
- 4.5.4 Faculty or Class Representative shall cease to be representatives when they deregister from their departments/Faculty.

### **CHAPTER 5 HOUSE AND HALL STUDENT REPRESENTATION**

#### **Article 5.1 House Representation**

- 5.1.1 Every House shall elect or appoint house representatives which, in accordance with its Hall Constitution, shall serve and represent its students and act as an advisory committee to the House Warden.
- 5.1.2 The Hall Senior Student or SRC Hall Rep shall be a member of the Student Parliament.
- 5.1.3 The exact procedures and portfolios available for election or appointment shall be left to the individual House to decide.

#### **Article 5.2 Hall Representation**

- 5.2.1 Every Hall shall elect or appoint a Hall Senior/Head Student and an SRC Hall representative who,



in accordance with its Hall Constitution and with other members of the Hall Committee, shall be an advisory committee to the Hall Wardens.

5.2.2. The Hall Senior or SRC Hall representatives shall be a member of the Student Parliament.

**Article 5.3 Notification of election**

5.3.1 The Hall Warden or their nominee shall be responsible for informing the SRC Student Development and Support Officer, within one week of election or appoint, of the names and contact details of all student members of the Hall and House Committees.

**Article 5.4 Meetings**

5.4.1 The SRC Residence Councillor shall co-ordinate a meeting of all House and Hall Senior/Head Students at least once a term and as and when is necessary.

5.4.2 These meetings may coincide with a meeting of the Board of Residences.

**Article 5.5 SRC Residence Representative Committee**

5.5.1 Each Hall will elect one individual to serve on the SRC Residence Representative Committee.

5.5.2 These elections shall take place at the same time as the SRC general elections, unless a by-election needs to be held.

5.5.3 The Postgraduate Village and the Oppidan Hall are not considered to be Halls for the purposes of this election.

5.5.4 The role of the Committee is to advise the Residence Councillor and to act as a liaison between the halls and the Residence Councillor.

5.5.5 The Residence Councillor and the Residence Representative Committee shall meet once a fortnight.

5.5.6 Each Hall Representative shall fulfil the functions as outlined in his or her Hall Constitution and any additional function that the Residence Representative Committee may determine.

5.5.7 The Residence Councillor shall chair all Residence Representative Committee meetings, unless unable to do so, in which case the Residence Representative Committee shall elect an alternative chair from among its members.

5.5.8 In the event of a tied vote within the Residence Representative Committee, the Residence Councillor shall have a casting vote.

**CHAPTER 6 SRC DISCIPLINARY BOARD**

*The SRC Disciplinary Board (hereinafter referred to as “the Board”) shall at all times be subject to the provisions of the Student Disciplinary Code.*

**Article 6.1 Composition**

6.1.1 The SRC shall invite the penultimate and final year LLB students of the Law Faculty to submit applications to sit on the SRC Disciplinary Board.

6.1.2 The applications must include the applicant’s Curriculum Vitae.

6.1.3 The criteria for being chosen include practical experience at the University Law Clinic and/or vacation legal practice experience.

6.1.4 The SRC shall elect five persons as permanent members of the Board.

6.1.5 The term of office of a member of the SRC Disciplinary Board shall be from January of each year until December of that same year.

6.1.6 The SRC shall elect one of the five persons as the Chairperson of the SRC Disciplinary Board:

6.1.6.1 The Chairperson will appoint their Secretary from this team;

6.1.6.2 The Chairperson will chair all proceedings of the hearings and conduct of the Board;

6.1.6.3 In the absence of the Chairperson, the Chairperson’s nominee will convene and preside over the proceedings.

6.1.7 The SRC Disciplinary Board cannot convene any proceedings without the presence of a designated SRC member, who shall have observer status only.

- 6.1.8 A member of the Board may only be removed from office by the SRC in consultation with the Law Student's Council on grounds of serious misconduct.
- 6.1.9 In the event of a vacancy on the SRC Disciplinary Board the SRC shall choose a replacement from applications already in its possession.
- 6.1.10 Subject to the provisions of the Students' Disciplinary Code, the SRC may summon a student to appear before the Board to answer any disciplinary charge which the Board is competent to try.

#### **Article 6.2 Functions and Powers**

- 6.2.1 General
  - 6.2.1.1 The Board is competent, upon application and within its area of jurisdiction or with regard to substructures that receive funds from the SRC, to:
    - 6.2.1.1.1 Review the proceedings, actions and Resolutions of: 6.2.1.1.1.1 Student governance substructures; 6.2.1.1.1.2 Members of student governance structures.
  - 6.2.1.2 Settle disputes relating to the:
    - 6.2.1.2.1 validity and fairness of Student Governance substructure elections;
- 6.2.2 Discipline
  - 6.2.2.1.1 validity of referenda;
  - 6.2.2.1.2 validity of resolutions taken by student governance substructures.
  - 6.2.2.1.3 interpretation of this Constitution as well of student governance substructures;
  - 6.2.2.1.4 interpretation of the rules of the SRC and
  - 6.2.2.1.5 any other matter for which provision has been made in this Constitution.
  - 6.2.2.2 After convicting a student, the Board may at their discretion impose one or more of the following punishments:
    - 6.2.2.2.1 A monetary payment to compensate any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to the person who suffered from the offense;
    - 6.2.2.2.2 Exclusion from entering the Bantu Stephen Biko Building for a period not exceeding one month;

#### **Article 6.3 Procedure at Hearings**

- 6.3.1 The model of the proceedings shall mimic a system that makes use of a Proctor or the one described in the Student Disciplinary Code.
- 6.3.2. In the event that a person, who has been served with a notification of an SRC Disciplinary Board hearing, cannot attend the hearing, they shall notify the SRC Disciplinary Board's Chairperson.
- 6.3.3 In the event that a person fails to attend a hearing, the hearing may proceed in their absence (see Rule 10.5 of the Student Disciplinary Code).

#### **Article 6.4 Quorum**

- 6.4.1. A quorum shall be three members.

#### **Article 6.5. Case Records**

- 6.5.1 A case record must be written for every hearing before the Board.
- 6.5.2 The case record shall contain the following information:
  - 6.5.2.1 The list of members present during the hearing
  - 6.5.2.2 The accused(s): name, address and student number
  - 6.5.2.3 The charge: in terms of the Student Disciplinary Code
  - 6.5.2.4 The date of hearing
  - 6.5.2.5 The plea: The accused(s) plea to the charge
  - 6.5.2.6 Verdict
  - 6.5.2.7 Facts found proven
  - 6.5.2.8 Mitigating factors
  - 6.5.2.9 Aggravating factors

6.5.2.10 Penalty (the penalty issued needs to be enforced within 21 days of receipt of the case record which will be sent to the accused(s)).

6.5.2.11 Reasons for penalty

6.5.2.12 The signatures of those listed in above in point 6.5.2.1.

6.5.2.13 The date that the case record is signed.

6.5.3 Copies of the case record are to be sent to the accused(s), the SRC office, the Director of Student Affairs and the University Investigating Officer and kept for the Board's own records.

6.5.4 A further copy, in which the names of those involved have been deleted, shall be posted on notice board(s) designated by the Director of Student Affairs for that purpose.

#### **Article 6.6 Findings**

6.6.1 A finding shall be made by a majority vote from the present members.

6.6.2 All members who agree with the findings and reasons shall sign and put into writing.

#### **Article 6.7 Admission to Hearings**

6.7.1 SRC Disciplinary Board hearings shall take place in camera.

6.7.2 Members of the Student Body shall be entitled to attend non-disciplinary SRC Disciplinary Board hearings.

6.7.3 A non-member of the Student Body may apply in writing to the Board for permission to attend a non-disciplinary Board hearing.

6.7.4 In the event of the Board ordering, upon application of one of the parties, at a non-disciplinary hearing, that the proceedings before them, or part thereof, take place in camera, all spectators shall leave the hearing.

#### **Article 6.8 Reviews**

6.8.1 If upon consideration of the disciplinary record, the student wishes for the case to be reviewed, they must make such a request to the Director of Student Affairs within five days of receiving the case record.

6.8.2 The procedure to be followed will, thereafter, be in accordance with rule 19.4 of the Student Disciplinary Code.

#### **Article 6.9 Termination of Membership**

6.9.1 A person shall cease to be a member of the Board if:

6.9.1.1 A written resignation letter has been accepted by the SRC Secretary-General

6.9.1.2 That person ceases to be a member of the Student Body

6.9.1.3 A disciplinary action has taken place and the Board member is found guilty, whereupon immediate termination of membership will occur.

### **CHAPTER 7 STUDENT PARLIAMENT**

#### **Article 7.1 Composition**

The Speaker, the Deputy Speaker and the Secretary of Student Parliament shall be non-SRC members elected by the Student Parliament at its first seating of the new academic year. These three members shall form the Student Parliament Executive: The SRC Vice-President shall be the convener of Student Parliament.

Student Parliament comprises of:

7.1.1 SRC members

7.1.2 The Chairpersons of Student Disciplinary Board and of the Student Defence Council

7.1.3 The Hall Senior/Head Students OR SRC Hall Representatives

7.1.4 Four representatives from the Oppidan Union (out of that selection, there must be one sub-warden and three elected representatives other than the SRC Oppidan Councillor)

7.1.6 The Faculty Representatives

7.1.7 The SRC Societies Council

7.1.8 The Students Sports Council

## **Article 7.2 Aims and Objectives**

- 7.2.1 The Student Parliament shall serve as the collective voice for all student governance substructures within Rhodes University.
- 7.2.2 It shall serve to keep the SRC, its members, and student governance structures accountable, transparent in their principles and values as laid out in Schedule 5 of this Constitution.
- 7.2.3 They may make recommendations to and receive reports from the SRC and the necessary substructures.

Overall, the necessary parties must have transparent communication between one another.

## **Article 7.3 Constituting the Student Parliament**

- 7.3.1 In February, the SRC Vice-President shall call for a sitting of Student Parliament at a predetermined time and place.
- 7.3.2 As soon as the Student Parliament members are summoned, and once the Student Parliament Executive, the IEB Impartial Officer shall declare the first sitting of Student Parliament duly constituted in provision of this Constitution and the Student Parliament Policy.

## **Article 7.4 Term of Office**

- 7.4.1 The term of office of Student Parliament shall be for the duration of the academic year.

## **Article 7.5 Functions and Powers**

Student Parliament shall:

- 7.5.1 Make recommendations to the SRC on policy matters
- 7.5.2 Facilitate communication between its members
- 7.5.3 Exercise all other powers allowed under this Constitution
- 7.5.4 Monitor the functioning of the SRC for the Student Body any SRC related reports

## **Article 7.6 Obligations**

Student Parliament shall:

- 7.6.1 Act in accordance with the rules of the University when exercising its powers
- 7.6.2 Behave in a manner that conforms to the Student Code of Ethics contained in Schedule 5 of this Constitution
- 7.6.3 Strive for co-operation and communication between the different student governance substructures

## **Article 7.7 Obligations of Members**

Members shall:

- 7.7.1 Serve individually and collectively the interests of the Student Body when formulating policy or making decisions on matters concerning the Student Body
- 7.7.2 Perform the duties and functions allocated to them by the Student Parliament within reasonable deadlines
- 7.7.3 Ensure effective communication in adopting any Student Parliament resolutions, once they have committed to relevant constituencies

## **Article 7.8 Sitzings of Student Parliament**

- 7.8.1 Ordinary Sitzings
  - 7.8.1.1 Ordinary sittings of Student Parliament shall be held at least once per term and all members shall attend such meetings.
  - 7.8.1.2 According to the University calendar, the Speaker shall give at least seven days' notice of the date, time and venue of such a sitting, with the disclosure of a provisional agenda.
  - 7.8.1.3 Members shall be granted a reasonable opportunity of not less than five days to place items on the agenda. The opportunity will close 48 hours before the sitting.
  - 7.8.1.4 The elected Speaker shall chair the sittings of Student Parliament and, in the absence of the Speaker, the elected Deputy Speaker shall chair the sitting of Student Parliament.
  - 7.8.1.5 The Speaker shall not possess an ordinary vote unless they form part of Student

Parliament as provided for in article 7.1 of this Constitution.

7.8.1.6 The Speaker shall only have a casting vote in the event of a deadlock.

7.8.1.7 The generally accepted rules pertaining to meetings of the SRC, as outlined in Schedule 8 of this Constitution, shall apply to all sittings of Student Parliament.

**7.8.2 Extraordinary Sittings**

7.8.2.1 An extra-ordinary sitting of Student Parliament shall be held if the SRC Vice-President or the Speaker calls such a sitting, or at least 5 members submit a written request to the Speaker for such a sitting, accompanied by a written motivation for consideration at the sitting of Student Parliament;

7.8.2.2 Notice of the date, time and venue of an extra-ordinary sitting of Student Parliament, with disclosure of the agenda, shall be given at least twenty-four hours before such a sitting.

**7.8.3 Quorum**

7.8.3.1 Quorum shall constitute two thirds of all members of Student Parliament.

7.8.3.2 In the event of a quorum not being met, the sitting of Student Parliament shall continue with those members present. Draft minutes of the sitting shall be circulated to all members of Student Parliament who will then be given the opportunity to object any decisions taken by those present within 48 hours, where-after they shall be considered as present by the Executive of Student Parliament.

**Article 7.9 Vote of No Confidence**

7.9.1 A motion of no confidence, may be instituted against an SRC member or a Student Parliament Executive member.

7.9.2 For the motion to be considered, it must meet the following requirements:

7.9.2.1 Be tabled as the only agenda item for the sitting of Student Parliament.

7.9.2.2 Majority of Student Parliament members in agreement with the motion.

7.9.2.3 Substantial evidence must be provided to Student Parliament members detailing the reasons why there should be a motion of no confidence as guided by the Constitution of Student Governance.

7.9.2.4 Detailed reasons must have been given to the member concerned at least five working days before the sitting.

7.9.3 During the defence meeting, the Speaker of Student Parliament, SRC president and an IEB representative will be present whereby the member concerned will be given an opportunity to present their defence.

7.9.4 The Speaker of Student Parliament will present the reasons as to why Student Parliament has set this motion of no confidence in the sitting.

7.9.5 In the case where the motion is against the Speaker; the Deputy Speaker will be the one who gives the members of Student Parliament the reasons for this motion.

7.9.6 After the reasons have been given for the motion of no confidence, the members of Student Parliament will vote in a secret ballot. Two thirds of Student Parliament votes need to be in favour for the motion to pass.

7.9.7 After an SRC member, or a Student Parliament Executive member have been voted out, the SRC President shall call a Student Body meeting to explain the reasons behind the vote of no confidence.

**Article 7.10 Minutes of Student Parliament**

7.10.1 The minutes of Student Parliament shall be circulated within three days after the sitting.

7.10.2 The Student Parliament Secretary shall keep minutes of each Student Parliament sitting.

7.10.3 The meeting's minutes shall be submitted and will await for arrival upon the following sitting of Student Parliament, and thereafter signed by the Speaker.

7.10.4 Once the minutes have been approved, they will be available upon request by any interested parties within three days of its approval.

7.10.5 A document register shall record all documents considered by Student Parliament and be

available upon request by any interested party.

**Article 7.11 Recommendations to the SRC**

- 7.11.1 Recommendations may only be made in respect of matters disclosed by the agenda, provided that other matters may be added to the agenda if there is no objection thereto by present members.
- 7.11.2 A recommendation shall be adopted by a majority vote.

**Article 7.12 Admissions to Student Parliament**

- 7.12.1 Members of the Student Body, who are not part of the Student Parliament, may attend and observe Student Parliament meetings. Their rights are further defined below.
- 7.12.2 The Student Body may apply in writing to the Student Parliament Speaker about a particular matter disclosed on the agenda; such requests may reasonably be granted or refused. All applications and their outcomes are to be publicised at the sitting in question.
- 7.12.3 A non-member of the Student Body qualifies to perform the same privilege outlined in sub-point 7.12.4
- 7.12.4 The Speaker of Student Parliament may at their discretion, invite a non-member of the Student Body to attend and/or to speak during the meeting.

**Article 7.13 Termination of Membership**

A person shall cease to be a member of the Student Parliament if:

- 7.13.1 A written notification from the particular student governance structure to that effect has been noted by Student Parliament;
- 7.13.2 They are absent without a valid excuse from two consecutive sittings;
- 7.13.3 They fail to attend without a valid excuse twenty- five percent of the scheduled Student Parliament sittings during their term of office.

## **CHAPTER 8 CONSTITUTIONAL MATTERS**

**Article 8.1 Amendments**

- 8.1.1 Any proposed amendment to this Constitution must be discussed and recommended for approval by two-thirds of the Student Parliament.
- 8.1.2 Once an amendment has been recommended for approval, it shall be publicised to the Student Body who may then submit comments to the Student Parliament regarding the proposed amendment.
- 8.1.3 The Student Parliament shall then discuss the proposed amendment in light of the comments received and recommend adjustments.
- 8.1.4 The SRC shall present final proposed amendment before the Senate and Council for approval.

**Article 8.2 Ratification**

- 8.2.1. Having been approved by two-thirds of the votes cast by the Student Parliament and recommended for approval by the SRC and accepted by Senate and Council, this Constitution and all rules properly enacted thereunder, shall become effective immediately and shall supersede all previous provisions of Student Governance.

**Article 8.3 Student Liberties**

The SRC acknowledges that we are bound to:

- 8.3.1 Freedom of association
- 8.3.2 Freedom of enquiry and expression
- 8.3.3 Student participation in Institutional Government according to the Bill of Rights (Chapter 2) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, and as outlined in Schedule 4

**Article 8.4 Constitutional Review**

- 8.4.1 This Constitution shall be reviewed every three years.
- 8.4.2 In the event that there is a particular section or chapter that needs to be reviewed before the above- mentioned period the Student Parliament shall call for a sitting that reviews that chapter.

## CHAPTER 9 RULES GOVERNING THE ELECTION OF MEMBERS TO THE SRC

SRC Elections and by-elections must take place annually in the manner prescribed by the Rhodes University Independent Electoral Board.

### SCHEDULE 1

Administrative Procedures of the SRC

The SRC will be subject to and guided by the University's financial policies and protocols.

### SCHEDULE 2

#### STUDENT LIBERTIES

The SRC acknowledges that according to the Bill of Rights (Chapter 2) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa it is bound to Student Liberties:

##### Freedom of Association

- The membership, policies and actions of a student society will be voted on by those who hold *bona fide* membership in the University community.
- Policies of student societies should be consistent with the Student Body Constitution. An affiliation with an extra mural organisation is not an adequate reason to disqualify a student society from institutional recognition, so long as the campus society complies with the SRC purpose and policies.
- Student societies shall not discriminate based on race, creed or national origin in the determination of membership, although religious qualification may be required for some societies whose aims are primarily related to the furtherance of their religious beliefs.

##### Freedom of Enquiry and Expression

- Students and student societies shall be free to discuss all questions of interest and to express opinions publicly and privately. They should be free to conduct orderly enquiry into decisions and actions that affect their environments, as well as respond to them through public expressions or demonstrations. Students and authorised student societies shall be allowed to invite and to hear other opinions on institutional policies. Institutional control over campus facilities should not be used as a device of censorship.
- The University should strive to safeguard against physical abuse of students who, by orderly and legal means, demonstrate their freedom of enquiry and expression. The university will not take disciplinary action against students who question traditional values or expose unpopular causes.

##### Student participation in Institutional Governance

- Students should be free to express, individually and collectively, their views on issues of institutional policy and of general interest where inconsistencies exist between practice and the theoretical principles outlined by the University.

### SCHEDULE 3

#### CODE OF ETHICS

In keeping with emphasising the right of all students who come to Rhodes University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge, and the recognition of student leadership. Each student should act as examples and be held to the very highest standards in terms of their behaviour, as well as including those who are part of Student Governance Sub-structures shall subscribe and seek to, live by the principles of:

**Honesty:** knowing that truthfulness and sincerity are attributes of good character and effective leadership.

**Service:** being aware of the fact that true happiness comes only through helpful service to others.

**Industriousness:** knowing that real progress can be achieved only if the mind can comprehend and the physical body ready to perform individual and community tasks.

**Humility:** being convinced that true humbleness of the spirit is the way to maintain social relationships.

**Justice:** believing that an individual must be fair and just in dealing with fellow students, and therefore they must not to condemn without hearing a defence. They must consider all factors before forming an opinion or passing judgement of another's motives.

**Cooperation:** realising that they must work closely and harmoniously with others in order to achieve success.

**Responsibility:** assuming always full responsibility for their actions and accepting opportunities to fulfil their academic, social, economic and moral obligations.

**Charitableness:** being tolerant, generous and considerate towards social relationships, as well being courteous, gentle and kind in their attitudes and actions without discrimination.

**Self-Discipline:** acting with reasonable restraint, organising time commitments and not indulging in excessive behaviour that will result in disrepute to themselves or to the University. Most importantly, Student Body leaders must embody these principles during their service.

## SCHEDULE 4

### LIST OF PORTFOLIOS

#### 1. THE PRESIDENT: EXECUTIVE MEMBER

- 1.1 The President of the SRC must have completed successfully at least 3 semesters of university study at Rhodes University to be eligible for election. The President is responsible for the following functions:
- 1.2 Co-ordinate the functions of the SRC as a formal University Body.
- 1.3 Carry out the functions laid down in the SRC Constitution.
- 1.4 Liaise with the University authorities on matters relevant to the SRC, the Student Body and individual students.
- 1.5 Together with the Secretary-General, the SRC President fulfils an important liaison and public relations function, on behalf of the SRC.
- 1.6 Ensure a positive image of the SRC and ensures that all SRC members uphold the code of ethics.
- 1.7 Has the right to issue press releases or issue permission to members to issue press releases.
- 1.8 Shall set aside a reasonable amount of time to consult with members of the Student Body or the SRC, or to consider student matters.
- 1.9 Ensure that SRC members set aside a reasonable amount of time to the Student Body for consultation on matters within the ambit of their portfolio and also on other matters when the exigency of the situation calls for consultation.
- 1.10 Act as a liaison between students and University structures on concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations.
- 1.11 Chair all SRC, Statutory, extraordinary and emergency meetings, unless unable to do so in which case the Vice-President or Secretary-General shall deputise.
- 1.12 Compile an annual report on the activities of the SRC during their term of office. The report must be submitted to the Director of Student Affairs no later than one month after the induction of the new SRC.
- 1.13 Oversee the activities of the Vice-President, Secretary-General and the Treasurer-General.
- 1.14 The President shall be accountable to the SRC Executive and to the SRC in respect of the performance of their functions.

#### 2. VICE-PRESIDENT: EXECUTIVE MEMBER

The Vice-President is responsible for the following functions:

- 2.1 Chair all SRC Executive, Statutory, and Emergency Meetings in the absence of the President.
- 2.2 Comply with reasonable instructions from the President.
- 2.3 Represent the President when required to do so.
- 2.4 Deal with all matters concerning the Student Body.



- 2.5 Take responsibility for the internal workings and functioning of the SRC.
- 2.6 Ensure that task lists, responsibility charts and other such planning is done/implemented and the results of this filed.
- 2.7 Ensure that systems are created to ensure the optimal implementation of the SRC's plans of action.
- 2.8 Advise the President and the SRC on internal matters.
- 2.9 Take responsibility for an on-going structures audit.
- 2.10 Act as a liaison between students and University structures on concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations.
- 2.11 Establish clusters or portfolio committees which hand in reports monthly on their functions.
- 2.12 Chair Internal and External cluster meetings which will be held once each month.
- 2.13 Oversee the activities of the Internal Cluster, namely the Secretary-General, Oppidan Councillor, the Residence Councillor, Academic Councillor, and the Societies Councillor; External Cluster: Media Councillor, the International Councillor, the Activism and Transformation Councillor, the Environmental Councillor and the Community Engagement Councillor; Financial Cluster: Projects Manager, Student Benefits and Sponsorship.

### 3. SECRETARY-GENERAL: EXECUTIVE MEMBER

The Secretary-General is responsible for the following functions:

- 3.1 Chair of the SRC Executive meetings, and in their absence the Executive shall elect a chair besides the President.
- 3.2 Chair of all SRC statutory, emergency meetings in the absence of the President and Vice-President, unless unable to do so in which case the SRC shall elect a nominee.
- 3.3 In conjunction with the Vice-President, take responsibility for the internal workings, administration and functioning of the SRC. This includes inter alia:
  - 3.3.1 Agendas and minutes (and published via the Student Parliament)
  - 3.3.2 Grievances procedures
  - 3.3.3 All policies relating to SRC's working
  - 3.3.4 Overall responsibility for liaison with SRC staff members
  - 3.3.5 Responsibility for the utilisation and maintenance of the Student Bantu Stephen Biko Building's offices.
- 3.4 Ensure that systems are created to ensure the optimal implementation of the SRC's plans of actions.
- 3.5 Ensure that appropriate linkage/liaison mechanisms exist between the Executive, Secretariat, SRC and the Student Parliament.
- 3.6 Receive and co-ordinates termly portfolio reports and is responsible for a portfolio assessment which shall be communicated to the Student Parliament.
- 3.7 Report to the SRC any recommendation made by the Student Parliament to the SRC.
- 3.8 Advise the President and Vice- President on internal matters.
- 3.9 Work with and liaise with the Media Councillor to be the spokesperson of the SRC.
- 3.10 Fulfil all external activities involving the SRC including such activities as involve:
- 3.11 contact with other Educational Institutions
- 3.12 overall South African political and social developments
- 3.13 any other national or international events which affect students
- 3.14 Collate relevant information on current affairs as required by the SRC.
- 3.15 Maintain contact with SAUS.
- 3.16 Report, and be accountable to, the Presidency of the SRC.

### 4. TREASURER-GENERAL: EXECUTIVE MEMBER

The Treasurer must have passed (at least) Accounting I, and is responsible for the following functions:

- 4.1 Administer the finance operations of the SRC in conjunction with the SRC Financial Administrator.
  - 4.2 Spearhead the budgeting process.
  - 4.3 Responsibility for and assists in the banking functions of the SRC.
  - 4.4 Present interim financial statements to the SRC once a term and make recommendations based on these.
  - 4.5 Together with the SRC Financial Administrator, shall interact with the University Audit Committee.
  - 4.6 Co-ordinate all fundraising efforts of the SRC and assist the Student Benefits and Sponsorship Councillor where possible.
  - 4.7 Advise and assist SRC substructures with their financial transactions and ensure their familiarity with financial guidelines and procedures.
  - 4.8 Issue an annual budget report.
  - 4.9 Issue an updated budget report, within five working days of receipt of such a petition requesting such a report, signed by at least fifty members of the student body.
5. ACADEMIC COUNCILLOR
- 5.1 Must be in good academic standing as per Chapter 9 of the Constitution.
  - 5.2 Ensures the development of an environment conducive to academic excellence.
  - 5.3 Ensures appropriate and constant liaison amongst staff and students at faculty and departmental level.
  - 5.4 Creates or enhances education initiatives within the university and within the region and our country.
  - 5.5 Participate in any academic planning.
  - 5.6 Assists the SRC in keeping abreast of debates on academic issues.
  - 5.7 Acts as a liaison between students and University structures concerns relating to academic issues.
  - 5.8 Oversees the activities of class representatives, faculty representatives and mentors and academic representatives.
  - 5.9 Assists students in academic appeals.
6. ACTIVISM AND TRANSFORMATION COUNCILLOR
- 6.1 Co-ordinates all activism programmes on behalf of the SRC and is the spearhead and driving force for the SRC's transformation programme.
  - 6.2 Co-ordinates all activism programmes on behalf of the SRC and is the spearhead and driving force for the SRC's transformation programme.
  - 6.3 Organises an awareness week on an appropriate topical issue.
  - 6.4 Represents the SRC on transformation forums and equity forums.
  - 6.5 Liaises with South African Universities Students on National Transformation Programmes.
  - 6.6 Shall assist student representatives at a faculty level to engage transformation and other concerns, especially those involving curriculum development.
  - 6.7 Creates relevant forums and other appropriate mechanisms for the engagement of transformation debate.
  - 6.8 Oversees the functioning of transformation representatives in the residence system.
  - 6.9 Maintains good relations with Equity and Institutional Culture Office.
7. COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT COUNCILLOR
- 7.1 Must have at least one certificate of participation from the Rhodes University Community Engagement.

- 7.2 Must have at least one certificate of participation from the Rhodes University Community Engagement.
- 7.3 Co-ordinates SRC Community Interaction Programmes.
- 7.4 Represents the SRC in Community Interaction Programmes.
- 7.5 Initiates and sustains Community Interaction Programmes.
- 7.6 Liaises between the SRC, Rhodes University Community Engagement and Community Engagement Representatives.
- 7.7 Fosters a good relationship with the Rhodes University Community Engagement Office.

#### 8. ENVIRONMENTAL COUNCILLOR

- 8.1 Shall represent the SRC on the Environmental Committee.
- 8.2 Shall represent the SRC on the Environmental Committee.
- 8.3 Shall engage with the University on the implementation of the Environmental Policy.
- 8.4 Co-ordinates all environmental programmes on behalf of the SRC.
- 8.5 Promotes environmental awareness within the hall system and across campus in general.
- 8.6 Ensures the incorporation of environmental issues within the curriculum by liaising with the Academic Councillor.
- 8.7 Assists students on any initiatives relating to environmental affairs.
- 8.8 Maintains a good relationship with the Safety Health and Environmental Office on all student issues with regards to safety, health and environment.
- 8.9 Oversees the functioning of the Environmental representatives.

#### 9. INTERNATIONAL AFFAIRS COUNCILLOR

- 9.1 Co-ordinates SRC International Programmes.
- 9.2 Liaises between the SRC and the International Office.
- 9.3 Convenes an International Students' Forum.
- 9.4 Initiates student exchange programmes.
- 9.5 Represents the SRC in International Forums.
- 9.6 Acts as a liaison for all concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations in relation to International students.
- 9.7 Maintains a good relationship with the International Office.

#### 10. MEDIA COUNCILLOR

- 10.1 Ensure that systems are created to ensure the optimal publication of the SRC's plans of action.
- 10.2 Ensures that appropriate liaison structures exist between the Executive, SRC and the Student Parliament.
- 10.3 Is the chief publicity agent of the SRC within the University.
- 10.4 Edits and publishes a publication that allows for the sharing of ideas and debating of issues affecting students.
- 10.5 Acts as a liaison between the SRC and student media organisations.
- 10.6 Leads the SRC media team and may outsource certain functions to this team.
- 10.7 May issue press releases in consultation with the President or Vice- President.

#### 11. OPPIDAN COUNCILLOR

- 11.1 When elected the Oppidan Councillor may not be in his or her first year of academic study at Rhodes University.
- 11.2 The Oppidan Councillor shall be elected from within their constituency.
- 11.3 The Oppidan Councillor must have been an Oppidan student for a minimum of two academic terms.
- 11.4 Chairs the Oppidan Council.

- 11.5 Shall maintain, in conjunction with the Oppidan Committee, regular contact with the Oppidan Community by means of newsletters and publications, in liaison with the Media Councillor.
- 11.6 Is responsible for informing the SRC on matters concerning the Oppidan Community.
- 11.7 Ensures availability to Oppidan students who request consultation or consideration on Oppidan matters.
- 11.8 Ensures open lines of communication between Oppidan Students, the SRC and the University Authorities.
- 11.9 Acts as a liaison between the Oppidan Committee and the SRC.
- 11.10 Acts as a liaison between the Oppidan Sub wardens and the SRC.
- 11.11 Acts as a liaison between Oppidan students and University structures for all concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations in relation to Oppidan Students.
- 11.12 Shall undertake to address off-campus safety and security concerns via the appropriate university structures and shall actively pursue the implementation of safety and security measures off campus.

## 12. POSTGRADUATE AFFAIRS COUNCILLOR

- 12.1 Must be a postgraduate student.
- 12.2 Shall be allocated a seat on Senate and University Council.
- 12.3 Shall work with the Student Benefits and Sponsorships Councillor for postgraduate funding.
- 12.4 Shall liaise with the Centre for Postgraduate Studies.
- 12.5 Shall chair the Postgraduate Forum.
- 12.6 Shall liaise between postgraduate students and the SRC.
- 12.7 Acts as a liaison between postgraduate students and university structures, concerning issues relating to postgraduate students.
- 12.8 Must create relevant forums to engage postgraduate students.

## 13. PROJECTS MANAGER

- 13.1 Acts as chair of all project planning committees that fall under the SRC.
- 13.2 Organises projects on behalf of the SRC.
- 13.3 Co-ordinates the hosting of visiting SRC's from other Institutions.
- 13.4 Co-ordinates the organisation of entertainment functions during Orientation Week.
- 13.5 Shall organise at least one function per term according to the regulations as laid down by university regulations.
- 13.6 Shall actively seek to secure sponsorship for SRC projects together with the Student Benefits Councillor.

## 14. RESIDENCE COUNCILLOR

- 14.1 Must be resident in a Rhodes University residence.
- 14.2 The Residence Councillor shall be elected from within their constituency.
- 14.3 The Residence Councillor must have been in Rhodes University residence for a minimum of a semester.
- 14.4 Is ex-officio a member of the Board of Residences.
- 14.5 Acts as a liaison between students and University structures for residential concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations.
- 14.6 Liaises with hall and house senior students and the SRC hall representatives.
- 14.7 Shall set aside a reasonable amount of time for consultation with residence students and consideration of residence matters.
- 14.8 Oversees the activities of hall residences representatives.
- 14.9 Chairs the SRC Residence Representative Committee.

- 14.10 Shall undertake to address on-campus safety and security concerns via the appropriate university structures and shall actively pursue the implementation of safety and security measures on campus.
- 14.11 Liaises between the SRC and the wardens.

#### 15. SPORTS AND SOCIETIES COUNCILLOR

- 15.1 Oversees the activities of the Societies Council and Sports Council and sports representatives.
- 15.2 Makes recommendations to the SRC for the recognition of new societies.
- 15.3 Is responsible for arranging briefings/workshops with societies on behalf of the SRC.
- 15.4 Is responsible for arranging Societies' Evening and other exhibitions on the behalf of the SRC.
- 15.5 Liaises with SRC societies.
- 15.6 Liaises with all sports clubs through the Sports Administration.
- 15.7 Acts as the SRC representative on Sports Administration meetings.
- 15.8 Must be a member of the University Sport South Africa Student Parliament.

#### 16. STUDENT BENEFITS AND SPONSORSHIP COUNCILLOR

- 16.1 Investigates and attends to all issues that are associated with the development of benefits or amenities for the Student Body.
- 16.2 Seeks to ensure that existing student benefits are implemented.
- 16.3 Pursues individual requests from students for benefits or amenities, either within the residence structure (in liaison with the Residence Councillor) or campus life in general in liaison with the President or the Treasurer-General.
- 16.4 Shall set aside a reasonable amount of time for consultation with students and consideration of student benefit matters.
- 16.5 In conjunction with the Treasurer-General, organises fundraising activities and actively searches for sponsorship for SRC activities.
- 16.6 Liaises with other SRC members with a view to securing benefits such as discounts at stores, student nights and other such benefits.
- 16.7 Must ensure that the student body is made aware of all benefits available to them.
- 16.8 Liaises with relevant stakeholders.
- 16.9 Assists students with financial appeals.
- 16.10 Sits on the Financial Aid Committee.

### SCHEDULE 5

#### SRC STANDING RULES OF ORDER

*The conduct and behaviour of members at meetings are set out below. In the case where there is disagreement and these rules require interpreting, the Chairperson shall interpret. Where there is doubt, the SRC may consult Robert's Rules of Order, the modern edition, whose rules the SRC shall generally follow.*

1. The business of the meeting shall be conducted in accordance with the rules that appear below.
2. The Chairperson shall interpret these Standing Rules by means of formal ruling either at their own instance or when requested to do so by a member of the SRC or Student Body. Where no provision is made in these rules to cover a point of procedure that may arise, the Chairperson may rule on any such point.
3. Any member of the SRC or Student Body may contest the Chairperson's ruling and may explain his or her objection. The Chairperson shall have a right to explain his or her ruling after which it shall be put to the vote without further discussion. If the Chairperson's ruling is not upheld, this shall not be deemed a vote of no confidence in the chair.

#### 5.1 Chairperson

The President of the SRC or in his or her absence, the Vice-President shall be Chairperson of the

SRC or Student Body Meetings.

The Vice-President, or any other member of the Executive or SRC, may be called upon by the Chairperson to preside.

Before a vote takes place, all questions shall be put to the meeting by the Chairperson, who shall after the vote then declare whether the question has been carried or lost.

The Chairperson shall have both a deliberative and casting vote.

These Standing Rules relating to the "Chairperson" shall not be altered except by a two thirds majority of the SRC or Student Body.

## **5.2 Amendment or Suspension of Rules**

5.2.1 These rules shall be amended by a motion as constituted, provided twenty-four hours' notice of such motion is given, and except where it is specifically stated in the Standing Rules that a two-thirds majority shall be sufficient.

5.2.2 Any rule may be suspended by a simple majority of the SRC or Student Body, except where it is specifically stated in the Standing Rules and that a two-thirds majority is required, by a motion passed without notice having been given.

5.2.3 Rules 5.2.1 and 5.2.2 shall require a two-thirds majority of the SRC or Student Body for amendment, but may be suspended by a motion passed without having been given.

## **5.3 Agenda**

5.3.1 The agenda shall be determined by the SRC Executive, and presented to the SRC or Student Body at least twenty-four hours before the meeting.

5.3.2 Amendments to the Agenda, after the Agenda has been presented to the SRC or Student Body, may be made without notice by a simple majority of the SRC or Student Body.

The usual order of the Agenda shall be:

- a) Attendance
- b) Leave of Absence
- c) Other Matters for the Agenda
- d) Confirmation of Minutes
- e) Matters Arising
- f) To note the report of the SRC Executive
- g) University Committees - matters for information
- h) Any other business

5.3.3 The Agenda shall conform to the standard form of University agendas as per the sample attached.

## **5.4 Quorum**

5.4.1 At general meetings of the Student Body, five percent of the full student body qualified to vote shall constitute a quorum.

5.4.2 At meetings of the SRC, fifty percent of the full SRC shall constitute a quorum.

5.4.3 At meetings of the SRC Executive or SRC Secretariat or SRC Disciplinary Board, three members shall constitute a quorum.

5.4.4 At meetings of the Student Parliament, one third of the full Student Parliament shall constitute a quorum.

5.4.5 In the event of there not being a quorum at any meeting, the meeting may elect to continue with those members present and the draft minutes shall be circulated to all members of the Student Parliament (in the case of a general Student Body or Student Parliament meeting) or the respective SRC Committee (in terms of the SRC, SRC Executive, or SRC Secretariat) who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, where after they would be taken as confirmed.

5.4.6 Once a meeting has been declared quorate, it remains quorate even if members leave during the course of business, there by resulting in a lack of a quorum as defined above.

## 5.5 Voting

- 5.4.7 Voting shall be by show of hands, except where the SRC or Student Body has accepted by a two-thirds majority that voting on any motion shall be by ballot. Such acceptance may only take place after the above motion has been tabled but before it has been moved.
- 5.4.8 Observers
- 5.5.2.1 With the permission of the SRC, by simple majority, observers may speak, but may not vote, at a meeting of the SRC.
- 5.5.2.2 The Observers must give reasons for wishing to speak and may not rise on any point except to deliver his or her specific address or to clarify on that address.
- 5.5.2.3 Any person who is not a registered student at the University may not attend a Student Body meeting without the prior permission of the Chairperson; such a person may be given speaking rights by the Chairperson of the meeting but may not vote, and may not rise on any point except to deliver his or her specific address or to clarify on that address.

## 5.6 Conduct of Meetings

- 5.6.1 Any member may bring any matter before the SRC by submitting a written motion to the Executive at least five days before the meeting of the SRC.
- 5.6.2 Whenever an amendment is duly moved and seconded, that amendment, or the latest, if several amendments are moved and seconded, must first be voted on. If there is a majority in favour of the amendment, the original motion is lost. The amendment then becomes the substantive motion. An amendment to this amended version of the original (now the substantive motion) may be moved. Any amendment to the original motion not yet voted on which can, with the necessary changes, be treated as an amendment to the now substantive motion is voted on in order of priority, the later preceding the earlier. When no further amendment is offered to an amended motion, the amended motion, which has become the substantive motion, is voted on as the substantive motion in order to discover whether a majority prefer it to the status quo.
- 5.6.3 Voting shall take place by a show of hands, unless a member requests, or the chair directs, that a ballot shall be taken. Members shall address the chair and shall not, without the permission of the chair, speak for more than seven consecutive minutes.
- 5.6.4 If two or more members simultaneously address the chair, the chair shall decide the order of precedence.
- 5.6.5 All questions put to the meeting by members of the SRC must be put through the chair who may decline to put any questions.
- 5.6.6 It shall be open for any member of the SRC to move that the subject under discussion shall be dealt with in committee, and, if seconded, such motion shall be put without further discussion. Whenever, in the opinion of any member, any matter has been sufficiently discussed, that member may:
- Move that the question be now put, or
  - Move that the SRC proceed to the next business on the agenda.
- Either motion, if seconded, shall be put to the vote without further discussion or amendment.
- If the latter motion is carried, the matter under discussion shall not be further discussed at that meeting, and may not be raised again at any subsequent meeting except by way of a fresh notice of motion.

## 5.7 Minutes

- 5.7.1 Accurate minutes shall be kept of every SRC and Student Body Meeting, and shall conform to the standard form of University Minutes as per the sample attached.
- 5.7.2 The minutes shall contain the following information:
- 5.7.2.1 The ratification of the minutes of the previous meeting, plus any matters

- arising therefrom.
- 5.7.2.2 The text of every motion and amendment moved and accepted by the Chairperson with the motion was carried, lost or withdrawn, whether the motion was correlated and the number of votes cast in favour of it and against it, in addition to the number of abstentions.
- 5.7.2.3 Where a member desires it, the fact that a particular member voted for or against, abstained from voting or declined to vote on a particular motion.
- 5.7.2.4 A report on who was presiding over the meeting and of any changes which took place in the occupancy of the chair.
- 5.7.2.5 Ruling by the Chairperson on the interpretation of the Constitution and, where the Chairperson directs, on matters of procedure.
- 5.7.2.6 Recommendations put forward by members of the SRC or Student Body where it is agreed that these should be minuted.
- 5.7.2.7 Such explanations regarding the procedure followed by the SRC or Student Body as may be necessary to make other information given in minutes fully comprehensible.
- 5.7.2.8 5.7.2.8. Summaries of speeches or any questions which the SRC or Student Body requests, by a vote taken without discussion.
- 5.7.2.9 A set of minutes of each session shall be filed in a safe and proper place together with a copy of any reports presented.
- 5.7.2.10 Minutes will be sent to all members of the SRC, the SRC Student Development and Support Officer, and the Manager of Student Services.
- 5.7.2.11 Minutes shall be posted on the SRC website in a timely fashion.

## 5.8 General

- 5.8.1 These Standing Rules of Order shall apply to all meetings of the SRC.
- 5.8.2 These Standing Rules of Order shall at all times be read and interpreted in conjunction with the Constitution of the Students.

## Example of SRC Agenda

SRC-2019.4

RHODES UNIVERSITY

STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

A MEETING WILL BE HELD ON MONDAY, 30 APRIL 2012 AT 18:00 IN THE R.A. ROOM,  
RHODES UNIVERSITY.

### AGENDA

- 2019.04.01 PRESENT**
- 2019.04.02 LEAVE OF ABSENCE**
- 2019.04.03 DECLARATION OF CONFLICT OF INTEREST**
- 2019.04.04 QUORUM**
- 2019.04.05 OTHER MATTERS FOR THE AGENDA**
- 2019.04.06 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES**
- 2019.04.07 MATTERS ARISING**
  - 7.1 Student Parliament (item 2019.03.2)
  - 7.2 Student Body Meeting
  - 7.3 RmR Show (item 2019.03.7)



- 7.4 SRC Signage  
To RECEIVE a report from the Media Councillor
- 7.5 Protest  
To RECEIVE a report from the Activism and Transformation Councillor
- 7.6 Gender neutral residences

**2019.04.08 MATTERS ARISING FROM THE SRC EXECUTIVE**

8.1 Society Budget requests and finances

**2019.04.09 UPCOMING EVENTS**

**2019.04.10 REPORT BACKS**

10.1 Purple Thursdays

10.2 Equity and Institutional Culture Committee

**2019.04.11 UNIVERSITY COMMITTEES**

**2019.04.12 DATE AND TIME OF NEXT MEETING**

**2019.04.13 MEETING CLOSED**

*/mf*

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### ACADEMIC COSTUME

**Chancellor:** A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with gold lace. With this gown is worn a black velvet mortar-board cap with a gold tassel and gold lace edging.

**Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellors:** A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a silver tassel and silver lace edging.

**Vice-Principal:** A gown made of black silk and having the facings and sleeve-openings edged with silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a silver tassel and a narrow silver lace edging.

**Chairperson of Council:** A gown made of black silk and having a collar and facings of gold trimmed with black braid. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a tassel of threads of gold to match the facings.

**Members of Council:** A black gown, the front facings and bottom of the sleeves of which are trimmed with gold ribbon 25mm wide. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a black tassel.

**President of Convocation:** A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple edged with narrow silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a purple tassel.

**Registrar:** A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple 150mm wide, and with the lower half of each sleeve covered with purple, with the addition of a 10mm wide white cloth piping down the outer side of each front facing and between the purple and black on each sleeve. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board with a purple and white tassel.

**Bedellus:** A plain black gown with wrist-length sleeves. Each sleeve is trimmed with four horizontal bands of purple velvet and has at the top a purple velvet wing edged with narrow silver lace. A black mortar-board cap.

**Graduates:** Bachelors and Master's wear a black gown of the same design as that worn by Master's of Arts in the University of Oxford. Doctors of Philosophy wear a scarlet gown of the same design

as that worn by Bachelors of Arts in the University of Cambridge. Doctors other than Doctors of Philosophy, wear a scarlet gown of the same design as the scarlet full-dress gown of Doctors in the University of Oxford.

**Undergraduates:** A black gown of the design worn by scholars in the University of Oxford.

**Undergraduate diplomands:** Undergraduate gown with a black stole 110mm wide. The length of the stole alternates with bands of white and purple stripes each 10 mm wide. The left end carries a Rhodes University crest, and the right end is embroidered with the letters RU in purple. The stole awarded to fourth-year diplomands has gold tassels and the stole awarded to third-year diplomands has black tassels.

### Postgraduate Diplomands and Certificate Candidates

Bachelors gown with a black stole 110mm wide. The front of the stole has a band of white and purple stripes each 10mm wide with black tassels for NQF level 8 qualifications and white tassels for NQF level 7 qualifications. The stole is lined with the relevant Faculty colour and piped around with white cord 5mm wide.

### Hoods

Bachelors' hoods are made in an Oxford simple shape. Master's and Doctors' hoods are made in the full shape used in the University of London.

Where a Bachelor's hood is bound with a second colour, the binding is placed over the anterior and posterior sides of the hood and is 13mm wide on the inside and on the outside. The facing on the hood for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy is 50mm wide inside the anterior side at the bottom, tapering to nothing at the centre of the neckband. The edging of the Master's and Doctors' hoods is 7mm wide on the outside of the cowl and the cape.

### Hoods for different degrees

BA	Black lined with white and bound with purple
MA	Black lined and edged with white

DLitt	Scarlet lined and edged with white	MBA	Black lined with primrose yellow and bound over the cowl with lapis lazuli
BFineArt	Black lined with ultramarine blue	BEcon	Black lined with buttercup yellow
MFineArt	Black lined and edged with ultramarine blue	MEcon	Black lined and edged with buttercup yellow
BJourn	Black lined with cherry red	DEcon	Scarlet lined and edged with buttercup yellow
BMus	Black lined with adonis blue	BSocSc	Black lined with silver-grey
MMus	Black lined and edged with adonis blue	MSocSc	Black lined and edged with silver grey
DMus	Scarlet lined and edged with adonis blue	DSocSc	Scarlet lined and edged with silver grey
BSc	Black lined with bottle green	PhD	Black lined and edged with scarlet (all faculties)
BSc(InfSys)	Black lined with light green	The hood for the degree of Bachelor with Honours is the hood for the corresponding Bachelor's degree piped down the anterior side with white cord 5mm wide.	
BSc(SofDev)	Black lined with bottle green and faced with primrose yellow		
MSc	Black lined and edged with bottle green	All Doctors wear a round black velvet bonnet of the design worn at Cambridge University and trimmed with gold cord and tassels.	
DS	Scarlet lined and edged with bottle green		
BPharm	Black lined with chartreuse and faced with bottle green	Academic costume to be worn by staff members who hold qualifications from universities which do not prescribe their own academic costume:	
MSc(Pharm)	Black lined with bottle green and bound over with chartreuse		
MPharm	Black lined with chartreuse and bound over the cowl with bottle green	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The gown is of black stuff, and of the same pattern as the Bachelor's, Master's or Doctor's gown of Rhodes University, according to the qualification of the person concerned e.g. a Doctor from such a university wears a Doctor's gown and a licentiate wears a Master's gown. The gown must have a facing, 50mm wide down each side in front, in the colour distinctive of the Faculty of which the person concerned is a member.</li> <li>There is no hood.</li> </ul>	
DSc(Pharm)	Scarlet lined and edged with chartreuse		
PharmD	Black lined and edged with scarlet facing	<b>Academic costume and the dress worn with it on particular occasions</b>	
LLB	Black lined with old gold		
LLM	Black lined and edged with old gold	<b>Full ceremonial occasions:</b> Full academic costume as prescribed above. Doctors wear scarlet gowns. Men wear a dark suit, black shoes and socks, a white shirt and a plain black tie. Women wear a long-sleeved white or black dress or a white or black evening dress, black or white shoes, and stockings.	
LLD	Scarlet lined and edged with old gold		
BEd	Black lined with white and bound (prev BPrimEd) with light brown		
BEd(Hons)	Black lined with terra cotta		
MEd	Black lined and edged with terra cotta		
BAcc	Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with dark red		
BBusSc	Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with lapis lazuli		
BCom	Black lined with primrose yellow		
MCom	Black lined and edged with primrose yellow		

**Academic occasions:** Costume and dress as prescribed for full ceremonial occasions (see above), except that Doctors wear black gowns.

**Other occasions:** Black gowns are worn without hoods or caps.

Messrs T Birch and Co, Ltd, Makhanda, have been appointed the University's preferred service provider for academic dress, and have undertaken to keep adequate stocks and sell them at reasonable prices.

## AWARD OF COLOURS

**Half Colours, Colours and Honours (undergraduate only):** A student must be awarded a degree in minimum stipulated period of time (N years) with no transfer credits from any Institution or qualification.

**Half Colours:** The candidate must obtain at least 60 credits as firsts (1sts) and 60 credits at upper seconds (2A) in the final year and firsts (1sts) in half the remaining NQF credits.

**Colours:** The candidate must obtain 120 NQF credits in firsts (1sts) in the final year (3rd or 4th depending on the degree) and firsts (1sts) in half of the remaining NQF credits.

**Honours:** The candidate must obtain firsts (1sts) for every course in the qualification.

**Half-Colours Colours and Honours (postgraduate only):**

To be awarded Colours, the qualification must be awarded with distinction or awarded with 120 NQF credits in the year with first class passes.

## IN THE FACULTY OF LAW

### LLB with Distinction

1. Class 1 in 12 semester courses or their equivalent for which a candidate was registered in the penultimate and final years of study; and
2. An aggregate of at least 70% in all courses for which the candidates had been registered in the penultimate and final years of study. For the purposes of calculating the aggregate, the percentage of a full course shall carry double the weight of that of a semester course. A candidate who has obtained an average of

69.5% will be regarded as having met the 70% standard.

### Award of colours

1. For an award of half colours a candidate must have obtained first class passes in at least 6 semester courses or their equivalent in the final year of study; and obtained an aggregate of at least 70% in all the courses in the academic year for which the candidate had been registered. A candidate who has obtained an average of 69,5% or above will be regarded as having met the 70% standard.
2. For an award Colours a candidate must have been awarded the LLB degree with distinction.

### Award of Honours

For an award of Honours a candidate must have been awarded the degree of LLB with distinction and have obtained an aggregate of at least 75% in all the penultimate and final year courses for which the candidate had been registered. A candidate who has obtained an average of 74,5% or above will be regarded as having met the 75% standard.

## FINANCIAL AID

Undergraduate Financial Aid packages, consisting of loans, merit awards, bursaries and rebates, may be offered to financially needy and academically deserving South African Citizens. The criteria for eligibility and value of the financial aid offered are determined annually by the Financial Aid Committee.

For further information please consult our website <https://www.ru.ac.za/researchgateway/postgraduate/funding/>

Postgraduate Financial Aid consists of scholarships, bursaries and loans. Rhodes University has several scholarship programmes that attract excellent students and researchers to further their studies at postgraduate level. Further funding for postgraduate study is made available through NRF, WRC, MRC and other funding bodies by way of individual bursaries or project linked bursaries.

For further information please consult our website <http://www.ru.ac.za/research/postgraduates/funding>.

## CONVOCATION

Convocation is a statutory body which meets at least once a year to discuss any matters affecting the University, and to convey its resolutions to the University Council and the Senate. All graduates of Rhodes University, the Vice-Chancellor, the Deputy Vice-Chancellors, academic staff, the Registrar, the University Librarian, the Director of Student Affairs; and those former professors and associate professors elected by the senate and council to be emeritus professors or emeritus associate professors, are members of Convocation. The Registrar is Secretary ex officio. All members are entitled to vote for office-bearers.

President: Dr M Ruiter

Secretary: Professor AL Moodie

## THE OLD RHODIAN UNION

The Old Rhodian Union was founded in 1911 by Professor Cullen Bowles and Sir George Cory to form a link between past and present students and staff of Rhodes University. All past students who have attended Rhodes University for at least a year, all members of Convocation, past and present Chancellors and Vice-Chancellors, Council members and all members of staff, past and present are automatically members of the Old Rhodian Union. There is no subscription for membership.

The Old Rhodian Union annual general meeting is held at the University as close as possible to every Founders' Day, together with the annual meeting of Convocation.

Old Rhodian reunions are held in all centres where there are branches of the Union. Besides Makhanda, these include Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, East London, Johannesburg, Kimberley, Pietermaritzburg, Port Elizabeth and Pretoria. There are also branches in Bulawayo, Harare, Windhoek, the United Kingdom, United States of America and Australia. The Old Rhodian

Union agreed at the 2023 Annual General Meeting that the branches, may formally be constituted as Chapters in the future.

The Old Rhodian Union administers a bursary fund from which it awards a number of bursaries, annually to children and grandchildren of Old Rhodians.

President: Professor RB Walker

Hon Treasurer: TBC

## THE SPORTS ADMINISTRATION AND SPORTS FACILITIES

The Rhodes University Sports Council was established in 1905. The Council promotes sport and physical recreation and provides and maintains sports facilities and equipment on campus. The Head of Sports Administration and staff are responsible for the day-to-day administration of University sport and sports clubs, and for carrying out the policies of the Sports Council.

The use of sports facilities is restricted to all bona fide students of Rhodes University, Club members, members of Council and full-time members of staff, who are honorary members of the Sports Council. Non-Rhodes affiliated people/groups can only use these facilities by prior arrangement with Sports Administration and may be liable for a charge applicable to each facility.

Facility cards may be purchased from the Sports Administration office by the following persons:

1. wives/husbands of members of staff and their dependants of 16 years and over;
2. Old Rhodians, their wives/husbands and their dependants of 16 years and over;
3. students' wives/husbands and their dependants of 16 years and over.

Swimming pool cards may also be purchased from the Sports Administration by the above persons as well as their children of under 16 years.

Whilst all bona fide students, Council members and staff have free access to some facilities, official club practices, matches and competitions take priority in the use of all facilities.

### Sports facilities

1 swimming pool  
 1 rugby field (floodlit)  
 2 cricket fields  
 1 100m archery range (floodlit)  
 1 beach volleyball court (floodlit)  
 4 netball courts (floodlit)  
 1 outdoor basketball court  
 3 soccer fields (floodlit)  
 9 squash courts  
 1 rowing tank  
 1 athletics track (floodlit)  
 8 tennis courts (floodlit)  
 1 rifle range  
 Martial arts dojo (karate, mixed martial arts, taekwondo)  
 Health suite:  
 Weights facility  
 Aerobics studio  
 Spinning studio  
 Climbing wall  
 Basketball,  
 Volleyball hall (Alec Mullins Hall)  
 Rowing; sailing & canoe clubhouse at Settlers Dam  
 1 Hockey Astro turf field (floodlit) - artificial surface

### Sports clubs

Archery; Athletics (Road Running, Track and Field, Triathlon); Basketball; Canoe; Chess; Cricket; Dance Sport; First Aid; Fly fishing; Golf; Hockey; Health Suite (Gym, Aerobics, Indoor Cycling) Karate; Mixed Martial Arts; Mountain Climbing; Netball, Pool; Rifle; Rowing; Sailing; Rugby; Soccer; Squash; Surfing; Tennis; Taekwon-do; Underwater (SCUBA & Underwater Hockey); Volleyball

### Sports scholarships

- Sutherland / Old Rhodian Bursary Fund: This bursary is awarded annually to a prospective student who has above average potential in their sports. The holders must meet the normal entrance requirements of the University. This bursary is tenable for the first year of study only.

- Sports Administration Scholarship: These scholarships are offered to students and prospective students excelling in their sporting codes, who made provincial and national teams.
- Ally Weakley Fund: This is the bursary awarded yearly to a rugby player.

### THE STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

The Students' Representative Council, elected by the student body, represents the students of Rhodes University both on campus and off campus. The SRC negotiates with the University authorities on behalf of students and administers funds allocated by the Council for student activities.

All student clubs and societies, except sports clubs, are financed by the SRC, which makes grants to student societies, to its various committees, to the publications under its control, and for student social functions.

The SRC assists in the organisation of Orientation Week.

Externally the SRC maintains contact with other educational institutions and arranges seminars and speakers on issues of general interest to students.

In terms of the Student Disciplinary Code, the SRC may take disciplinary action against students who break University rules. All disciplinary action is reported to the Vice-Chancellor, who deals with more serious offences.

### THE STUDENT SERVICES COUNCIL (SSC)

In accordance with tertiary education legislation, a Student Services Council has been established. In compliance with this legislation, the SSC has equal university staff and student representation. Being a subcommittee of Senate, the SSC makes recommendations directly to Senate, and thereby to Council.

The SSC has been given the task of examining every aspect of student life with the goal of integrating every student of the University into campus life as quickly as possible, so that each student may become academically productive in the shortest possible time. This will be achieved by ensuring that students from different backgrounds feel socially and culturally at ease in all aspects of campus life.

Students are encouraged to approach the Director of Student Affairs, or indeed any member of the SSC, with recommendations, complaints, etc about any aspect of student life on the Rhodes campuses.

**Contents**

	Page
1. Payment Options	
South African students	3
NSFAS funded students	4
International students	4
2. Banking details	5
3. Bursaries/Fee remissions	5
3.1) Recognised bursaries	
3.2) Fee remissions	
3.3) Academic Merit Awards	
3.4) External loans	
3.5) Penalties for non-payment of fees	
3.6) Refunds	
4. Notice of withdrawal/deregistration	6
5. Other fee considerations	6
5.1) Block tuition fees	
5.2) Oppidan Fee & cost of meals	
5.3) Additional courses	
5.4) Single course fees	
5.5) Departmental and additional charges	
5.6) Societies	
5.7) Examination fees	
5.8) IT shop	
5.9) Off Campus Network	
6. General fees	8
7. Tuition fees	10
8. Residence fees	15
9. Departmental charges/handouts	17
10. Contact details	29



- **PAYMENT OPTIONS**

**SOUTH AFRICAN STUDENTS****Option 1**

An Initial Fee Payment of 10% of the annual tuition fee, and where applicable, 25% of the annual residence fees, is required by **19 January 2024 for returning students and 26 January 2024 for first time entering students**; Carefully note the payment due dates if you wish to be accommodated in residence.

**The Initial Fee Payment:**

Tuition only: **R6 500.00**

Or

Tuition and Residence: **R6 500.00 + R21 522.00 = R28 022.00**

The balance of fees to be paid as set out below.

	Tuition	Residence	
By Initial Fee Payment Due Date 19 Jan/26 Jan 2024	10%	25%	Paid
A further 25% of fee amount by 31 Mar 2024	35%	50%	Paid
A further 25% of fee amount by 31 May 2024	60%	75%	Paid
A further 25% of fee amount by 30 Sep 2024	85%	100%	Paid
Any balance still outstanding by 30 Nov 2024	100%		Paid

*Additional charges to be paid monthly as per student fee statements.*

**Option 2**

A 5% discount may be **claimed in writing** if the full annual tuition fee, and if applicable, full annual residence fee is paid **on or before 19 January 2024 for returning students and on or before 26 January 2024 for first time entering students**. The discount cannot be applied to tuition or residence fee separately as it applies to full fees.

**Option 3**

Payment of the **full fees** by debit order with 11 monthly instalments from 1 February to 1 December. The debit order application form can be obtainable from [debitorders@ru.ac.za](mailto:debitorders@ru.ac.za) or on the Rhodes website [www.ru.ac.za/studentfeesandfinancialaid/](http://www.ru.ac.za/studentfeesandfinancialaid/). The form must be completed and signed by the person whose bank account is to be debited. All relevant documentation must be submitted by **12 January 2024**. Incomplete applications will not be considered.

A penalty of R247.00 will be charged on all unpaid debit orders. Three consecutive unpaid debit orders will result in the automatic cancellation of the debit order facility.

### NSFAS FUNDED STUDENTS

NSFAS funded students are **not** required to pay an Initial Fee. Registration clearance is granted based on a funding list provided from NSFAS. NSFAS does not pay for additional charges not related to Tuition, Accommodation and Books. The fee-payer will be liable for other costs incurred.

*Additional charges to be paid monthly per student fee statements.*

### INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS

#### Option 1

Returning and first time entering international students will be required to pay 50% of their tuition and residence fees for the year by **19 January 2024 for returning students and 26 January 2024 for first time entering students**. The balance of fees is due by 31 May 2024.

Carefully note the payment due dates if you wish to be accommodated in residence.

*Additional charges to be paid on receipt of student fee statements.*

#### International Students Initial Fee Payment:

Tuition only	<b>R 31 400.00</b>
or	
Tuition and Residence	<b>R 76 577.00</b>

#### Option 2

A 5% discount may be **claimed in writing** if the full annual tuition fee, and if applicable, full annual residence fee is paid **on or before 19 January 2024 for returning students and on or before 26 January 2024 for first time entering students**. The discount cannot be applied to tuition or residence fee separately as it applies to full fees.

#### International Student Levy (compulsory additional charge for all International students per annum)

	<b>Undergraduates:</b>	<b>Postgraduates:</b>
From SADC countries	R12 630.00	R8 567.00
From Africa (excl. SADC)	R16 131.00	R10 673.00
Elsewhere	R17 937.00	R12 630.00

- Master/Visa card facilities are available
- Flywire Payment Option available for all international transfers <http://www.flywire.com/howto>

#### **IMPORTANT INFORMATION FOR ALL STUDENTS**

Electronic Fund Transfers (EFT's) can take up to 3 days to reflect on the student account. Fee-payers need to take this into consideration to adhere to the fee payment deadlines.

Registration will not be permitted if none of the options below have been taken up.

The Initial Fee is required upfront and cannot be paid by payment arrangement unless you opt for the debit order facility.

## **2. BANKING DETAILS**

Rhodes University Student Fees  
First National Bank  
Makhanda Branch:  
Account number 6214 5504 553  
Branch code 210717

**Please note: the deposit slip MUST show the student number as the reference number.**

## **3. BURSARIES/FEE REMISSIONS & CONCESSIONS**

**3.1) Holders of recognised bursaries and scholarships including Rhodes University scholarships and merit awards** may offset their award against the Initial Fee Payment required for registration. The award letter must be emailed to [studentfees@ru.ac.za](mailto:studentfees@ru.ac.za). If the bursary total amount paid exceeds the fees payable, the student may draw the balance on condition that the Bursar has given written permission. Please note that it is the responsibility of the student to ensure that bursary donors make payments timeously and in accordance with the University regulations. Students who hold full bursaries are reminded that they will require funds on arrival at the University for the purchasing of books etc., as it is not University policy to make loans or advances against bursaries prior to the funds being received.

### **3.2) Fee remissions, concessions, and special arrangements (full-time students only)**

An application may be made for a second child remission should a parent have more than one child attending the University in the same academic year, as full-time students. The remission is equal to 30% of the tuition fee for any child after the first.

### **3.3) Academic Merit Award Scheme (SA students only)**

Special merit awards are automatically made by the University to eligible students enrolling for the first time for an undergraduate degree. The awards, **ranging from R29 940.00 to full tuition fee**, are based on the final National Senior Certificate examination results. Should the student withdraw from Rhodes University during the academic year, the merit award will be reduced on a pro rata basis. To qualify for one of these awards a student would have to obtain at least 47 admission points in the National Senior Certificate examination.

**International Students are not eligible for merit awards.**

### **3.4) External Loans**

Please note it is the responsibility of students negotiating loans with financial or other institutions to ensure that all payments are made to the University by the dates specified above.

The Initial Fee Payment may **NOT** be reduced by virtue of a student having negotiated a loan with a financial or other institution.

Monies once paid into a student account will not be refunded unless all fees have been paid and a credit balance is reflected on the account irrespective of any bursaries held or meal refunds due to the student. This is usually processed at the end of the academic year or when student withdraws from the University.

### **3.5) Penalties for non-payment of fees**

The University will not release results, academic transcripts, and degree parchments if any fees are in arrears.

### **3.6) Refunds**

Account refunds or payments to students will be made via Electronic Fund Transfer (EFT). Credit balance refunds will only be made upon receipt of written application from the person/organisation responsible for paying the account, supported by confirmation of banking details into which the funds are to be deposited. This is usually processed at the end of the academic year or when student withdraws from the University. A small credit may be retained to cover any additional second semester charges.

#### 4. NOTICE OF WITHDRAWAL/DEREGISTRATION (INCLUDING RESIDENCE)

- Students who wish to withdraw or suspend their studies must give notice, in writing, to the Registrar. ([registrar@ru.ac.za](mailto:registrar@ru.ac.za))
- Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason leaves during the year is liable for a pro-rata fee up to the date of cancellation for tuition and/or residence fees. The basis of the calculation will include an academic year of 248 days.
- Any student who withdraws their application for tuition or residence before registration will be liable for cancellation fee of 10% if less than one month's notice is given or 2.5% if longer.
- In the case of an **early withdrawal** from Residence, for any reason, other than immediate family bereavement, medical illness or academic exclusion, a **cancellation fee of two months Residence Fee** will be levied over and above the fee calculation for the period of residence accommodation. A penalty will not be charged if a provisional residence booking is cancelled prior to the Initial Fee (IF) deadline of **19 January 2024 for returning students and 26 January 2024 for first time entering students**.
- **In terms of Section 17 of the Consumer Protection Act (CPA) it states.**
  - A service provider may charge a reasonable fee for cancellation.
  - Regard must be had to the nature of the service, the length of notice to cancellation, the reasonable potential to find an alternative consumer (in our case this would be a student) and the general practice of the University sector.

#### 5. OTHER FEE CONSIDERATIONS

##### 5.1) **Block fees (Tuition fees)**

The regulations of the various faculties prescribe the number of courses full-time students are normally expected to take in each year of their curriculum.

Unless otherwise stated, the annual block fees include tuition fees for classes and laboratories, fees for ordinary University examinations and library fees for the normal number of courses. Full-time students taking fewer than the normal number of courses in any given year will still be liable for the full block fee.

##### 5.2) **Oppidan fee (for clarity please refer <http://www.ru.ac.za/oppidan/faq/> )**

All full-time registered students, living off-campus will be charged a compulsory oppidan fee of R402.00.

Meals for Oppidans (Students who live off-campus)

The Meal options available are breakfast, lunch and supper on weekdays and weekends. The costs vary:

Breakfast	R20.84	Lunch/Supper R56.07 (each)
-----------	--------	----------------------------

##### 5.3) **Additional courses**

Subject to the regulations of the various Faculties, **undergraduate** students may take in any year one course more than the normal number prescribed for that year of their curriculum without extra charge. **Full-time postgraduate** students may take in any year one undergraduate course free of charge, if they have obtained prior approval of their Head of Department and of the Dean of the Faculty and provided that a postgraduate student in Law may take first year courses in any one language subject in any year without extra charge. The undergraduate course becomes payable separately once deregistered from the full-time course.

##### 5.4) **Single course fees**

Students doing one course towards their degree must be registered as full-time but will be charged the single course fee.

### **5.5) Departmental and additional charges**

These are for course materials, handouts, field trips, printing vouchers, etc. and are additional charges to the student fee account. These charges vary as they depend on the courses taken and options chosen in each year of study.

### **5.6) Clubs and Societies**

These refer to subscriptions for clubs and societies to be charged to student accounts.

### **5.7) Examination fees**

Must be paid at the start of each semester for ordinary examinations written by students returning to write on extended DP certificates.

Students who fail to provide acceptable identification at examinations will be fined R363.00 per exam session.

### **5.8) IT Shop**

IT consumables such as USB flash sticks and external hard drives etc are available from the IT Shop. Please see <https://www.ru.ac.za/informationtechnology/itshop/> for pricing and more information.

### **5.9) Off Campus Network**

Applies when connecting to the Student Network from one of the private flat complexes in town where such access is available. See <http://www.ru.ac.za/studnet> for details.

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>6. GENERAL FEES</b>		
<b>New students- SA and International</b>		
Application fee: up to 30 September (SA and International applicants)		<b>100.00</b>
Tuition Acceptance Fee (non- refundable)		<b>800.00</b>
Residence Acceptance Fee (non-refundable)		<b>1 000.00</b>
<b>Late registration:</b> not in attendance on prescribed date		<b>1 882.00</b>
<b>Examination fees</b>		
Supplementary examinations:		
Per course or half course		<b>1 486.00</b>
Per subsidiary course (PGCE)		<b>409.00</b>
Extended DP examinations - per course		<b>1486.00</b>
- per half course		<b>922.00</b>
Extended DP Initial Fee Payment		<b>811.00</b>
Initial Fee Payment: Special categories including upgrading NCP's		<b>811.00</b>
<b>Current Students:</b>		
Transcripts (First academic transcript request, no charge, each for the June and December examination session. Any further request)		<b>89.00</b>
Transcripts with Course Outlines		<b>100.00</b>
<b>Alumni:</b>		
Degree certificates are handed to candidates when they graduate or posted as soon as possible after the graduation ceremony to those graduating <i>in absentia</i> . Other certificates are posted to candidates as soon as possible after the results are issued. A duplicate certificate is issued on production of an affidavit or the damaged original certificate. An amended degree parchment: issued because of student error or negligence in providing information such as the spelling of names, etc.		
Cost of Transcript		<b>158.00</b>
Cost of Course Outline		<b>16.00</b>
Cost of Letters of Completion		<b>63.00</b>
Cost of Transcript and Letters of Completion		<b>221.00</b>
Cost of Transcript with Course Outlines		<b>173.00</b>
Re-scrutiny		<b>2 280.00</b>
The fee is refundable if re-examination changes the classification of the result to the student's advantage.		
An invigilation fee per paper may also be payable		
Copy of Script		<b>253.00</b>
<b>Other Penalties/Levies</b>		
Unpaid Debit Order		<b>247.00</b>
Failure to produce ID at examinations/Cell phone ringing at exams		<b>363.00</b>

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>Miscellaneous Fees</b>		
Exemptions: Per course		<b>844.00</b>
- Per half course		<b>463.00</b>
<b>Certificates</b>		
Certified statements of course on application: Pre-1982		<b>528.00</b>
Replacement degree or diploma certificate		<b>891.00</b>
Amended degree parchment		<b>891.00</b>
Supporting transcript documentation- Fee on application to Academic Administration		
Student identity and meal cards		<b>257.00</b>
Printing vouchers (optional)		<b>Varies</b>
Photocopying vouchers (optional)		<b>Varies</b>
Off-campus Student Network access		<b>493.00</b>
Financial Mail Subscription (for Economics Students)	per year	<b>To be advised</b>
Visiting Research Students:	per year	<b>2 804.00</b>
	per semester	<b>1 420.00</b>
	per term	<b>733.00</b>
<b>NON-DEGREE, DIPLOMA OR CERTIFICATE COURSES</b>		
Additional music instruction		
Registered music students taking instruction beyond that required by regulation		<b>10 002.00</b>
All students not registered: music degree/diploma		<b>13 581.00</b>
Occasional students	per course	<b>Single course fees</b>
Continuing education and casual students per course		<b>5 819.00</b>

## 7. TUITION FEES

<b>FULL-TIME BACHELOR'S DEGREES</b>		
Undergraduate students registering for the second semester will be charged 50% of the annual fee		
<b>BA (Students not registered for BJourn who take Journ 2,3, or 4 courses will be charged the BJourn degree fee)</b>		<b>58 050.00</b>
BA Foundation Course: first two years	per year	<b>42 134.00</b>
<b>BBusSc</b>		
First three years	per year	<b>63 510.00</b>
Fourth year		<b>50 872.00</b>
<b>BCom</b>		
BCom Foundation Course: first two years	per year	<b>45 878.00</b>
BEcon		<b>63 510.00</b>
BEEd		<b>57 975.00</b>
BFineArt	see also other fees	<b>58 050.00</b>
<b>BJourn</b>		
<i>(Please note: the equipment levies for students studying Journalism 2, 3, 4 &amp; Diploma has been included in the Journalism tuition fee)</i>		
First year		<b>58 050.00</b>
Second year (includes equipment levy)		<b>68 115.00</b>
Third year (includes equipment levy)		<b>73 234.00</b>
Fourth year (includes equipment levy)		<b>75 028.00</b>
BMus: all years of study (see also other fees)	per year	<b>61 484.00</b>
<b>BPharm</b>		
First year (Professional Indemnity, SAPC Registration, Professional Coat, Handouts and Printing Material)		<b>62 560.00</b>
Second year (Professional Indemnity, SAPC Annual Fee, Handouts and Printing Material)		<b>66 676.00</b>
Third year (Professional Indemnity, SAPC Annual Fee, Handouts and Printing Material)		<b>68 238.00</b>
Fourth year (SAPC Annual Fee, Handouts and Printing Material)		<b>71 464.00</b>
<b>BSc</b>		
BSc Foundation Course: first two years	per year	<b>41 507.00</b>
BSc (Information Systems)		<b>63 510.00</b>
BScD (Software Development)		<b>63 510.00</b>
<b>BSocSc</b>		
BSocSc: Foundation Course	per year	<b>42 134.00</b>
LLB		<b>65 119.00</b>
<b>Please note: A student who takes Comp Sci 2 or 3 or Information Systems 2 or 3 and is NOT registered for a BBusSc, BCom, BEcon, BSc (InfSys) or BScD degree will be charged an additional tuition fee of R2 880.00</b>		



## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>FULL-TIME DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES</b>		
Advanced Diploma in Business Analysis 1		<b>34 596.00</b>
PG Diploma in Business Analysis		<b>59 584.00</b>
PG Diploma in International Studies		<b>45 254.00</b>
PG Diploma in Enterprise Management		<b>49 936.00</b>
PG Diploma in Heritage Management (PDHM)		<b>54 245.00</b>
DipAcc (PG) (Preliminary) 1, 2, 3 or more courses HDAP		<b>61 484.00</b>
DipAcc (PG) HDAC		<b>63 704.00</b>
PG Diploma in Taxation		<b>45 254.00</b>
PG Diploma English Language Teaching		<b>45 146.00</b>
PGCE		<b>47 328.00</b>
PG Diploma in Journalism and Media Studies		<b>61 373.00</b>
PG Diploma in Media Management		<b>66 321.00</b>
<b>PART-TIME DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS</b>		
BEd In-service	per year	<b>14 980.00</b>
BEd In-service incidental costs	per year	<b>19 641.00</b>
PG Diploma in Business Analysis	75% 1 <sup>st</sup> year	<b>44 688.00</b>
	25% 2 <sup>nd</sup> year	<b>14 896.00</b>
PG Diploma in Enterprise Management	per year	<b>49 936.00</b>
PG Diploma English Lang Teaching	per year	<b>27 309.00</b>
PG Diploma in Economics Journalism	per year	<b>20 910.00</b>
PGDHE	per year	<b>22 939.00</b>
PGCE	per year	<b>23 408.00</b>
Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Literacy Teaching	per year	<b>16 003.00</b>
<b>SINGLE COURSE FEES</b>		
Science (incl. Geography & Psychology)		<b>23 097.00</b>
Final course in major or principal subjects		<b>29 025.00</b>
Other (including Mathematics)		<b>22 159.00</b>
Half courses (Two half courses = cost of 1 full course: not 2 x60%)		

<b>FULL-TIME HONOURS DEGREE</b>		
Candidates for Honours degrees may attend an introductory language course without extra charge.		
Science (includes Environmental Science), Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography & Information Systems		
First year		<b>53 525.00</b>
Additional years	per year	<b>22 315.00</b>
Accounting		
First year		<b>63 825.00</b>
- Additional years	per year	<b>22 342.00</b>
Journalism & Media Studies		
First year		<b>61 602.00</b>
-Additional year	per year	<b>22 315.00</b>
Financial Management		
First year		<b>45 254.00</b>
Additional years	per year	<b>22 315.00</b>
Other		
First year		<b>43 851.00</b>
Additional year	per year	<b>22 315.00</b>
<b>PART-TIME HONOURS DEGREE</b>		
Science (includes Environmental Science, Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography & Information System per year)		<b>33 239.00</b>
Accounting	per year	<b>42 134.00</b>
BEd (Hons) First two years	per year	<b>21 691.00</b>
Additional years	per year	<b>9 362.00</b>
BEd (Hons) Namibia	per year	<b>25 904.00</b>
Journalism & Media Studies	per year	<b>33 239.00</b>
Other Honours degrees	per year	<b>24 655.00</b>
<b>LINGUISTICS AND APPLIED LANGUAGE STUDIES DEGREES</b> - Tuition and Supervision		
<i>If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.</i>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Registration and tuition fees must be paid even if candidates in a particular year make no call on their supervisor's time.</li> <li>The minimum period of study for a Linguistics and Applied Language Studies degree is two years after a Bachelor's degree (if permitted) or one year after an Honours degree.</li> <li>A pro-rata fee will be applied upon registration of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies students.</li> </ul>		
All Faculties other than as specified below	per year	<b>29 181.00</b>
<b>Full time and part-time fee unless specified below</b>		
Bioinformatics	per year	<b>38 701.00</b>
Business Administration (MBA)		
MBA Full Time (Accelerated Program)		
Registered in 2020		<b>37 840.00</b>
Registered in 2021/2022		<b>149 841.00</b>
MBA Part-time		
Registered in 2018 & prior		<b>37 840.00</b>
Registered in 2020		<b>74 921.00</b>
Registered in 2021/2022		<b>74 921.00</b>

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>Education (incl. English Language Teaching in the depart. of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies)</b>		
Students Full Time:		
First two years	per year	<b>19 974.00</b>
Subsequent years	per year	<b>27 933.00</b>
Students Part Time:		
First three years	per year	<b>15 137.00</b>
Subsequent years	per year	<b>22 627.00</b>
Namibia	per year	<b>32 615.00</b>
Financial Markets (including cost of Financial Exchange exams)		
First year		<b>60 702.00</b>
Additional years	per year	<b>24 655.00</b>

<b>Journalism and Media Studies Part-time</b>		
Part Time – First two years	per year	<b>14 668.00</b>
Third year (thesis year)		<b>10 144.00</b>
Additional years	per year	<b>19 349.00</b>
Psychology – Clinical/Counselling		
First year		<b>29 181.00</b>
Second year		<b>10 923.00</b>
Third year		<b>19 974.00</b>
Psychology – By Thesis only		
Full Time	per year	<b>19 974.00</b>
Part Time	per year	<b>10 300.00</b>
<b>TAXATION:</b>		
First three years	per year	<b>34 642.00</b>
Additional years	per year	<b>42 757.00</b>
<b>SPECIAL MSc DEGREES</b>		
MSc (Environmental Biotechnology)		
First year of registration		<b>73 103.00</b>
Additional years	per year	<b>42 757.00</b>
MSc (Expl/Econ part-time)		
Module	per module	<b>10 144.00</b>
Field courses	per field trip	<b>19 508.00</b>
Attendance of modules for non-degree purposes	per week	<b>12 094.00</b>
Students not in attendance	per year	<b>7 022.00</b>
Thesis supervision and laboratory fees	per year	<b>10 144.00</b>
Equipment Levy	per annum	<b>390.00</b>
MSc (Economic Geology – full time)		

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

Students completing degree in one year		<b>20 286.00</b>
Field courses	per field trip	<b>19 508.00</b>
Thesis supervision and laboratory fees	per year	<b>10 144.00</b>

<b>PhD CANDIDATES</b>		
If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.		
Tuition, supervision, and examination fees		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Registration and tuition fees must be paid even if candidates in a particular year make no call on their supervisor's time.</li> <li>• The minimum period of study for a PhD degree is three years after an Honours degree or two years after a Linguistics and Applied Language Studies degree.</li> <li>• A pro-rata fee will be applied upon registration of PhD students</li> </ul>		
All Faculties other than Education	per year	<b>29 181.00</b>
Education		
<b>Students Full Time:</b>		
First three years	per year	<b>19 974.00</b>
Subsequent years	per year	<b>27 933.00</b>
<b>Students Part Time:</b>		
First three years	per year	<b>15 137.00</b>
Subsequent years	per year	<b>22 627.00</b>
Namibia	per year	<b>32 656.00</b>
PHD in Psychotherapy		<b>15 449.00</b>
<b>SENIOR DOCTORATES</b>		
Examination fee. (No other fees are payable)		<b>29 181.00</b>
<b>AD EUNDEM GRADUM CANDIDATES</b> As for Linguistics and Applied Language Studies degrees above		

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

### 8. RESIDENCE FEES

16a Prince Alfred Street Adamson House Adamson House Doubles Adelaide Tambo House Amina Cachalia House Calata House Canterbury Annex Canterbury Annex Doubles Canterbury House Canterbury House Doubles Cullen Bowles House	Ellen Kuzwayo Helen Joseph Annex Doubles Helen Joseph House Hilltop House Hobson House New Res Joe Slovo House New House New House Annex 1 Dble New House Annex 4 New House Annex 4 Doubles Prince Alfred House	Rosa Parks House Salisbury House Salisbury House Doubles Sisulu House Stanley Kidd Doubles Stanley Kidd House Truro House Winchester House	<b>84 061.00</b>
Allan Gray House Allan Gray House Doubles Atherstone House Atherstone House Doubles Beit Flat Beit House Botha House Botha House Doubles Centenary House Chris Hani House College House College House Doubles Cory House De Beers House De Beers House Doubles Dingemans House Founders Annex Goldfields House Goldfields House Doubles Graham House	Guy Butler House Hobson House Hobson House Doubles Charlotte Maxeke House Charlotte Maxeke House Doubles John Kotze House LB Annex Doubles LB Annex Single Lilian Britten Doubles Lilian Britten House Livingstone House Margaret Smith House Matthews House 31 South Street Milner House Milner House Doubles Olive Schreiner House Olive Schreiner House Doubles	Oriel Annex Doubles Oriel Annexe Oriel House Oriel House Doubles PG Holding Residence Phelps House Enoch Sontonga Milner House Annex Doubles Robert Sobukwe House Robert Sobukwe House Doubles Ruth First House Sanatorium Thomas Pringle House Victoria Mxenge House Walker House	<b>88 254.00</b>
<b>POSTGRADUATE RESIDENCES (SPECIFIED)</b>		<b>FULL BOARD</b>	<b>SELF CATERING</b>
<b>Gavin Relly Postgraduate Village</b>			
Single room without air-conditioning		<b>102 113.00</b>	<b>74 096.00</b>
Single room with air-conditioning		<b>107 180.00</b>	<b>79 166.00</b>

Celeste, Oakdene	99 613.00	71 600.00
5 Gilbert Str. and 6 Gilbert Str., JK Annexe, Gilbert Str. PG Units, 27 South Str. and African Str.	99 613.00	N/A

<b>Residence fees during vacations:</b>		
April recess: (Including meals)	per day	<b>266.00</b>
Early arrivals or late departures: (Including meals)	per day	<b>165.00</b>
<b>MISCELLANEOUS FEES -</b>		
Loss of room key		<b>306.00</b>
- Failure to return room key: the end of 2nd and 4th terms		<b>306.00</b>
- Loss of cupboard key		<b>603.00</b>
- Additional length bed		<b>165.00</b>

### Additional information

- Residence fees differ because some residences have better facilities and/or are desirably located.
- Students' accommodation is based on single rooms. Adjustments are made in fees where students change residences. All residence fees are levied at the full rate for a single room in the appropriate residence at the beginning of the year. Where, for University convenience, students are permitted to share accommodation a 25% discount of the lodging will be applied. For discounts and adjustments, the residence year is taken as 248 days (PG Residences 340 days). A student does not have the right to claim an allowance for sharing a room where single accommodation in the residence is available.
- No charge is made for linen supplied or for laundry services. Students must provide their own toiletries and towels.
- No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason, other than where the prescribed course of study required such absence. (Certificates to this effect must be obtained from the relevant academic Head of Department and submitted to the Residential Operations Division).
- Un-booked meals will be refunded to students' fee accounts at the end of each semester. Refunds will be limited to a maximum of **R3 383.03** per semester for those in undergraduate residences and **R4 638.03** per semester for those in postgraduate residences.

Meals for residence students:

Breakfast	R15.92
-----------	--------

Lunch/Supper R37.51 (each)

- Accommodation for students in undergraduate residences is available for a specific fee during the April vacation periods. No vacation accommodation is offered during the mid-year recess or the December/January period.
- Students who have withdrawn from residence must vacate their rooms within 24 hours of having given such notification to the University.
- Applications for residence fee remissions must be made to the Director: Residential Operations. Residence fee remissions will only be considered in cases of family emergencies (e.g.: Immediate family bereavement, illness of student, etc.).

**2. DEPARTMENTAL CHARGE ESTIMATES**

**NOTE:** These charges are provisional only and may be revised during the year. However, charges for handouts (as determined) are compulsory

**ACCOUNTING**

Accounting 101, 102 & 112	per semester	<b>98.00</b>
Accounting 2		<b>195.00</b>
Accounting 3		<b>198.00</b>
Auditing 3		<b>349.00</b>
Principles of Professional Accountancy		<b>410.00</b>
Management Accounting and Finance 3		<b>239.00</b>
Taxation 3		<b>349.00</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy		<b>2 045.00</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation		<b>954.00</b>
Acc Honours (Financial Accounting)		<b>2 045.00</b>

**AFRICAN LANGUAGES**

CLIA 101		<b>123.00</b>
CLIA 102		<b>123.00</b>
isiXhosa I, II and III (MT)		<b>245.00</b>
isiXhosa I, II and III (NMT)	each	<b>453.00</b>
Honours & Field Trips		<b>453.00</b>
Honours (Joint)		<b>233.00</b>
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies		<b>168.00</b>

**AFRIKAANS & NEDERLANDS STUDIES**

Afrikaans & Nederlands I		<b>302.00</b>
Afrikaans & Nederlands II and III	each	<b>367.00</b>
Afrikaans & Nederlands Honours		<b>286.00</b>
Afrikaans & Nederlands Honours (Joint)		<b>259.00</b>
Modern Fiction		<b>329.00</b>

**ANTHROPOLOGY**

Anthropology I & II – hand outs	each	<b>367.00</b>
Anthropology III – Fieldtrips and hand outs	each	<b>367.00</b>
Anthropology Honours - Fieldtrips and hand outs		<b>367.00</b>

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>BIOCHEMISTRY</b>		
Biochemistry 2 Course Material	each	<b>127.00</b>
Biochemistry 3 Course Material	each	<b>139.00</b>
Biochemistry 2 lab and equipment levy	each	<b>510.00</b>
Biochemistry 3 lab & equipment levy	each	<b>510.00</b>
Biochemistry Honours: Course material	each	<b>127.00</b>
<b>BIOTECHNOLOGY</b>		
Biotechnology Honours: Course materials		<b>245.00</b>
<b>BOTANY</b>		
Cell Biology 101 handouts	First semester only	<b>160.00</b>
Botany 102 (BOT 102) handouts	Second semester only	<b>160.00</b>
Botany 102 and Cell Biology 101 shared e-textbook	Per annum	<b>620.00</b>
Botany 201, 202, 301 and 302 handouts	Each per semester	<b>160.00</b>
Botany 2 pracs and field trip	Per semester	<b>1 200.00</b>
Botany 3 pracs and field trip	Per semester	<b>1 200.00</b>
Botany Honours (includes a field trip)	Per annum	<b>2 000.00</b>
Optional field trip to Namaqualand	Per annum, voluntary	<b>2 500.00</b>
<b>CHEMISTRY</b>		
Chemistry 101,102	each per semester	<b>416.00</b>
Chemistry 201,301,202,302		<b>442.00</b>
<b>CHERTL</b>		
PhD		<b>871.00</b>
PGDHE		<b>739.00</b>
<b>CHINESE STUDIES</b>		
Chinese 1 and 2 and 3	per annum	<b>900.00</b>
Chinese for Specific Purposes (course materials, textbooks)	per annum	<b>463.00</b>
Chinese Studies Honours	per annum	<b>313.00</b>
<b>CLASSICS</b>		
Classics 101 and 102	per annum	<b>449.00</b>
Classics 201 and 202	per annum	<b>367.00</b>
Classics 301 and 302	per annum	<b>367.00</b>
Classics Honours	per annum	<b>259.00</b>
Classics Honours (Greek/Latin)	per annum	<b>259.00</b>
Classics Honours (Joint)	per annum	<b>149.00</b>
Classics Linguistics and Applied Language Studies	per annum	<b>149.00</b>



## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

Greek 101 and 102	per annum	<b>123.00</b>
Greek 2	per annum	<b>205.00</b>
Greek 3	per annum	<b>272.00</b>
Latin 101	per annum	<b>205.00</b>
Latin 102	per annum	<b>109.00</b>
Latin 2	per annum	<b>205.00</b>
Latin 3	per annum	<b>272.00</b>

<b>COMPUTER SCIENCE</b>		
Introduction to ICT	each	<b>60.00</b>
Computer Science 101	each	<b>300.00</b>
Computer Science 102	each	<b>200.00</b>
Computer Science 112	each	<b>60.00</b>
Computer Science 201	per semester	<b>400.00</b>
Computer Science 202	per semester	<b>250.00</b>
Computer Science 301	per semester	<b>200.00</b>
Computer Science 302	per semester	<b>200.00</b>
Computer Science Honours	per year	<b>350.00</b>
<b>Levy: Computer usage</b>		
Introduction to ICT	per semester	<b>286.00</b>
Computer Science 112	per semester	<b>286.00</b>
First year (Main stream)	per semester	<b>362.00</b>
Second year	per semester	<b>493.00</b>
Third year	per semester	<b>654.00</b>
Honours (100% and 60%)	per annum	<b>1 452.00</b>
<b>DRAMA</b>		
All courses:		
Course Material	each	<b>130.00</b>
Theatre instruction and equipment	each	<b>1 208.00</b>

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>ECONOMICS &amp; ECONOMIC HISTORY</b>		
Economics 101 and 102	each per semester	<b>400.00</b>
Economics 201 and 202	each per semester	<b>40.00</b>
Economics 312,313,314,316,317,318	each per semester	<b>70.00</b>
Economics 315 (Including e-book)	1st semester	<b>700.00</b>
Economics Honours full	per annum	<b>850.00</b>
Economics Honours Joint	per annum	<b>519.00</b>
Economics 4 (BBS)	per annum	<b>777.00</b>
Economics (BBS) Joint	per annum	<b>519.00</b>
Master's in Financial Markets: Coursework + e-book	per annum	<b>1 500.00</b>
Master's in Financial Markets: Thesis	per annum	<b>250.00</b>
Master's by research thesis	per annum	<b>250.00</b>

<b>EDUCATION</b> (incl. Printed materials, Dalro royalties, field trips and printing costs for electronic submitted material)		
PGCE (FP/IP)		<b>2 072.00</b>
PGCE (SP/FET)		<b>2 072.00</b>
BEd (FP) 1 <sup>st</sup> year		<b>1 941.00</b>
BEd (FP) 2nd year		<b>1 941.00</b>
BEd (FP) 3rd year		<b>1 941.00</b>
BEd (FP) 4th year		<b>1 941.00</b>
BEd (IP)	per year x 2 years	<b>1 941.00</b>
BEd (ICT, LO, Science)		<b>1 296.00</b>
MEd (full supported Thesis or Coursework)	Full fees Year 1, ½ fees additional years	<b>1 846.00</b>
MEd (full supported Thesis or Coursework) – Additional years	each	<b>921.00</b>
MEd (Namibia)	Year 1	<b>2 487.00</b>
MEd (Namibia)	Year 2	<b>1 423.00</b>
Full Thesis (Other)	Full fees Year 1, ½ fees additional years	<b>1 296.00</b>
Full Thesis (Other) – Additional years	each	<b>647.00</b>
BEd (Hons) Namibia		<b>2 304.00</b>
BEd (Hons) Foundation Course		<b>2 525.00</b>
BEd (Hons) elective courses		<b>1 397.00</b>
PhD		<b>907.00</b>
PhD (Namibia)		<b>2 487.00</b>

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>ENGLISH</b> (Including supplementary readings, study guides etc. and Dalro fees where applicable)		
English I	per annum	<b>392.00</b>
English II and III	each per annum	<b>284.00</b>
English Honours	per annum	<b>490.00</b>
Karoo Trip - Honours	per annum	<b>1 800.00</b>
<b>LINGUISTICS AND APPLIED LANGUAGE STUDIES</b>		
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1	per annum	<b>558.00</b>
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 2	per annum	<b>437.00</b>
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 3	per annum	<b>437.00</b>
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Honours (Jnt)	per annum	<b>96.00</b>
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Honours	per annum	<b>149.00</b>
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Masters	per annum	<b>149.00</b>
Postgraduate Diploma in ELT	per annum	<b>149.00</b>
Coursework Masters	per annum	<b>149.00</b>
Professional Communications	per annum	<b>245.00</b>

<b>ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE</b>		
Environment Science 201 and 202	each	<b>233.00</b>
Environment Science 2 <sup>nd</sup> yr.: Field Trips	each	<b>749.00</b>
Environment Science 301 and 302	each	<b>245.00</b>
Environment Science 3 <sup>rd</sup> yr.: Field Work/ Trip	each	<b>749.00</b>
Environmental Science Honours	each	<b>519.00</b>
Environmental Science Honours: Field Trip	each	<b>3 408.00</b>
Environmental Science Honours: EIA Course		<b>2 209.00</b>
<b>EXTENDED STUDIES (FOUNDATION COURSES)</b>		
Science (Handouts, Field trip & Lab expenses, computer skills)		<b>429.00</b>
Humanities (Handouts, Field trip & Lab expenses, computer skills)		<b>307.00</b>
Commerce (Handouts, Field trip & Lab expenses, computer skills)		<b>307.00</b>

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>FINE ART</b>		
<b>Please NOTE that these are average costs, as costs vary from student to student</b>		
Fine Art Practice 1 and 2		<b>4 325.00</b>
Fine Art Practice 3	varies	<b>4 729.00 – 8 700.00</b>
Fine Art Practice 4	varies	<b>4 730.00 – 11 490.00</b>
Art History & Visual Culture 1- 4	each	<b>176.00</b>
<b>FRENCH</b>		
French 1	each	<b>417.00</b>
French ,2, 3	each	<b>307.00</b>
French Honours Joint		<b>233.00</b>
French Honours Full - time		<b>453.00</b>
<b>GEOGRAPHY (includes course material and non-residential field trips)</b>		
Earth Science 101	1st semester	<b>163.00</b>
Geography 102	2nd semester	<b>137.00</b>
Geography 201, 202	each per semester	<b>205.00</b>
Geography 301	2 <sup>nd</sup> semester	<b>205.00</b>
Geography 302	1 <sup>st</sup> semester	<b>339.00</b>
Geography Honours	per module	<b>394.00</b>
Geography Enviro Water Man Hons	per module	<b>394.00</b>
Geography Spatial Development Honours	per module	<b>394.00</b>
Full Time Linguistics and Applied Language Studies and PhD		<b>394.00</b>
Field Courses: (this amount is an average – destination, transport and available accommodation dependent)		
Geography 201/202		<b>805.00</b>
Geography 301		<b>682.00</b>
Geography 302		<b>805.00</b>
Geography Honours	per module where appropriate	<b>954.00</b>
Geography Honours Students' Conference		<b>1 173.00</b>
Geography Honours Introductory Field Trip		<b>1 105.00</b>
<b>GEOLOGY</b>		
Earth Science 101	per module	<b>163.00</b>
Course Material:		
GLG 102	per semester	<b>218.00</b>
GLG 201, 202	each per semester	<b>218.00</b>
GLG 301, 302	each per semester	<b>218.00</b>
Geology Honours	per annum	<b>532.00</b>
Field Courses:		
GLG 102	per annum	<b>394.00</b>
GLG 2	per annum	<b>1 623.00</b>

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

GLG 3	per annum	<b>1 757.00</b>
Geology Honours	per annum	<b>3 685.00</b>
Equipment Levy:		
GLG 201,202	each per semester	<b>36.00</b>
GLG 301,302	each per semester	<b>45.00</b>
Geology Honours	per annum	<b>437.00</b>
Research MSc/PhD	each per annum	<b>654.00</b>
<b>GERMAN</b>		
German 1, 2 & 3 (Foreign Language)	each	<b>189.00</b>
German Honours		<b>181.00</b>
German Linguistics and Applied Language Studies		<b>156.00</b>
<b>HISTORY</b>		
History 101, 102	each	<b>123.00</b>
History 201, 202	each	<b>123.00</b>
History 3	per semester	<b>123.00</b>
<b>HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS</b>		
HKE 1 & 2	per annum	<b>301.00</b>
HKE 3	per annum	<b>393.00</b>
Honours: manuals, handouts and field trips	per annum	<b>810.00</b>

<b>ICHTHYOLOGY</b>		
Ichthyology 2:		
Course Materials and Practical's	per semester	<b>205.00</b>
Field Trip	per annum	<b>1 200.00</b>
Ichthyology 3:		
Course Materials and Practical's	per semester	<b>205.00</b>
Field Trip	per annum	<b>1 173.00</b>
Ichthyology Honours		
Course Materials	per annum	<b>573.00</b>
Field Trips	per annum	<b>7 546.00 – 10 750.00</b>

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>INFORMATION SYSTEMS</b> (includes handout and copyright charges)		
Information Systems 201	per semester	60.00
Information Systems 202	per semester	30.00
Information Systems 203	per semester	30.00
Information Systems 301	per semester	60.00
Information Systems 302	per semester	60.00
Information Systems Honours: 100% and 60%	per year	150.00
Honours: 40%	per year	75.00
Start-up week	per year	600.00
Information Systems Linguistics and Applied Language Studies	per year	150.00
A Dalro fee not more than R240.00 may be charged per course		
Levy: Computer usage		
First year	See Computer Sci	
Second year	per semester	408.00

Third year	per semester	611.00
Honours 100% and 60%	per annum	1 356.00

<b>JOURNALISM &amp; MEDIA STUDIES</b>		
Handouts and Dalro:		
JMS 1		25.00
JMS 2		75.00
JMS 3		100.00
JMS 4		100.00
PGDip		100.00
Honours		100.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies (Year 1)		100.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies -Production (Year 1)		250.00
PDMM: Textbooks, Readers & Course Handouts		3 000.00
<b>EQUIPMENT LEVY</b>		
JMS (1 <sup>st</sup> Year of study)		329.00
JMS 2		2 664.00
JMS 3		5 329.00
JMS 4		6 165.00
PGDip		5 329.00
Honours		2 664.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies (1 <sup>st</sup> and 2 <sup>nd</sup> Year of study)		2 015.00
PHD (1 <sup>st</sup> Year of Study)		2 015.00

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>CONSUMABLES</b>		
JMS 1		50.00
JMS 2		50.00
JMS 3	each	530.00
JMS 4		570.00
PGDip		570.00
Honours	each	100.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies (All years)		500.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies – Production (Prac)		750.00
<b>FIELDTRIPS, STUDIO FEES, EXHIBITION, PROF PRINTING &amp; DOCUMENTARY PROJECT EXPENSES</b>		
JMS3, PGDip & MA Production	Per Field Trip	1 500.00
JMS4 Studio Fees, Fieldtrips, Documentary Project, Prof Printing & Exhibition Expenses:		
Fieldtrips	Per fieldtrip	3 000.00
Transport for Journalistic Fieldwork	Per student	1 000.00
Photo-Journalism Studio Fees	Per Student	1 000.00
Exhibition expenses	Per Student	600.00
Television Documentary Project Expenses	Per Student	2 000.00
Design Professional Printing Expenses	Per Student	1 000.00
<b>LAW</b>		
LLB Students only: This is a charge per degree and these students will not be charged for the individual law courses		
LLB-N1		641.00
LLB-N2		982.00
LLB-N3		1 415.00
LLB-N4		1 348.00
Introduction to Law		148.00
Foundations of Law		140.00
Legal Interpretation		42.00
Constitutional Law A		77.00
Constitutional Law B		42.00
Legal Pluralism		32.00
Law of Contract A		57.00
Law of Persons		42.00
Law of Property A		25.00
Law of Contract B		21.00
Law of Life Partnerships		32.00
Law of Property B		32.00

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

COL 101 (Dalro fee)		<b>131.00</b>
COL 101		<b>74.00</b>
COL 102		<b>21.00</b>
COL 201 & COL 202		<b>74.00</b>
Legal Theory 1 DALRO fee		<b>53.00</b>
<b>MANAGEMENT</b> (includes handouts and DALRO royalties)		
Management 101, 102	each per semester	<b>135.00</b>
Management 101, 102 (Interactive online textbook)	Once off	<b>647.00</b>
Management 211, 212, 213 and 214	each per term	<b>135.00</b>
Management 211, 212, 213 and 214 (Interactive online textbook)	Once Off	<b>929.00</b>
Management 311, 312, 313 and 314	each per term	<b>203.00</b>
BBS 4 / Honours – Papers 1 - 7	each per term	<b>955.00</b>
BBS 4 / Honours – Paper 8	once off	<b>2 126.00</b>
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies by research thesis	once off	<b>2 469.00</b>
<b>MATHEMATICS (PURE &amp; APPLIED)</b>		
Mathematics and Applied Mathematics MAM 101, MAM 102, MAT1F	per annum	<b>218.00</b>
Mathematics for Sciences MAT 1S	per annum	<b>218.00</b>
Theory of Finance TOF 1C1, TOF 1F	per annum	<b>218.00</b>
Mathematics & Applied Mathematics MAM 201	1st semester	<b>164.00</b>
Mathematics & Applied Mathematics MAM 202	2nd semester	<b>164.00</b>
Applied Mathematics MAM 311, MAP311, MAP 312, MAP314	Per annum	<b>327.00</b>
Mathematics MAM 311, MAT 311, MAT 313, MAT 315	2nd semester	<b>327.00</b>
<b>MICROBIOLOGY</b>		
Microbiology 2 Course Material	per annum	<b>135.00</b>
Microbiology 3 Course Material	per annum	<b>208.00</b>
Microbiology 2 & 3 lab & equipment levy		<b>537.00</b>
Microbiology 201 Field Trip		<b>892.00</b>
Microbiology 302 Field Trip		<b>135.00</b>
Microbiology Honours Course Material		<b>135.00</b>



## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

<b>MUSIC &amp; MUSICOLOGY</b> (includes course materials and use of equipment)		
Ethnomusicology 101 & 102		<b>387.00</b>
Instrumental Music 1		<b>653.00</b>
Music and Musicology Honours		<b>653.00</b>
Music and Musicology Honours Joint		<b>653.00</b>
Music		<b>653.00</b>
Music Culture and History		<b>653.00</b>
Music Health and the Brain		<b>400.00</b>
Music Linguistics and Applied Language Studies by performance and Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Thesis		<b>616.00</b>
Music PhD		<b>616.00</b>
Music Theory and Analysis 101		<b>459.00</b>
Music Theory and Analysis 101		<b>459.00</b>
MusicoLOGY 102 & 201		<b>387.00</b>
Sound Technology 1S1		<b>459.00</b>
<b>PHILOSOPHY</b>		
Philosophy 101 & 102	each	<b>287.00</b>
Philosophy 201 & 202	each	<b>287.00</b>
Philosophy 3	each	<b>746.00</b>
Honours	each	<b>1 147.00</b>
Joint Honours	per paper	<b>574.00</b>
MA Coursework	per paper	<b>1 147.00</b>
LiNtetho zoBomi 101 & 102	Per semester	<b>459.00</b>
Accounting Ethics	Per paper	<b>229.00</b>
<b>PHYSICS</b>		
Physics 101, 102,1E1 and 1E2	each	<b>191.00</b>
Physics 201and 202	each	<b>217.00</b>
Physics 301 and 302	each	<b>242.00</b>
Physics Honours	per annum	<b>458.00</b>
<b>POLITICAL &amp; INTERNATIONAL STUDIES</b> (incl. course fee, handouts, DALRO and photocopying)		
Political and International Studies 101 & 102	Semester	<b>150.00</b>
Political and International Studies 2	Annually	<b>250.00</b>
Political and International Studies 3	Annually	<b>250.00</b>
Honours	Annually	<b>400.00</b>
Joint Honours	Annually	<b>250.00</b>
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies (Resident only)	Annually	<b>350.00</b>

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

PhD (Resident only)	Annually	350.00
<b>PSYCHOLOGY</b>		
Psychology 1		108.00
Psychology 2		310.00
Psychology 3		310.00
Organisational Psychology 2		310.00
Organisational Psychology 3		310.00
Psychology Honours		688.00
Clinical Psychology Professional fee		3 016.00
Clinical Psychology Resale		1 147.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies in Research Psychology		172.00
Counselling Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Resale Fee		1 147.00
Counselling Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Professional Fee		3 016.00
PhD by Thesis		172.00
<b>SOCIOLOGY</b>		
Sociology 1 ,2 & 3		500.00
Industrial Sociology 2 & 3		500.00
Honours and Linguistics and Applied Language Studies	per course	250.00
<b>STATISTICS</b>		
Statistics 1P1 & 1S1	per semester	112.00
Statistics 1C2	Per semester	252.00
Mathematical Statistics 102		112.00
Mathematical Statistics 201, 202	each per semester	112.00
Mathematical Statistics 301, 302	each per semester	225.00
Mathematical Statistics Honours /Linguistics and Applied Language Studies		507.00
<b>ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY</b>		
Entomology 200, 300 Handouts	each per semester	189.00
Entomology 200 Lab Class Materials	per annum	578.00
Entomology 300 Lab Class Materials	per annum	137.00
Zoology 102 Handouts	2nd semester	126.00
Zoology 102 Lab Class Materials	2nd semester	315.00
Zoology 102 E-Text Book	2nd semester	526.00
Zoology 200, 300 Handouts	each per semester	189.00
Zoology 201 E-Text Book	1st semester	526.00
Honours Handouts	each per annum	105.00

## 2024 FEES AND CHARGES

---

Field Trips: Entomology 201, 301	each, 2nd semester	<b>736.00</b>
Field Trips: Entomology 202	1st semester	<b>809.00</b>
Field Trips: Entomology 302	1st semester	<b>368.00</b>
Field Trips: Honours	per annum	<b>2 522.00</b>
Field Trips: Zoology 201	1st semester	<b>368.00</b>
Field Trips: Zoology 202	2nd semester	<b>210.00</b>
Field Trips: Zoology 301	1st semester	<b>736.00</b>
Field Trips: Zoology 302	2nd semester	<b>526.00</b>

### **10. Contact Details**

#### **Financial Aid Office**

E: [finaid@ru.ac.za](mailto:finaid@ru.ac.za)

T: 046 603 8248

046 603 8912

046 603 8660

#### **Student Bureau**

E: [registrar@ru.ac.za](mailto:registrar@ru.ac.za)

T: 046 603 8175

046 603 8654

046 603 8103

#### **Student Fees**

E: [studentfees@ru.ac.za](mailto:studentfees@ru.ac.za)

T: 046 603 8253

046 603 8178

046 603 8743

046 602 8152



**RHODES UNIVERSITY**  
*Where leaders learn*